

# **Latin Grammar**

**Grammar Vocabularies, and Exercises  
in Preparation for the Reading of  
the Missal and Breviary**

**Cora Carroll Scanlon A.M.**

**Charles L. Scanlon A.M.**

# Latin Grammar

THE AIM and scope of Scanlon's *Latin Grammar* are to prepare those with no previous knowledge of Latin to read the Missal and Breviary. Unlike most First Year Latin textbooks, it is not an introduction to the reading of Caesar.

Its twenty lessons embrace Latin grammar completely, from the first declension to the various uses of the subjunctive. Special drill in forms and vocabulary is provided by generous exercises. After the student has made a fair start, he will encounter reading

lessons, which are connected passages from the two liturgical sources for which the whole book is a preparation.

A valuable part of the book is the Latin-English vocabulary. In it and throughout the book, the accented syllable is marked in all Latin words of more than two syllables.

The one-year course of study provided by this textbook should enable a diligent student to read the Missal and Breviary with reasonable facility.

TAN



0 000000 010985

# *LATIN GRAMMAR*

Grammar, Vocabularies, and Exercises  
in Preparation for  
the Reading of the Missal and Breviary

BY

CORA CARROLL SCANLON, A.M.

*Milwaukee State Teachers College*

AND

CHARLES L. SCANLON, A.M.

*Marquette University*

EDITED BY

REV. NEWTON THOMPSON, S.T.D.

TAN BOOKS AND PUBLISHERS, INC.

Rockford, Illinois 61105

Copyright © 1976 by TAN Books and Publishers, Inc.

Originally published in 1944 by B. Herder Book Co.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 14-1973.

Fourth Printing.

Originally published in 1944 by B. Herder Book Co.

Copyright © 1976 by TAN Books and Publishers, Inc.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 79-112494

ISBN: 0-89555-002-4

Reprinted by TAN Books and Publishers, Inc. in 1976 and 1982.

Printed and bound in the United States of America.

TAN BOOKS AND PUBLISHERS, INC.  
P.O. Box 424  
Rockford, Illinois 61105

## PREFACE

This Latin grammar is intended for students who are entering seminaries or religious novitiates without previous study of Latin, for sisters in communities that recite the breviary, and for the growing number of lay people who use the Roman missal and the Roman breviary. Its twenty lessons, divided into fifty units, cover all the grammatical essentials for the intelligent reading of these two books. The vocabulary comprises the 914 words that make up the Ordinary of the Mass and the three Requiem Masses with their additional Collects, since these are the words that a daily user of the missal will encounter most frequently. However, to make the work as valuable as possible for those who use the missal in its entirety, as well as for those who wish to undertake the daily reading of the breviary, the Latin-English vocabulary at the end of the book includes not only all the words of the Roman missal, but also the complete vocabulary of the Roman breviary.

Of the 914 words used throughout the twenty lessons, 476 have been distributed as regular lesson vocabularies. The remaining 438 words have been grouped in those sections included in each lesson that are devoted to the study of cognates, derivatives, and compounds.

Beginning with Lesson IV and continuing through Lesson XX, the Latin text of each lesson (translation from Latin into English) has been divided into two parts. The second part consists at first of isolated words and short phrases taken from the Ordinary of the Mass and utilizes the vocabulary given up to that point. Later, as the vocabulary increases, these phrases are expanded into complete sentences and finally whole paragraphs are presented. In this way the entire Ordinary and the complete Requiem Masses have been given by the

time the twentieth lesson is completed. Extra reading is provided by nine Reading Lessons, one inserted after each lesson from XII to XX inclusive. These are taken from the Vulgate text of the New Testament and have been selected to give a short presentation of the life of Christ from His birth to the Resurrection.

The Appendix contains irregular declensions, cardinal and ordinal numerals, the four regular conjugations complete, and the conjugations of the common irregular verbs.

## PRONUNCIATION

**1. Vowels.** The pronunciation of the vowels is shown in the following table:

Vowel	Pronunciation	Example
<i>a</i>	as in <i>arm</i>	<i>ad, mater</i>
<i>e</i>	as <i>a</i> in <i>fate</i>	<i>me, video</i>
<i>i</i>	as in <i>machine</i>	<i>qui, ire</i>
<i>o</i>	as in <i>or</i>	<i>porta, omnis</i>
<i>u</i>	as in <i>tutor</i>	<i>cum, sumus</i>

**2. Diphthongs.** The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

Diphthong	Pronunciation	Example
<i>ae</i>	as <i>a</i> in <i>fate</i>	<i>prae, illae</i>
<i>oe</i>	as <i>a</i> in <i>fate</i>	<i>coelum, coepi</i>
<i>au</i>	as <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i>	<i>aut, laudo</i>

In a few instances the individual vowels of *ae* and *oe* are pronounced separately. In the vocabularies these instances will be shown by a diaeresis (¨) over the second vowel. *Michaël, poëma*.

**3. Consonants.** They are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:

Consonant	Pronunciation	Example
<i>c</i> (before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> )	as <i>ch</i> in <i>church</i>	<i>certus, cibus</i>
<i>ch</i>	as in <i>ache</i>	<i>Christus</i>
<i>g</i> (before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> )	as in <i>gentle</i>	<i>gens, agit</i>
<i>g</i> (before other letters)	as in <i>go</i>	<i>gratis, glória</i>
<i>gn</i>	as <i>ny</i> in <i>canyon</i>	<i>agnus, ignis</i>

Consonant	Pronunciation	Example
<i>j</i> (or consonant <i>i</i> )	as <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i>	<i>Jesus, justus</i>
<i>s</i>	as <i>s</i> in <i>sing</i> (never as <i>s</i> in <i>raise</i> )	<i>miser, fides</i>
<i>sc</i> (before <i>a, o, u,</i> or a consonant)	as <i>sc</i> in <i>scope</i>	<i>scutum, Pascha</i>
<i>sc</i> (before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> )	as <i>sh</i> in <i>shall</i>	<i>ascéndere, scio</i>
<i>th</i>	as <i>t</i> in <i>ten</i>	<i>Thomas</i>
<i>ti</i> (when followed by a vowel and preceded by any letter except <i>s,</i> <i>t,</i> or <i>x</i> )	as <i>tsee</i>	<i>gratia, totius</i>
<i>x</i> (in words beginning <i>ex</i> followed by a vowel, <i>h,</i> or <i>s</i> )	as <i>gʃ</i>	<i>exaudíre</i>
<i>x</i> (in all other cases)	as <i>kʃ</i>	<i>pax, excusáre</i>



## CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	iii
PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	v
LESSON	
I. Declension. Gender. First declension. Position of adjectives	1
II. Second declension. Agreement of adjectives. Conjugation of verbs. Present indicative of <b>esse</b> and <b>posse</b> . Subject pronouns	6
III. Third declension. Neuter nouns and adjectives. Declension of adjectives	11
IV. Verbs. Present indicative. Active and passive voice of the regular conjugations	16
V. Personal pronouns: subject, object, reflexive. <b>Is. Cum</b> with pronouns. Present indicative of <b>ire</b>	23
Review Lesson I	29
VI. Imperfect tense, active and passive voice. The imperative. Imperfect of <b>esse, posse, ire. Esto, estote</b>	32
VII. Fourth declension. Future tense, active and passive voice. Future of <b>esse, posse, ire</b>	39
VIII. Fifth declension. Participles. Gerundive. Declension and agreement of participles. Participles of <b>esse, posse, ire</b>	46
IX. Perfect tense, active and passive voice. Formation of other perfect tenses. Perfect of <b>esse, posse, ire</b> . Verbs irregular in the perfect. Irregular past participles. Prepositions governing the accusative. Prepositions governing the ablative. <b>In, sub, super</b>	53
X. Present subjunctive, active and passive voice. Present subjunctive of <b>esse, posse, ire</b> . Uses of the subjunctive: (a) hope, wish, or command; (b) <b>ut, uti, ne</b> . Clauses of purpose. Other ways of expressing purpose: (a) subjunctive with	

LESSON	PAGE
relative pronoun; (b) gerundive with <b>ad</b> ; (c) gerundive with <b>causa</b> ; (d) infinitive . . . . .	62
Review Lesson II . . . . .	70
XI. Demonstratives: <b>hic, ille, iste</b> . Intensive pronoun, <b>ipse</b> . . . . .	74
XII. Imperfect subjunctive, active and passive voice. Imperfect subjunctive of <b>esse, posse, ire</b> . Further uses of the subjunctive: (a) result clauses; (b) indirect question; (c) <b>cum</b> meaning when, since, although; (d) conditional sentences of doubt and conditional sentences contrary to fact . . . . .	80
Reading Lesson . . . . .	87
XIII. Third conjugation verbs in <b>-io</b> . . . . .	89
Reading Lesson . . . . .	95
XIV. Deponent verbs. Semideponents . . . . .	97
Reading Lesson . . . . .	103
XV. Relative pronoun, <b>qui</b> . Interrogative, <b>quis</b> . Indefinite pronouns and adjectives. Present indicative, active and passive, of <b>ferre</b> . . . . .	106
Review Lesson III . . . . .	114
Reading Lesson . . . . .	117
XVI. Ablative absolute. <b>Fieri</b> . . . . .	119
Reading Lesson . . . . .	126
XVII. Indirect discourse, Infinitives . . . . .	129
Reading Lesson . . . . .	135
XVIII. Impersonal verbs. Adjectives of special declension. Uses of the dative: (a) indirect object; (b) verbs compounded with prepositions; (c) certain intransitive verbs; (d) agent with the passive periphrastic; (e) possession; (f) purpose . . . . .	138
Reading Lesson . . . . .	146
XIX. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs. Irregular comparisons. <b>Velle, nolle</b> . Command with <b>nolle</b> . Uses of the ablative: (a) ablative absolute; (b) accompaniment; (c) comparisons; (d) agent; (e) cause; (f) degree of difference; (g) manner; (h) means or instrument; (i) place; (j) quality or description; (k) specification; (l) separation; (m) time . . . . .	

# CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
when; (n) with certain prepositions; (o) after certain dependent verbs . . . . .	148
Reading Lesson . . . . .	158
XX. Questions, <b>-ne, nonne, num, numquid</b> . Double questions, <b>utrum . . . an, -ne . . . an, an</b> . <b>Etiam</b> and <b>non</b> as adverbial particles. Defective verbs. Uses of the accusative: (a) direct object; (b) after certain prepositions; (c) subject of infinitive in indirect discourse; (d) duration of time and extent of space . . . . .	161
Review Lesson IV . . . . .	169
Reading Lesson . . . . .	172
<b>APPENDIX</b>	
Irregular declensions . . . . .	175
Numerals . . . . .	175
Regular verbs . . . . .	177
Irregular verbs . . . . .	188
<b>LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY</b> . . . . .	197
<b>INDEX</b> . . . . .	331

## LESSON I

### UNIT ONE

**Mea culpa, mea culpa,** *Through my fault, through my fault,*  
**mea máxima culpa.** *through my most grievous fault.*

### Vocabulary

aqua, -ae,<sup>1</sup> f., *water*

ánima, -ae, f.,<sup>2</sup> *soul*

terra, -ae, f., *earth, land*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*

via, -ae, f., *way, road*

vita, -ae, f., *life*

María, -ae f., *Mary*

Lúcia, -ae, f., *Lucy*

culpa, -ae, f., *fault, guilt*

et, *and*

a (ab)<sup>3</sup> (with abl.), *from, by*

e (ex)<sup>3</sup> (with abl.), *out of, from*

cum (with abl.), *with*

in (with abl.), *in, on*

in (with acc.), *against, into, unto*

ad (with acc.), *to, toward, near*

**I. Declension.** In English a noun changes its form only to indicate possession (the possessive case) or to express plural number. In form the nominative and objective cases are the same.

<sup>1</sup> The genitive ending is given after the nominative to show the declension.

<sup>2</sup> For the dative and ablative plural, besides the regular form in *-is*, the form *animabus* is also used.

<sup>3</sup> The forms *ab* and *ex* must be used before a vowel or *h*; all four forms may be used before consonants.

The *man* is here.

I saw the *man*.

The *man's* hat.

The *men* are here.

In Latin the noun usually changes its form for each case and there are five of these: nominative (nom.), genitive (gen.), dative (dat.), accusative (acc.), and ablative (abl.). In addition, adjectives, as well as nouns, in Latin change their forms to indicate their case, gender, or number, for all adjectives must be made to agree in case, gender, and number with the noun modified. To decline a noun or adjective means to give its forms in the right order and all these forms taken together constitute what is called a declension. There are five declensions in Latin, that is, all nouns may be assembled into five distinct classes or groups, which are distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular.

2. **Gender.** In English the gender of a noun depends upon the sex to which it refers. The noun *prince* is masculine gender because it refers to a male; the noun *women* is feminine gender because it indicates females; all sexless objects (for example, *chair*) are said to belong to the neuter gender. Many nouns that are classified in English as neuters may be masculine or feminine in Latin.

3. **First declension.** All nouns that have the genitive singular ending *-ae* belong to the first declension. Most of the nouns of this declension are of the feminine gender. The following case endings are added to the base:

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<b>-a</b>	<b>-ae</b>
Gen.	<b>-ae</b>	<b>-arum</b>
Dat.	<b>-ae</b>	<b>-is</b>
Acc.	<b>-am</b>	<b>-as</b>
Abl.	<b>-a</b>	<b>-is</b>

The ablative may have various meanings: by, from, out of, with, in, etc.

**aqua** (base, aqu-), *water*

Singular	Plural
Nom. aqua <i>the water</i>	aquae <i>the waters</i>
Gen. aquae <i>of the water</i>	aquárum <i>of the waters</i>
Dat. aquae <i>for the water</i>	aquis <i>for the waters</i>
Acc. aquam <i>the water</i>	aquas <i>the waters</i>
Abl. aqua <i>in the water</i>	aquis <i>in the waters</i>

**aqua bona**, *the good water*

Nom. aqua bona	aquae bonae
Gen. aquae bonae	aquárum bonárum
Dat. aquae bonae	aquis bonis
Acc. aquam bonam	aquas bonas
Abl. aqua bona	aquis bonis

Note the following:

a) The base is obtained by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. The case endings are added to this base.

b) There are no articles in Latin. **Aqua** means *water* or *the water*.

c) The genitive case corresponds to the possessive case in English. **Aquae** means *of the water* or *the water's* (*color*).

d) The dative case corresponds to the English indirect object. He gives an apple *to the boy*.

e) The accusative case is the English objective case. The direct object of a verb (or the object of certain prepositions) is put in the accusative case.

f) The ablative case is used after most prepositions.

g) In Latin the adjective frequently follows the noun.

#### EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Nouns ending in *-ance* and *-ence* in English end in *-antia* and *-entia* in Latin. Pronounce and give the meaning for the following.

1. indulgéntia. 2. negligéntia. 3. sciéntia. 4. senténtia. 5. sequéntia. 6. substántia. 7. temperántia. 8. arrogántia. 9. diligéntia. 10. innocéntia. 11. benevoléntia. 12. prudéntia. 13. imprudéntia. 14. consciéntia. 15. abundántia. 16. petulántia. 17. perseverántia.

**B.** Read the Latin and give the meaning in English.

1. María et Lúcia. 2. Ad Maríam. 3. In terra. 4. Ex tuba. 5. Terra Maríae. 6. In via. 7. Vita ánimae. 8. Ab Lúcia. 9. Ad vitam. 10. Cum tubis. 11. Terrárum bonárum. 12. Vitae. 13. In ánima. 14. Ad vias. 15. A terris. 16. In aquam. 17. Ad Lúciam. 18. Ad terram Maríae. 19. Ex María. 20. Ad vitam Lúciae. 21. Ex terris. 22. A terra Maríae. 23. A terris bonis. 24. Tuba bona. 25. Tubae bonae. 26. Cum tubis bonis. 27. Ex aquis bonis. 28. Ad vitam bonam.

## UNIT TWO

**A.** Make the adjective *bona* agree in case and number with each of the following nouns.

1. terram..... 2. tubas..... 3. vitae..... 4. animárum.....  
5. terris..... 6. aquae..... 7. via..... 8. vitam..... 9. tubárum.....  
10. aquas..... 11. viae..... 12. vita..... 13. tubis.....  
14. animábus..... 15. ánimas.....

**B.** Decline *terra* and *tuba*. Then decline each of them with the adjective *bona*. (See the declension of *aqua bona* above.)

**C. Vocabulary building.**

a) **Derivations.** Find in sections A and B of Unit One the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. terrénus (earthly). 2. vívere (to live). 3. indulgére (to pardon).  
4. scire (to know). 5. prudens (prudent). 6. bene (well). 7. vivus (living).  
8. terréna (earthly things). 9. dilígere (to love). 10. sequi (to follow).  
11. stare (to stand). 12. ínnocens (innocent). 13. volo (I wish).  
14. témperans (temperate). 15. arrogánter (arrogantly).

b) Note the relation between the following Latin and English words.

Latin	English
aqua	aqueous
ánima	animation
vita	vital
terra	territory
via	viaduct
terra	terrestrial
aqua	aquarium

c) Observe the relation of

<i>these adjectives</i>	to	<i>these nouns</i>
terrénus (earthly)		terra
vitális (vital)		vita
animósus (high-spirited)		ánima
innocens (innocent)		innocéntia
prudens (prudent)		prudéntia

d) Note the relation of

<i>these verbs</i>	to	<i>these nouns</i>
indulgére (to forgive)		indulgéntia
abundáre (to abound)		abundántia
scire (to know)		sciéntia
perseveráre (to persevere)		perseverántia



## LESSON II

### UNIT ONE

**Glória in excélsis Deo. *Glory to God in the highest.***

#### Vocabulary

servus, -i, m., *servant, slave*

Deus, -i, m., *God*

apóstolus, -i, m., *apostle*

inimícus, -i, m., *enemy*

fílius, -ii or -i, m., *son*

regnum, -i, n., *kingdom, reign*

caelum,<sup>1</sup> -i, n., *heaven, sky*

príncípium, -i, n., *beginning*

glória, -ae, f., *glory*

bonus, bona, bonum, *good, kind*

beátus, beáta, beátum, *blessed*

sanctus, sancta, sanctum, *holy, saintly* (as a noun, *saint*)

esse, *to be*

posse, *to be able, can*

semper (adv.), *always, ever*

**4. Second declension.** All nouns that end in -i in the genitive singular belong to the second declension. Those that end in -us, -er, or -ir in the nominative singular are masculine. Those that end in -um are neuter. In this declension the following case endings are added to the base:

<sup>1</sup> The plural is usually caeli.

	Singular		Plural	
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom.	-us (-er, -ir)	-um	-i	-a
Gen.	-i	-i	-orum	-orum
Dat.	-o	-o	-is	-is
Acc.	-um	-um	-os	-a
Abl.	-o	-o	-is	-is

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	servus	regnum	servi	regna
Gen.	servi	regni	servórum	regnórum
Dat.	servo	regno	servis	regnis
Acc.	servum	regnum	servos	regna
Abl.	servo	regno	servis	regnis

## Singular

Nom.	servus bonus	regnum bonum
Gen.	servi boni	regni boni
Dat.	servo bono	regno bono
Acc.	servum bonum	regnum bonum
Abl.	servo bono	regno bono

## Plural

Nom.	servi boni	regna bona
Gen.	servórum bonórum	regnórum bonórum
Dat.	servis bonis	regnis bonis
Acc.	servos bonos	regna bona
Abl.	servis bonis	regnis bonis

Note that the adjective has a different form for each gender: **bonus** (masculine), **bona** (feminine), **bonum** (neuter). The feminine form is declined according to the first declension; the masculine and neuter are declined according to the second declension.

5. **Conjugation of verbs.** To conjugate a verb means to give all its forms (persons, tenses, moods, etc.) in their proper order.

Present Indicative of

	<i>esse, to be</i>	<i>posse, to be able</i>
(ego)	sum, <i>I am</i>	possum, <i>I am able, I can</i>
(tu)	es, <i>thou art</i>	potes, <i>thou art able, thou canst</i>
(is, ea, id)	est, <i>he (she, it) is</i>	potest, <i>he (she, it) is able, he can</i>
(nos)	sumus, <i>we are</i>	póssumus, <i>we are able, we can</i>
(vos)	estis, <i>you are</i>	potéstis, <i>you are able, you can</i>
(ei, m., eae, f., ea, n.)	sunt, <i>they are</i>	possunt, <i>they are able, they can</i>

NOTE. Since in Latin the form of the verb changes for each person, the subject pronouns are not necessary. They may be and usually are omitted.

EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Many Latin adjectives ending in *-ius* and nouns ending in *-ium*, end in *-y* in English. Pronounce and give the meaning of:

1. anniversárius. 2. voluntárius. 3. necessárius. 4. legionárius. 5. contrárius. 6. mystérium. 7. remédiu. 8. testimónium. 9. stúdiu. 10. collóquiu. 11. subsidiu. 12. augúriu. 13. matrimóniu. 14. semináriu.

**B.** Read the Latin and give the meaning in English.

1. Servus bonus est.<sup>1</sup> 2. Filii boni esse possunt. 3. Sanctis apóstolis. 4. Beátae Maríae. 5. Apóstoli sancti sunt. 6. María semper beáta est. 7. Boni semper esse póssumus. 8. Fílius Maríae est. 9. Glóriæ caeli. 10. Regna terrae. 11. Ad Dei glóriam. 12. In terra apostoloru. 13. Ad terram sanctam. 14. Lúcia cum servo est. 15. Fílius servis bonus est. 16. María semper bona filiis est. 17. Terra beáta est. 18. Servi

<sup>1</sup> In Latin the usual order of words is: subject, object or predicate complement, verb.

boni esse potéstis. 19. In princípío. 20. Regnum beátum esse potest. 21. Ego sum fílius servi. 22. Semper inimícus regni est. 23. María et Lúcia beátae sunt. 24. Lúcia semper bona est. 25. Ad terras bonas et beatas. 26. María cum Lúcia est. 27. Lúcia bona esse potest. 28. Apóstoli sumus. 29. Apóstoli boni esse pössumus. 30. Ad glóriam apóstolorum beatórum. 31. Princípium caeli et terrae. 32. Princípium glóriae sanctórum. 33. Ad glóriam caeli. 34. Caelum regnum sanctórum est. 35. Sancti Dei servi boni sunt.

## UNIT TWO

### A. Decline in the singular and plural.

1. regnum beátum. 2. fílius bonus. 3. sanctus apóstolus. 4. servus bonus.

### B. Give the English meaning of:

1. ego sum. 2. potes. 3. esse possum. 4. potéstis. 5. id est. 6. possunt. 7. es. 8. esse potest. 9. vos estis. 10. sumus. 11. sunt. 12. pössumus.

### C. Make the adjective in parentheses agree with the noun.

1. (sanctus) apóstoli. 2. terris (sanctus). 3. filiórum (bonus). 4. (beatus) Maríae. 5. terrae (beatus). 6. servos (bonus). 7. filium (bonus). 8. regna (beatus). 9. in terram (sanctus). 10. vita (beatus) 11. viae (sanctus). 12. tubis (bonus). 13. aquas (bonus). 14. ánimae (beatus). 15. terrárum (sanctus).

### D. Vocabulary building.

a) Derivations. Find, in sections A and B of Unit One, words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. *fília*<sup>1</sup> (daughter). 2. *apostólicus* (apostolic). 3. *dea*<sup>2</sup> (goddess). 4. *serva* (woman servant). 5. *caeléstis* (heavenly). 6. *rex* (king). 7. *gloriósus* (glorious). 8. *regína* (queen). 9. *principális* (perfect). 10

<sup>1</sup> Dative and ablative plural, *filiábus*.

<sup>2</sup> Dative and ablative plural, *deábus*.

**glorificáre** (to glorify). 11. **sérvitus** (servitude, service). 12. **annus** (year). 13. **légio** (legion). 14. **loqui** (to speak). 15. **regnáre** (to reign). 16. **servíre** (to serve). 17. **amicus** (friend). 18. **régere** (to rule, to govern). 19. **bona** (good things). 20. **sancte** (holily). 21. **bene** (well). 22. **beatitúdo** (happiness). 23. **beáte** (happily). 24. **sempitérnus** (everlasting).

b) Observe the relation between these English and Latin words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>servus</b>	servitude	<b>beátus</b>	beatitude
<b>posse</b>	possible	<b>inimicus</b>	inimical
<b>fílius</b>	affiliate	<b>caelum</b>	celestial
<b>sanctus</b>	sanctuary	<b>fílius</b>	filial
<b>Deus</b>	Deity	<b>annus</b>	annual

c) Observe the relation between

<i>these verbs</i>	and	<i>these nouns</i>		<i>these</i>	and	<i>these nouns</i>
				<i>adjectives</i>		
<b>servíre</b> (to serve)		<b>servus</b>		<b>gloriósus</b>		<b>glória</b>
<b>regnáre</b> (to reign)		<b>regnum</b>		(glorious)		
<b>sanctificáre</b> (to sanctify)		<b>sánctitas</b>		<b>apostólicus</b>		<b>apóstolus</b>
<b>glorificáre</b> (to glorify)		<b>glória</b>		(apostolic)		
				<b>caeléstis</b>		<b>caelum</b>
				(heavenly)		
				<b>anniversárius</b>		<b>annus</b> (year)
				<b>voluntárius</b>		<b>volúntas</b> (will)
				<b>legionárius</b>		<b>légio</b> (legion)

## LESSON III

### UNIT ONE

**Hosánna in excélsis.** *Hosanna in the highest.*

#### Vocabulary

**homo, hóminis, m.,** *man*

**virgo, vírginis, f.,** *virgin, maiden*

**calix, cálicis, m.,** *chalice*

**corpus, córporis, n.,** *body*

**cor, cordis, n. (gen. pl., córdium),** *heart*

**auxílium, -ii, n.,** *help*

**magnus, magna, magnum,** *big, great*

**acer, acris, acre,** *sharp, ardent, bitter*

**omnis (m. and f.), omne (n.),** *all, every, every one; ómnia,<sup>1</sup> all things*

**non,** *not*

**nunc,** *now*

**6. Third declension.** All nouns and adjectives with the genitive singular in **-is** belong to this declension.

**homo** (base, **homin-**), **m.,** *man*      **corpus** (base, **corpor-**), **n.,** *body*

#### Singular

#### Plural

Nom. <b>homo</b>	<b>corpus</b>	Nom. <b>hómines</b>	<b>córpóra</b>
Gen. <b>hóminis</b>	<b>córporis</b>	Gen. <b>hóminum</b>	<b>córporum</b>
Dat. <b>hómini</b>	<b>córopori</b>	Dat. <b>homínibus</b>	<b>corpóribus</b>
Acc. <b>hóminem</b>	<b>corpus</b>	Acc. <b>hómines</b>	<b>córpóra</b>
Abl. <b>hómine</b>	<b>córopore</b>	Abl. <b>homínibus</b>	<b>corpóribus</b>

<sup>1</sup> Latin adjectives are frequently used as nouns, especially in the neuter: **bonum,** *something good*; **bona,** *good things*; **caeléstia,** *heavenly things*.

Most masculine and feminine nouns belonging to this declension are declined like **homo**.

All neuter nouns and adjectives, no matter what declension they may belong to, always have their nominative and accusative alike and always end in **-a** in the nominative and accusative plural.

**7. Declension of adjectives.** All adjectives fall into two main groups, the first group belonging to the **-us, -a, -um** type (**bonus, bona, bonum**); these are declined according to the first and second declensions. The second group, declined according to the third declension, contains three classes of adjectives:

those that have three forms in the nominative singular, one for each gender:

masc., **acer**                      fem., **acris**                      neuter, **acre**

those that have two forms in the nominative singular, one for the masculine and feminine, and one for the neuter:

masc. and fem., **omnis**              neuter, **omne**

and those that have one form in the nominative singular for all three genders:

masc., fem., and neuter, **clemens**

Almost all third declension adjectives (as well as some nouns) end in **-i** in the ablative singular, have **-ium** in the genitive plural, either **-is** or **-es** in the accusative plural of the masculine and feminine, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural of the neuter.

Examples:

**hóminum ómniúm, of all men**  
**vírgines cleméntes, merciful virgins**  
**córpóra ómnia, all bodies**  
**culpás omnes, all faults**  
**córdium cleméntium, of merciful hearts**

*corda cleméntia, merciful hearts*  
*in omni córpore, in every body*

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Many Latin words may be turned into English by dropping the last letter or the last two letters. Pronounce the following and give the English equivalent of each.

1. ángelus. 2. baptísma. 3. altáre. 4. cathólicus. 5. christiánus. 6. consubstantiális. 7. diréctus. 8. holocáustum. 9. hóstia. 10. humánus. 11. hymnus. 12. hyssópus. 13. judiciális. 14. justus. 15. signum. 16. persóna.

**B.** Read the Latin and give the meaning in English.

1. Ad altáre Dei. 2. Hómines cleméntes. 3. Calix magnus est. 4. Cálices magni in altári sunt. 5. In princípío et nunc et semper. 6. Ad vitam aetérnam. 7. Beátae Maríae semper vírgini. 8. Glória Fílio. 9. Culpa servi non est. 10. Hómines omnes non cleméntes sunt. 11. Flammis ácribus. 12. Omnes sanctos. 13. Auxílium ómnium sanctórum. 14. Glória Dei magna est. 15. Fílii hóminis non sumus. 16. Ex María Vírgine. 17. In caelum. 18. Regnum caeli aetérnum est. 19. Resurréctio córporis. 20. Cor Maríae clemens est. 21. Ómnibus christiánis. 22. In vitam aetérnam. 23. Ego sum resurréctio et vita. 24. Beátae Maríae semper vírginis. 25. In caelis; in terris. 26. Justum est. 27. Homo servis bonus esse potest. 28. María et Lúcia nunc cum fíliis sunt. 29. Culpa filiórum non est. 30. Elevátio cálicis. 31. Virgo non magna est. 32. María et Lúcia magnae sunt. 33. Culpa Maríae non est; culpa Lúciae est. 34. Flammae acres et aetérnae sunt. 35. Omnes cálices non semper magni sunt. 36. In princípío auxílium hóminum magnum est. 37. Aqua nunc in cálice est. 38. Córpóra hóminum magna sunt. 39. Cor in córpore est. 40. Omnes hómines boni in corde Dei sunt. 41. Omnes vírgines bonae et cleméntes esse possunt. 42. Bona es, María. 43. Beáta esse potes. 44. Servi boni, cleméntes estis. 45. Nos sumus servi hóminis. 46. Calix magnus non in flammis est. 47. Tu es



homo. 48. Deus aetérnus est. 49. Hómines terrae non aetérni sunt.  
50. Ángeli et sancti aetérni sunt.

## UNIT TWO

**A.** Give the genitive singular and the nominative plural of the following:

flamma magna	homo bonus	omnis homo
bonum auxiliúm	corpus omne	sanctus ángelus
vita aetérna	virgo clemens	corpus magnum
beáta María	calix magnus	omnis ángelus
beátus sanctus	sancta virgo	aqua acer

Examples:

Nom. sing.	Gen. sing.	Nom. pl.
bonus homo	boni hóminis	boni hómines
auxiliúm magnum	auxílii magni	auxíliá magna

**B.** Decline in the singular and plural:

corpus bonum	via magna	sanctus beátus
beáta virgo	omnis homo	cor bonum
homo magnus	bona vita	omnis filius

**C.** Make the adjective in parentheses agree with the noun.

1. (omnis) corpóribus. 2. (beátus) sancti. 3. Deus (clemens). 4. vírgines (bonus). 5. fíliis (magnus). 6. (omnis) corda. 7. córporum (bonus). 8. hóminum (clemens). 9. flamma (acer). 10. vitam (aetérnus). 11. vias (magnus). 12. ex flamma (acer). 13. cálices (omnis). 14. Deum (bonus). 15. (sanctus) apóstolos. 16. (sanctus) virgínibus. 17. auxílii (bonus). 18. aquas (bonus). 19. regiónes (terrénus). 20. ánimae (vívus). 21. homo (justus). 22. servos (inimícus). 23. regna (caeléstis). 24. aquam (clarus). 25. regnum (gloriósus). 26. (unus) Deum.

## D. Vocabulary building.

a) Derivations. Find, in sections A and B of Unit One, the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. **angélicus** (angelic). 2. **judex** (judge). 3. **juste** (justly). 4. **humánitas** (humanity). 5. **justítia** (justice). 6. **judicáre** (to judge). 7. **dirígere** (to direct). 8. **cleménter** (mercifully). 9. **judícium** (judgment). 10. **principális** (principal). 11. **justificáre** (to justify). 12. **conglorificáre** (to glorify). 13. **altus** (high). 14. **omnípotens** (omnipotent). 15. **cleméntia** (clemency). 16. **caeléstis** (heavenly). 17. **terrénus** (earthly). 18. **regnáre** (to reign). 19. **corporális** (corporal). 20. **magnópere** (greatly). 21. **corpuléntus** (fat). 22. **signáculus** (little seal). 23. **sígnifer** (standard bearer). 24. **insignítus** (signed). 25. **rectus** (right).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>homo</b>	homicide	<b>flamma</b>	inflammation
<b>culpa</b>	culprit	<b>corpus</b>	corporal
<b>magnus</b>	magnitude	<b>acer</b>	acerbity
<b>omnis</b>	omnipotent	<b>auxílium</b>	auxiliary
<b>cor</b>	cordial	<b>virgo</b>	virginity
<b>ángelus</b>	angelic	<b>diréctus</b>	direction

c) Observe the relation between

*these adverbs* and *these adjectives*    *these adjectives* and *these nouns*

<b>bene</b> (well)	<b>bonus</b>	<b>corporális</b>	<b>corpus</b>
<b>sancte</b> (piously)	<b>sanctus</b>	(corporal)	
<b>juste</b> (justly)	<b>justus</b>	<b>angélicus</b> (angelic)	<b>ángelus</b>
<b>dirécte</b> (directly)	<b>diréctus</b>	<b>altus</b> (high)	<b>altáre</b>
<b>humáne</b> (humanly)	<b>humánus</b>	<b>humánus</b> (human)	<b>homo</b>

## LESSON IV

### UNIT ONE

Sanctus, sanctus, sanctus, *Holy holy, holy,*  
Dóminus Deus Sábaoth. *Lord God of hosts.*

### Vocabulary

monére, *to warn, advise, teach*

habére, *to have, hold, consider*

dare, *to give*

vocáre, *to call*

salváre, *to save*

intráre, *to enter*

laudáre, *to praise*

pónere, *to set, put*

dúcere, *to lead*

míttere, *to send*

dícere, *to say, speak, tell*

audíre, *to hear*

servíre, *to serve* (takes its personal object in the dative)

imploráre, *to implore*

convértere, *to convert*

excusáre, *to excuse*

liberáre, *to free*

pássio, passiónis, f., *suffering*

sancta sanctórum, n. pl., *holy of holies*

nomen, nóminis, n., *name*

pater, patris, m., *father*

gens, gentis (-ium), f., *nation*

tristis (m. and f.), triste (n.), *sad, sorrowful*

omnípotens (m., f., n.); gen. omnípoténtis, *almighty*

de (prep. with abl.), *from, down from, about, concerning*

8. **Verbs.** In Latin all verbs, except a few that cannot be classified, may be assembled into four distinct groups or conjugations that are distinguished from each other by the ending of the infinitive. Verbs ending in *-are* are said to belong to the first conjugation (*laudáre, to praise*). Those ending in *-ere* and stressed on the next to the last syllable belong to the second conjugation (*monére, to warn*). Those having the infinitive ending in *-ere* and stressed on the third syllable from the end belong to the third conjugation (*dúcere, to lead*). Those that end in *-ire* are grouped together as a fourth conjugation (*audíre, to hear*).

The following are the forms of all four conjugations in the present indicative:

## Active Voice

## I

## laudáre, to praise

laudo	<i>I praise</i>
laudas	<i>thou praisest</i>
laudat	<i>he (she, it) praises</i>
laudámus	<i>we praise</i>
laudátis	<i>you praise</i>
laudant	<i>they praise</i>

## II

## monére, to warn

móneo	<i>I warn</i>
mones	<i>thou warnest</i>
monet	<i>he (she, it) warns</i>
monémus	<i>we warn</i>
monétis	<i>you warn</i>
monent	<i>they warn</i>

## III

## dúcere, to lead

duco	<i>I lead</i>
ducis	<i>thou leadest</i>
ducit	<i>he (she, it) leads</i>
dúcimur	<i>we lead</i>
dúcitur	<i>you lead</i>
ducunt	<i>they lead</i>

## IV

## audíre, to hear

áudio	<i>I hear</i>
audis	<i>thou hearest</i>
audit	<i>he (she, it) hears</i>
audímur	<i>we hear</i>
audítur	<i>you hear</i>
áudiunt	<i>they hear</i>

## Passive Voice

I		II	
laudor	<i>I am praised</i>	móneor	<i>I am warned</i>
laudáris <sup>1</sup>	<i>thou art praised</i>	monéris	<i>thou art warned</i>
laudátur	<i>he (she, it) is praised</i>	monétur	<i>he (she, it) is warned</i>
laudámur	<i>we are praised</i>	monémur	<i>we are warned</i>
laudámini	<i>you are praised</i>	monémini	<i>you are warned</i>
laudántur	<i>they are praised</i>	monéntur	<i>they are warned</i>
III		IV	
ducor	<i>I am led</i>	áudior	<i>I am heard</i>
dúceris	<i>thou art led</i>	audírís	<i>thou art heard</i>
dúcitur	<i>he (she, it) is led</i>	audítur	<i>he (she, it) is heard</i>
dúcimur	<i>we are led</i>	audímur	<i>we are heard</i>
dúcímini	<i>you are led</i>	audímini	<i>you are heard</i>
ducúntur	<i>they are led</i>	audiúntur	<i>they are heard</i>

Note the following:

a) The infinitive ending (-are, etc.) is dropped before adding the personal endings.

b) The distinguishing vowel of the first conjugation is -a, of the second, -e, and of the third and fourth, -i.

c) Most verbs of the first conjugation are regular, that is, they will be conjugated in all moods and tenses like *laudáre*.

d) All verbs of the third conjugation are partly irregular and this irregularity will occur in the perfect tenses and in the past participle. More will be said of this in later lessons.

e) There are no progressive or emphatic forms in Latin. *laudo* means *I praise, I do praise, I am praising*.

<sup>1</sup> In the present, imperfect, and future, the second person singular of the passive has another form, with the ending -re. Thus: *laudáre, monéere, dúcere, audíre*.

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** (a) Many verbs ending in **-are** in Latin have the ending **-ate** in English. Pronounce the following and give the English equivalent.

1. separáre. 2. eleváre. 3. resuscitáre. 4. supplicáre. 5. venerári (pass. inf.). 6. illumináre. 7. immoláre. 8. liberáre. 9. commemoráre. 10. comunicáre. 11. celebráre. 12. cooperáre. 13. creáre. 14. decoráre. 15. cremáre (burn). 16. donáre (give, grant). 17. expiáre. 18. cogitáre (think). 19. congregáre.

b) Many verbs ending in **-are** or **-ere** in Latin end in **-e** in English. Pronounce the following and give the English equivalent.

1. observáre. 2. praeparáre. 3. excusáre. 4. imploráre. 5. inclináre. 6. evádere. 7. intercedere. 8. praecedere. 9. praesumere. 10. absolvere. 11. adoráre. 12. deputáre (appoint). 13. salutáre. 14. consolári. 15. adhaerére. 16. residére.

c) Many verbs become English when the infinitive ending is dropped. What is the English equivalent of?

1. manifestáre. 2. visitáre. 3. commendáre. 4. confirmáre. 5. consideráre. 6. expectáre. 7. honoráre. 8. convértere. 9. descendere. 10. discernere. 11. ascendere. 12. comprehendere. 13. respondere. 14. formáre. 15. reformáre.

d) Verbs ending in **-ficare** in Latin have the ending **-fy** in English. Pronounce and give the English for:

1. glorificáre. 2. justificáre. 3. pacificáre. 4. sanctificáre. 5. vivificáre (to bring to life).

**B.** Read and give the English meaning of the following:

1. Pater fílios in aquam ducit. 2. Fílius a patre non monétur. 3. Sancti ab ómnibus laudántur. 4. Vírginem bonam semper laudámus. 5. Nunc a fíliis audímur. 6. Magnum cálicem in altáre ponit. 7. Deus

pater omnípotens géntium ómnium terrae est. 8. Fílii in nómine patrum dicunt. 9. Servi auxiliúum inimicórum non implórant. 10. Hómínes vírgines in via praecedunt. 11. In omnes regiónes terrae apóstoli mittúntur. 12. Hómínes boni et cleméntes inimícos convértunt. 13. Ángeli descéndunt de caelis. 14. Virgo culpas servi excúsat. 15. Virgo tristis a magnis difficultátibus non liberátur. 16. Homo corpus et ánimam habet. 17. Lúcia tubam fílio dat. 18. Servímini a servis bonis. 19. Hómínes in terras inimícas intrant. 20. Virgo dicit; patrem vocat. 21. Calix a fílio habétur. 22. In princípío inimíci gentis non monéntur. 23. Omnes servi ab homínibus bonis ducúntur. 24. Pater Maríae nunc dicit: Tu es semper virgo bona et clemens. 25. Auxílium ab ómnibus géntibus implorátur. 26. Cálices in altári a fíliis bonis ponúntur. 27. Nomen servi a María non audítur. 28. Omnes gentes terrae ab apóstolis vocántur. 29. Nómína filiórúum a patre non dantur. 30. In princípío servi boni et tristes ab inimícis non liberántur. 31. Omnes culpa servórum a vírgine cleménti excusántur.

1. In nómine Patris et Fílii. 2. Ad altáre Dei. 3. De gente non sancta. 4. Tristis es. 5. Omnípotens Deus. 6. Ad vitam aetérnam. 7. Beáta María semper Vírgo. 8. Ad sancta sanctórum. 9. Ómnium sanctórum. 10. Laudámus, adorámus, glorificámus. 11. Deus Pater omnípotens. 12. Magna glória. 13. Fílius Patris. 14. In glória Dei Patris. 15. In corde. 16. Pater omnípotens. 17. Caeli et terrae. 18. Ex Patre. 19. Deus de Deo. 20. Consubstantiális Patri. 21. Ex María Vírgine. 22. Cum Patre et Fílio adorátur et conglorificátur. 23. Ecclésia sancta, cathólica et apostólica. 24. In remíSSIONem peccatórum. 25. Expécto resurréctionem. 26. Divínae majestátis. 27. Sancta Trínitas. 28. Passiónis, resurrecciónis et ascensiónis. 29. Ad glóriam nóminis. 30. Laudant ángeli.

## UNIT TWO

**A.** Decline the following in the singular and plural:

1. nomen sanctum. 2. pater omnípotens. 3. gens tristis.

**B.** Add the third person singular ending to each of these verbs (first of the active, then of the passive voice), and give the meaning in English.

- |               |                   |                |
|---------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. mon _____. | 2. separ _____.   | 3. duc _____.  |
| 4. aud _____. | 5. convert _____. | 6. dic _____.  |
| 7. voc _____. | 8. hab _____.     | 9. serv _____. |

**C.** Add the first person plural ending to these verbs (first of the active and then of the passive voice); give the meaning of each form.

- |                |                  |                      |
|----------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. pon _____.  | 2. aud _____.    | 3. observ _____.     |
| 4. salv _____. | 5. mon _____.    | 6. comprehend _____. |
| 7. mitt _____. | 8. expect _____. | 9. liber _____.      |

**D.** Change the infinitive in parentheses to the correct form of the verb (first active, then passive voice), and give the meaning of each form.

1. ego (laudáre). 2. is (imploráre). 3. nos (commendáre). 4. ei (evádere). 5. vos (adoráre). 6. tu (dare). 7. ea (monére). 8. ego (habére). 9. id (salváre). 10. nos (honoráre). 11. eae (audíre). 12. vos (servíre).

### **E. Vocabulary building.**

a) **Derivations.** Find, in sections A and B of Unit One, words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. liber (free). 2. creatúra (creature). 3. excusátio (excuse). 4. supplex (suppliant). 5. venerábilis (venerable). 6. lumen (light). 7. memória (remembrance). 8. opus (work). 9. libértas (liberty). 10. intercésio (intercession). 11. honor (honor). 12. glória (glory). 13. vivus (living). 14. pax (peace). 15. justítia (justice). 16. mónitum (precept). 17. patriárcha (patriarch). 18. serva (woman servant). 19. sérvitus (service). 20. audítio (hearing). 21. pátria (fatherland). 22. laus (praise). 23. salvus (safe). 24. dictum (word). 25. dux (leader). 26.



**exaudíre** (to hear). 27. **contristáre** (to be sorrowful). 28. **donum** (gift). 29. **circumdáre** (to encompass). 30. **declináre** (to incline). 31. **inhaerére** (to adhere to). 32. **datum** (gift). 33. **aggregáre** (to join, to add to).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>monére</b>	admonish	<b>vocáre</b>	vocation
<b>salváre</b>	salvation	<b>intráre</b>	entrance
<b>laudáre</b>	laudatory	<b>dúcere</b>	conductor
<b>pónere</b>	component	<b>míttere</b>	admit
<b>audíre</b>	auditorium	<b>benedícere</b>	benediction
<b>servíre</b>	service	<b>nomen</b>	nomination
<b>pater</b>	paternal	<b>míttere</b>	missive
<b>laudáre</b>	laudable	<b>aggregáre</b>	aggregate

c) Note the relation of

<i>these nouns</i>	to	<i>these verbs</i>	<i>these nouns</i>	to	<i>these verbs</i>
<b>mónitum</b> (precept)		<b>monére</b>	<b>datum</b> (gift)		<b>dare</b>
<b>dictum</b> (word)		<b>dícere</b>	<b>dux</b> (leader)		<b>dúcere</b>
<b>servus</b> (servant)		<b>servíre</b>	<b>elevátio</b> (elevation)		<b>eleváre</b>
<b>lumen</b> (light)		<b>illumináre</b>	<b>creátor</b> (creator)		<b>creáre</b>
<b>separátio</b> (separation)		<b>separáre</b>	<b>descénsus</b> (descent)		<b>descéndere</b>
<b>absolútio</b> (absolution)		<b>absólvere</b>	<b>justítia</b> (justice)		<b>justificáre</b>
<b>sanctificátor</b> (sanctifier)		<b>sanctificáre</b>	<b>honor</b> (honor)		<b>honoráre</b>

## LESSON V

### UNIT ONE

Per ómnia saécula saeculórum. *World without end.*

#### Vocabulary

vidére, *to see* (the passive voice also means *to seem*)

audére, *to dare, to venture, to make bold*

clamáre, *to shout, to cry out*

ire, *to go*

introíre (*like ire*), *to enter, to go within*

laváre, *to wash*

manducáre, *to eat*

acceptáre, *to receive, to accept*

lamentáre, *to lament, to weep*

venerári, *to venerate*

respondére, *to answer, to respond*

bíbere, *to drink*

cádere, *to fall*

Dóminus, -i, m., *Lord*; dóminus, *master, lord*

orátio, oratiónis, f., *prayer*

juvéntus, juventútis, f., *youth*

pax, pacis, f., *peace*

dolósus, -a, -um, *deceitful*

iníquus, -a, -um, *unjust*

misericors (m., f., n.); gen., misericórdis, *merciful*

quare? *why?*

pro (prep. with abl.), *for, for the sake of, in behalf of*

mecum, *with me*

vobíscum, *with you*

## 9. Personal pronouns.

## First Person

Singular	Plural
Nom. ego, <i>I</i>	nos, <i>we</i>
Gen. mei, <i>of me, of myself</i>	nostrum (nostri), <i>of us, of ourselves</i>
Dat. mihi, <i>to me, to myself</i>	nobis, <i>to us, to ourselves</i>
Acc. me, <i>me, myself</i>	nos, <i>us, ourselves</i>
Abl. me, <i>by, with me, myself</i>	nobis, <i>by, with us, ourselves</i>

## Second Person

Nom. tu, <i>thou</i>	vos, <i>you</i>
Gen. tui, <i>of thee, of thyself</i>	vestrum (vestri), <i>of you, of yourselves</i>
Dat. tibi, <i>to thee, to thyself</i>	vobis, <i>to you, to yourselves</i>
Acc. te, <i>thee, thyself</i>	vos, <i>you, yourselves</i>
Abl. te, <i>by, with thee, thyself</i>	vobis, <i>by, with you, yourselves</i>

## Third Person

Nom. is <sup>1</sup> (ea, id), <i>he (she, it)</i>	ei (eae, ea), <i>they</i>
Gen. ejus, <i>of him (of her, of it)</i>	eórum (eárum, eórum), <i>of them</i>
Dat. ei, <i>to him (to her, to it)</i>	eis, <i>to them</i>
Acc. eum (eam, id), <i>him</i>	eos (eas, ea), <i>them</i>
Abl. eo (ea, eo), <i>by, with him</i>	eis, <i>by, with them</i>

## Reflexive of the Third Person

Gen. sui, <i>of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves</i>
Dat. sibi, <i>to himself, to herself, to itself, to themselves</i>
Acc. se or sese, <i>himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>
Abl. se or sese, <i>by, with himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>

<sup>1</sup> This form is really the demonstrative pronoun *that*, but is used in Latin to supply the third person of the personal pronoun.

NOTE. The preposition *cum* is added to the forms *me, te, se, nobis,* and *vobis: mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum* (*with me,* etc.).

10. Present indicative of *ire, to go.*

<i>eo, I go</i>	<i>imus, we go</i>
<i>is, thou goest</i>	<i>itis, you go</i>
<i>it, he goes</i>	<i>eunt, they go</i>

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Adjectives in *-bilis* have the nominative and accusative neuter in *-e* (sing.) and *-ia* (pl.). They have the ending *-ble* in English. Pronounce the following and give the English equivalent:

1. *acceptábilis.* 2. *ineffábilis.* 3. *innumerábilis.* 4. *invisíbilis.* 5. *venarábilis.* 6. *visíbilis.* 7. *nóbilis.* 8. *miserábilis.* 9. *terribilis.* 10. *lamentábilis.* 11. *memorábilis.* 12. *horribilis.* 13. *affábilis.* 14. *incredíbilis.* 15. *insuperábilis.*

**B. Read the following and translate into English:**

1. *Fílii in aquam intráre non audent.* 2. *Pater nos semper laudat.* 3. *Mihi tubam magnam dat.* 4. *Quare eos de inimícis non monétis?* 5. *Virgo bona et miséricors patrem implórat pro servis trístibus.* 6. *Eum vidémus; nos vidére non potest.* 7. *María ei aquam dat et Lúcia eam bibit.* 8. *Quare tibi nunc dícere non póssumus?* 9. *Hómines iníqui et dolósi a flammis ácribus non salvántur.* 10. *Pax in ómnibus géntibus terrae esse potest.* 11. *Aqua nos lavámus.* 12. *Fílius tubam habet; nunc mihi eam dat.* 13. *Omnes inimíci clamant et in aquam cadunt.* 14. *Pater cum fíliis et virgínibus in habitatiónem íntroít.* 15. *Se salvant; me salváre non possunt.* 16. *Nobis sérvíunt et nos manducámus.* 17. *Juventus hóminis non semper beáta est.* 18. *Quare me vocant? Eas non aúdio.* 19. *Vos in aqua vidétis.* 20. *Non nobis acceptábilis est.* 21. *Deus oratiónes juventútis audit.* 22. *Deus miséricors est; nunc pacem ómnibus géntibus dat.* 23. *Quare iníqui et dolósi estis?* 24. *Homo bonus semper pro inimícis implórat.* 25. *Quare aquam fílio*

non das? 26. Aquam bíbere non audémus. 27. Quare non audétis in fines inimicórum introíre? 28. Me lavo; se laudant; te vides; vos salvátis. 29. Nunc aquam do tibi. 30. Quare mihi aquam non das?

1. Dóminus vobíscum. 2. Ad sancta sanctorúm. 3. Et in terra pax homínibus. 4. Laudámus te. 5. Adorámus te. 6. Glorificámus te. 7. Fílius Patris. 8. In glória Dei Patris. 9. Glória tibi, Dómine. 10. Visibílium omnium et invisibílium. 11. Descéndere de caelis. 12. Pro nobis. 13. Ascéndere in caelum. 14. Cum Patre et Fílio adorátur et conglorificátur. 15. Pro ómnibus christiánis. 16. In vitam aetérnam. 17. Pax Dómini. 18. Tecum. 19. Sancto nómini. 20. Ascéndere ad te. 21. In nobis. 22. Dómine sancte,<sup>1</sup> Pater omnípotens, aetérne Deus. 23. In nómine Dómini. 24. Pro se. 25. Pro redemptióne animárum. 26. Ego te absolvo. 27. Pro vobis. 28. Gloriósae ascensiónis. 29. Hóstia sancta. 30. Omnis benedíctio caeléstis. 31. Divína institútio. 32. Audémus dícere. 33. Consecrátio córporis. 34. Pacem do vobis. 35. Ego praesúmo. 36. Cum Deo Patre. 37. Ab inimícis. 38. Pro me. 39. Corpus Dómini. 40. In pace.

## UNIT TWO

### A. Translate into English.

1. María nos videt. 2. Ei clamant. 3. Aquam tibi do. 4. Nos lavámus. 5. In eam cáditis. 6. Eo vobíscum. 7. Implórant pro nobis. 8. Eunt mecum. 9. Nos ea preparámus. 10. Mihi non acceptábilis. 11. Ea me vísitat. 12. Id nobis dant. 13. Eas mihi das. 14. Ego tibi dico. 15. Nos ea manducámus. 16. Ei eam bibunt. 17. Ego eum honóro. 18. Pacem do vobis. 19. María et Lúcia eis eas mittunt. 20. Eam audítis. 21. In aqua id ponit. 22. Ea non hábeo. 23. Eae te vocant. 24. Pater eum laudat. 25. Nos vos monémus.

<sup>1</sup> There are two other cases in Latin besides those already given: the vocative and the locative. The former is used in direct address and usually has the same form as the nominative. Adjectives and nouns of the second declension, however, usually have the ending *-e* instead of *-us*. The locative, used in expressions of place, is like either the genitive or the ablative.

B. Give the meaning of these forms of *ire*.

1. ego eo. 2. is it. 3. vos itis. 4. ei eunt. 5. tu is. 6. nos imus. 7. eae eunt. 8. ea it. 9. id it.

C. Give the meaning of these forms of *introire*.

1. nos introimus. 2. ei introeunt. 3. tu intróis. 4. ego introéo. 5. vos introítis. 6. is intróit. 7. ea intróit. 8. eae introéunt. 9. id intróit.

D. Conjugate in the present tense, active and passive voice:

vidére

laváre

Conjugate in the present tense:

audére

manducáre

bíbere

E. Decline in the singular and plural:

orátio bona

homo dolósus

Give the accusative singular of:

Dóminus sanctus

omnis orátio

virgo miséricors

pax iníqua

homo fidélis

juvéntus beáta

F. Vocabulary building.

a) Find, in sections A and B of Unit One, the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. accípio (to take, to accept). 2. venerári<sup>1</sup> (to venerate). 3. vidére (to see). 4. miser (wretched). 5. accéptus (welcome, agreeable). 6. memoráre (to remember). 7. crédere (to believe). 8. super (over). 9. invisíbilis (invisible). 10. clamor (shout, cry). 11. domnus (sir, master). 12. oráre (to pray). 13. pacificáre (to pacify). 14. iníquitas (iniquity). 15. misericórdia (mercy). 16. miséria (wretchedness). 17. memória (remembrance). 18. súperus (supreme). 19. dómina (mistress). 20. miseréri (to have mercy). 21. exíre (to go out). 22. júvenis

<sup>1</sup> Some Latin passive forms are translated by an English active verb.

(young). 23. **aéquus** (right, just). 24. **dolóse** (deceitfully). 25. **miserátio** (mercy).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>cádere</b>	decadent	<b>ire</b>	exit
<b>clamáre</b>	exclamation	<b>vidére</b>	vision
<b>laváre</b>	lavatory	<b>bíbere</b>	bibulous
<b>orátio</b>	oration	<b>juvéntus</b>	rejuvenate
<b>iníquus</b>	equity	<b>dóminus</b>	dominate

c) Note the relation of

<i>these adverbs</i>	to	<i>these adjectives</i>
<b>cleménter</b> (mercifully)		<b>clemens</b>
<b>innumerábiliter</b> (innumerably)		<b>innumerábilis</b>
<b>nóbiliter</b> (nobly)		<b>nóbilis</b>
<b>miserábiliter</b> (miserably)		<b>miserábilis</b>
<b>incredíbiliter</b> (incredibly)		<b>incredíbilis</b>
<b>supplíciter</b> (humbly)		<b>supplex</b>
<i>these verbs</i>	to	<i>these nouns and adjectives</i>
<b>pacificáre</b> (to pacify)		<b>pax</b>
<b>oráre</b> (to pray)		<b>orátio</b>
<b>dominári</b> (to rule)		<b>Dóminus</b>
<b>miseréri</b> (to have mercy on)		<b>miséricors</b>
<b>accíperere</b> (to receive, to accept)		<b>acceptábilis</b>
<b>crédere</b> (to believe)		<b>incredíbilis</b>

## REVIEW LESSON NUMBER I

A. Give the English for these phrases.

1. in caelo et in terra. 2. regnum bonum. 3. in principio. 4. ex María.  
5. in via. 6. vitae sanctorum. 7. Sancta María. 8. sanctis apostolis.  
9. regnum Dei. 10. beatae Mariæ. 11. ego sum. 12. vos estis. 13. cum  
Lúcia. 14. benedictio aquae. 15. in glória Dei. 16. redemptio animarum.  
17. beatorum apostolorum. 18. glória Dei. 19. caeli et terrae.  
20. cum glória.

B. What Latin words do the following remind you of?

gloriosus, regnare, caelestis, terrenus, servire, vivus, apostolicus,  
sanctitas, ascendere, beatitudo.

C. Find in the list of English words the meaning of each Latin word.

et	always	esse	to be
ab	life	apostolus	protection
semper	man	protectio	majesty
homo	and	Deus	apostle
vita	from	majestas	God
salvatio	heaven	magnus	help
ex	salvation	cor	chalice
caelum	servant	calix	great
cum	out of	corpus	heart
servus	with	auxilium	body
principium	flame	filius	holy
inimicus	all	sanctus	everlasting
omnis	beginning	nunc	glory
flamma	way	aeternus	son
via	enemy	gloria	now



<b>virgo</b>	merciful	<b>culpa</b>	remedy
<b>regnum</b>	blessed	<b>ánima</b>	to
<b>posse</b>	virgin	<b>ad</b>	fault
<b>beátus</b>	to be able	<b>terra</b>	soul
<b>clemens</b>	kingdom	<b>remédium</b>	land

**D.** Translate the following into English.

1. Virgo clemens est.
2. Sancti beáti sunt.
3. Sancti non sumus.
4. Ego non sum apóstolus.
5. Cor in córpore est.
6. Possunt esse sancti.
7. Possum esse apóstolus.
8. Hómines possunt boni esse.
9. Potéstis esse boni.
10. Fílius cum servo esse potest.
11. Nos in terra sumus.
12. Vos apóstoli potéstis esse.
13. Ego non sum inimícus Dei.
14. Tu es fílius bonus.
15. Is potest esse in via.

**E.** Translate these phrases into English.

- |                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Salvátio hóminum.  | 17. Cum inimícis.            |
| 2. Corpus hóminis.    | 18. Ad caelum.               |
| 3. Fílius servi.      | 19. In caelum.               |
| 4. Fílii Dei.         | 20. In regno Dei.            |
| 5. Princípium terrae. | 21. Ad regnum caelórum.      |
| 6. Ex corde.          | 22. Ab inimícis Dei.         |
| 7. In terra.          | 23. Cum bonis homínibus.     |
| 8. Ad terram.         | 24. Ad Dei cleméntis servos. |
| 9. A terra.           | 25. Ab ómnibus apóstolis.    |
| 10. In princípio.     | 26. Cum Dei servis.          |
| 11. Ab homínibus.     | 27. In glória sanctórum.     |
| 12. In caelo.         | 28. Sancti in regno Dei.     |
| 13. Cum sanctis.      | 29. Ad terram bonam.         |
| 14. Ex córpore.       | 30. Cum sanctis apóstolis.   |
| 15. Ab apóstolis.     |                              |
| 16. Ad Maríam.        |                              |

F. Give the meanings of these words.

semper	virgo	audíre	régio	dare
dúcere	nunc	gens	ángelus	de
nomen	esse	ab	dígnitas	posse

G. Give the meaning of each of these verb forms.

1. laudáris. 2. eunt. 3. estis. 4. habet. 5. élevat. 6. ducit. 7. intróit.  
8. imus. 9. audiúntur. 10. dico. 11. potes. 12. do. 13. adorámus. 14. con-  
glorificátur. 15. ponunt.

## LESSON VI

### UNIT ONE

**Credo in unum Deum. I believe in one God.**

#### Vocabulary

laetificáre, *to give joy to*

judicáre, *to judge*

afflígere, *to afflict*

crúere, *to deliver*

incédere, *to go, walk*

speráre, *to hope*

causa, -ae, f., *cause*

fortitúdo, fortitúdinis, f., *strength*

lux, lucis, f., *light*

véritas, veritátis, f., *truth*

mons, montis (-ium), m., *hill, mountain*

saéculum, i, n., *time, age, world*; in saécula saeculórum, per ómnia saécula saeculórum, *world without end*; a saéculo, *from the beginning*.

sicut (sícuti), adv., *as, just as*

per (prep. with acc.), *through, by*

quia, quóniam, conj., *for, because, that*

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thine; your, yours* (sing.)

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs*

noster,<sup>1</sup> nostra, nostrum, *our, ours*

<sup>1</sup> In *noster* the -e is retained only in the nominative singular masculine. *Vester* is declined like *noster*.

**vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours (pl.)**  
**qui, who (relative)**

11. **The imperfect tense.** This is formed by adding the following personal endings to the base:

Active		Passive	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
-bam	-bámus	-bar	-bámur
-bas	-bátis	-báris	-bámini
-bat	-bant	-bátur	-bántur

Thus for the first conjugation we have the following:

Active			
Singular		Plural	
laudá-bam,	<i>I praised</i>	lauda-bámus,	<i>we praised</i>
laudá-bas,	<i>thou praisedst</i>	lauda-bátis,	<i>you praised</i>
laudá-bat,	<i>he praised</i>	laudá-bant,	<i>they praised</i>

Passive			
laudá-bar,	<i>I was praised</i>	lauda-bámur,	<i>we were praised</i>
lauda-báris,	<i>thou wast praised</i>	lauda-bámini,	<i>you were praised</i>
lauda-bátur,	<i>he was praised</i>	lauda-bántur,	<i>they were praised</i>

For the other conjugations the imperfect tense is formed in a similar manner. Thus we have:

moné-bam,	<i>I warned</i>	monébar,	<i>I was warned</i>
ducé-bam,	<i>I led</i>	ducé-bar,	<i>I was led</i>
audié-bam,	<i>I heard</i>	audié-bar,	<i>I was heard</i>

NOTE. Since there are no progressive tenses in Latin, **laudábam** means *I praised* or *I was praising*.

12. **The imperative.** The common imperative forms are two in number: a singular form corresponding to the pronoun **tu**, and a plural form corresponding to **vos**.

I	II
(laudáre, <i>to praise</i> )	(monére, <i>to warn</i> )
lauda, <i>praise (thou)</i>	mone, <i>warn (thou)</i>
laudáte, <i>praise (ye, you)</i>	monéte, <i>warn (ye, you)</i>
III	IV
(dúcere, <i>to lead</i> )	(audíre, <i>to hear</i> )
duc, duce, <i>lead (thou)</i>	audi, <i>hear (thou)</i>
dúcite, <i>lead (ye, you)</i>	audíte, <i>hear (ye, you)</i>

## 13. The irregular verbs esse, posse, ire.

## Imperfect

(esse, <i>to be</i> )	(posse, <i>to be able</i> )	(ire, <i>to go</i> )
eram, <i>I was</i>	póteram, <i>I was able</i>	ibam, <i>I went</i>
eras, <i>thou wast</i>	póteras, <i>thou wast able</i>	ibas, <i>thou wentest</i>
erat, <i>he was</i>	póterat, <i>he was able</i>	ibat, <i>he went</i>
erámus, <i>we were</i>	poterámus, <i>we were able</i>	ibámus, <i>we went</i>
erátis, <i>you were</i>	poterátis, <i>you were able</i>	ibátis, <i>you went</i>
erant, <i>they were</i>	póterant, <i>they were able</i>	ibant, <i>they went</i>

## Imperative

es, <sup>1</sup> <i>be (thou)</i>	(posse has no imperative)	i, <i>go (thou)</i>
este, <sup>2</sup> <i>be (ye, you)</i>		ite, <i>go (ye, you)</i>

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Many Latin words become English when the last letter or the last two letters are dropped.

1. mortális. 2. orthodoxus. 3. patriárcha. 4. patrónus. 5. pontificális.  
6. prophéta. 7. sacerdotális. 8. sacraméntum. 9. spíritus. 10. strictus.

<sup>1</sup> The form esto is more usual.

<sup>2</sup> The form estote is sometimes used instead of este.

11. temporális. 12. testaméntum. 13. apostólicus. 14. archángelus. 15. firmaméntum. 16. méritum. 17. Christus. 18. eléctus. 19. praeceptum. 20. singuláris.

**B. Read the Latin and give the meaning in English.**

1. Non est culpa mea; est culpa ejus. 2. Pater suus ei dat tubam magnam. 3. Júdicant inimícos suos. 4. Mérita nostra consíderat quóniam justus est. 5. Fílii nostri in monte incédunt. 6. In habitatióne nostra lucem non habémus. 7. Date virgínibus auxiliúm vestrum. 8. Fortitúdo sua magna est, quia causa sua bona est. 9. Dic semper veritátem. 10. Servi nostri ibant ad montes nobíscum. 11. Vírgines miserábiles ab calamitatibus suis eruebántur. 12. Homo dolósus et iníquus non laetíficat nos. 13. Pater tristis erat quia ab fíliis suis affligebátur. 14. Duc eos ad montem. 15. Audíte, fílii. 16. Lauda patrem tuum quóniam bonus et clemens est. 17. Prophéta genti dicebat. 18. Calix in altáre ponebátur. 19. Nomen suum María erat. 20. Nos vidére non póterant. 21. Beátus erat quóniam bonus erat. 22. A flammis ácribus eruebántur. 23. Servi lucem in monte vidébant. 24. Sperabámus in fortitúdine hóminum bonórum. 25. Quare non dicitis semper veritátem? 26. Vírgines sperábant in fortitúdine patrum suórum. 27. Servi nostri manducábant et bibébant. 28. Apóstoli sancti pacem et lucem et veritátem géntibus miserabilibus ducébant. 29. Quare servi ejus ad montes mittebántur? 30. Fortitúdo mea non magna est. 31. Per vias miserábiles ad montes magnas ducebámur. 32. Quare sperábas in causa hóminis iníqui et dolósi? 33. Ab inimícis nostris judicabámur. 34. Aquam bonam in móntibus non vidébam. 35. Sicut erat in terris sanctis.

1. Ad Deum qui laetíficat juventútem meam. 2. Júdica me, Deus, et discérne causam meam de gente non sancta. 3. Ab hómine iníquo et dolóso érue me. 4. Quia tu es, Deus, fortitúdo mea. 5. Quare tristis incédo? 6. Affligit me inimícus. 7. Lucem tuam et veritátem tuam. 8. In montem sanctum tuum. 9. Quare tristis es, ánima mea? 10. Spera

in Deo. 11. Sicut erat in principio et nunc et semper, et in saecula saeculorum. 12. Omnipotens Deus. 13. Deo omnipotenti. 14. Beato Michaéli Archángelo. 15. Et tibi, Pater. 16. Mea culpa. 17. Beáta María semper Virgo. 18. Oráre pro me ad Dóminum Deum nostrum. 19. Misericórdia tua. 20. Da nobis. 21. A nobis. 22. Iniquitates nostrae. 23. Per Christum Dóminum nostrum. 24. Orámus te, Dómine, per mérita sanctorum tuorum. 25. Magna glória tua. 26. Cor meum. 27. In corde tuo. 28. In corde meo. 29. Glória tibi, Dómine. 30. Ómnia saecula. 31. Humanitatis nostrae. 32. Dóminus noster. 33. Per ómnia saecula saeculorum. 34. Divinae majestatis tuae. 35. Per intercessionem beáti Michaélis Archángeli. 36. Ómnium electorum suorum. 37. Misericórdia tua. 38. Oratio mea. 39. Altáre tuum. 40. Ánima mea et vita mea.

## UNIT TWO

**A.** Conjugate in the imperfect tense, active voice: **dare; habére; dícere; servíre.**

Conjugate in the imperfect tense, passive voice: **salváre, monére, mittere, audíre.**

**B.** Give two imperative forms for each of these verbs: **vocáre; dúcere; vidére; audíre; introíre; bíbere; esse; judicáre.**

**C.** Change the infinitive to the correct form of the imperfect indicative tense.

1. ego (esse). 2. tu (posse). 3. ei (ire). 4. vos (ire). 5. nos (esse). 6. ea (posse). 7. id (esse). 8. ego (ire). 9. ego (posse). 10. is (ire). 11. nos (posse). 12. vos (esse).

**D.** Change the possessive adjective in parentheses to the correct case, gender, and number.

1. ánimae (meus). 2. terris (suus). 3. via (noster). 4. regno (tuus). 5. fílii (vester). 6. lucem (meus). 7. saeculi (noster). 8. corpus (suus). 9. pátribus (suus). 10. juventúti (tuus). 11. (meus) culpa. 12. montes

(noster). 13. *nóminum* (vester). 14. *servórum* (suus). 15. *patris* (noster).

### E. Vocabulary building.

a) **Derivations.** Find, in sections A and B of Unit One, the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. *exaudíre* (to hear favorably). 2. *benedícere* (to bless). 3. *con-cédere* (to grant). 4. *dedúcere* (to lead). 5. *dispónere* (to dispose, to order). 6. *laetítia* (joy). 7. *judícium* (judgment). 8. *exúere* (to free from). 9. *spes* (hope). 10. *fortis* (strong, valiant). 11. *lucére* (to shine). 12. *verus* (true). 13. *mónitum* (precept). 14. *christíanus* (Christian). 15. *merére* (to be worthy). 16. *mori* (to die). 17. *pátria* (fatherland). 18. *póntifex* (pope, bishop). 19. *pater* (father). 20. *sacérdos* (priest). 21. *sacer* (sacred). 22. *tempus* (time). 23. *apóstolus* (apostle). 24. *sacríficiu*m (sacrifice). 25. *sacrosánctus* (most holy). 26. *mors* (death). 27. *elígere* (to elect).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>saéculum</i>	secular	<i>véritas</i>	veritable
<i>lux</i>	lucid	<i>fortitúdo</i>	fortify
<i>cáusa</i>	causation	<i>speráre</i>	desperation
<i>incédere</i>	recede	<i>afflígere</i>	affliction
<i>judicáre</i>	judgment	<i>dúcere</i>	reduction

c) Note these verbs with their compounds.

<b>míttere</b> (to send)	}	<b>admíttere</b> , to send to, to join, to admit
		<b>commíttere</b> , to send with or together, to unite, to commit
		<b>emíttere</b> , to send out, to emit
		<b>permíttere</b> , to send through, to suffer, to permit
		<b>promíttere</b> , to send forth, to promise
		<b>dimíttere</b> , to send away, to forgive, to dismiss



<b>dúcere</b> (to lead)	{	<b>dedúcere</b> , to conduct, to deduce
		<b>edúcere</b> , to lead out, to bring forth, to educate
		<b>indúcere</b> , to lead in, to lead, to induce
		<b>perdúcere</b> , to lead to or through, to bring, to prolong
		<b>addúcere</b> , to lead to, to bring, to adduce

## LESSON VII

### UNIT ONE

In nómine Patris et Fílii et *In the name of the Father and of the*  
Spíritus Sancti. Amen. *Son and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.*

### Vocabulary

cornu, us, n., *horn*

spíritus, us, m., *spirit*; Spíritus Sanctus, *Holy Ghost*

manus, us, f., *hand*

domus,<sup>1</sup> us, f., *house*

cívitas, civitátis, f., *city*

ecclésia, ae, f., *church*

frater, fratris, m., *brother*

laus, laudis, f., *praise*

puer, púeri, m., *boy, servant*

pars, partis (-ium), f., *part*

crux, crucis, f., *cross*

liber, libri, m., *book*

léctio, lectiónis, f., *lesson*

mater, matris, f., *mother*

fortis (m. and f.), forte (n.), *strong, brave*

miser, mísera, míserum, *wretched*

pauper (m., f., n.), gen., páuperis, *poor*

malus, -a, -um, *bad, evil, wicked*

crédere, *to believe*

stare, *to stand*

veníre, *to come*

movére, *to move*

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix for irregular declensions.

nocére, *to harm*

judicáre, *to judge*

dolósus, -a, -um, *deceitful*

orátio, oratiónis, f., *prayer*

malítia, -ae, f., *wickedness*

sanctus, -i, m., *a holy man*

ergo, *therefore*

ídeo, *therefore*

ígitur, *therefore*

14. **Fourth declension.** All nouns having the genitive singular ending -us belong to this declension. Most of them are masculine.

spíritus (base, spirit-), m., *spirit*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	spíritus	spíritus
Gen.	spíritus	spírituum
Dat.	spíritui	spíritibus
Acc.	spíritum	spíritus
Abl.	spíritu	spíritibus

15. **The future tense.** In the first and second conjugations this is formed by adding the following personal endings:

	Active		Passive	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	
-bo	-bimus	-bor	-bimur	
-bis	-bitis	-beris	-bimini	
-bit	-bunt	-bitur	-buntur	

Thus for the first conjugation we have the following:

	Active	
Singular	Plural	
laudá-bo, <i>I shall praise</i>	laudá-bimus, <i>we shall praise</i>	
laudá-bis, <i>thou wilt praise</i>	laudá-bitis, <i>you will praise</i>	
laudá-bit, <i>he will praise</i>	laudá-bunt, <i>they will praise</i>	

## Passive

laudá-bor, <i>I shall be praised</i>	laudá-bimur, <i>we shall be praised</i>
laudá-beris, <i>thou wilt be praised</i>	lauda-bímini, <i>you will be praised</i>
laudá-bitur, <i>he will be praised</i>	lauda-búntur, <i>they will be praised</i>

For the second conjugation the future tense is formed in a similar manner. Thus we have:

moné-bo, <i>I shall warn</i>	moné-bor, <i>I shall be warned</i>
------------------------------	------------------------------------

In the third and fourth conjugations the future tense is formed by adding the following personal endings to the base:

Active		Passive	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
-am	-émus	-ar	-émur
-es	-étis	-éris	-émini
-et	-ent	-étur	-éntur

Thus for the third conjugation we have the following:

Active	
Singular	Plural
dúc-am, <i>I shall lead</i>	duc-émus, <i>we shall lead</i>
dúc-es	duc-étis
dúc-et	duc-ént

  

Passive	
duc-ar, <i>I shall be led</i>	duc-émur, <i>we shall be led</i>
duc-éris	duc-émini
duc-étur	duc-éntur

In the fourth conjugation the future tense is formed in a similar manner. Thus we have:

áudi-am, <i>I shall hear</i>	áudi-ar, <i>I shall be heard</i>
------------------------------	----------------------------------

16. The future tense of *esse*, *posse*, and *ire*.

( <i>esse</i> , to be)	( <i>posse</i> , to be able)	( <i>ire</i> , to go)
<i>ero</i> , I shall be	<i>pótero</i> , I shall be able	<i>ibo</i> , I shall go
<i>eris</i> , thou shalt be	<i>póteris</i> , thou shalt be able	<i>ibis</i> , thou shalt go
<i>erit</i> , he will be	<i>póterit</i> , he will be able	<i>ibit</i> , he will go
<i>érimus</i> , we shall be	<i>potérimus</i> , we shall be able	<i>íbimus</i> , we shall go
<i>éritis</i> , you will be	<i>potéritis</i> , you will be able	<i>íbitis</i> , you will go
<i>erunt</i> , they will be	<i>póterunt</i> , they will be able	<i>ibunt</i> , they will go

#### EXERCISES

##### A. Cognates.

a) Many nouns ending in *-ia* in Latin end in *-y* in English. Pronounce and give the English for the following:

1. *família*. 2. *glória*. 3. *memória*. 4. *miséria*. 5. *victória*. 6. *ignomínia*.  
7. *custódia*. 8. *perfidia*.

b) Nouns and adjectives ending in *-ens* in Latin end in *-ent* in English. Pronounce and give the English for the following:

1. *óriens*. 2. *clemens*. 3. *parens*. 4. *ínnocens*. 5. *omnípotens*. 6. *cóm-petens*. 7. *praesens*.

##### B. Read and give the English meaning of the following:

1. *Omnes hómines in civitátem introíbunt cum tubis et córnibus*.  
2. *Non credémus in inimícum iníquum et dolósum*. 3. *Mater bona et justa ab fíliis suis semper laudábitur*. 4. *Ad ecclésiam ibit; Deum laudábit et auxílium ejus supplicábit*. 5. *Puer ad domum nostram véniet et famíliam suam expectábit*. 6. *Servi mei páuperes sunt, non mali*. 7. *Libros non hábeo; ergo lecciónes meas non praeparábo*. 8. *Manus pars córporis est*. 9. *Virgo pro frátribus míseris suis intercédet*. 10. *Ínvoca Dóminum et tibi fortitúdinem, lucem et veritátem dabit*. 11. *Date servis vestris laudem et bene vobis sérvient*. 12. *Puer fortis*

est; nos salváre póterit. 13. Clamáte; nos áudient. 14. Eum vidébis quóniam cum fratre meo incédet. 15. De cruce non descéndet. 16. Crux magna non movébitur. 17. Vocábor et respondébo. 18. Vírgines stabant cum matre sua. 19. Pater et mater paréntes famíliæ sunt. 20. Memóriæ juventútis nostræ laeticábunt nos. 21. Vírgines bonæ erant; ergo beátæ erant. 22. In inimicórum civitátes magnas introíbunt et matres suas et omnes vírgines éruent. 23. Matres servórum semper míseræ et páuperes erant. 24. Crux in ecclésia stabit. 25. Hómines mali et dolósi non in lectiões apostolórum credébant. 26. Púeri páuperes et míseri ad nostram civitátem non vénient. 27. Laudes servórum páuperum Deum laeticábunt. 28. In princípío auxília ad gentes non ducéntur. 29. Non crédimus in libros malos. 30. Pars crucis in ecclésia stat. 31. Fílii boni et fortes erunt; ígitur mater eorum beata erit. 32. Quare míseri estis, servi mei? 33. Páuperes non semper mali sunt; mali non semper páuperes sunt. 34. Fratres nostri, quare estis míseri? 35. Mater bona in ecclesia erit cum ómnibus filiis suis.

1. Mater mea. 2. Lavábis me. 3. Omnes iniquitátes meas. 4. Spíritus sanctus tuus. 5. Líbera me. 6. Oratióne mea. 7. In manus inimíci. 8. A sanctis ángelis. 9. Vobis dícimus. 10. Descéndet de caelo. 11. Semper cum Dómino érimus. 12. In memoria aetérna erit justus. 13. Lucis aeternæ. 14. Salva me. 15. Sum causa tuæ viae. 16. Flammis ácribus. 17. Voca me. 18. Frater meus. 19. Dabit tibi Deus. 20. Frater tuus. 21. Dicit ei Martha. 22. In resurrectione. 23. Ego sum resurréctio et vita. 24. Omnis qui credit in me. 25. Tu es Christus Fílius Dei. 26. Líbera eas. 27. In lucem sanctam. 28. Pro animábus. 29. Cum sanctis tuis. 30. Cum servo tuo. 31. Judicáre saéculum. 32. Ánima ejus.

## UNIT Two

A. Decline in the singular and plural: **cornu magnum; manus fortis; domus mísera.**

B. Decline in the singular: **Spíritus Sanctus; laus tua; ecclésia cathólica.**

C. Give the nominative, genitive, and dative plural of the following: *puer innocens*; *mater pauper*; *civitas nobilis*; *frater misericors*; *liber malus*.

#### D. Vocabulary building.

a) Derivations. Find, in sections A and B of Unit One, words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. *auditus* (hearing). 2. *malum* (evil). 3. *dominatio* (dominion). 4. *civis* (citizen). 5. *laudabilis* (praiseworthy). 6. *particeps* (partaker). 7. *crucifixus* (crucified). 8. *fortitudo* (strength). 9. *miseria* (wretchedness). 10. *dominus* (lord, master). 11. *laudare* (to praise). 12. *malitia* (malice). 13. *adventus* (coming, advent). 14. *credibilis* (credible). 15. *circumstare* (to stand around, to be present). 16. *famulus* (servant). 17. *glorificare* (to glorify). 18. *memorare* (to remember). 19. *victus* (conquered). 20. *ignorare* (to be ignorant). 21. *custos* (guard). 22. *clementer* (mercifully). 23. *innocentia* (innocence). 24. *custodire* (to guard). 25. *male* (badly). 26. *competere* (to be capable of, to be fit for). 27. *nocens* (harmful). 28. *nocere* (to harm). 29. *conglorificare* (to glorify).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>cornu</b>	cornucopia	<b>manus</b>	manipulate
<b>domus</b>	domicile	<b>laus</b>	laudable
<b>ecclesia</b>	ecclesiastical	<b>credere</b>	credence
<b>stare</b>	station	<b>venire</b>	circumvent
<b>movere</b>	remove	<b>pauper</b>	pauperize
<b>malus</b>	malediction	<b>fortis</b>	fortify
<b>crux</b>	crucial	<b>puer</b>	puerile
<b>liber</b>	library	<b>frater</b>	fraternity
<b>civitas</b>	civic	<b>pars</b>	partial
<b>mater</b>	maternity	<b>manus</b>	maniple

c) Observe these verbs with their compounds.

<b>stare</b> ( <i>to stand</i> )	{	<b>circumstáre</b> , to stand around, to be present, to surround
		<b>praestáre</b> , to stand before, to excel, to accomplish, to bestow
		<b>exstáre</b> , to stand out or forth
<b>pónere</b> ( <i>to put</i> )	{	<b>dispónere</b> , to put in different places, to order, to dispose
		<b>impónere</b> , to put upon, to impose
		<b>expónere</b> , to put out, to expose
<b>esse</b> ( <i>to be</i> )	{	<b>adésse</b> , to be at or near, to be present
		<b>abésse</b> , to be away from, to be absent
		<b>prodésse</b> , <sup>1</sup> to be for, to benefit, to avail

<sup>1</sup> The *d* is omitted in all forms where it would be immediately followed by a consonant.



## LESSON VIII

### UNIT ONE

**Glória Patri et Fílio  
et Spirítui Sancto.**

*Glory be to the Father and to the Son  
and to the Holy Ghost.*

### Vocabulary

**dies, diéi, m. and f., *day*; in novíssimo die, *on the last day***

**fides, fídei, f., *faith***

**fácies, faciéi, f., *face***

**missa, -ae, f., *Mass*; missa est, *the Mass is finished***

**panis, panis, m., *bread***

**discípulus, -i, m., *pupil, disciple***

**tectum, -i, n., *roof***

**nox, noctis (-ium), f., *night***

**murus, -i, m., *wall***

**somnus, -i, m., *sleep***

**grátia, -ae, f., *grace, thankfulness***

**ágere, *to act, to put in motion*; grátias ágere, *to give thanks***

**dormíre, *to sleep***

**scríbere, *to write***

**docére, *to teach***

**peccáre, *to sin***

**novus, -a, -um, *new***

**aequus, -a, -um, *right***

**dignus, -a, -um, *meet, worthy***

**potens (m., f., n.), gen., poténtis, *powerful***

**ecce (interject.), *behold***

**sic (adv.), *so, thus***

**hódie (adv.), *today, this day***

*item* (adv.), *also, likewise*

*simul* (adv.), *together*

*sed* (conj.), *but; sed et, as also*

17. **Fifth declension.** It comprises nouns with the genitive singular ending *-ci*. They are feminine in gender.<sup>1</sup>

<i>dies</i> (base, <i>di-</i> ), <i>day</i>		<i>res</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>thing</i>	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom. <i>dies</i>	<i>dies</i>	Nom. <i>res</i>	<i>res</i>
Gen. <i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	Gen. <i>rei</i>	<i>rerum</i>
Dat. <i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	Dat. <i>rei</i>	<i>rebus</i>
Acc. <i>diem</i>	<i>dies</i>	Acc. <i>rem</i>	<i>res</i>
Abl. <i>die</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	Abl. <i>re</i>	<i>rebus</i>

18. **Participles.** The participles of the four conjugations are the following:

Present (active)

*laudans*, *praising*

*monens*, *warning*

*ducens*, *leading*

*audiens*, *hearing*

Past (passive)

*laudatus*, *praised*

*monitus*, *warned*

*ductus*, *led*

*auditus*, *heard*

Future (active)

*laudaturus*, *about to praise*

*moniturus*, *about to warn*

*ducturus*, *about to lead*

*auditurus*, *about to hear*

Gerundive (passive)

*laudandus*, *must be praised*

*monendus*, *must be warned*

*ducendus*, *must be led*

*audiendus*, *must be heard*

NOTE. (a) A participle, like an adjective, agrees with the noun modified or the noun referred to.

b) The present participle is declined according to the third declension: *laudans* (m., f., n.); gen., *laudantis*.

<sup>1</sup> Exception: *dies* is sometimes masculine in the singular, always masculine in the plural.

c) The rest are declined in the first and second declensions:  
**laudátus, laudáta, laudátum.**

d) The gerundive is used to express necessity or obligation.

Examples:

Present: **Puerum fratrem laudán-tem audiébam.** *I heard the boy praising his brother.*

**Ad civitátem servos du-céntes veniébant.** *They came to the city leading the slaves.*

Past: **A matre sua vocáti, filii in domum introíbant.** *Having been called by their mother, the sons went into the house.*

**Vírgines afflíctas pacificá-bunt.** *They will pacify the afflicted maidens.*

Future: **Ad montem itúri sunt.**<sup>1</sup> *They are about to go to the hill.*

**Nos monitúrus erat.** *He was about to warn us.*

Gerundive: **Domus nostrae sal-vándae sunt.**<sup>2</sup> *Our homes must be saved.*

**Libri movéndi erant.** *The books had to be moved.*

### 19. Participles of *esse*, *posse*, and *ire*.

(*esse*, to be)

(*posse*, to be able)

Future: **futúrus**, *about to be*

Present: **potens** (used as an adjective), *powerful*

(*ire*, to go)

Present: **iens** (**eúntis**), *going*

Future: **itúrus**, *about to go*

<sup>1</sup> This form is also referred to as the active periphrastic.

<sup>2</sup> This form is sometimes called the passive periphrastic.

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Many Latin adjectives ending in *-us* and *-osus* become *-ous* in English. Pronounce and give the English for the following:

1. *copiósus*. 2. *gloriósus*. 3. *laboriósus*. 4. *religiósus*. 5. *perniciósus*. 6. *furiósus*. 7. *studiósus*. 8. *invidiósus*. 9. *injuriósus*. 10. *insidiósus*. 11. *ímpius*. 12. *píus*. 13. *propítius*. 14. *treméndus*. 15. *supérfluus*.

**B. Verbs with the prefix, a-, ab-, or abs-** convey the idea of *from* or *away from*.

1. *abése* (to be away, to be absent). 2. *abdúcere* (to lead away, to abduct). 3. *avértere* (to turn away, to avert). 4. *abstinére* (to hold from, to abstain). 5. *abstráhere* (to draw from, to abstract). 6. *amíttere* (to send away). 7. *abíre* (to go away). 8. *amovére* (to move from). 9. *avocáre* (to call away from). 10. *abruptere* (to break away from). 11. *abstergére* (to wipe away). 12. *absólvere* (to loose from, to absolve).

**C. Read and translate into English.**

1. *Domus muros et tecta habent.* 2. *Nox pars diéi est.* 3. *Ad muros civitátis veniebámus.* 4. *Dignum est nostris mátribus bonis grátias ágere.* 5. *In somno justórum dórmiunt.* 6. *In manus tuas libros datúri erámus.* 7. *Homo potens est, sed Deus omnípotens est.* 8. *Omnes discípuli lectiones bonas hódie habébant.* 9. *Fácies vírginis bona et clemens erat.* 10. *Sancta Fides nomen civitátis est.* 11. *Panis manducándus est.* 12. *Puéri domum mitténdi sunt.* 13. *Deo grátiae agéndae sunt.* 14. *Vobis item scribam de ecclésia nova.* 15. *Mater cum puéris simul salváture.* 16. *Audi, dictúrus est.* 17. *Vírgines nobis servitúrae erant.* 18. *Frater meus in domum clamans intrat.* 19. *Ab dómino laudáti servi beáti sunt.* 20. *Civitátem magna luce illuminátam vidébant.* 21. *Crédere non póssumus in fidem géntium malárum.* 22. *Aequum est pro pace intercédere.* 23. *Calix a flammis salvándus est.* 24. *Eos in monte stantes vidémus.* 25. *Eos docébit et non peccábunt.*

26. Ecce homo! 27. Omnes libros salvátos a flammis habémus. 28. In monte stans eos júdicat. 29. Crucem magnam a patre suo datam videt puer. 30. Nobis erat dictúrus nomen suum. 31. Fides patrum nostrórum fortis erat. 32. Vírgines fratres suos vocántes audiébam. 33. Nos monitúri erant quia flammascendentes de tecto domus vidébant. 34. Homo pauper et miser erat, sed auxiliú non implorábat. 35. Auxílium ad civitátem mitténdum est.

1. Emítte lucem tuam et veritátem tuam. 2. Et introíbo ad altáre Dei, ad Deum qui laetíficat juventútem meam. 3. Tu vivificábis nos. 4. Dómine, exáudi oratióem meam. 5. Dómine Deus, Rex caeléstis, Deus Pater omnípotens. 6. Cum Sancto Spírítu in glória Dei Patris. 7. Deo grátias. 8. In corde meo. 9. In nómine Patris et Fílii, et Spírítus Sancti. 10. Glória tibi, Dómine. 11. Laus tibi, Christe. 12. Credo in unum Deum. 13. Visibília ómnia, et invisibília. 14. Ómnia saécula. 15. Deus de Deo. 16. Nos hómnes. 17. Ventúrus est cum glória. 18. Qui cum Patre et Fílio simul adorátur et conglorificátur. 19. Una, sancta, cathólica, et apostólica ecclésia. 20. Unum baptísma. 21. Expécto vitam ventúri saéculi. 22. Dóminus vobíscum. 23. Et cum spírítu tuo. 24. Dóminus noster. 25. In spírítu humilitátis. 26. Veni, sanctificátor, omnípotens, aetérne Deus. 27. Misericórdia tua. 28. Lavábo manus meas. 29. Domus tuae. 30. Cum ímpiis. 31. Ánima mea. 32. In mánibus iniquitátes sunt. 33. In ecclésiis benedicam te, Dómine. 34. In honórem beátae Maríae semper Vírginis. 35. Pro nobis intercédere. 36. De mánibus tuis. 37. Ad laudem et glóriam nóminis sui. 38. Ecclésiae suae sanctae. 39. Dignum et justum est. 40. Cathólicae et apostólicae fidéi. 41. Pater noster, qui es in caelis. 42. Panem nostrum da nobis hódie. 43. Elevátio mánuum meárum. 44. Dórmunt in somno pacis. 45. Omni benedictióe caelésti et grátia. 46. Ite, missa est.

## UNIT TWO

**A.** Decline in the singular and plural: **dies gloriósus; fácies tristis.**

**B.** Give the four participles of the following:

1. dare. 2. dícere. 3. servíre. 4. habére. 5. speráre. 6. monére. 7. audíre.  
8. addúcere. 9. exaudíre. 10. indúcere. 11. dormíre. 12. laváre.

### C. Vocabulary building.

a) **Derivations.** Find, in sections A and B of Unit One, the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. **scriptúra** (writing, Scripture). 2. **peccátor** (sinner). 3. **novíssimus** (newest, last). 4. **indígnus** (unworthy). 5. **iníquus** (unjust). 6. **omnípotens** (almighty). 7. **peccátum** (sin). 8. **doctrína** (doctrine). 9. **fidélis** (faithful). 10. **dormítio** (sleep). 11. **gratus** (gracious). 12. **dignári** (to vouchsafe, to grant). 13. **pie** (mercifully). 14. **propitiátio** (merciful forgiveness). 15. **pietas** (piety). 16. **trémere** (to tremble). 17. **convértere** (to turn, to convert). 18. **propitiábilis** (propitious). 19. **tremor** (fear). 20. **tenére** (to hold). 21. **propitiáre** (to be merciful). 22. **adscríptus** (approved). 23. **aequálitas** (equality). 24. **innováre** (to renew). 25. **gratis** (without recompense). 26. **digne** (worthily).

b) Observe these Latin and English words and their similarities.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>discípulus</b>	discipline	<b>nox</b>	nocturnal
<b>dormíre</b>	dormitory	<b>somnus</b>	somnolent
<b>murus</b>	mural	<b>fácies</b>	facial
<b>ágere</b>	agent	<b>fides</b>	fidelity
<b>scríbere</b>	inscription	<b>docére</b>	docile
<b>peccáre</b>	impeccable	<b>dignus</b>	dignitary
<b>aéquus</b>	equality	<b>novus</b>	renovate
<b>potens</b>	potential	<b>servíre</b>	servitude

c) Observe these verbs with their compounds.

ire, to go { **introíre**, to go within, to enter  
**praecíre**, to go before  
**redíre**, to go back, to return  
**transíre**, to go through

<b>veníre, to come</b>	{	<b>adveníre, to come (to)</b>
		<b>inveníre, to come upon, to find</b>
		<b>perveníre, to come through, to attain</b>
		<b>praeveníre, to come before, to prevent</b>
		<b>proveníre, to come for</b>
		<b>subveníre, to come under, to come up to, to assist</b>

## LESSON IX

### UNIT ONE

Dóminus vobíscum. *The Lord be with you.*

Et cum spírítu tuo. *And with thy spirit.*

### Vocabulary

repéllere (répuli, repúlsus), *to cast from, to repel*

conturbáre, *to disturb*

osténdere (osténdi, osténsus), *to show*

sedére (sedi, sessus), *to sit*

tóllere (sústuli, sublátus), *to take away*

mundáre, *to cleanse*

salutáre, salutáris, n. (noun), *health, salvation*

salutáris, -e, adj., *saving, salutary*

vultus, vultus, m., *countenance*

cogitátió, cogitátiónis, f., *thought*

verbum, -i, n., *word*

opus, óperis, n., *deed, work*

indulgéntia, -ae, f., *pardon, forgiveness*

plebs, plebis, f., *people*

mens, mentis, f., *mind*

volúntas, voluntátis, f., *will*

adjutórium, adjutórii, n., *help*

agnus, -i, m., *lamb*

mundus, -i, m., *world*

deprecátió, deprecátiónis, f., *prayer*

spes, spei, f., *hope*

dexter, dextra (déterta), dextrum (déterum), *right, right hand*



**solus, -a, -um, only, alone, sole**

**excélsus, -a, -um, high; in excélsis, in the highest**

**hic, here**

**nimis, exceedingly**

**dum (conj.), while, when, until**

20. **The perfect tense.** In the active voice this tense is formed by the following personal endings added to the perfect stem of the verb:

Singular	Plural
-i	-imus
-ísti	-ístis
-it	-érunt

Thus for the first conjugation we have the following:

Singular	Plural
laudáv-i, <i>I have praised</i>	laudáv-imus, <i>we have praised</i>
laudav-ísti	laudav-ístis
laudáv-it	laudav-érunt

In the passive voice the perfect tense is formed by adding the present tense of the verb *esse* to the past participle. Thus we have:

Singular	Plural
laudátus sum, <i>I have been praised</i>	laudáti sumus, <i>we have been praised</i>
laudátus es	laudáti estis
laudátus est	laudáti sunt

In the other conjugations the perfect tense is formed in a similar manner. Thus we have:

Active	Passive
mónu-i, <i>I have warned</i>	mónitus sum, <i>I have been warned</i>
dux-i, <i>I have led</i>	dúctus sum, <i>I have been led</i>
audív-i, <i>I have heard</i>	audítus sum, <i>I have been heard</i>

**21. Perfect tense of esse, posse, and ire.**

(esse, <i>to be</i> )	(posse, <i>to be able</i> )	(ire, <i>to go</i> )
fui, <i>I have been</i>	pótui, <i>I have been able</i>	ivi (ii), <i>I have gone</i>

NOTE. (a) All other perfect tenses (the pluperfect and future perfect indicative and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive) are formed on the perfect stems as given above. Only the endings will differ. For these tenses, see the Appendix.

b) Many verbs are irregular in the perfect. But, if the first person singular of the perfect is known, all other forms of the perfect active tenses can be formed on the stem of this one.

c) Past participles are frequently irregular. Hereafter, whenever verbs are given in the vocabularies the first person singular of the perfect and the past participle of all irregular verbs will be given also.

d) The **vi** of the second person singular and plural of first conjugation verbs is frequently dropped: **laudásti** and **laudástis** for **laudavísti** and **laudavístis**.

**22. Prepositions.**

a) The following prepositions govern the accusative:

**ad**, *to, toward, near*

**ante**, *before*

**apud**, *to, with, in the presence of*

**circum**, *around*

**contra**, *against*

**inter**, *between, among*

**intra**, *within*

**ob**, *for, in consideration of*

**per**, *through, by*

**post**, *after*

**propter**, *for, because of*

**secúndum**, *according to*

*supra, over, above, upon*  
*trans, through, across*

b) The following prepositions govern the ablative:

*a, ab, from*  
*coram, in the presence of*  
*cum, with*  
*de, from, down from*  
*e, ex, out of*  
*prae, before*  
*pro, for, through, in behalf of*  
*sine, without*

c) In (*in* or *into*), *sub* (*under*), *super* (*above*), govern the accusative when they indicate motion towards a place, but govern the ablative when they denote rest in a place.

#### EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Many nouns ending in *-io* in Latin have the ending *-ion* in English. They are feminine in Latin. Pronounce the following and give the English equivalent.

1. *absolútio*. 2. *ascénsio*. 3. *benedíctio*. 4. *conféssio*. 5. *congregátio*.  
 6. *consecrátio*. 7. *contágio*. 8. *damnátio*. 9. *devótio*. 10. *disposítio*. 11.  
*elevátio*. 12. *habitátio*. 13. *institútio*. 14. *intercésio*. 15. *oblátio*. 16. *pro-  
 téctio*. 17. *pássio*. 18. *redémptio*. 19. *régio*. 20. *remíssio*. 21. *resurréctio*.  
 22. *salvátio*. 23. *supplicátio*. 24. *condítio*. 25. *conversátio*.

**B. Verbs** having the prefix *ad-* convey the idea of *at, toward, to, or against*.

1. *adésse* (to be at, to be present). 2. *addúcere* (to lead to). 3. *advér-  
 tere* (to turn toward). 4. *adíre* (to go to). 5. *adoráre* (to pray to, to  
 adore). 6. *admovére* (to move to). 7. *adjuváre* (to help toward).  
 8. *admonére* (to warn against, to admonish). 9. *addícere* (to assent  
 to). 10. *adveníre* (to come to).

## C. Translate into English.

1. Inimicus repellendus erat. 2. Discipuli nostri ab puéris clamántibus conturbáti sunt. 3. Verba sua nobis ostendérunt fidem suam in causam suam. 4. Virgo ad dexteram matris sola stabat. 5. Cogitatio verbum praecedit. 6. Fortis fuit, quóniam spem et fidem in corde hábuit. 7. Hódie in ecclésia non fuerunt; absunt. 8. Hic sédimus adjutórium vestrum sperántes. 9. Virgo domum mundábat, dum mater ejus dormiébat. 10. Volúntas in mente est. 11. Vultus hóminis conturbátus est, quóniam spíritus ejus miser est. 12. Non dícimus dum mánducámus. 13. Pater filio suo agnum dabit. 14. Verba sua laetificavérunt omnes qui audivérunt. 15. Arrogántiam inimicórum nostrórum observávimus. 16. Dícitur: volúntas plebis volúntas Dei est. 17. Eum monuísti, sed non audívit. 18. Quare eos ad montem adduxérunt? 19. Domus nostrae ab mánibus hóminum malórum liberatae sunt. 20. Omnes servi vocáti sunt, sed non respondérunt. 21. Frater meus non dormívit hódie. 22. Mater tua indulgéntiam osténdit tibi. 23. Eos nimis laudávimus, et nobis bene servivérunt. 24. Agnum in altári immolavérunt. 25. Ópera plebis innocéntis Deum laetíficant. 26. Frater tuus non hic fuit. 27. Ea ad matris domum fuit. 28. Auxílium nostrum imploravérunt. 29. Mater ejus introívit dum hic erámus. 30. Verba indulgéntiae sperávit. 31. Ópera sua in terra magna fuérunt. 32. Volúntas Dei volúntas sanctórum est. 33. Cogitatiónes nostrae se osténdunt in vultu. 34. Hic sedérunt dum domum munda-bámus. 35. Inimicos suos repulérunt et nunc non conturbántur.

D. 1. Quare me repulísti, et quare tristis incédo, dum affligit me inimicus? 2. Me deduxérunt et adduxérunt in montem sanctum tuum. 3. Quare contúrbas me? 4. Salutáre vultus mei. 5. Adjutórium nostrum in nómine Dómini. 6. Quia peccávi nimis cogitatióne, verbo, et ópere. 7. Mea culpa, mea culpa, mea máxima culpa. 8. Indulgéntiam, absolutiónem, et remissionem peccatórum nostrórum. 9. Deus, tu convérsus vivificábis nos. 10. Osténde nobis, Dómine, misericórdiam tuam. 11. Et salutáre tuum da nobis. 12. Ómnia peccáta mea. 13. Glória in excélsis Deo. 14. Et in terra pax homínibus bonae volun-

tátis. 15. Benedícimus te. 16. Grátias ágimus tibi propter magnam glóriam tuam. 17. Qui tollis peccáta mundi. 18. Deprecatióem nostram. 19. Qui sedes ad dexteram Patris. 20. Quóniam tu solus sanctus. 21. Tu solus Dóminus. 22. Munda cor meum. 23. Ante ómnia saécula. 24. Qui propter nos hómnes. 25. Sub Póntio Pilátō. 26. Secúndum Scriptúras. 27. Sedet ad dexteram Patris. 28. Non erit. 29. Per prophétas. 30. In remisióem peccatórum. 31. Pro innumerábilibus peccátis, et offensióibus, et negligétiis meis et pro ómnibus circumstántibus, sed et pro ómnibus fidélibus cristiánis. 32. Tecum. 33. In unitáte Spíritus sancti. 34. Bénedic hoc sacrificium tuo sancto nómini prae-parátum. 35. Per intercessiόem beáti Michaélis Archángeli, stantis a dextris altáris.

## UNIT TWO

**A.** Learn the perfect indicative and the past participle (if irregular) of these partly irregular verbs.

Infinitive	Perfect Indicative	Past Participle
dare	dedi	datus
míttre	misi	missus
pónere	pósui	pósitus
dícere	dixi	dictus
vidére	vidi	visus
bíbere	bibi	bíbitus
cádere	cécidi	casus
afflígere	afflíxi	afflíctus
erúere	éruí	érutus
incédere	incéssi	incéssus
crédere	crédidi	créditus
stare	steti	status
veníre	veni	ventus
movére	movi	motus
ágere	egi	actus
scríbere	scripsi	scriptus

docére	docuí	doctus
evádere	evási	evásus
respondére	respóndi	respónsus
convértere	convérti	convérsus
descéndere	descéndi	descénsus
discérnere	discrévi	discrétus
súrgere (to arise)	surréxi	surréctus

**B.** Give the perfect and the past participle

*a)* of these verbs which are like **pónere**:

dispónere; impónere

*b)* of these verbs which are like **míttere**:

admíttere; commíttere; emíttere; permíttere; dimíttere; promíttere

*c)* of these verbs which are like **dícere**:

addícere; benedícere

*d)* of these verbs which are like **dúcere**:

dedúcere; edúcere; indúcere; perdúcere; addúcere

*e)* of these verbs which are like **incédere**:

concédere; intercédere; praecédere; procédere; recédere (to go back);  
secédere (to withdraw)

*f)* of these verbs which are like **veníre**:

adveníre; inveníre; perveníre; praeveníre; proveníre; subveníre

*g)* of these verbs which are like **convértere**, **descéndere**, and **dare** respectively:

revértere (to go back), avértere; ascéndere; circumdáre

*h)* of these verbs which are like **súrgere**:

resúrgere; consúrgere (to rise up)

**C.** Change the word in parentheses to the right case. The forms given are all nominative.

1. inter (ei). 2. coram (Deus). 3. secúndum (Scriptúrae). 4. cum

(agnus). 5. trans (muri). 6. pro (vos). 7. ad (dexter). 8. in (ecclésiae). 9. ab (puer). 10. ex (cívitas). 11. contra (inimícus). 12. sine (spes). 13. cum (laus). 14. per (intercésio). 15. de (caela). 16. pro (pax). 17. post (is). 18. cum (ego). 19. de (Deus). 20. e (domus). 21. intra (muri). 22. a (flammae). 23. propter (véritas). 24. circum (mons). 25. ante (ómnia saécula). 26. prae (miséria). 27. ob (ópera). 28. sine (ei). 29. inter (nos). 30. contra (tu).

#### D. Vocabulary building.

a) Derivations. Find in sections A, B, and C of Unit One the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. turba (multitude, crowd). 2. sedes (seat). 3. salus (salvation). 4. cogitare (to think). 5. indulgere (to forgive, to grant). 6. adjuvare (to aid). 7. deprecari (to beseech). 8. benedictus (blessed). 9. devotus (devoted). 10. absolvere (to absolve). 11. elevare (to lift up). 12. habitare (to dwell). 13. resurgere (to rise again). 14. ascendere (to ascend). 15. salvare (to save). 16. salvus (safe). 17. intercedere (to intercede). 18. redimere (to redeem). 19. supplicare (to beseech). 20. redemptor (redeemer). 21. protegere (to protect). 22. perturbatio (disturbance).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
volúntas	volunteer	mundus	mundane
excélsus	excellent	adjutórium	adjutant
mens	mentality	plebs	plebeian
opus	operatic	verbum	verbal
sedére	sedentary	osténdere	ostentation
dexter	dexterity	solus	solitary

c) Note these verbs with their compounds.

*dícere* (to speak) { *addícere*, to speak against, to assent to, to doom to, to adjudge  
*benedícere*, to speak well, to bless

**vértere** (to turn) { **convértere**, to turn together or toward, to convert  
vert  
**avértere**, to turn away, to avert

d) Observe the formation of

<i>these adverbs</i>	from	<i>these adjectives</i>
<b>negligénter</b> (negligently)		<b>négligens</b>
<b>arrogánter</b> (arrogantly)		<b>árrogans</b>
<b>temperánter</b> (temperately)		<b>témperans</b>
<b>diligénter</b> (diligently)		<b>díligens</b>
<b>innocénter</b> (innocently)		<b>ínnocens</b>
<b>prudénter</b> (prudently)		<b>prudens</b>
<b>abundánter</b> (abundantly)		<b>abúndans</b>
<b>petulánter</b> (petulantly)		<b>pétulans</b>
<b>supplíciter</b> (humbly)		<b>supplex</b>



## LESSON X

### UNIT ONE

**Per eúmdem Christum** *Through the same Christ*  
**Dóminum nostrum.** *our Lord.*

### Vocabulary

sólvere (solvi, solútus), *to fulfill, to loose*  
súmere (sumpsi, sumptus), *to receive*  
tribúere (tribui, tribútus), *to grant*  
valére, *to be worthy, to avail*  
nuntiáre, *to announce, to proclaim*  
delére (delévi, delétus), *to blot out*  
dirígere (diréxi, diréctus), *to direct*  
Evangélium, ii, n., *Gospel*  
lábium, ii, n., *lip*  
dictum, i, n., *word*  
delíctum, i, n., *crime, sin*  
conspéctus, us, m., *sight*  
os, oris, n., *mouth*  
óstium, ii, n., *door*  
malítia, ae, f., *evil, malice*  
malum, i, n., *evil*  
verus, -a, -um, *true*  
vívus, -a, -um, *living*  
salvus, -a, -um, *safe*  
sursum (adv.), *upward; sursum corda, lift up your hearts*  
étiam (adv.), *also*  
íterum (adv.), *again*  
ac, atque, -que (added to a word), *and*

ut (uti), *that, in order that*  
 ne, *that not, lest*

23. The present subjunctive. Its forms are as follows:

## Active Voice

I	II	III	IV
laudem	móneam	ducam	aúdiam
laudes	móneas	ducas	aúdias
laudet	móneat	ducat	aúdiat
laudémus	moneámus	ducámus	audiámus
laudétis	moneátis	ducátis	audiátis
laudent	móneant	ducant	áudiant

## Passive Voice

lauder	monear	ducar	áudiar
laudéris	moneáris	ducáris	audiáris
laudétur	moneátur	ducátur	audiátur
laudémur	moneámur	ducámur	audiámur
laudémini	moneámini	ducámini	audiámini
laudentur	moneántur	ducántur	audiántur

NOTE. In the present subjunctive the first conjugation is characterized by the vowel *e* and the rest by the vowel *a*.

24. Present subjunctive of *esse*, *posse*, and *ire*.

( <i>esse, to be</i> )	( <i>posse, to be able</i> )	( <i>ire, to go</i> )
sim	possim	eam
sis	possis	eas
sit	possit	eat
simus	possímus	eámus
sitis	possítis	eátis
sint	possint	eant

25. Uses of the subjunctive. (a) A common use of the subjunctive is to express a hope, a wish, or a command in the first and third per-

sons if affirmative. We have already learned that the imperative is used to express a command in the second person singular and plural when affirmative. If the command is negative, all persons may take the subjunctive. Negative commands are introduced by the word **ne**.

<i>Let them be warned.</i>	Moncántur.
<i>May we be heard.</i>	Audiámur.
<i>May they be happy.</i>	Beáti sint.
<i>Let us pray.</i>	Orémus.
<i>Let us not stand here.</i>	Ne hic stemus.
<i>Let it not be said.</i>	Ne dicátur.
<i>Do not disturb them.</i>	Ne eos contúrbes.

b) The subjunctive is also used in subordinate clauses introduced by the conjunction **ut** or **uti** (negative, **ne**) to express purpose.

<i>I shall put the books here in order that he may have them.</i>	Libros hic ponam, ut eos hábeat.
<i>They are coming to the house in order that we may see them.</i>	Ad domum véniunt, ut eas videámus.
<i>He sends them away in order that they may not (lest) disturb us.</i>	Eos dimíttit, ne nos contúrbenť.

## 26. Other ways of expressing purpose.

### a) Subjunctive with relative pronoun.

<i>The boys come in order to see the lamb.</i>	Púeri véniunt qui agnum vídeant.
--	----------------------------------

### b) Gerundive with the preposition **ad**.

<i>He shouts in order to warn the men.</i>	Clamat ad hómínes monéndos.
--	-----------------------------

### c) Gerundive with **causa** (*abl.*, for the purpose of).

<i>He comes to give thanks.</i>	Venit gratiárum agendárum causa.
---------------------------------	----------------------------------

d) With the infinitive.

*He shall come again with glory to judge both the living and the dead.* Et iterum venturus est cum glória iudicáre vivos et mórtuos.

## EXERCISES

**A.** Many Latin words become English if the last letter or the last two letters are changed to *-e*. Pronounce and give the English for the following:

1. Apocalýpsis. 2. contrítus. 3. creatúra. 4. causa. 5. divínus. 6. futúrus. 7. immaculátus. 8. incarnátus. 9. incénsus. 10. ira. 11. medicina. 12. modus. 13. natúra. 14. obscúrus. 15. offénsio.

**B. Con (com)** is the commonest of the prefixes. Compounded with verbs it has the meaning of *together (with)*.

1. **continére** (to hold together, to contain). 2. **conveníre** (to come together, to convene). 3. **condúcere** (to lead together, to conduct). 4. **commíttere** (to send together, to unite, to commit). 5. **convocáre** (to call together, to convoke). 6. **convértere** (to turn together, toward, with, to convert). 7. **compónere** (to put together, to compose). 8. **comprímere** (to press together, to compress). 9. **congregáre** (to gather together, to congregate). 10. **confídere** (to trust with, to confide). 11. **conjuráre** (to swear together, to conjure). 12. **consentíre** (to feel together, to agree).

**C.** Read and translate into English.

1. Ne intret homo ímpius. 2. Dicta sua nuntiáta sunt, ut audiámus. 3. Ne absint servi dum dóminus in civitaté est. 4. Verba deleántur, ne mater tua vídeat. 5. Quare vírgines non mones, ne in aquam cadant? 6. Non dico, ne júdicer. 7. Vocant, ut eos expectétis. 8. Ne iudicétur suis verbis malis, sed opéribus bonis. 9. Deprecatiónes mundi ad caelum ascéndant, ut Deus pacem ad plebem suam mittat. 10. In

domum intróeunt, ut mandúcent et dórmiant. 11. Aquam mihi dant ad manus meas lavándas. 12. Venit cálicis tolléndi causa. 13. Sedeámus cum matre nostra. 14. Véniant, ut nos dóceant veritátem. 15. Ne moveátur crux. 16. Discípuli studiósí sunt, ut laudéntur. 17. Hómines fortes adjutórium addúcut, ut cívitas salvétur. 18. Introímus in ecclésiám ad dicta ejus audiénda. 19. Nos vocat qui osténdat nobis libros novos. 20. Sedet cogitónis scribéndae causa. 21. Dic eis veritátem, ut credant in te. 22. Dirigat nos ad montem. 23. A peccátis suis solvántur. 24. Lábía pars oris sunt. 25. Ne stent in óstio. 26. Evangéλια homínibus iníquis nuntiáta sunt, sed non audivérunt. 27. Intróeant íterum in domum ne ab inimícis videántur. 28. Deleántur verba nostra mala et ópera nostra iníqua. 29. Salvi sint fílii, étiam vírgines. 30. Nos dirigámus Romam, dixérunt. 31. Hic sumus ut géntibus dicta sancta Evangélii nuntiémus. 32. Malítia inimíci ad gentes bonas malum magnum addúxit. 33. Váleant ópera sua. 34. Libertátem tribuámus servis bonis et fórtibus. 35. Credant servi páuperes in verba dómini sui.

**D.** 1. Perdúcat te ad vitam aetérnam. 2. Indulgéntiam, absolutiónem et remissionem peccatórum nostrórum, tríbuat nobis omnípotens et miséricors Dóminus. 3. Orémus. 4. Munda cor meum ac lábía mea, omnípotens Deus, qui lábía Isaíae prophétae mundásti. 5. Ut sanctum Evangélium tuum digne váleam nuntiáre. 6. Dóminus sit in corde meo et in lábiis meis, ut digne et competénter annúntiem Evangélium suum. 7. Sequéntia sancti Evangélii secúndum Lucam. 8. Laus tibi, Christe. 9. Per evangélica dicta deleántur nostra delícta. 10. Credo in unum Deum. 11. Deum verum de Deo vero. 12. Deo meo vivo et vero. 13. Ut in conspéctu divínae majestátis tuae ascéndat. 14. Incénsum ascéndat ad te. 15. Et descéndat super nos miséricordia tua. 16. Dirigátur, Dómine, orátio mea, sicut incénsum in conspéctu tuo. 17. Pone, Dómine, custódiam ori meo, et óstium circumstántiae lábiis meis. 18. Ut non declínet cor meum in verba malítiae, ad excusándas excusatiónes in peccátis. 19. Ut aúdiam. 20. Grátias agámus Dómino Deo nostro. 21. Sursum corda. 22. Vere dignum et justum est, aequum

et salutáre, nos tibi semper grátias ágere. 23. Ac beáta Séraphim. 24. Confessióne dicéntes. 25. Benedictus qui venit in nómine Dómini. 26. Hosánna in excélsis. 27. Uti accépta hábeas, et benedícas. 28. Qui nos praecessérunt. 29. Ut indúlgeas. 30. Creas, sanctíficas, vivíficas, benedícis, et praestas nobis. 31. Praecéptis salutáribus móniti. 32. Sanctificétur nomen tuum. 33. Advéniat regnum tuum. 34. Sed líbera nos a malo. 35. Da propítius pacem in diébus nostris. 36. Per ómnia saécula saeculórum. 37. Pax Dómini sit semper vobíscum. 38. Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, dona nobis pacem. 39. Dómine Jesu Christe, qui dixísti apóstolis tuis. 40. Secúndum voluntátem tuam.

## UNIT TWO

**A.** Give the present active subjunctive of **clamáre**, **posse**, and **introíre**. Give the present passive subjunctive of **audíre**, **crédere**, and **habére**.

**B.** Give the perfect active indicative of **sólvere**, **súmere**, and **tribúere**. Give the perfect passive indicative of **delére** and **dirígere**.

**C.** Give the English for:

1. Eant. 2. Intrémus. 3. Ne tríbuat. 4. Ne laudes. 5. Áudiar. 6. Introéat. 7. Ne ponas. 8. Stet. 9. Adsint. 10. Moneátur. 11. Sit. 12. Prosit. 13. Ne cadámus. 14. Mandúcent. 15. Bibam. 16. Áudeat. 17. Ne vídear. 18. Ne dicátis. 19. Lavémus. 20. Ducátur.

**D.** Change the infinitive in parentheses to the right form of the present subjunctive.

1. Puérum monémus, ne (cádere). 2. Panem dat nobis, ut (manducáre). 3. Venit, ut domum (mundáre). 4. Íntroit in eccléSIam, ut grátias (ágere). 5. Ábstinet, ne (peccáre). 6. Ad terram novam it, ut plebem (docére). 7. Venímus, ut vos (vidére). 8. Frater eum vocat, ne (movére). 9. Intrans, ut nobis (servíre). 10. Dat cornu filio, ut bonus (esse).

**E.** Change the infinitive in parentheses to the right form of the gerundive.

1. Ad dicta (delére). 2. Verbi (dícere) causa. 3. Ad veritátem (nuntiáre). 4. Tubae (dare) causa. 5. Ad fratres suos (salváre). 6. Lucis (vidére) causa. 7. Ad spíritus nostros (laetificáre).

### F. Vocabulary building.

a) **Derivations.** What words in sections A, B, C, and D of Unit One have the same derivation as the following?

1. **absólvere** (to absolve). 2. **repósitus** (laid up). 3. **annuntiáre** (to announce). 4. **diréctus** (direct). 5. **evangélicus** (of the Gospel). 6. **dícere** (to say). 7. **malus** (bad). 8. **véritas** (truth). 9. **vívere** (to live). 10. **salváre** (to save). 11. **creáre** (to create). 12. **divínitas** (divinity). 13. **salvátio** (salvation). 14. **creátor** (creator). 15. **mácula** (stain). 16. **caro** (flesh). 17. **natus** (born). 18. **tenére** (to hold). 19. **veníre** (to come). 20. **fidélis** (faithful). 21. **grex** (flock). 22. **jusjurándum** (oath). 23. **ámodo** (from henceforth). 24. **médicus** (physician). 25. **erígere** (to erect).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
sólvere	resolve	súmere	presumption
tribúere	contribute	valére	value
nuntiáre	annunciation	delére	delete
lábium	labial	dictum	dictate
os	oral	malítia	malicious
verus	veritable	vivus	vivid
salvus	salvage	natus	native
grex	gregarious	mácula	immaculate
médicus	medical	creáre	creative
tenére	tenacious	caro	incarnate
dícere	dictate	ecclésia	ecclesiastical

c) Note the formation of

<i>these adverbs</i>	from	<i>these adjectives</i>
<b>recte</b> (rightly)		<b>rectus</b> (right)
<b>pure</b> (purely)		<b>purus</b> (pure)
<b>aeque</b> (equally)		<b>aequus</b> (equal)
<b>benigne</b> (favorably)		<b>benignus</b> (favorable)
<b>digne</b> (worthily)		<b>dignus</b> (worthy)
<b>pie</b> (mercifully)		<b>pius</b> (merciful)
<b>juste</b> (justly)		<b>justus</b> (just)
<b>male</b> (badly)		<b>malus</b> (bad)
<b>vere</b> (truly)		<b>verus</b> (true)
<b>secúre</b> (securely)		<b>secúrus</b> (secure)
<b>divíne</b> (divinely)		<b>divínus</b> (divine)
<b>mire</b> (wonderfully)		<b>mirus</b> (wonderful)
<b>alte</b> (highly, on high)		<b>altus</b> (high)



## REVIEW LESSON NUMBER II

### A. Translate these imperfect tenses into English.

1. monébam. 2. dabat. 3. vocabántur. 4. habébas. 5. ponebántur. 6. audiebátis. 7. serviébam. 8. vidébat. 9. audiébant. 10. manducabámus. 11. bibébas. 12. ibat. 13. introíbant. 14. erant. 15. potéram. 16. judicabámini. 17. cadébas. 18. affligébámini.

### B. Give the meaning of each of these verb forms.

1. movébit. 2. vénio. 3. stabat. 4. credis. 5. laetificabántur. 6. érue. 7. judicáris. 8. cadébat. 9. affligit. 10. manducáte. 11. bíbimus. 12. dic. 13. serviéntur. 14. mittunt. 15. ducam. 16. ite. 17. erat. 18. incédo. 19. sperabámus. 20. lavábo. 21. íntroit. 22. vidétis. 23. clamábant. 24. serviémini. 25. ponet.

### C. Of what verbs are the following verbs compounds?

1. circumstáre. 2. introíre. 3. indúcere. 4. benedícere. 5. permíttere. 6. dispónere. 7. adésse. 8. adveníre.

### D. Give the meaning of each of these words.

1. faciébus. 2. domum. 3. vocáris. 4. vobíscum. 5. fratrem. 6. saécula. 7. filii. 8. animábus. 9. tibi. 10. sese. 11. cívitas. 12. míserum. 13. introíbo. 14. júdica. 15. ácria. 16. cordi. 17. córporum. 18. terris. 19. visibílium. 20. majestátis. 21. discípulos. 22. puer. 23. crucis. 24. omnipoténtes. 25. spirítui. 26. incédent. 27. vidébam. 28. móniti. 29. lavábimus. 30. abdúcam. 31. peccátis. 32. sérviens. 33. adorámus. 34. créatur. 35. affligímini. 36. este. 37. duc. 38. docébant. 39. audíte. 40. grátias. 41. ecclésiæ. 42. pace. 43. hábeo. 44. credis. 45. stabat. 46. mihi. 47. ejus. 48. nostris. 49. monébitur. 50. eam.

E. Select from column B an adjective that correctly describes a noun in column A.

A	b	A	B
regno	meis	libri	beátae
Deum	christiánas	púerum	tristis
spíritus	meum	fratris	perniciósi
mánibus	aetérno	vírgini	cleméntis
eccléσίας	sancti	ánima	studiósum
orátio	justas	saeculórum	fortes
matrum	nova	hómines	claram
grátias	nostra	dómui	bonae
pars	suae	juventútis	magno
humilitátis	bonárum	lucem	ómnium
habitatiónem	tua	eccléSIam	diffícilis
famíliae	nostram	frátribus	páuperis
discípulo	divínae	léctio	suus
flammis	pío	hóminis	cathólicam
auxília	ácribus	panis	nostris

F. What Latin nouns do these verbs recall?

1. pacificáre. 2. servíre. 3. ascéndere. 4. absólvere. 5. sanctificáre. 6. benedícere. 7. salváre. 8. glorificáre. 9. eleváre.

G. Give

- Four compounds of **míttre** with their meanings.
- Three compounds of **dúcere** with their meanings.
- Four compounds of **veníre** with their meanings.

H. Like what verbs are the following verbs conjugated?

1. benedícere. 2. dispónere. 3. avértere. 4. circumdáre. 5. adésse. 6. praestáre. 7. procédere. 8. ascéndere. 9. transíre. 10. exaudíre.

I. Combine the following word groups to form complete sentences and translate each sentence into English.

1. Hómines fortes	in monte	vírginis bonae
2. Púeri páuperes	mater	dormiébant
3. Ego sum	ad civitátem	missi sunt
4. Fratres mei	a nobis	lavavérunt
5. Servi mali	se	non salvabúntur
6. Domus nostra	in civitáte	in manus tuas
7. Discípuli sui	non hic	est
8. Libros	vobis	fuérunt hódie
9. Cornua	bonos	non habébo
10. Pono	eos	data sunt
11. Pater miser	te	móniti sumus
12. Pax in terra	bonum	vocábimus et véniet
13. Non	a Deo	credunt
14. Púerum	nos	laetificat
15. Nos	in domum	introívit

**J. Give the meaning of the following:**

peccábo	docéo	scribam	dórmiam
pecco	docéam	scribo	dormiébam
peccem	docébam	scribébam	dórmio
peccábam	dócui	scripsi	dormívi
peccávi	docébo		
moveátur	créditur	judicábitur	serviébátur
movébitur	credebátur	judicabátur	servítur
motus est	créditus est	judicátus est	servítus est
movebátur	credétur	judicétur	serviátur
movétur	credátur	judicátur	serviétur
dabámini	hábiti estis	amittímini	audiémini
dámini	habebímini	amittémini	audíti estis
démini	habeámini	amittámini	audiámini
dabímini	habémini	amíssi estis	audiebámini
dati estis	habebámini	amittebámini	audímini

stabis	dírigis	delébas	vénias
stas	dirigébas	déleas	veniébas
stetísti	diréxísti	delevísti	venísti
stabas	dírigas	delébis	venis
stes	díriges	deles	vénies

## LESSON XI

### UNIT ONE

**Pax Dómini sit semper vobíscum.**     *The peace of the Lord be always with you.*

#### Vocabulary

**regnáre**, *to reign*

**timére**, *to fear, to be afraid*

**pérdere** (like **crédere**), *to lose, to destroy, to waste*

**muníre**, *to defend, to fortify*

**sonus**, -i, m., *sound*

**sanguis**, **sánguinis**, m., *blood*

**vinum**, -i, n., *wine*

**rex**, **regis**, m., *king*

**lex**, **legis**, f., *law*

**auris**, **auris** (-ium), f., *ear*

**pes**, **pedis**, m., *foot*

**finis**, **finis** (-ium), m. and f., *end, border*

**ignis**, **ignis** (-ium), m., *fire*

**cáritas**, **caritátis**, f., *charity, love*

**locus**, -i, m., *place*

**lumen**, **lúminis**, n., *light*

**munus**, **múneris**, n., *gift*

**óculus**, -i, m., *eye*

**porta**, -ae, f., *gate*

**lacus**, **lacus**, m., *lake, pit*

**vir**, **viri**, m., *man*

**altus**, -a, -um, *high*

**bene**, *well*

**autem**, *however*

**pridie** (adv.), *on the day before*

27. **Demonstratives.** These are both pronouns and adjectives.

**hic**, *this*

Singular	Plural
Nom. <b>hic</b> (haec, hoc)	<b>hi</b> (hae, haec)
Gen. <b>hujus</b>	<b>horum</b> (harum, horum)
Dat. <b>huic</b>	<b>his</b>
Acc. <b>hunc</b> (hanc, hoc)	<b>hos</b> (has, haec)
Abl. <b>hoc</b> (hac, hoc)	<b>his</b>

**ille**, *that*

Nom. <b>ille</b> (illa, illud)	<b>illi</b> (illae, illa)
Gen. <b>illius</b>	<b>illorum</b> (illarum, illorum)
Dat. <b>illi</b>	<b>illis</b>
Acc. <b>illum</b> (illam, illud)	<b>illos</b> (illas, illa)
Abl. <b>illo</b> (illa, illo)	<b>illis</b>

**iste**, *this, that, that of yours*

Nom. <b>iste</b> (ista, istud)	(The plural is regular, like that of
Gen. <b>istius</b>	<b>ille</b> .)
Dat. <b>isti</b>	
Acc. <b>istum</b> (istam, istud)	
Abl. <b>isto</b> (ista, isto)	

28. **Ipse**, *self*. This pronoun is intensive or emphatic, not reflexive. The plural is regular.

Nom. <b>ipse</b> (ipsa, ipsum), <i>he himself</i> , etc.
Gen. <b>ipsius</b>
Dat. <b>ipsi</b>
Acc. <b>ipsum</b> (ipsam, ipsum)
Abl. <b>ipso</b> (ipsa, ipso)

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Many Latin words become English by changing the last letter or the last two or three letters to *-e*. Pronounce and give the English for the following:

1. paradísus. 2. serénus. 3. replétus. 4. secúrus. 5. purus. 6. solus. 7. suavis (sweet, gentle). 8. sublímis (on high). 9. thronus. 10. virtus (also power). 11. scriptúra (writing). 12. doctrína. 13. disciplína. 14. sacrificium. 15. offícium (favor, kindness).

**B.** The prefix *de-* means *from* or *down from* and may also indicate the cessation or removal of the usual idea of the word with which it is compounded.

1. **dedúcere** (to lead from, to deduce). 2. **depónere** (to put down or aside, to deposit). 3. **denuntiáre** (to denounce). 4. **detinére** (to hold from, to detain). 5. **desperáre** (to be without hope, to despair). 6. **despícere** (to look down upon, to despise). 7. **deése** (to be lacking). 8. **dependére** (to hang from, to depend). 9. **demens** (lack of mind, demented). 10. **deprímere** (to press down, to depress).

**C.** Translate into English.

1. Vídeo domum magnam in illo monte. 2. Ipse dixit. 3. Venímus ad finem istíus viae. 4. Vitam suam in malítia pérdidit. 5. Venerunt autem prídie, ad nobis múnera danda. 6. Cathólici dedérunt beátae Maríae Vírgini nomen: porta caeli. 7. Credis hoc? 8. Sonum tubárum annuntiántem victóriam hóminum fórtium audíre potúimus. 9. Manus istae supplicántes ad caelum elevátae sunt. 10. Ad hanc civitátem véniunt qui adjutórium nostrum implórent. 11. Dicta tua in aúribus géntium perniciosárum ne perdántur. 12. Ille vir in lacum cécidit. 13. Ipsa scribit bene. 14. Vita hóminis in paradíso pura atque innocens erat. 15. Panis et vinum qui in altári sunt, corpus et sanguis Christi sunt. 16. Spe et caritáte munímur, et érimus salvi. 17. Óculi nostri mala hujus mundi vidérunt. 18. Lumen ignis fácies ómnium circumstántium illuminábat. 19. Rex illíus regni bene regnávít. 20. Pedem meum

in illo loco non p̄osui. 21. Gentes ab l̄egibus regn̄andae sunt. 22. His hom̄inibus non d̄iximus, qui in ostio exp̄ctant. 23. In nocte portae civitat̄is ab servis munieb̄antur. 24. In illa die omnes h̄omines vocab̄untur, ut domus atque fam̄ilias suas salvent. 25. Ne t̄imeas ora impīorum mala nuntīantia. 26. Servis bēatis haec m̄n̄era a suo rege miseric̄orde data sunt. 27. Rex ipse op̄era d̄irigit et omnes h̄omines civitat̄em illam m̄niunt. 28. In oculis ejus lumen caritat̄is poter̄amus vid̄ere. 29. Portae hujus civitat̄is in illo igne magno p̄rditae sunt. 30. Rex ille leges bonas dedit nobis. 31. Regn̄abant bene et istas gentes imp̄ias non tim̄ebant. 32. Hic servus intrat ut m̄n̄era regis v̄rgini ipsi det. 33. P̄uri illi hunc c̄alicem pon̄ebant in alt̄ari alto. 34. Pr̄die loca illa a viris f̄ortibus delēantur. 35. Oculis nostris vid̄emus; auribus nostris aud̄imus.

## UNIT Two

**A. 1.** Ex volunt̄ate Patris. **2.** Libera me per hoc sacros̄anctum Corpus et S̄anguinem tuum ab om̄nibus iniquitat̄ibus meis. **3.** Ego ind̄ignus s̄umere praes̄umo. **4.** Non mihi prov̄eniat in jud̄icium et condemnatīonem. **5.** D̄omine, non sum dignus, ut intres sub tectum meum. **6.** Corpus D̄omini nostri Jesu Christi cust̄odiat animam meam in vitam aet̄ernam. **7.** Laudans invoc̄abo D̄ominum, et ab inim̄icis meis salvus ero. **8.** Sanguis D̄omini nostri Jesu Christi cust̄odiat animam meam in vitam aet̄ernam. **9.** Ore s̄umpsimus. **10.** Pura mente. **11.** De m̄n̄ere tempor̄ali. **12.** Pura et sancta sacram̄enta. **13.** Deo gr̄atias. **14.** Et praesta, ut sacrificium tibi sit accept̄abile. **15.** Benedicat vos omn̄ipotens Deus, Pater et F̄ilius et Sp̄iritus Sanctus. **16.** In principio erat Verbum, et Verbum erat apud Deum, et Deus erat Verbum. **17.** Hoc erat in principio apud Deum. **18.** In ipso vita erat, et vita erat lux h̄ominum. **19.** Fuit homo missus a Deo. **20.** Hic venit in testīmonium, ut omnes crederent per illum. **21.** Non erat ille lux. **22.** In mundo erat. **23.** His qui credunt in n̄omine ejus. **24.** Et habit̄avit in nobis. **25.** Et vid̄imus gl̄oriam ejus. **26.** In die illa trem̄enda. **27.** Dies illa, dies irae, calamitat̄is et mis̄eriae. **28.** Fid̄elium om̄nium. **29.** L̄ectio libri Apocal̄ypt̄is bēati Jōannis Ap̄ostoli. **30.** Op̄era ill̄orum. **31.** Ab



auditióne mala non timébit. 32. Absólve, Dómine, ánimas ómnium fidélium. 33. Ego sum panis vivus, qui de caelo descéndi. 34. Ex hoc pane. 35. Pro mundi vita. 36. Dixit ergo eis Jesus. 37. Amen, amen dico vobis. 38. Non habébitis vitam in vobis. 39. Qui bibit meum sánguinem habet vitam aetérnam, et ego resuscitábo eum in novíssimo die. 40. Pro animábus illis.

**B.** Give the meaning of these phrases.

1. hi viri. 2. horum lácuum. 3. hujus lúminis. 4. hos pedes. 5. hunc sonum. 6. hanc malítiam. 7. hoc ságuine. 8. horum regum. 9. has portas. 10. his áuribus. 11. hanc finem. 12. huic igni. 13. haec múnera. 14. horum oculórum. 15. hoc loco.

**C.** Give the meaning of these phrases.

1. illíus caritátis. 2. illae leges. 3. illud vinum. 4. illa óstia. 5. illórum malórum. 6. illo ore. 7. illis diébus. 8. illíus fídei. 9. illis dictis. 10. illo lábio. 11. illo conspéctu. 12. illa delícta. 13. illa spes. 14. illíus mundi. 15. illum agnum.

### UNIT THREE

**A.** Give the meaning of these phrases.

1. ista múnera. 2. istos reges. 3. istae portae. 4. isti lácui. 5. istas leges. 6. ista caritas. 7. istíus lúminis. 8. istum óculum. 9. istam spem. 10. isto loco.

**B.** Vocabulary building.

a) Derivations. Find, in Units One and Two, the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. regnum (kingdom). 2. timor (fear). 3. régere (to govern). 4. audíre (to hear). 5. ánimus (mind). 6. illumináre (to illuminate). 7. virtus (power). 8. altáre (altar). 9. bonus (good). 10. dies (day). 11. pure (purely). 12. replére (to fill). 13. purgáre (to purify). 14. scríbere (to write). 15. docére (to teach). 16. discípulus (disciple).

17. **sacer** (sacred). 18. **sacerdos** (priest). 19. **dux** (leader). 20. **spes** (hope). 21. **ígnitus** (burning). 22. **praesumere** (to presume). 23. **depositio** (burial).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>timére</b>	timidity	<b>muníre</b>	munitions
<b>sonus</b>	resonant	<b>sanguis</b>	sanguine
<b>vinum</b>	vintage	<b>lex</b>	legislature
<b>pes</b>	pedestal	<b>ignis</b>	ignition
<b>locus</b>	location	<b>lumen</b>	illumination
<b>porta</b>	portal	<b>vinum</b>	vineyard
<b>vir</b>	virile	<b>altus</b>	altitude
<b>óculus</b>	occulist	<b>munus</b>	munificent

c) Observe the relation of

<i>these verbs</i>	to	<i>these nouns</i>
<b>adjuváre</b> (to help)		<b>adjuatórium</b> (help)
<b>adunáre</b> (to unite)		<b>únitás</b> (unity)
<b>aestimáre</b> (to esteem)		<b>aestimátor</b> (one who esteems)
<b>aggregáre</b> (to add to)		<b>grex</b> (flock)
<b>amáre</b> (to love)		<b>amátor</b> (lover)
<b>cogitáre</b> (to think)		<b>cogitátio</b> (thought)
<b>cóndere</b> (to found)		<b>cónditor</b> (founder, creator)
<b>connumeráre</b> (to number amongst)		<b>númerus</b> (number)
<b>discútere</b> (to disperse)		<b>discússio</b> (dispersal)
<b>donáre</b> (to give)		<b>donum</b> (gift)
<b>dormíre</b> (to sleep)		<b>dormítio</b> (sleep)

## LESSON XII

### UNIT ONE

**Sanctificétur nomen tuum.** *Hallowed be Thy name.*

#### Vocabulary

**quáerere** (quaesívi, quaesítus), *to seek, to ask*

**scire**, *to know*

**apparére**, *to appear*

**vívere** (vixi, victus), *to live*

**accéndere** (accéndi, accénsus), *to kindle*

**factor**, factóris, m., *maker*

**amor**, amóris, m., *love*

**vox**, vocis, f., *voice*

**ínítium**, -ii, n., *beginning*

**multus**, -a, -um, *many*

**mirus**, -a, -um, *wonderful*

**unigénitus**, -a, -um, *only begotten*

**tértius**, -a, -um, *third*

**defúnctus**, -a, -um, *dead*

**vesperínus**, -a, -um, *evening* (adj.)

**totus**, -a, -um (gen. totíus), *all, the whole*

**si** (conj.), *if*

**tam** (adv.), *so* (modifies adj. or adv.)

**num** (conj.), *whether*

**quis** (pron.), *who*

**quid** (pron.), *what*; (adv.) *why?*

**ubi** (adv. and conj.), *where*

**quot** (conj.), *how many*

**cam** (conj.), *when, since, although*

quantus, -a, -um (adj.), *how much, how great*

tantus, -a, -um (adj.), *so much, so great; pl. so many*

quando (adv. and conj.), *when*

29. Imperfect subjunctive. Its forms are as follows:

## Active Voice

I	II	III	IV
laudárem	monérem	dúcerem	audírem
laudáres	monéres	dúceres	audíres
laudáret	monéret	dúceret	audíret
laudarémus	monerémus	ducerémus	audirémus
laudarétis	monerétis	ducerétis	audirétis
laudárent	monérent	dúcerent	audírent

## Passive Voice

laudárer	monérer	dúcerer	audírer
laudaréris	moneréris	duceréris	audiréris
laudarétur	monerétur	ducerétur	audirétur
laudarémur	monerémur	ducerémur	audirémur
laudarémini	monerémini	ducerémini	audirémini
laudaréntur	moneréntur	duceréntur	audiréntur

30. Imperfect subjunctive of *esse*, *posse*, and *ire*.

( <i>esse, to be</i> )	( <i>posse, to be able</i> )	( <i>ire, to go</i> )
essem	possem	irem
esses	posses	ires
esset	posset	iret
essémus	possémus	irémus
essétis	possétis	irétis
essent	possent	irent

31. Further uses of the subjunctive.

a) *Result* is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by *ut* (negative *ut non*).

*My brothers were so good that they were praised by my father.* Fratres mei tam boni erant, ut a patre meo laudaréntur.  
*The men's strength was so great that they were not driven from the city.* Fortitúdo hóminum tanta erat, ut non ex civitáte repelleréntur.

b) An indirect question takes its verb in the subjunctive.

*I knew who was coming.* Scivi quis veníret.  
*He asks whether we have the book.* Quaerit num librum habeámus.  
*We do not know where she is.* Nescímus ubi sit ea.  
*He asked how many men you were sending.* Quaerébat quot hómines mitte-rétis.

c) *Cum* meaning *since (because)* and *although* governs the subjunctive.

*Since they were not at home we could not see them.* Cum domi<sup>1</sup> non essent eos vidére non poterámus. (causal clause)  
*Although they are poor they will not seek help.* Cum paúperes sint, auxiliúm non quaerent. (concessive clause)

d) *Cum* meaning *when* regularly takes the subjunctive when the time indicated is past.

*When we had given him the bread he sat down to eat it.* Cum ei panem dedissémus (pluperfect subj.), sedit ad eum manducándum.  
*When Christ was born, Herod was king.* Cum Christus natus esset, Heródes rex erat.

e) Conditional sentences of doubt and conditional sentences contrary to fact require the subjunctive in both clauses.

*If your mother should speak we would hear her.* Si mater tua dicat, eam audiámus. (pres. subj. in both clauses to express a future doubt)

<sup>1</sup> Locative case of *domus*.

<i>If he was praising them they would be good.</i>	<b>Si eos laudáret, boni essent.</b> (imp. subj. in both clauses to express an idea contrary to fact at the present moment)
<i>If he had praised them they would have been good.</i>	<b>Si eos laudavisset, boni fuissent.</b> (pluperfect subj. in both clauses to express an idea contrary to fact in the past)

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Nouns ending in **-tas** in Latin have the ending **-ty** in English. They are all feminine in Latin. Pronounce the following and give the English equivalent.

1. calámitas. 2. cláritas. 3. dígnitas. 4. divínitas. 5. humánitas. 6. humílitas. 7. iníquitas. 8. majéstas. 9. sánctitas. 10. sociétas. 11. Trínitas. 12. únitas. 13. difficúltas. 14. opportúnitas. 15. grávitás. 16. fragílitás. 17. píetas. 18. immortálitás.

**B. Verbs compounded with e- or ex-** convey the idea of *out of* or *out from*.

1. **exíre** (to go out of, to exit). 2. **edúcere** (to lead out of). 3. **emíttere** (to send out, to emit). 4. **exprímere** (to press out of, to express). 5. **excípere** (to take out of, to except). 6. **expéllere** (to drive out of, to expel). 7. **erúmpere** (to break out of, to erupt). 8. **evocáre** (to call out of, to evoke). 9. **ejícere** (to cast out of, to eject). 10. **expónere** (to put out or forth, to expose).

**C. Read and translate into English.**

1. Prídie quaerébat, quare ad civitátem venirémus. 2. Lux in caelo tam mira erat, ut omnes de ea dícerent. 3. Nescímus num hódie domi sint. 4. Si ignem in monte accendátis, flammás videámus. 5. Cum rex in civitáte esset, perfídiam illórum hóminum malórum expósuit. 6. Hic liber non dicit quot portas civitas hábeat. 7. Mater veniébat ut púeros admonéret. 8. Inimíci ejus tanti sunt, ut ab illis non

salvétur. 9. Hic panis tam bonus est, ut totum manducémus. 10. Cum nobis múnera dent, grátiae agéndae sunt. 11. Si inimícos suos timérent, muri civitátis muniréntur. 12. Sciebámus quid ad lacum addúceret. 13. Quaero quis ad domum Maríae tecum eat. 14. Mater nos vocábat ut vultum et manus nostras lavarémus. 15. Cum veritátem díceres, non in te credébant. 16. Ne repellántur quoniam ópera sua bona atque pia fuérunt. 17. Óculos meos avertébam ne misérias paúperum vidérem. 18. Nesciunt quando tibi scribat. 19. Frater meus quaerit ubi eámus. 20. Lux magna in ostio domus appáruit. 21. Cum hic víveret, semper beáta erat. 22. Cum vultus suus serénus esset, cor suum conturbátum erat. 23. Si me vocent, eos áudiam. 24. Nesciebámus quantaessent calamitátes eorum. 25. Mens vírginis tam afflícta est, ut clamáre non possit.

## UNIT Two

### A. Translate the following:

1. Credo in unum Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, factórem caeli et terrae, visibílium ómnium et invisibílium. 2. Et in unum Dóminum Jesum Christum, Fílium Dei unigénitum. 3. Deum de Deo, lumen de lúmíne, Deum verum de Deo vero. 4. Et resurréxit tertia die secúndum Scriptúras. 5. Da nobis per hujus aquae et vini mystérium. 6. Qui tecum vivit et regnat in unitáte Spíritus Sancti, Deus, per ómnia saécula saeculórum. 7. Ut in conspéctu divínae majestátis tuae, pro nostra, et totíus mundi salúte cum odóre suavitátis ascéndat. 8. Veni, sanctificátor omnípotens, aetérne Deus, et bédedic hoc sacrificium tuo sancto nómini praeparátum. 9. Incénsus istud a te bédictum, ascéndat ad te, Dómine; et descéndat super nos misericórdia tua. 10. Dirigátur, Dómine, orátio mea, sicut incénsus in conspéctu tuo; elevátio manuum meárum sacrificium vespertínus. 11. Accéndat in nobis Dóminus ignem sui amóris, et flammam aetérnae caritátis. 12. Lavábo inter innocéntes manus meas, et circúmdabo altáre tuum, Dómine, ut áudiam vocem laudis. 13. Ne perdas cum ímpiis, Deus, ánimam meam, et cum viris sánguínus vitam meam. 14. Déx-

tera eórum repléta est munéribus. 15. Pes meus stetit in directo; in ecclésiis benedicam te, Dómine. 16. Sursum corda. Habémus ad Dóminum. 17. Grátias agámus Dómino Deo nostro. 18. Caeli, caelórúmque virtútes, ac beata Séraphim exsultátione concélebrant. 19. Hosánna in excélsis. 20. Uti accépta hábeas, et benedícas, haec dona, haec múnera, haec sancta sacrificia. 21. Pro Ecclésia tua sancta cathólica. 22. Hoc sacrificium laudis. 23. Pacificáre, custodíre, adunáre, et régere. 24. Pro spe salútis. 25. Ut in ómnibus protectiónis tuae muniámur auxilio. 26. In sanctas ac venerábiles manus suas. 27. Tibi grátias agens. 28. Benedíxit, dedítque discipulis suis. 29. Manducáte ex hoc omnes. 30. Bíbite ex eo omnes.

**B.** Fill the blanks with the correct ending for the imperfect subjunctive active voice:

1. ego mitte——. 2. is veni——. 3. nos accende——. 4. tu da——. 5. vos appare——. 6. ea sci——. 7. ei regna——. 8. ego poss——. 9. nos i——. 10. id ess——.

**C.** Fill the blanks with the correct ending for the imperfect subjunctive, passive voice:

1. tu muni——. 2. nos perde——. 3. ego libera——. 4. is dirige——. 5. vos tribue——. 6. ei munda——. 7. ea doce——. 8. ego ostende——. 9. tu vide——. 10. nos muni——.

### UNIT THREE

**A.** Learn from the Appendix how the future perfect indicative and the perfect subjunctive are formed.

#### **B. Vocabulary building.**

a) **Derivations.** Find, in Units One and Two, the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. **quaésere** (to beseech). 2. **vivus** (living). 3. **fácere** (to make). 4. **amáre** (to love). 5. **vocáre** (to call). 6. **vivificáre** (to bring to life). 7. **amátor** (one who loves). 8. **multitúdo** (multitude). 9. **mirábilis** (wonderful). 10. **génitus** (begotten). 11. **quotiescúmque** (as often as). 12.



mirabilia (wonders). 13. génitrix (mother). 14. quasi (as if, like). 15. mirabiliter (wonderfully). 16. quotquot (however many). 17. factum (deed). 18. sócius (together, allied). 19. unus (one). 20. sociáre (to share in). 21. clarus (clear). 22. gravis (heavy, grave). 23. difficilis (difficult). 24. praeclárus (excellent). 25. jácere (to throw).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
apparére	apparition	vívere	revive
quaérere	question	scire	science
accéndere	incendiary	amor	amorous
vox	vocal	ínítium	initiate
unigénitus	generation	tértius	tertiary
vespertínus	vespers	totus	total
quantus	quantity	mirus	admirable
factor	benefactor	sociáre	association

c) Observe the relation of

<i>these verbs</i>	to	<i>these nouns</i>
scire		sciéntia (knowledge)
vívere		vita
fácere (to make)		factor
amáre (to love)		amor
vocáre		vox

d) Observe the force of the suffix *-issimus* when added to adjectives.

altus (high)	altíssimus (most high)
diléctus (beloved)	dilectíssimus (most beloved)
purus (pure)	puríssimus (most pure)
clarus (clear)	claríssimus (most clear)
novus (new)	novíssimus (newest, last)
justus (just)	justíssimus (most just)
sanctus (holy)	sanctíssimus (most holy)

## READING LESSON

1. Cum ergo natus esset Jesus in Bethlehem Juda in diebus Herodis regis, ecce magi ab Oriente venerunt Jerosolymam,

2. Dicentes: Ubi est qui natus est rex Judaeorum? Vidimus enim stellam ejus in Oriente, et venimus adorare eum.

3. Audiens autem Herodes rex, turbatus est, et omnis Jerosolyma cum illo.

4. Et congregans omnes principes sacerdotum, et scribas populi, sciscitabatur ab eis ubi Christus nasceretur.

5. At illi dixerunt ei: In Bethlehem Judae: Sic enim scriptum est per prophetam:

6. Et tu Bethlehem terra Juda, nequaquam minima es in principibus Juda: ex te enim exiet dux, qui regat populum meum Israel.

7. Tunc Herodes clam vocatis magis, diligenter didicit (*learned*) ab eis tempus stellae, quae apparuit eis.

8. Et mittens illos in Bethlehem, dixit: Ite, et interrogate diligenter de puero: et cum inveneritis, renuntiate mihi, ut et ego veniens adorem eum.

9. Qui cum audissent regem, abierunt. Et ecce stella, quam viderant in Oriente, antecedebat eos, usque dum veniens staret supra, ubi erat puer.

10. Videntes autem stellam gavisi sunt gaudio magno valde.

11. Et intrantes domum, invenerunt puerum cum Maria matre ejus, et procidentes adoraverunt eum: et apertis thesauris suis obtulerunt ei munera, aurum, thus, et myrrham.

12. Et responso accepto in somnis ne redirent ad Herodem, per aliam viam reversi sunt in regionem suam.

13. Qui cum recessissent, ecce angelus Domini apparuit in somnis Joseph dicens: Surge, et accipe puerum, et matrem ejus, et fuge in

Aegyptum, et esto ibi usque dum dicam tibi. Futurum est enim ut Herodes quaerat puerum ad perdendum eum.

14. Qui consurgens accepit puerum, et matrem ejus nocte, et secessit in Aegyptum.

15. Et erat ibi usque ad obitum Herodis; ut adimpleretur quod dictum est a Domino per prophetam dicentem: Ex Aegypto vocavi filium meum.

16. Tunc Herodes videns quoniam illusus esset a magis, iratus est valde, et mittens, occidit omnes pueros qui erant in Bethlehem et in omnibus finibus ejus a bimatu et infra, secundum tempus quod exquisierat a magis.

17. Tunc adimpletum est quod dictum est per Jeremiam prophetam dicentem:

18. Vox in Rama audita est, ploratus et ululatus multus: Rachel plorans filios suos, et noluit consolari, quia non sunt.

19. Defuncto autem Herode, ecce angelus Domini apparuit in somnis Joseph in Aegypto,

20. Dicens: Surge et accipe puerum et matrem ejus, et vade in terram Israel; defuncti sunt enim qui quaerebant animam pueri.

21. Qui consurgens, accepit puerum et matrem ejus, et venit in terram Israel.

22. Audiens autem quod Archelaus regnaret in Judaea pro Herode patre suo, timuit illo ire; et admonitus in somnis, accessit in partes Galilaeae.

23. Et veniens habitavit in civitate quae vocatur Nazareth; ut adimpleretur quod dictum est per prophetas: Quoniam Nazaraeus vocabitur.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium Secundum Matthaeum, caput II, 1-23.)

## LESSON XIII

### UNIT ONE

**Panem nostrum quotidiánum da nobis hódie.** *Give us this day our daily bread.*

### Vocabulary

**suávitás, suavitátis, f.,** *sweetness*

**sérvitus, servitútis, f.,** *service, servitude*

**útilitas, utilitátis, f.,** *benefit, usefulness*

**fámulus (f., -a), -i, m.,** *servant*

**ops, opis, f.,** *help*

**mors, mortis, f.,** *death*

**scelus, scéleris, n.,** *sin, crime*

**cunctus, -a, -um,** *all*

**univérsus, -a, -um,** *all*

**símilis, m. and f., símile, n.,** *like; símili modo, in like manner*

**praeclárus, -a, -um,** *excellent*

**ínferus, -a, -um,** *low; as a noun, hell*

**quotidiánus, -a, -um,** *daily*

**praetéritus, -a, -um,** *past*

**idem, éadem, idem** (decline like is, adding -dem to each form), *same*

**placére, to please, to be pleasing to**

**frángere (fregi, fractus), to break**

**coenáre, to eat supper**

**effúndere (effúdi, effúsus), to shed, to pour out**

**respícere (respéxi, respéctus), (an -io verb), to look, look upon**

**relínquere (relíqui, relíctus), to leave behind**

**remanére (remánsi, remánsus), to remain**

*trémere, to tremble*

*enim* (adverbial conj.), *for*

*postquam* (conj.), *after*

*quoque, also*

### 32. Third conjugation verbs in *-io*.

a) These verbs have the following peculiarities:

The indicative and subjunctive forms are like those of fourth conjugation verbs with two exceptions, namely: the second person singular of the present indicative passive and all persons of the imperfect subjunctive; these forms are those of the third conjugation. Thus: *fáceris, fácerem*.

The ending of the present participle is *-iens*; of the gerundive, *-iendus*.

For the complete conjugation of third conjugation *-io* verbs, see Appendix.

The imperative has the forms of the third conjugation. (But the imperative forms of *fácere* are *fac, fácite*.)

b) The commonest of these *-io* verbs are *cápio, fácio, jácio*, and their compounds.

*cápere* (*cepi, captus*), *to take*

*accíperere* (*accépi, accéptus*), *to receive, to accept*

*concíperere* (*concépi, concéptus*), *to conceive*

*percíperere* (*percépi, percéptus*), *to partake, to attain*

*recíperere* (*recépi, recéptus*), *to receive*

*suscíperere* (*suscépi, suscéptus*), *to receive*

*praecíperere* (*praecépi, praecéptus*), *to instruct*

*fácere* (*feci, factus*), *to make*

*profícere* (*proféci, proféctus*), *to avail, to benefit*

*refícere* (*reféci, reféctus*), *to refresh*

*jácere* (*jeci, jactus*), *to throw*

*ejícere* (*ejéci, ejéctus*), *to cast out*

*projícere* (*projéci, projéctus*), *to cast away*

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Many nouns are the same in both languages.

1. benefactor. 2. chorus (*also* choir). 3. clamor (cry, shout). 4. honor.
5. labor. 6. martyr. 7. odor. 8. seraph (*pl.* séraphim). 9. furor. 10. favor.
11. vigor. 12. terror. 13. error. 14. splendor. 15. cherub (*pl.* chérubim).
16. drachma.

**B. Verbs with the prefix in- (im-)** convey the idea of *in, into, on, or toward*.

1. **indúcere** (to lead into, to induce). 2. **importáre** (to bring or carry in, to import).
3. **imploráre** (to weep toward, to implore). 4. **impónere** (to put upon, to impose).
5. **inveníre** (to come upon, to find, to invent). 6. **incípere** (to take on, to begin).
7. **impendére** (to hang upon, to impend). 8. **inscríbere** (to write in, to inscribe).
9. **inspícere** (to look into, to inspect). 10. **infúndere** (to pour into, to infuse).
11. **invádere** (to go into, to invade). 12. **inspiráre** (to breathe into, to inspire).

**C. Read and give the English for the following:**

1. Timémus advéntum hostium qui véniunt ut civitátes nostras perdant.
2. Puer malus est quoniam novam tubam suam fregit.
3. Quaerébant num rex servos suos relínqueret, cum ei tam fidéliter servivísset.
4. Manus ejus tam fortes erant ut crucem magnam ab terra eleváre posset.
5. Tríbuat Deus ut ópera nostra ei pláceant.
6. Christus coenábat cum discípulis suis.
7. Domi remánsit ut patri suo scribat.
8. Fámula bona et fidélis dóminae suae panem facit.
9. Hac aqua lavábunt se et reficiéntur.
10. Illi hómínes ímpii ex dómibus suis ejectioni sunt.
11. Múnera mísimus ad eos, sed non recepérunt.
12. Cápíte hunc panem ut manducétis in via.
13. Libros suos ad terram jecerunt.
14. Non scit num rex haec dona accípiat.
15. Servi vias faciébant in terra nova.
16. Cálícem in manus suas cepit.
17. Mártyres in univérsis pártibus mundi apparuérunt, ut plebi virtútem sacrificií osténdant.
18. Tremébant quoniam scélera sua judicábántur.
19. Omnes hómínes

praeclári terrae in hac civitaté congregavérunt quia rex eos convocávit. 20. Deprecatiónes nostrae defúntis váleant. 21. Postquam ei scrípsimus, venit. 22. Christus sánguinem suum pro cunctis géntibus effúdit. 23. Ea quaerit quis cum patre remáneat. 24. Splendor lúminis caeléstis tantus erat, ut laeticáret omnes qui vidébant. 25. Invenérunt púerum et matrem suam dormiéntes.

## UNIT TWO

**A.** 1. Adjutórium nostrum in nómine Dómini, qui fecit caelum et terram. 2. Qui tollis peccáta mundi, súscipe deprecationem nostram. 3. Inítium sancti Evangéllii secúndum Lucam. 4. Súscipe, sancte Pater omnípotens, aetérne Deus, hanc immaculátam hostiam, ut mihi et illis proficiat ad salútem in vitam aetérnam. 5. Pro ómnibus fidélibus cristiánis vivis atque defúntis. 6. Cum odóre suavitatís. 7. In spírítu humilitátis, et in ánimo contríto suscipiámur a te, Dómine. 8. Ut pláceat tibi, Dómine Deus. 9. Incénsus istud a te benedíctum, ascéndat ad te, Dómine. 10. Súscipe, sancta Trínitas, hanc oblatiónem. 11. Ob memóriam passiónis, resurrectionis et ascensiónis Jesu Christi Dómini nostri. 12. Et in honórem beátae Maríae semper Vírginis, et beáti Joánnis Baptistae, et sanctorum Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, et istorum, et ómnium sanctorum, ut illis proficiat ad honórem, nobis autem ad salútem. 13. Suscipiat Dóminus sacrificium de mánibus tuis, ad laudem, et glóriam nóminis sui, ad utilitátem quoque nostram, totiúsque Ecclésiæ suae sanctae. 14. Sacrificium laudis. 15. Beatorum Apostolorum ac Mártyrum tuorum. 16. Per eúndem Christum Dóminum nostrum. 17. Hanc ígitur oblatiónem servitútis nostrae, sed et cunctae famíliae tuae, quaesumus, Dómine, ut placátus accípias. 18. Accépit panem in sanctas, ac venerábiles manus suas. 19. Hoc est enim corpus meum. 20. Síмили modo postquam coenátum est, accípiens et hunc praeclarum cálicem in sanctas, ac venerábiles manus suas: item tibi grátias agens, benedíxit, dedítque discipulis suis, dicens: Accípíte, et bíbite ex eo omnes. 21. Hic est enim calix Sánguinis mei, novi et aetérni testaménti, mystérium fídei, qui pro

vobis et pro multis effundétur in remissionem peccatorum. 22. Haec quotiescúmque feceritis, in mei memóriam faciétis. 23. Praeclárae Majestáti tuae. 24. Famulorum, famularúmque tuárum. 25. Nobis quoque peccatoribus fámulis tuis, de multitudíne miseratiónum tuárum sperántibus. 26. Cum tuis sanctis Apóstolis et Martýribus. 27. Per ipsum et cum ipso et in ipso, est tibi Deo Patri omnipoténti, in unitáte Spíritus Sancti, omnis honor, et gloria, per ómnia saécula saeculorum. Amen. 28. Líbera nos, quaesumus, Dómine, ab ómnibus malis, praeterítis, praeséntibus et futúris. 29. Ope misericórdiae tuae. 30. A peccáto simus semper líberi, et omni perturbatióne secúri. 31. Pacem relínquo vobis. 32. Ne respicias peccáta mea. 33. Per mortem tuam mundum vivificásti. 34. Cum eódem Deo Patre. 35. Panem caeléstem accípíam et nomen Dómini invocábo.

**B.** Change the infinitive to the right form of the perfect indicative.

1. ego (fácere). 2. is (cápere). 3. nos (refícere). 4. ei (ejícere). 5. vos (profícere). 6. tu (jácere). 7. ea (percípere). 8. tu (profícere). 9. vos (recípere). 10. nos (projícere). 11. ego (praecípere). 12. eae (suscípere).

**C.** Conjugate.

- a) cápere in the future indicative active.
- b) fácere in the present indicative active.
- c) jácere in the present subjunctive active.
- d) concípere in the imperfect indicative active.
- e) accípere in the perfect subjunctive passive.

### UNIT THREE

**A.** Turn to the Appendix and learn how to form the pluperfect indicative and the pluperfect subjunctive of all verbs.

**B. Vocabulary building.**

a) **Derivations.** Find, in Units One and Two, the words that have the same derivation as the following:



1. *suavis* (sweet). 2. *servíre* (to serve). 3. *família* (family). 4. *mórtuus* (dead). 5. *placátio* (propitiation). 6. *fragílitás* (frailty). 7. *despícere* (to despise). 8. *relíquiae* (relics). 9. *tremor* (fear). 10. *factor* (maker). 11. *clamáre* (to shout). 12. *honoráre* (to honor). 13. *laboriósus* (toilsome). 14. *portáre* (to carry). 15. *ploráre* (to weep). 16. *vádere* (to go). 17. *accéptus* (welcome). 18. *percéptio* (partaking). 19. *praeceptum* (precept). 20. *laetári* (to rejoice). 21. *quotídie* (adv.) (daily). 22. *infúndere* (to pour into). 23. *confúndere* (to confound). 24. *placátus* (appeased). 25. *testis* (witness).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>fámulus</i>	familiar	<i>mors</i>	mortal
<i>univérsus</i>	university	<i>símilis</i>	resemble
<i>placére</i>	placate	<i>frángere</i>	fraction
<i>relínquere</i>	relinquish	<i>remanére</i>	remnant
<i>trémere</i>	tremulous	<i>inscríbere</i>	inscription

c) Observe these word families.

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Adverb</i>
<i>suávitás</i>		<i>suavis</i>	<i>suáviter</i>
<i>sérvitus</i>	<i>servíre</i>	<i>sérvilis</i>	<i>servíliter</i>
<i>utílitás</i>	<i>uti</i> (to use)	<i>útilis</i> (useful)	<i>útiliter</i>
<i>fámulus</i>		<i>familiáris</i>	<i>familiáriter</i>
<i>mors</i>	<i>mori</i> (to die)	<i>mortális</i>	<i>mortáliter</i>

## READING LESSON

1. Videns autem Jesus turbas, ascendit in montem, et cum sedisset, accesserunt ad eum discipuli ejus.

2. Et aperiens os suum docebat eos, dicens:

3. Beati pauperes spiritu: quoniam ipsorum est regnum caelorum.

4. Beati mites: quoniam ipsi possidebunt terram.

5. Beati qui lugent: quoniam ipsi consolabuntur.

6. Beati qui esuriunt et sitiunt justitiam: quoniam ipsi saturabuntur.

7. Beati misericordes: quoniam ipsi misericordiam consequentur.

8. Beati mundo corde: quoniam ipsi Deum videbunt.

9. Beati pacifici: quoniam filii Dei vocabuntur.

10. Beati qui persecutionem patiuntur propter justitiam: quoniam ipsorum est regnum caelorum.

11. Beati estis cum maledixerint vobis, et persecuti vos fuerint, et dixerint omne malum adversum vos mentientes, propter me:

12. Guadete et exultate, quoniam merces vestra copiosa est in caelis: sic enim persecuti sunt prophetas, qui fuerunt ante vos.

13. Vos estis sal terrae. Quod si sal evanuerit, in quo salietur? Ad nihilum valet ultra nisi ut mittatur foras, et conculcetur ab hominibus.

14. Vos estis lux mundi. Non potest civitas abscondi supra montem posita.

15. Neque accendunt lucernam et ponunt eam sub modio, sed super candelabrum ut luceat omnibus qui in domo sunt.

16. Sic luceat lux vestra coram hominibus: ut videant opera vestra bona, et glorificent patrem vestrum, qui in caelis est.

17. Nolite putare quoniam veni solvere legem, aut prophetas: non veni solvere, sed adimplere.

18. Amen quippe dico vobis, donec transeat caelum et terra, *iota* unum, aut unus apex non praeteribit a lege, donec omnia fiant.

19. Qui ergo solverit unum de mandatis istis minimis et docuerit sic homines, minimus vocabitur in regno caelorum: qui autem fecerit et docuerit, his magnus vocabitur in regno caelorum.

20. Dico enim vobis, quia nisi abundaverit justitia vestra plus quam scribarum et Pharisaeorum, non intrabitis in regnum caelorum.

21. Audistis quia dictum est antiquis: Non occides: qui autem occiderit reus erit iudicio.

22. Ego autem dico vobis: quia omnis qui irascitur fratri suo, reus erit iudicio. Qui autem dixerit fratri suo, raca: reus erit concilio. Qui autem dixerit, fatue: reus erit gehennae ignis.

23. Si ergo offers munus tuum ad altare, et ibi recordatus fueris quia frater tuus habet aliquid adversum te:

24. Relinque ibi munus tuum ante altare, et vade prius reconciliari fratri tuo: et tunc veniens offeres munus tuum.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium secundum Matthaeum, caput V, 1-24.)

## LESSON XIV

### UNIT ONE

**Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, miserére nobis.** *Lamb of God, who takest away the sins of the world, have mercy on us.*

### Vocabulary

**jubére (jussi, jussus),** *to command*  
**confitéri (conféssus sum),** dep., *to confess, to praise*  
**cónsequi (consecútus sum),** dep., *to obtain, to secure*  
**ulcisci (ultus sum),** dep., *to avenge*  
**dignári,** dep., *to vouchsafe, to grant, to deign*  
**precári,** dep., *to beseech, to pray*  
**mori (mórtuus sum) (-io verb),** dep., *to die*  
**nasci (natus sum),** dep., *to be born*  
**pati (passus sum) (-io verb),** dep., *to suffer, to permit*  
**oblívisci (oblítus sum),** dep., *to forget*  
**pérfrui (perfrúctus sum)** (takes its dir. obj. in the abl.) dep., *to enjoy*  
**íngredi (ingréssus sum) (-io verb),** dep., *to walk*  
**loqui (locútus sum),** dep., *to speak*  
**miseréri (misértus sum),** dep., *to have mercy*  
**audére (ausus sum),** semi-dep., *to dare*  
**fídere (físus sum),** semi-dep., *to trust*  
**gaudére (gavísus sum),** semi-dep., *to rejoice*  
**solére (sólítus sum),** semi-dep., *to be accustomed*  
**nunquam,** *never*  
**dominátio, dominatiónis, f.,** *dominion*  
**tutaméntum, -i, n.,** *safety, safeguard*  
**mandátum, -i, n.,** *commandment, command*  
**caro, carnis, f.,** *flesh*

medéla, -ae, f., *healing remedy*

plenus, -a, -um, *full*

sócius, -a, -um, *associated with, together with*

adhuc, *yet*

33. **Deponent verbs.** These verbs have passive forms with active meanings. They should be translated by an active verb in English.

confitéri, *to praise, to confess*; confíteor, *I praise*

cónsequi, *to obtain*; cónsequor, *I obtain*

venerári, *to venerate*; véneror, *I venerate*

ulcisci, *to avenge*; ulciscor, *I avenge* (past participle, *ultus*)

34. **Semideponent verbs.** These verbs have their perfect tenses in the passive form only. The meaning, however, is active.

audére, *to dare*; ausus sum, *I have dared*

gaudére, *to rejoice*; gavisus sum, *I have rejoiced*

solére, *to be accustomed*; sólitus sum, *I have been accustomed*

fídere, *to trust*; físus sum, *I have trusted*

#### EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Many adjectives ending in *-us* in Latin have the ending *-al* in English. Pronounce and give the English for:

1. ánnuus. 2. aetérnus. 3. inférnus. 4. inimícus. 5. perpétuus. 6. univérsus. 7. matérnus. 8. corpóreus. 9. funéreus. 10. patérnus. 11. fratérnus.

**B. Prae** in composition means *before, beforehand, in advance*.

1. praecédere (to go before, to precede). 2. praescribere (to write in advance, to prescribe). 3. praedícere (to say beforehand, to predict). 4. praeférre (to bring before, to prefer). 5. praeparáre (to get ready in advance, to prepare). 6. praecládere (to close beforehand, to preclude). 7. praesidére (to sit before, to preside). 8. praecíre (to go be-

fore). 9. **praesumere** (to take beforehand, to presume). 10. **praesentire** (to feel in advance, to have a presentiment).

**C. Read and give the English for the following:**

1. Timebámus quoniam fídere eis non audebámus. 2. Diébus nostris affligitur mundus dominatióne hóminum impiórum. 3. Nescimus quis loquátur. 4. In monte ingrediebántur, cum fratrem tuum vidérent. 5. Quaesívit quid jussisses. 6. Si eis auxiliúm dedissémus, non mórtui essent. 7. Cum nimis passus sit, dimíttet inimícis suis. 8. Verba scripta in libro nunc oblítus sum. 9. Volúntas ejus tam fortis erat, ut honórem magnum consequerétur. 10. Mandáta tua non obliviscémur. 11. Intercéssit ob filii sui tutaméntum. 12. Dóminus delícta contra fámulum suum ultus est. 13. Christus in stábulo natus est. 14. Gaudére solébant, cum vocem matris suae audírent. 15. Ei fisi sumus, sed fidélis non fuit. 16. Judicáre eos non ausa est. 17. Gavisus sum, quia munus consecútus est. 18. Precátur, ut rex frátribus ejus misereátur. 19. Cum ópera sua bona et justa fúerint, laude hóminum cunctórum perfrúcti sunt. 20. Nunquam loquéntur. 21. Non obliviscebántur. 22. Jussit nos remanére hodie domi, ut mater nostra nobis oratiónes doceret. 23. Ingredebámur in via quando apparuit servus auxiliúm precans. 24. Oratiónum vespertinárum nunquam obliviscor.<sup>1</sup> 25. Propter mandátum ecclésiæ suae carnem non manducavérunt hódie.

**UNIT TWO**

**A. 1. Confitébor tibi. 2. Spera in Deo, quóniam adhuc confitébor illi, salutáre vultus mei, et Deus meus. 3. Misereátur tui omnipotens Deus. 4. Confíteor Deo omnipoténti, beátae Mariæ semper Vírgini, beáto Joánni Baptístae, sanctis apóstolis Petro et Paulo, ómnibus sanctis, et tibi, Pater, quia peccávi nimis cogitatióne, verbo, et ópere, mea culpa, mea culpa, mea máxima culpa. 5. Ídeo precor beátam Mariám semper Vírginem, beátum Michaélum Archángelum, beá-**

<sup>1</sup> Verbs of remembering and forgetting take their direct object either in the accusative or in the genitive.

tum Joánnem Baptístam, sanctos apóstolos Petrum et Paulum, omnes sanctos, et te, Pater, oráre pro me ad Dóminum Deum nostrum. 6. Misereátur vestri omnípotens Deus. 7. Et plebs tua laetábitur in te. 8. Orámus te, Dómine, per mérita sanctorum tuórum, ut indulgére dignéris ómnia peccáta mea. 9. Qui tollis peccáta mundi, miserére nobis. 10. Qui sedes ad dexteram Patris, miserére nobis. 11. Ita me tua grata miseratióne dignáre mundáre, ut sanctum Evangélium tuum digne váleam nuntiáre. 12. Ex Patre natum ante ómnia saécula. 13. Sub Póntio Piláto passus. 14. Qui locúsus est per Prophétas. 15. Confíteor unum baptísma in remisiónem peccatórum, et exspécto resurrectiónem mortuórum, et vitam ventúri saéculi. 16. Per intercessiónem beáti Michaélis Archángeli, stantis a dextris altáris incénsi, et ómnium electórum suórum, incénsus istud dignétur Dóminus benedícere et in odórem suavitatís accípere. 17. Déxtera eorum repléta est munéribus. 18. Ego autem in innocéntia mea ingressus sum. 19. Miserére mei. 20. Et illi pro nobis intercédere dignéntur in caelis. 21. Laudant Ángeli, adorant Dominatiónes. 22. Caeli, caelorumque Virtútes, ac beáta Séraphim, sócia exsultatióne concélebrant. 23. Deprecámur. 24. Pleni sunt caeli et terra glória tua. 25. Ne respicias peccáta mea, sed fidem Ecclésiae tuae; eamque secúndum voluntátem tuam pacificáre et coadunáre dignéris. 26. Percéptio córporis tui, Dómine Jesu Christe, quod ego indignus súmere praesúmo, non mihi provéniat in iudícium et condemnatiónem; sed pro tua pietáte prosit mihi ad tutaméntum mentis et córporis, et ad medélam percipiéndam. 27. Corpus tuum, Dómine, quod sumpsisti. 28. Ite, Missa est. 29. Pláceat tibi, sancta Trínitas, obséquium servitútis meae. 30. Inítium sancti Evangélii secúndum Joánnem. 31. Plenum gratiae et veritátis. 32. Sancta ergo, et salúbris est cogitatio pro defúntis exoráre, ut a peccátis solvántur. 33. Descéndi de caelo, non ut fáciam voluntátem meam, sed voluntátem ejus qui misit me. 34. Haec est autem volúntas ejus, qui misit me, Patris: ut omne, quod dedit mihi, non perdam ex eo, sed resúscitem illud in novíssimo die. 35. Haec est autem volúntas Patris mei, qui misit me: ut omnis, qui videt Fílium, et credit in eum hábeat vitam aetérnam

et ego resuscitábo eum in novíssimo die. 36. Exáudi oratióem meam, ad te omnis caro véniet.

B. Translate the following:

confitémur	confitébitur	conféssus eram	oblivíscitur
venerábimur	venerátur	venerábor	móritur
ulti sumus	ultus erat	ultus sum	loquebátur
consequámur	consequétur	cónsequor	náscitur
patiebámur	pátitur	patiébar	audent
ausi erámus	ausus est	ausus sum	patiémíni
nati sumus	náscitur	nascor	conséquimur
loquámur	lóquitur	loquar	ulcísco
moriámur	mórtuus est	móriar	venerátur
oblíti sumus	obliviscétur	oblítus sum	confiteúntur

### UNIT THREE

A. Give the meanings of these forms.

1. jussérunt. 2. ulciscímíni. 3. consequéntur. 4. dignétur. 5. precábitur. 6. mórtui sunt. 7. natus esset. 8. passus est. 9. oblivíscor. 10. perfruebámur. 11. ingrédessus sum. 12. locútus est. 13. ausi sumus. 14. gavísa erat. 15. sóliti sumus. 16. miserére. 17. confíteor. 18. ultus est. 19. áudeo. 20. loquéntur. 21. pátitur. 22. moritúri sumus. 23. jubet. 24. consecútus est. 25. dignéris. 26. patior. 27. nati sunt. 28. confitébor. 29. nascerétur. 30. oblítus esset. 31. perfrúcti sunt. 32. júbeat. 33. fidémus. 34. misereátur. 35. solébant.

B. Vocabulary building.

a) Derivations. Find in Units One and Two the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. sequi (to follow). 2. últio (vengeance). 3. indígnus (unworthy). 4. deprecári (to beseech). 5. mórtuus (dead). 6. sequéntia (continuation). 7. pássio (suffering). 8. frui (to enjoy). 9. miserátio (mercy).



10. *fides* (faith). 11. *fructus* (fruit). 12. *dóminus* (master). 13. *tutus* (safe). 14. *fidélis* (faithful). 15. *mandáre* (to command). 16. *sociáre* (to share in). 17. *annus* (year). 18. *sempitérnus* (everlasting). 19. *ínferus* (below). 20. *amícus* (friend). 21. *mater* (mother). 22. *corpus* (body). 23. *pater* (father). 24. *frater* (brother). 25. *paráre* (to prepare). 26. *sentíre* (to feel, to perceive). 27. *inúltus* (unpunished). 28. *jussus* (command). 29. *égređi* (to come out).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>fidere</i>	fiduciary	<i>mandátum</i>	mandate
<i>caro</i>	carnal	<i>sócius</i>	associate
<i>audere</i>	audacious	<i>oblivísci</i>	oblivion
<i>miseréri</i>	commiserate	<i>nasci</i>	renascent
<i>loqui</i>	loquacious	<i>cónsequi</i>	consequence
<i>mori</i>	mortuary	<i>fides</i>	fidelity

c) Observe these word families:

Noun	Adjective	Verb
<i>ultor</i> (avenger)	<i>ultrix</i> (avenging)	<i>ulcísci</i> (to avenge)
<i>dígnitas</i> (worth)	<i>dígnus</i> (worthy)	<i>dignári</i> (to consider worthy)
<i>preces</i> (prayers)	<i>precárius</i> (begged for)	<i>precári</i> (to pray)
<i>mors</i> (death)	<i>mortális</i> (mortal)	<i>mori</i> (to die)
<i>nativitas</i> (birth)	<i>naturális</i> (natural)	<i>nasci</i> (to be born)
<i>oblívio</i> (forgetfulness)	<i>obliviósus</i> (forgetful)	<i>oblivísci</i> (to forget)
<i>fructus</i> (fruit)	<i>fructuósus</i> (fruitful)	<i>frui</i> (to enjoy)
<i>miserátio</i> (mercy)	<i>miséricors</i> (merciful)	<i>miseréri</i> (to have mercy)
<i>audácia</i> (boldness)	<i>audax</i> (bold)	<i>audere</i> (to dare)
<i>fides</i> (trust)	<i>fidus</i> (trusty)	<i>fidere</i> (to trust)
<i>gaudium</i> (joy)		<i>gaudere</i> (to rejoice)

## READING LESSON

1. Cum autem descendisset de monte, secutae sunt eum turbae multae.

2. Et ecce leprosus veniens, adorabat eum, dicens: Domine, si vis, potes me mundare.

3. Et extendens Jesus manum, tetigit eum, dicens: Volo. Mundare. Et confestim mundata est lepra ejus.

4. Et ait illi Jesus: Vide, nemini dixeris: sed vade, ostende te sacerdoti, et offer munus quod praecepit Moyses, in testimonium illis.

5. Cum autem introisset Capharnaum, accessit ad eum centurio, rogans eum.

6. Et dicens: Domine, puer meus jacet in domo paralyticus, et male torquetur.

7. Et ait illi Jesus: Ego veniam et curabo eum.

8. Et respondens centurio, ait: Domine, non sum dignus ut intres sub tectum meum: sed tantum dic verbo, et sanabitur puer meus.

9. Nam et ego homo sum sub potestate constitutus, habens sub me milites, et dico huic: Vade, et vadit: et alii, Veni, et venit: et servo meo, Fac hoc, et facit.

10. Audiens autem Jesus miratus est, et sequentibus se dixit: Amen dico vobis, non inveni tantam fidem in Israel.

11. Dico autem vobis, quod multi ab Oriente, et Occidente venient, et recumbent cum Abraham et Isaac et Jacob in regno caelorum.

12. Filii autem regni ejicientur in tenebras exteriores: ibi erit fletus, et stridor dentium.

13. Et dixit Jesus centurioni: Vade, et sicut credidisti, fiat tibi. Et sanatus est puer in illa hora.

14. Et cum venisset Jesus in domum Petri, vidit socrum ejus jacentem et febricitantem.

15. Et tetigit manum ejus, et dimisit eam febris et surrexit, et ministrabat eis.

16. Vespere autem facto, obtulerunt ei multos daemonia habentes: et ejiciebat spiritus verbo: et omnes male habentes curavit:

17. Ut adimpleretur quod dictum est per Isaiam prophetam, dicentem: Ipse infirmitates nostras accepit: et aegrotationes nostras portavit.

18. Videns autem Jesus turbas multas circum se, jussit ire transfretum.

19. Et accedens unus scriba, ait illi: Magister, sequar te quocumque ieris.

20. Et dicit ei Jesus: Vulpes foveas habent, et volucres caeli nidos: filius autem hominis non habet ubi caput reclinet.

21. Alius autem de discipulis ejus ait illi: Domine, permitte me primum ire, et sepelire patrem meum.

22. Jesus autem ait illi: Sequere me, et dimitte mortuos sepelire mortuos suos.

23. Et ascendente eo in naviculam, secuti sunt eum discipuli ejus.

24. Et ecce motus magnus factus est in mari, ita ut navicula operiretur fluctibus, ipse vero dormiebat.

25. Et accesserunt ad eum discipuli ejus, et suscitaverunt eum, dicentes: Domine, salva nos, perimus.

26. Et dicit eis Jesus: Quid timidi estis, modicae fidei? Tunc surgens imperavit ventis et mari, et facta est tranquillitas magna.

27. Porro homines mirati sunt, dicentes: Qualis est hic, quia venti et mare obediunt ei?

28. Et cum venisset transfretum in regionem Gerasenorum, occurrerunt ei duo habentes daemonia, de monumentis exeuntes, saevi nimis, ita ut nemo posset transire per viam illam.

29. Et ecce clamaverunt, dicentes: Quid nobis et tibi, Jesu fili Dei? Venisti huc ante tempus torquere nos?

30. Erat autem non longe ab illis grex multorum porcorum pascens.

31. Daemones autem rogabant eum, dicentes: Si ejicis nos hinc, mitte nos in gregem porcorum.

32. Et ait illis: Ite. At illi exeuntes abierunt in porcos, et ecce impetu abiit totus grex per praeceptum in mare: et mortui sunt in aquis.

33. Pastores autem fugerunt: et venientes in civitatem, nuntiaverunt omnia, et de eis qui daemones habuerant.

34. Et ecce tota civitas exiit obviam Jesu: et viso eo rogabant ut transiret a finibus eorum.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium secundum Matthaeum, caput VIII, 1-34.)

## LESSON XV

### UNIT ONE

**Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, dona nobis pacem.** *Lamb of God, who takest away the sins of the world, grant us peace.*

### Vocabulary

**tempus, témporis, n.,** *time*

**tentátio, tentatiónis, f.,** *temptation*

**débitum, -i, n.,** *debt, trespass*

**aer, aeris, m. (pl. aeres or aera),** *air*

**tabernáculum, -i, n.,** *tabernacle*

**obséquium, -ii, n.,** *homage*

**sapiéntia, -ae, f.,** *wisdom*

**potéstas, potestátis, f.,** *power*

**lassus, -a, -um,** *tired*

**primus, -a, -um,** *first; in primis, in the first place*

**profúndus, -a, -um,** *deep*

**trádere (trádidi, tráditus),** *to deliver up, to hand over*

**dilígere (diléxi, diléctus),** *to love*

**cognóscere (cognóvi, cógnitus),** *to learn*<sup>1</sup>

**cessáre,** *to cease*

**inténdere (inténdi, inténtus or inténsus),** *to be attentive*

**mutáre,** *to change*

**pétere (petívi or -ii, petítus),** *to beseech, to ask for*

**requiéscere (requiévi, requiétus),** *to rest*

**sepelíre (sepelívi or -ii, sepúltus),** *to bury*

**tenére (ténui),** *to hold*

**sanáre,** *to heal*

**ferre (tuli, latus),** *to bring*

<sup>1</sup> In the perfect tenses this verb means *to know*.

**nemo, néminis**, m. and f., *nobody*

**nihil (nil)**, n., indecl., *nothing*

**tunc**, *then*

**ubíque**, *everywhere*

35. **Qui**. As a relative pronoun, **qui** means *who, which, or that*. As an interrogative adjective it means *what*. It is declined as follows.

Singular	Plural
Nom. <b>qui (quae, quod)</b>	<b>qui (quae, quae)</b>
Gen. <b>cujus</b>	<b>quorum (quarum, quorum)</b>
Dat. <b>cui</b>	<b>quibus</b>
Acc. <b>quem (quam, quod)</b>	<b>quos (quas, quae)</b>
Abl. <b>quo (qua, quo)</b>	<b>quibus</b>
<i>The man who is coming is my father.</i>	<b>Homo qui venit pater meus est.</b>
<i>The servants whom they were calling have come in.</i>	<b>Servae quas vocábant intravérunt.</b>
<i>The boy to whom you gave the book is studious.</i>	<b>Puer cui librum dedísti studiósus est.</b>
<i>What reward did he send to those men?</i>	<b>Quod munus misit ad illos hómines?</b>
<i>The house which you see is mine.</i>	<b>Domus quam vides est mea.</b>

36. **Quis**. The interrogative pronouns *who* and *what* are **quis** and **quid** in Latin.

Singular	Plural
Nom. <b>quis (n. quid)</b>	Like the relative <b>qui</b>
Gen. <b>cujus</b>	
Dat. <b>cui</b>	
Acc. <b>quem (n. quid)</b>	
Abl. <b>quo</b>	
<i>Who drank the wine?</i>	<b>Quis vinum bibit?</b>
<i>To whom did you write?</i>	<b>Quibus scripsístis?</b>

*Whom did he see?*

Quem vidit?

*What did they have?*

Quid habébant?

37. Indefinite pronouns and adjectives. These are compounds of *quis* and *qui* and are declined like them.

## Pronouns

some one, something	{	aliquis (n. aliquid)
		alicujus
		alicui, <i>etc.</i>
each one, every one	{	quisque (n. quidque)
		cujusque
		cuique, <i>etc.</i>
a certain one	{	quidam (quaedam, quiddam)
		cujusdam
		cuidam, <i>etc.</i>

## Adjectives

some	{	aliqui (aliqua, aliquod)
		alicujus
		alicui, <i>etc.</i>
each		quisque (quaeque, quodque)
certain		quidam (quaedam, quoddam)

38. *Ferre, to bring.* This irregular verb (as also its compounds) doubles the *r* in the infinitive, in the 2nd person sing. of the pres. ind. pass., and throughout the imperfect subjunctive. Elsewhere the *-rr* of the infinitive is not retained.

## Present Indicative

Active		Passive	
<i>fero</i>	<i>férimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>férimur</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris (ferre)</i>	<i>ferímini</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>ferúntur</i>

Observe that the present tense is slightly irregular.

## EXERCISES

**A. Cognates.** Nouns ending in *-tudo* in Latin end in *-tude* in English. They are all feminine. Pronounce and give the English for:

1. beatitúdo. 2. fortitúdo. 3. multítúdo. 4. magnítúdo. 5. lassitúdo. 6. solitúdo. 7. amplitúdo. 8. sollicitúdo. 9. altitúdo (height). 10. latitúdo (breadth). 11. longitúdo (length).

The genitive singular of these nouns is *beatitúdinis*, etc.

**B. Pro-** as a prefix signifies *forth, forward, in front of, for*.

1. **propónere** (to put forth, to propose). 2. **projícere** (to throw forth, to project). 3. **procédere** (to go forth, to proceed). 4. **prodúcere** (to lead forth, to produce). 5. **prógredi** (dep., to walk forward, to progress). 6. **prósequi** (dep., to follow forth, to pursue). 7. **providére** (to see before or in advance, to provide). 8. **promíttere** (to send forth, to promise). 9. **provocáre** (to call forth, to provoke). 10. **proclamáre** (to shout forth, to proclaim). 11. **proférre** (to bring forth). 12. **proveníre** (to come forth).

**C. Read and give the English for the following:**

1. Puer agnum díligit, quem pater suus dedit ei. 2. Vírgines, quae lassae nimis sunt, sedérunt ut requiéscent. 3. Homo praeclárus, cui scripsi, mihi respóndit. 4. Quos libros tulit? 5. Tabernáculum in quo cálicem ponit sacérdos, supra altáre est. 6. Observámus obséquium, quod hi filii boni paréntibus praestítérunt. 7. Débita sua dimitténda sunt. 8. Homo miser in manus inimicórum suórum tráditus est. 9. Mater pia, quam vidísti cum fámulis suis, Evangélia docet eis. 10. Ille vir, cujus domus in monte est, filios suos ad civitátem misit. 11. Áliquis libros sústulit, quos relíqui hic. 12. Quisque discípulus lectionem suam bene parávit hódie. 13. Quidam auxiliúm petens venit ad domum patris mei. 14. Alíquibus rex terrae illae múnera magna donábit. 15. Homínibus quibúsdam Dóminus multum dedit, multis nihil. 16. Quaeque mater scit num ópera filiórum suórum bona sint. 17. Aqua illíus lacus, quem vidétis, nimis profúnda est. 18. Postquam mórtuos



sepelivérunt, domus suas tristes rediérunt. 19. Cum sanáti sint, non cessant clamáre. 20. Néminem in via vídeo. 21. Condítio mutáta vitárum suárum laetificábat eos. 22. Quid tenes tu in manu délixtera? Nihil. 23. Verba et ópera illíus sancti praeclári univérsis géntibus cógnita sunt. 24. Si modum vivéndi ante mortem suam mutavisset, delícta sua indúlta essent. 25. Potéstas et sapiéntia regis nóbilis nostri terram nostram a malítia hóminum impiórum salvábunt. 26. Aer in illo monte suavis erat.

## UNIT TWO

**A. 1.** Introíbo ad altáre Dei; ad Deum qui laetíficat juventútem meam. 2. Emítte lucem tuam, et veritátem tuam; ipsa me deduxérunt, et adduxérunt in montem sanctum tuum, et in tabernácula tua. 3. Orámus te, Dómine, per mérita Sanctórum tuórum, quórum relíquiae hic sunt, et ómnium Sanctórum, ut indulgére dignéris ómnia peccáta mea. 4. Credo in unum Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, factórem caeli et terrae, visibílium ómnium, et invisibílium. Et in unum Dóminum Jesum Christum, Fílium Dei unigénitum. Et ex Patre natum ante ómnia saécula. Deum de Deo, lumen de lúmíne, Deum verum de Deo vero. Génitum, non factum, consubstantiálem Patri, per quem ómnia facta sunt. 5. Qui propter nos hómines et propter nostram salútem descendit de caelis. Et incarnátus est de Spírítu Sancto ex María Vírgine, et homo factus est. 6. Crucifíxus étiam pro nobis, sub Póntio Piláto passus, et sepúltus est. 7. Et íterum ventúrus est cum glória judicáre vivos et mórtuos, cujus regni non erit finis. 8. Dómine, diléxi decórem domus tuae, et locum habitatiónis glóriæ tuae. 9. Ne perdas cum ímpiis, Deus, ánimam meam, et cum viris sánguinem vitam meam; in quorum mánibus iniquitátes sunt, délixtera eórum repléta est munéribus. 10. Et illi pro nobis intercédere dignéntur in caelis, quorum memóriam ágimus in terris. 11. Vere dignum et justum est, æquum et salutáre, nos tibi semper, et ubíque grátias ágere. 12. Per quem majestátem tuam laudant Ángeli, adórant Dominatiónes, tremunt Potestátes. 13. Cum quibus et nostras voces, ut admítte júbeas, deprecámur, súpplíci confessióne dicétes: sanctus, sanctus, sanctus,

Dóminus Deus Sábaoth (of hosts). 14. Communicántes, et memóriam venerántes, in primis, gloriósae semper Vírginis Maríae, genitrícis Dei et Dómini nostri Jesu Christi. 15. Quorum méritis precibúsq;ue concédas, ut in ómnibus protectionis tuae muniámur auxílio. 16. Qui prídie quam paterétur, accépit panem in sanctas, ac venerábiles manus suas, et elevátis óculis in caelum ad te Deum Patrem suum omnipoténtem, tibi grátias agens, benedíxit, fregit, dedítque discípulis suis, dicens: Accípite, et manducáte ex hoc omnes.

**B.** Translate the following:

1. Quis locútus est? 2. Púerum vidi cui tubam dédisti. 3. Homo cum quo ingrediebátur frater meus erat. 4. Servus cujus dóminus mórtuus est, ad civitátem ibit. 5. Invénit crucem quam perdíderat. 6. Fámulae quas vocábant apparuérunt. 7. Verba quae dixit vera nimis sunt. 8. Fílii qui paréntibus placent ipsi beáti sunt. 9. Opus quod fecit praeclárum est. 10. Cui dábitus hos libros novos? 11. Quam lectiónem doces discípulos? 12. Aqua in qua stant non profúnda est. 13. Abjécit cornu quod in manu tenébat. 14. Misériæ plebis quas vidébat, conturbábant eum. 15. Osténdit ei ómnia regna quae habitúrus erat.

**C.** Change the indefinite pronouns to the correct form where necessary.

1. (aliquis) introit. 2. vídeo (quisque). 3. (quidam) dixerunt. 4. (quisque) loquor. 5. invénit (aliquis). 6. verba (quidam) vera sunt. 7. (quisque) veritátem cognóscit. 8. Scripsit (aliquis). 9. míttimus (quidam) ad domum. 10. ópera (quisque) judicabúntur. 11. Incedébat cum (aliquis). 12. (quidam) munus dat.

UNIT THREE

**A.** Make the indefinite adjectives agree correctly with the nouns.

1. aquam (aliqui). 2. (quisque) ánimæ. 3. (quidam) vias. 4.

(aliqui) filiórum. 5. regni (quisque). 6. sancto (quidam). 7. auxilií (aliqui). 8. (quidam) nómine. 9. (quisque) librum. 10. (aliqui) cornua. 11. (quidam) veritatibus. 12. (quisque) cruci. 13. (aliqui) panem. 14. (quidam) matris.

**B.** Give the present indicative active and passive of these compounds of *ferre*.

1. *auférre* (to take away). 2. *conférre* (to accompany, to confer). 3. *offérre* (to offer). 4. *perférre* (to bring up or through). 5. *proférre* (to bring out, to bring forth).

### C. Vocabulary building.

a) **Derivations.** Find in Units One and Two the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. *débitor* (debtor). 2. *notus* (known). 3. *profúndum* (depth). 4. *promissio* (promise). 5. *sepúlcrum* (sepulcher). 6. *sustinére* (to sustain). 7. *quíetas* (quiet). 8. *compétere* (to be capable of). 9. *réquies* (rest). 10. *tentáre* (to tempt). 11. *posse* (to be able). 12. *dilectíssimus* (most beloved). 13. *sanus* (healthy). 14. *beátus* (happy). 15. *fortis* (strong). 16. *lassus* (tired). 17. *multus* (many). 18. *latus* (broad). 19. *longus* (long). 20. *altus* (high). 21. *ámplius* (yet more). 22. *magnus* (large). 23. *solus* (alone). 24. *quíescens* (resting). 25. *debére* (owe, ought, must). 26. *collátio* (gathering).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>tempus</i>	temperature	<i>potéstas</i>	potentate
<i>diligere</i>	delectable	<i>cognóscere</i>	recognize
<i>débitum</i>	debit	<i>primus</i>	primitive
<i>cessáre</i>	incessant	<i>mutáre</i>	mutations
<i>pétere</i>	petition	<i>sanáre</i>	sanitary

c) Observe these word families.

Noun	Adjective	Verb
<b>sapiéntia</b> (wisdom)	<b>sápiens</b> (wise)	
<b>potéstas</b> (power)	<b>potens</b> (powerful)	<b>posse</b> (to be able)
<b>cognítio</b> (knowledge)	<b>cógnitus</b> (known)	<b>cognóscere</b> (to know)
<b>mutátio</b> (a change)	<b>mutábilis</b> (change- able)	<b>mutáre</b> (to change)
<b>réquies</b> (rest)	<b>requiétus</b> (rested)	<b>requiércere</b> (to rest)
<b>sánitas</b> (health)	<b>sanus</b> (healthy)	<b>sanáre</b> (to heal)

## REVIEW LESSON NUMBER III

**A.** Read these statements and decide whether they are right or wrong.

1. Nomen púeri Lúcia erat.
2. Christiáni credunt in unum Deum.
3. Hómines páuperes semper iníqui sunt.
4. Aquam atque vinum bíbimus.
5. Apóstoli inimíci Christi erant.
6. Óculi in mánibus sunt.
7. Pax inter omnes gentes esse potest.
8. Scríbimus délixtera manu.
9. Agni córnua habent.
10. Omnes libri boni sunt.
11. Matres semper míserae sunt.
12. Dormímus in tecto domus.
13. Panem manducámus.
14. Rex légibus regnat.
15. Cogitatiónes in mente creántur.

**B.** Translate the following.

víximus	lavábitis	munivérimus	ut possímus
vixérimus	lavámus	muniámus	póssumus
vivámus	lavémus	munímus	poterámus
vívimus	lavavérimus	munívimus	potúimus
vivémus	lavávimus	muniémus	potuérimus
míttitur	crédimus	dirigétur	audítus est
mittétur	credémus	diréctus est	audiebátur
missus est	credídimus	dirigebátur	audiátur
mittebátur	credidérimus	dirigátur	audirétur
mittátur	credámus	dirígitur	audítur
	salvabátur	moveátur	
	salvétur	movebátur	
	salvátus est	motus est	
	salvábitor	movébitur	
	salvátur	movétur	

**C.** Give the Latin word that means the opposite of each of these words.

1. aqua. 2. ánima. 3. ex. 4. cum. 5. bonus. 6. princípium. 7. beátus. 8. virgo. 9. mittere. 10. pater. 11. tristis. 12. de. 13. ire. 14. laetificáre. 15. terra. 16. manus. 17. dies. 18. fides. 19. dignus. 20. visíbilis. 21. ascéndere. 22. respóndere. 23. bene. 24. vivus. 25. ignomínia.

**D.** Give the English for these verb forms.

1. despíció. 2. condúcam. 3. invadébant. 4. ejectione est. 5. evocábit. 6. lava me. 7. munda me. 8. est. 9. peccávi. 10. ut justificéris. 11. justificáris. 12. manifestásti. 13. mundábor. 14. lavábis. 15. exsultábunt. 16. avérte. 17. dele. 18. crea. 19. ne prójicias me. 20. docébo. 21. converténtur. 22. annuntiábit. 23. dedíssem. 24. non despícies. 25. fac. 26. suscipiéntes. 27. suscípiat. 28. impóñent. 29. acceptábis. 30. dona ei. 31. exáudi. 32. véniet. 33. sperávit. 34. crédidit. 35. dormiéntibus. 36. habent. 37. resurréxit. 38. dormiérunt. 39. addúcet. 40. dícimus. 41. vívimus. 42. praeveniémus. 43. descéndet. 44. sunt. 45. relínquimur. 46. érimus. 47. erit. 48. timébit. 49. absólve. 50. est futúrus.

**E.** Give the English meaning of these active periphrastic forms (future active participle + esse).

1. ventúrus est. 2. remansúri erant. 3. dictúrus sum. 4. fractúri sunt. 5. perditúri erámus. 6. exitúri erátis. 7. regnatúrus fúerat. 8. quaesitúra est. 9. effusúrus eras. 10. accensúri sumus. 11. coenatúri erant. 12. munitúri estis. 13. sumptúrus est. 14. habitúrae erant. 15. statúri sunt.

**F.** Give the English meaning of these passive periphrastic forms (gerundive + esse).

1. dandum est. 2. audiénda sunt. 3. mittéñdi erant. 4. judicáñdae erant. 5. vocáñdi erámus. 6. ponéndum erat. 7. dicéndum est. 8. docéñda eram. 9. scribéñdum erat. 10. dirigéñdi sumus. 11. movéñdus es. 12. eruéñdi erátis. 13. liberáñdae erant. 14. serviéñdus eras. 15. relinquéñdi erámus. 16. ostendéñdi estis.

G. Fill each blank with a suitable word.

1. Manducámus ———. 2. Bíbimus ———. 3. María ——— vir-  
ginis est. 4. Lábium pars ——— est. 5. Joánnis nomen ——— est. 6.  
Mater et pater ——— famíliæ sunt. 7. Pes pars ——— est. 8. Cor in  
——— est. 9. Eccléسيا domus ——— est. 10. Tectum super ———  
est. 11. Rex ——— regnat. 12. ——— omnibus placet.

H. Give the Latin verb that tells what each of the following does  
or is intended for.

1. aqua. 2. via. 3. servus. 4. orátio. 5. lux. 6. manus. 7. domus. 8.  
cívitas. 9. crux. 10. liber. 11. fides. 12. indulgéntia. 13. mens. 14.  
volúntas. 15. spes. 16. lábia. 17. os. 18. óstium. 19. vinum. 20. rex.  
21. auris. 22. pes. 23. cáritas. 24. lumen. 25. óculus. 26. vox.

I. From the column of English words select the correct meaning  
of the Latin words.

ulcísci	same	diligere	and
nunquam	to deliver up	accéndere	upward
fratérnus	servant	mirus	to enjoy
trádere	never	quot	to enkindle
sanguis	to avenge	tutaméntum	wonderful
fámulus	help	pérfrui	how many
idem	brotherly	atque	safeguard
ops	blood	sursum	to love

frángere	safe
adhuc	voice
vox	to break
mors	full
salvus	ear
plenus	death
quoque	yet
auris	also

## READING LESSON

1. Et iterum intravit Capharnaum post dies.
2. Et auditum est quod in domo esset, et convenerunt multi, ita ut non caperet neque ad januam et loquebatur eis verbum.
3. Et venerunt ad eum ferentes paralyticum, qui a quattuor portabatur.
4. Et cum non possent offerre eum illi prae turba, nudaverunt tectum ubi erat: et patefacientes submiserunt grabatum in quo paralyticus jacebat.
5. Cum autem vidisset Jesus fidem illorum, ait paralytico: Fili, dimittuntur tibi peccata tua.
6. Erant autem illic quidam de scribis sedentes, et cogitantes in cordibus suis:
7. Quid hic sic loquitur? Blasphemat. Quis potest dimittere peccata nisi solus Deus?
8. Quo statim cognito Jesus spiritu suo quia sic cogitarent intra se, dicit illis: Quid ista cogitatis in cordibus vestris?
9. Quid est facilius dicere paralytico: Dimittuntur tibi peccata: an dicere: Surge, tolle grabatum tuum, et ambula?
10. Ut autem sciatis quia Filius hominis habet potestatem in terra dimittendi peccata (ait paralytico):
11. Tibi dico: Surge, tolle grabatum tuum et vade in domum tuam.
12. Et statim surrexit ille: et, sublato grabato, abiit coram omnibus, ita ut mirarentur omnes et honorificarent Deum, dicentes: Quia numquam sic vidimus.
13. Et egressus est rursus ad mare: omnisque turba veniebat ad eum, et docebat eos.
14. Et cum praeteriret, vidit Levi Alphaei sedentem ad telonium, et ait illi: Sequere me. Et surgens secutus est eum.



15. Et factum est, cum accumberet in domo illius, multi publicani et peccatores simul discumbebant cum Jesu et discipulis ejus: erant enim multi, qui et sequebantur eum.

16. Et scribae et Pharisei videntes quia manducaret cum publicanis et peccatoribus, dicebant discipulis ejus: Quare cum publicanis et peccatoribus manducat et bibit Magister vester?

17. Hoc audito, Jesus ait illis: Non necesse habent sani medico, sed qui male habent: non enim veni vocare justos, sed peccatores.

18. Et erant discipuli Joannis, et Pharisei jejunantes. Et veniunt, et dicunt illi: Quare discipuli Joannis et Pharisaeorum jejunant, tui autem discipuli non jejunant?

19. Et ait Jesus: Numquid possunt filii nuptiarum, quamdiu sponsus cum illis est, jejunare? Quanto tempore habent sponsum, non possunt jejunare.

20. Venient autem dies cum auferetur ab eis sponsus: et tunc jejunabunt in illis diebus.

21. Nemo assumentum panni rudis assuit vestimento veteri: alioquin aufert supplementum novum a veteri, et major scissura fit.

22. Et nemo mittit vinum novum in utres veteres: alioquin dirumpet vinum utres, et vinum effundetur, et utres peribunt. Sed vinum novum in utres novos mitti debet.

23. Et factum est iterum cum Dominus sabbatis ambularet per sata, et discipuli ejus coeperunt progredi, et vellere spicas.

24. Pharisei autem dicebant ei: Ecce, quid faciunt sabbatis quod non licet?

25. Et ait illis: Numquam legistis quid fecerit David, quando necessitatem habuit, et esuriit ipse, et qui cum eo erant?

26. Quomodo introivit in domum Dei sub Abiathar principe sacerdotum, et panes propositionis manducavit, quos non licebat manducare, nisi sacerdotibus, et dedit eis, qui cum eo erant?

27. Et dicebat eis: Sabbatum propter hominem factum est, et non homo propter sabbatum.

28. Itaque Dominus est filius hominis, etiam sabbati.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium secundum Marcum, caput II, 1-28.)

## LESSON XVI

### UNIT ONE

**Dona eis réquiem sempitérnam. Grant them eternal rest.**

#### Vocabulary

**cálculus, -i, m., coal, pebble, stone**

**orbis, orbis (gen. pl., orbium), m., world, orbit**

**antístes, antístitis, m., bishop**

**Papa, -ae, m., Pope**

**cultor, cultóris, m., worshipper, one who professes**

**incolúmitas, incolumitátis, f., safety**

**votum, -i, n., vow**

**vénia, -ae, f., pardon**

**commíxtio, commixtiónis, f., mingling, mixing**

**víscera, -um, n. pl., bowels, innermost parts**

**ténebrae, -arum, f. pl., darkness**

**consors (gen. consórtis), adj., partaking**

**illibátus, -a, -um, unblemished**

**ratus, -a, -um, ratified, settled**

**rationábilis (m. and f.), rationábile (n.), reasonable, acceptable**

**summus, -a, -um, high, highest**

**próprius, -a, -um, one's own**

**meréri (dep.), to deserve, to be worthy**

**cóndere (cóndidi, cónditus), to create, to found**

**enarráre, to tell, to relate**

**rédde(re) (réddidi, rédditus), to restore, return, to pay**

**erípere (erípui, eréptus), to rescue**

**aestimáre, to esteem**

**largíri (dep.), to grant**

**potáre, to drink**

lucére (luxi), *to shine*

perhibére, *to bring forward, to report*

rogáre, *to beseech*

vel, *or*

quotquot, *however many, as many as, all who*

**39. Ablative absolute.** This construction consists of a phrase in the ablative case made up of a noun or adjective and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns. As its name implies, it is grammatically independent of the sentence in which it occurs, that is, it does not refer to the same person or thing as the subject or object of the main verb. It is best translated by a clause introduced by *although, when, since*, or the like.

Defúntis sepúltis, abiérunt milites domus suas.

*When the dead were buried, the soldiers went home. (Literally, with the dead buried).*

Multis convocátis, intravérunt in civitátem.

*After many had been called together, they entered the city.*

Heróde rege, Christus natus est.

*At the time that Herod was king, Christ was born.*

**40. Fíeri, to be made, to become.** The verb *fácere, to make*, is irregular in the simple tenses of the passive voice. The irregular tenses (besides the passive infinitive *fíeri*) are as follows:

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present		Present	
fio	finus	fiam	fiámus
fis	fitis	fias	fiátis
fit	fiunt	fiat	fiant
Imperfect		Imperfect	
fiébam, etc.		fierem, etc.	

## Future

<b>fiam</b>	<b>fiémus</b>
<b>fies</b>	<b>fiétis</b>
<b>fiet</b>	<b>fient</b>

## EXERCISES

**A. Suffixes.** The suffix *-tor* (*f. -trix*) is added to verb stems to denote the agent or doer of an action.

1. **mercátor**, merchant (from *mercári*, to trade). 2. **explorátor**, scout (from *exploráre*, to seek out). 3. **victor**, victor (from *víncere*, to conquer). 4. **imperátor**, emperor (from *imperáre*, to command). 5. **gubernátor**, pilot, governor (from *gubernáre*, to steer, to govern). 6. **pastor**, shepherd (from *páscere*, to lead to pasture). 7. **largítor**, a liberal giver (from *largíri*, to give abundantly). 8. **scriptor**, writer (from *scríbere*, to write). 9. **génitor**, father (from *generáre*, to beget). 10. **ultor**, avenger (from *ulcisci*, to avenge). 11. **invéntor**, inventor (from *inveníre*, to find). 12. **venátrix**, huntress (from *venári*, to hunt). 13. **génetrix**, mother (from *generáre*, to beget). 14. **nutrix**, nurse (from *nutríre*, to nourish). 15. **cultor**, cultivator (from *cólere*, to cultivate).

**B. Re-** as a verb prefix means *back* or *again*.

1. **recípere** (to take back, to receive). 2. **revérti** (to turn back, to revert). 3. **repéllere** (to drive back, to repel). 4. **retinére** (to hold back, to retain, to detain). 5. **redímere** (to buy back, to redeem). 6. **rejícere** (to throw back, to reject). 7. **redíre** (to go back, to return). 8. **réddere** (to give back, to restore). 9. **reprímere** (to press back, to repress). 10. **recreáre** (to create again, to recreate). 11. **revocáre** (to call back, to revoke). 12. **renásci** (to be born again). 13. **renováre** (to make new again, to renew). 14. **remíttere** (to send back, to remit). 15. **reférre** (to bring back, to refer).

## UNIT TWO

**A. Read and translate into English.**

1. Coram rege stabant et véniam delictórum suórum petébant. 2. Apóstoli plebi enarrábant ómnia quae Dóminus díxerat fecerátque. 3. Homo tam bonus erat, ut largirétur paupéribus omne quod possidébat. 4. Quis réddere potest, id quod pérditum est? 5. Omne vinum non potavérunt; aliquid relíctum est. 6. Quaero num eas hódie ad civitátem vel remáneas hic. 7. Cum lucéret lux, ténebrae non erant. 8. Quotquot bene servivérunt ei, pater eis múnera dedit. 9. Illis diébus condidérunt civitátem, cujus nomen Roma vocátum est. 10. Si púeri ex aqua ab hómine forti erépti non essent, mórtui essent. 11. Propter ténebras inveníre non póterant montem quem eis osténdi. 12. Non merémur dona et favóres quos illi hómines generósi nobis largíti sunt. 13. Non se aestimábant dignos ad accipiéndam laudem ejus. 14. Quot púeri sciunt Papam antístidem Románum esse? 15. In cálíce commíxtio aquae et vini est. 16. Testimónium perhíbuit de conditióibus malis in quibus vivébant omnes páuperes illíus civitátis. 17. Dixítque Deus: Fiat lux. Et facta est lux. 18. Fácio hoc, ut fiam cultor fidélis religiónis meae. 19. Quaedam vota ab quoque sacerdoté faciéndá sunt. 20. In illa die treménda totus orbis terrae in flammis futúrus est. 21. Agno pérdito, púeri tristes erant. 22. Lotis mánibus suis, vírgines sedébant qui manducárent. 23. Luce visa, hómines ad montem rediérunt. 24. Auxílium oblátum, accépi-mus. 25. Pane manducáto, discípuli vinum bibérunt.

**B. 1.** Misereátur tui omnípotens Deus, et dimíssis peccátis tuis, perdúcat te ad vitam aetérnam. 2. Aufer a nobis, quaesumus, Dómine, iniquitátes nostras, ut ad Sancta sanctorum puris mereámur méntibus introíre. 3. Munda cor meum, ac lábia mea, omnípotens Deus, qui lábia Isaíae prophétae cálculo mundasti igníto, ita me tua grata miseratióne dignáre mundáre, ut sanctum Evangélium tuum digne váleam nuntiáre. 4. Súscipe, sancte Pater omnípotens, aetérne Deus, hanc immaculátam hostiam, quam ego indígnus

fámulus tuus óffero tibi, Deo meo vivo et vero, pro innumerábilibus peccátis, et offensionibus, et negligétiis meis, et pro ómnibus circumstántibus, sed et pro ómnibus fidélibus cristiánis vivis atque defúntis, ut mihi, et illis proficiat ad salútem in vitam aetérnam.

5. Deus, qui humánae substántiae dignitátem mirábiliter condidísti, et mirábiliter reformásti, da nobis per hujus aquae et vini mystérium, ejus divinitátis esse consórtes, qui humanitátis nostrae fíeri dignátus est párticeps, Jesus Christus, Fílius tuus, Dóminus noster.

6. In spírítu humilitátis, et in ánimo contríto suscipiámur a te, Dómine, et sic fiat sacrificium nostrum in conspéctu tuo hódie, ut pláceat tibi, Dómine Deus.

7. Lavábo inter innocétes, manus meas, et circúmdabo altáre tuum, Dómine, ut áudiam vocem laudis, et enárem univérsa mirábília tua.

8. Oráte fratres, ut meum ac vestrum sacrificium acceptábile fiat apud Deum Patrem omnipoténtem.

9. Te ígitur, clementíssime Pater, per Jesum Christum Fílium tuum Dóminum nostrum, súpplíces rogámus, ac pétimus, uti accépta hábeas, et benedícas, haec dona, haec múnera, haec sancta sacrificia illibáta.

10. In primis, quae tibi offérimus pro Ecclésia tua sancta cathólica, quam pacificáre, custodíre, adunáre, et régere dignéris toto orbe terrárum; una cum fámulo tuo Papa nostro, et Antístite nostro, et ómnibus orthodoxis atque cathólicae, et apóstolicae fídei cultóribus.

11. Pro spe salútis, et incolumitátis suae.

12. Tibíque reddunt vota sua aetérno Deo, vivo et vero.

13. Quam oblatiónem tu, Deus, in ómnibus, quaesumus, benedíctam, adscríptam, ratam, rationábilem, acceptabilémque fácere dignéris, ut nobis Corpus, et Sanguis fiat dilectíssimi Fílii tui Dómini nostri Jesu Christi.

14. Supra quae propítio ac seréno vultu respícere dignéris, et accépta habére, sicuti accépta habére dignátus es múnera púeri tui justí Abel, et sacrificium Patriárchae nostri Abrahae, et quod tibi obtulit summus sacérdos tuus Melchisedech, sanctum sacrificium, immaculátam hóstiam.

15. Fiat volúntas tua, sicut in caelo, et in terra.

16. Haec comíxtio, et consecrátio Córporis et Sánguinis Dómini nostri Jesu Christi, fiat accipiéntibus nobis in vitam aetérnam.

17. Corpus tuum, Dómine, quod sumpsi, et Sanguis quem potávi, adhaéreat viscéribus

meis. 18. Lux in ténebris lucet, et ténebrae eam non comprehendérunt. 19. In mundo erat, et mundus per ipsum factus est, et mundus **eum** non cognóvit. 20. In própria venit, et sui eum non recepérunt.

### UNIT THREE

**A.** Translate these ablative absolutes with a clause in English.

1. óculis elevátis. 2. dimíssis peccátis vestris. 3. viso eo. 4. viris jussis. 5. plebe docta. 6. mátribus conturbátis. 7. tubis audítis. 8. adjutório rogáto. 9. servis vocátis. 10. salváto mundo. 11. aqua bíbita. 12. vocátis nomínibus suis. 13. via osténta. 14. sanctis justificátis. 15. munéribus datis. 16. pacificáta mente sua. 17. fácie avérsa.

**B.** Give the English for the following:

1. Fiat lux. 2. Homo factus est. 3. Sic fiat sacrificíum nostrum in conspectu tuo hodie, ut pláceat tibi. 4. Oráte fratres, ut meum ac vestrum sacrificíum acceptábile fiat apud Deum Patrem omnipoténtem. 5. Fiat volúntas tua. 6. Haec commíxtio et consecrátio Córporis et Sánquini Dómini nostri Jesu Christi, fiat accipiéntibus nobis in vitam aetérnam. 7. Fiat nobis remédium sempitérnum. 8. Mundus per ipsum factus est. 9. Fáciam vos fieri piscatóres hóminum. 10. Ántequam terra fiéret. 11. Fortes facti sunt in bello. 12. Clamor factus est.

**C. Vocabulary building.**

a) **Derivations.** Find in Units One and Two the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. **cólere** (to cultivate). 2. **incólumis** (unharméd). 3. **tenebrósus** (dark). 4. **rátio** (reckoning). 5. **proprietas** (peculiarity, distinction). 6. **aestimátor** (one who esteems). 7. **cónditor** (creator). 8. **consórtium** (company). 9. **largítor** (generous giver). 10. **lux** (light). 11. **méritum** (merit). 12. **rogátio** (request, question). 13. **suscípere** (to receive). 14. **tenére** (to hold). 15. **émere** (to buy). 16. **jácere** (to throw). 17.

**invocáre** (to call upon). 18. **novus** (new). 19. **offérre** (to offer). 20. **nasci** (to be born).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>cálculus</b>	calculate	<b>cultor</b>	culture
<b>votum</b>	votary	<b>vénia</b>	venial
<b>commíxtio</b>	mixture	<b>consors</b>	consort
<b>rationábilis</b>	rational	<b>próprius</b>	property
<b>meréri</b>	meritorious	<b>aestimáre</b>	estimation
<b>largíri</b>	largesse	<b>potáre</b>	potable
<b>lucére</b>	translucent	<b>rogáre</b>	interrogatory
<b>enarráre</b>	narrative	<b>mercátor</b>	mercantile

c) Observe these word families.

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Verb</i>
<b>nóvitas</b> (new-ness)	<b>novus</b> (new)	<b>renováre</b> (to renew)
<b>ultrix</b> (avenging woman)	<b>inúltus</b> (unpunished)	<b>ulcísci</b> (to avenge)
<b>génitor</b> (father)	<b>unigénitus</b> (only begotten)	<b>generáre</b> (to beget)
<b>largítor</b> (giver)	<b>largus</b> (abundant)	<b>largíri</b> (to give abundantly)
<b>pastor</b> (shepherd)	<b>pastorális</b> (pastoral)	<b>páscere</b> (to feed)
<b>victor</b> (victor)	<b>invíctus</b> (unconquered)	<b>víncere</b> (to conquer)
<b>lux</b> (light)	<b>lúcidus</b> (bright)	<b>lucére</b> (to shine)



## READING LESSON

1. In diebus illis iterum cum turba multa esset, nec haberent, quod manducarent, convocatis discipulis, ait illis:

2. Misereor super turbam: quia ecce jam triduo sustinent me, nec habent quod manducant:

3. Et si dimisero eos jejunos in domum suam, deficient in via: quidam enim ex eis de longe venerunt.

4. Et responderunt ei discipuli sui: Unde illos quis poterit hic saturare panibus in solitudine?

5. Et interrogavit eos: Quot panes habetis? Qui dixerunt: Septem.

6. Et praecepit turbae discumbere super terram. Et accipiens septem panes, gratias agens fregit, et dabat discipulis suis ut apponerent, et apposuerunt turbae.

7. Et habebant pisciculos paucos: et ipsos benedixit, et jussit apponi.

8. Et manducaverunt, et saturati sunt, et sustulerunt quod superaverat de fragmentis, septem sportas.

9. Erant autem qui manducaverunt, quasi quattuor millia: et dimisit eos.

10. Et statim ascendens navim cum discipulis suis, venit in partes Dalmanutha.

11. Et exierunt Pharisei, coeperunt conquirere cum eo, quaerentes ab illo signum de caelo, tentantes eum.

12. Et ingemiscens spiritu, ait: Quid generatio ista signum quaerit? Amen dico vobis, si dabitur generationi isti signum.

13. Et dimittens eos, ascendit iterum navim, et abiit trans fretum.

14. Et oblitum sunt panes sumere: et nisi unum panem habebant secum in navis.

15. Et praecipiebat eis, dicens: Videte, et cavete a fermento Phariseorum, et fermento Herodis.

16. Et cogitabant ad alterutrum, dicentes: Quia panes non habemus.
17. Quo cognito, ait illis Jesus: Quid cogitatis, quia panes non habetis? Nondum cognoscitis nec intelligitis? Adhuc caecatum habetis cor vestrum?
18. Oculos habentes non videtis? et aures habentes non auditis? Nec recordamini.
19. Quando quinque panes fregi in quinque millia: quot cophinos fragmentorum plenos sustulistis? Dicunt ei: Duodecim.
20. Quando et septem panes in quattuor millia: quot sportas fragmentorum tulistis? Et dicunt ei: Septem.
21. Et dicebat eis: Quomodo nondum intelligitis?
22. Et veniunt Bethsaidam, et adducunt ei caecum, et rogabant eum ut illum tangeret.
23. Et apprehensa manu caeci, eduxit eum extra vicum: et expuens in oculos ejus impositis manibus suis, interrogavit eum si quid videret.
24. Et aspiciens, ait: Video homines velut arbores ambulantes.
25. Deinde iterum imposuit manus super oculos ejus: et coepit videre: et restitutus est ita ut clare videret omnia.
26. Et misit illum in domum suam, dicens: Vade in domum tuam: et si in vicum introieris, nemini dixeris.
27. Et egressus est Jesus, et discipuli ejus in castella Caesareae Philippi: et in via interrogabat discipulos suos, dicens eis: Quem me dicunt esse homines?
28. Qui responderunt illi, dicentes: Joannem Baptistam, alii Eliam, alii vero quasi unum de prophetis.
29. Tunc dicit illis: Vos vero quem me esse dicitis? Respondens Petrus, ait ei: Tu es Christus.
30. Et comminatus est eis, ne cui dicerent de illo.
31. Et coepit docere eos quoniam oportet filium hominis pati multa, et reprobari a senioribus, et a summis sacerdotibus, et Scribis, et occidi: et post tres dies resurgere.
32. Et palam verbum loquebatur. Et apprehendens eum Petrus, coepit increpare eum.

33. Qui conversus, et videns discipulos suos, comminatus est Petro, dicens: Vade retro me satana, quoniam non sapis quae Dei sunt, sed quae sunt hominum.

34. Et convocata turba cum discipulis suis, dixit eis: Si quis vult me sequi, denegat semetipsum: et tollat crucem suam, et sequatur me.

35. Qui enim voluerit animam suam salvam facere, perdet eam: qui autem perdiderit animam suam propter me, et Evangelium, salvam faciet eam.

36. Quid enim proderit homini, si lucretur mundum totum: et detrimentum animae suae faciat?

37. Aut quid dabit homo commutationis pro anima sua?

38. Qui enim me confusus fuerit, et verba mea in generatione ista adultera et peccatrice: et filius hominis confundetur eum, cum venerit in gloria patris sui cum angelis sanctis.

39. Et dicebat illis: Amen dico vobis, quia sunt quidam de hic stantibus, qui non gustabunt mortem donec videant regnum Dei veniens in virtute.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium secundum Marcum, caput VIII, 1-39.)

## LESSON XVII

### UNIT ONE

**Ecce Agnus Dei; ecce qui tollit peccáta mundi.**      *Behold the Lamb of God; behold Him who taketh away the sins of the world.*

### Vocabulary

**aedificáre**, *to build*  
**aperíre** (apérui, apértus), *to open*  
**aspérgere** (aspérsi, aspérsus), *to sprinkle*  
**cánere** (cécini, cantus), *to sing*  
**cógere** (coégi, coáctus), *to lead or bring together, to assemble*  
**effulgére** (effúlsi), *to shine*  
**sentíre** (sensi, sensus), *to feel*  
**deínde** (adv.), *then*  
**ita** (adv.), *so, even*  
**quasi** (adv.), *as if, like*  
**tantum** (adv.), *but, only*  
**argentum**, -i, n., *silver*  
**cinis, cíneris**, m., *ashes*  
**epíscopus**, -i, m., *bishop*  
**epístola**, -ae, f., *epistle, letter*  
**lingua**, -ae, f., *tongue*  
**sinus**, sinus, m., *breast, bosom*  
**semen, séminis**, n., *seed, descendant*  
**leo, leónis**, m., *lion*  
**milítia**, -ae, f., *army*  
**exércitus, exércitus**, m., *army, host*  
**ovis, ovis** (gen. pl., ovium), f., *sheep*  
**amárus**, -a, -um, *bitter*

benígnus, -a, -um, *favorable*

certus, -a, -um, *certain*

céterus, -a, -um, *the other*

praetérítus, -a, -um, *past*

**41. Indirect discourse.** An indirect quotation occurring after a verb meaning *to say, to think, or to know* is expressed by an infinitive with the subject in the accusative case. All subordinate clauses occurring in an indirect quotation are put in the subjunctive.

<i>They say that their sons are coming.</i>	Dicunt fílios suos veníre (pres. inf.).
<i>They say that their sons have come.</i>	Dicunt fílios suos venísse (perf. inf.).
<i>They say that their sons will come.</i>	Dicunt fílios suos ventúros esse (fut. inf.).
<i>They said that their sons were coming.</i>	Dixerunt fílios suos veníre (pres. inf.).
<i>They said that their sons had come.</i>	Dixerunt fílios suos venísse (perf. inf.).
<i>They said that their sons would come.</i>	Dixerunt fílios suos ventúros esse (fut. inf.).
<i>She knew that he was sleeping because he was tired.</i>	Sciébat eum dormíre quod lassus esset.
<i>He said that they had asked where he would be.</i>	Dixit eos quaesívísse ubi futúrus esset.

Note the following:

1) An introductory word for *that* is not needed in an indirect quotation in Latin.

2) The present infinitive is used when the time is the same as that of the principal verb.

3) The perfect infinitive is used when the time precedes that of the main verb.

4) The future infinitive is used when the time follows that of the main verb.

5) A frequent substitute for the construction given above is a subordinate clause introduced by *quod* or *quia*. The verb is in the indicative mood.

*I know that he shall rise again in the resurrection on the last day.*

**Scio quia resúrget in resurrectione in novíssimo die.**

*Study in the Appendix the infinitives of the four conjugations.*

#### EXERCISES

**A. Suffixes.** The suffix **-or** is added to verb stems to form nouns signifying *activity, condition, or state*.

1. **dolor**, pain (from **dolére**, to suffer). 2. **amor**, love (from **amáre**, to love). 3. **timor**, fear (from **timére**, to fear). 4. **labor**, labor (from **laboráre**, to labor). 5. **clamor**, cry (from **clamáre**, to cry out). 6. **error**, error (from **erráre**, to wander). 7. **splendor**, brightness (from **splendére**, to glitter). 8. **decor**, beauty (from **decoráre**, to adorn). 9. **calor**, heat (from **calére**, to be warm). 10. **sudor**, sweat (from **sudáre**, to sweat). 11. **sopor**, sleep (from **sopíre**, to put to sleep). 12. **stridor**, grating, gnashing (from **stridére**, to make a harsh noise).

**B. Compounded with verbs, sub- (sus-, suc-, sup-, suf-) means under, up, close to, to the aid of.**

1. **suscípere** (to take up, to receive). 2. **subíre** (to go under or close to). 3. **sustinére** (to hold up, to succeed to). 4. **succéndo** (to set on fire from beneath, to kindle, to inflame). 5. **subésse** (to be under). 6. **subjícere** (to throw or put under, to subjugate). 7. **submíttere** (to put under, to let down or lower). 8. **subveníre** (to come up to, to assist). 9. **succúrrere** (to run under or up to, to hasten to help, to succor). 10. **sufférre** (to carry under, to endure, to suffer). 11. **submérgeré** (to plunge under, to submerge). 12. **suppónere** (to put under).

**C. Read and give the English for the following:**

1. Dicit eos ecclésiā novam in civitatē sua aedificavisse. 2. Sacerdos dixit verba episcopi ad missas cunctas annuntiātum iri. 3. Pūeri sciēbant se non mereri ut ab patre suo sibi indulgeretur. 4. Si leo atque ovis in loco eodem simul ponerentur, leo ovem manducaret. 5. Aquam benedicerent et turbam ea aspergerent. 6. Cālicem frangere non potes, quia argēto factus est. 7. Apóstoli epístolas scribebant discipulis suis, ut eos docerent veritates quas ex ore Christi audiverant. 8. Dixit se in terram illam iturum esse, ut magnum exercitum cogeret. 9. Scimus hunc hominem multa mala passum esse. 10. Cogitat patrem vestrum jussisse hic nos remanere. 11. Dixit nobis servos vidisse lumen in monte lucens. 12. Dixi me non recepisse libros quos miseris ad me. 13. Credimus hominem primum in paradiso creatum esse. 14. Dicit fidem scripturas apostolorum inspiravisse. 15. Nesciebant lacum tam profundum esse, ita ut tota civitas in illum submergi posset. 16. Cultor terram bonam colit et semina mittit in illam. 17. Dicit omnes nomina sua in librum inscribere. 18. Dicti sumus nos non salvatum iri, si vitas nostras in malitiis perdamus. 19. Sciunt delicta inimicorum suorum non inulta futura esse. 20. Dixerunt servos christianos multo argēto redemptos esse. 21. Ne aperiant ora sua, quoniam verba eorum non audiuntur.

## UNIT TWO

1. Súpplīces te rogámus, omnípotens Deus, jube haec perférri per manus sancti Angeli tui in sublīme altáre tuum, in conspéctu divīnae majestátis tuae, ut quotquot, ex hac altáris participatióne sacrosánctum Fílii tui, Corpus et Sanguinem sumpsérimus, omni benedictiōne caeléstī et grátia repleámur. 2. Nobis quoque peccatōribus fámulis tuis, de multitudine miseratiōnum tuárum sperántibus, partem áliquam, et societátem donáre digneris, cum tuis sanctis Apóstolis, et Martýribus, et ómnibus Sanctis tuis, intra quorum nos consórtium, non aestimátor mériti, sed vénīae, quaesumus, largítor admítte. 3. Et dimítte nobis débīta nostra, sicut et nos dimíttimus debitoribus

nostris. 4. Quid retribuam Dómino pro ómnibus quae retribuit mihi? 5. Dómine, non sum dignus ut intres sub tectum meum; sed tantum dic verbo et sanábitur ánima mea. 6. Et vídimus glóriam ejus, glóriam quasi Unigéniti a Patre, plenum grátiae et veritátis. 7. Aspérge me hyssópo, et mundábor. 8. Líbera me de sanguínibus, Deus, Deus salútis meae, et exultábit língua mea justítiam tuam. 9. Dómine, lábia mea apéries. 10. Benígne fac, Dómine, in bona voluntáte tua Sion, ut aedificéntur muri Jerúsalem. 11. Exáudi oratióem meam, ad te omnis caro véniet. 12. Tuba coget omnes ante thronum. 13. Inter oves locum praesta. 14. Scio quia resúrget in resurrectione in novíssimo die. 15. Líbera eas de ore leónis. 16. Quam Ábrahae promísisti, et sémini ejus. 17. Lux aetérna lúceat eis, Dómine. 18. Líbera me, Dómine, de morte aetérna, in die illa treménda, quando caeli movéndi sunt et terra. 19. Tremens factus sum ego, et tímeo. 20. Dies illa, dies irae, calamitátis et misériae, dies magna et amára. 21. Omnis qui vivit et credit in me, non moriétur in aetérnum. 22. In diebus illis: Audívi vocem de caelo, dicéntem mihi: Scribe, Beáti mórtui, qui in Dómino moriúntur. 23. Líbera nos, quaesumus, Dómine, ab ómnibus malis, praeteritis, praeséntibus et futúris. 24. In quo nobis spes beátae resurrectionis efúlsit, ut quos contrístat certa moriéndi condítio, eósdem consolétur futúrae immortalitátis promissio. 25. Et ídeo cum Ángelis et Archángelis, cum Thronis et Dominationibus, cumque omni milítia caeléstis exercitus, hymnum glóriae tuae cánimus, sine fine dicétes: Sanctus, sanctus, sanctus.

### UNIT THREE

**A.** Change each of these sentences to indirect discourse by placing a verb of saying, thinking, or knowing before each one.

1. Cum lassae sint, non ventúrae sunt. 2. Ea vivet sola in domo illa magna super montem. 3. Abiérunt postquam opus fecérunt. 4. Eos vidit dum hic erant. 5. Multum paupéribus donat, quia bonus et clemens est. 6. Liber a patre ejus scribebátur. 7. Agnus, quem mater sua dedit ei, mórtuus est. 8. Non ei ostendébant, ubi sessúrus erat. 9. Non crede-



bámus in verba ejus, quóniam sciebámus ea vera non esse. 10. Púeri laetántur, cum patres sui eos laudant.

### B. Vocabulary building.

a) **Derivations.** Find in Units One and Two the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. spárgere (to scatter). 2. incértus (uncertain). 3. miles (soldier). 4. benígne (favorably). 5. incértum (uncertainty). 6. aedificium (building). 7. cantus (song). 8. semináre (to sow). 9. amátor (lover). 10. occurrere (to meet). 11. cantor (singer). 12. dolorósus (sorrowful). 13. cúrrere (to run).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
cánere	incantation	cógere	cogent
effulgére	effulgent	sentíre	sentiment
cinis	incinerator	epíscopus	episcopal
lingua	linguist	semen	disseminate
leo	leonine	milítia	military

c) Note these masculine nouns with their feminine equivalents.

<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>
pater (father)	mater (mother)
frater (brother)	soror (sister)
puer (boy)	virgo, puella (maiden, girl)
fílius (son)	fília (daughter)
servus (man servant)	serva (maid servant)
fámulus (man servant)	fámula (maid servant)
sanctus (man saint)	sancta (woman saint)
deus (god)	dea (goddess)
génitor (father)	génetríx (mother)
cantor (singer)	cantríx (woman singer)
venátor (hunter)	venátríx (huntress)

## READING LESSON

1. Jesus autem plenus Spiritu sancto regressus est a Jordane: et agebatur a Spiritu in desertum,

2. Diebus quadraginta, et tentabatur a diabolo. Et nihil manducavit in diebus illis: et consummatis illis esuriit.

3. Dixit autem illi diabolus: Si filius Dei es, dic lapidi huic ut panis fiat.

4. Et respondit ad illum Jesus: Scriptum est: Quia non in solo pane vivit homo, sed in omni verbo Dei.

5. Et duxit illum diabolus in montem excelsum, et ostendit illi omnia regna orbis terrae in momento temporis.

6. Et ait illi: Tibi dabo potestatem hanc universam, et gloriam illorum: quia mihi tradita sunt: et cui volo do illa.

7. Tu ergo si adoraveris coram me, erunt tua omnia.

8. Et respondens Jesus, dixit illi: Scriptum est: Dominum Deum tuum adorabis et illi soli servies.

9. Et duxit illum in Jerusalem, et statuit eum super pinnam templi et dixit illi: Si filius Dei es, mitte te hinc deorsum.

10. Scriptum est enim quod Angelis suis mandavit de te, ut conservent te.

11. Et quia in manibus tollent te, ne forte offendas ad lapidem pedem tuum.

12. Et respondens Jesus, ait illi: Dictum est: Non tentabis Dominum Deum tuum.

13. Et consummata omni tentatione, diabolus recessit ab illo usque ad tempus.

14. Et regressus est Jesus in virtute Spiritus in Galilaeam, et fama exiit per universam regionem de illo.

15. Et ipse docebat in synagogis eorum, et magnificabatur ab omnibus.

16. Et venit Nazareth, ubi erat nutritus, et intravit secundum consuetudinem suam die sabbati in synagogam, et surrexit legere.

17. Et traditus est illi Liber Isaiae prophetae. Et ut revolvit librum, invenit locum ubi scriptum erat:

18. Spiritus Domini super me: propter quod unxit me, evangelizare pauperibus misit me, sanare contritos corde.

19. Praedicare captivis remissionem, et caecis visum, dimittere confractos in remissionem, praedicare annum Domini acceptum, et diem retributionis.

20. Et cum plicuisset librum, reddidit ministro, et sedit. Et omnium in synagoga oculi erant intendentes in eum.

21. Coepit autem dicere ad illos: Quia hodie impleta est haec scriptura in auribus vestris.

22. Et omnes testimonium illi dabant: et mirabantur in verbis gratiae, quae procedebant de ore ipsius, et dicebant: Nonne hic est filius Joseph?

23. Et ait illis: Utique dicetis mihi hanc similitudinem: Medice, cura teipsum: quanta audivimus facta in Capharnaum fac et hic in patria tua.

24. Ait autem: Amen dico vobis, quia nemo propheta acceptus est in patria sua.

25. In veritate dico vobis, multae viduae erant in diebus Eliae in Israel, quando clausum est caelum annis tribus, et mensibus sex; cum facta esset fames magna in omni terra.

26. Et ad nullam illarum missus est Elias, nisi in Sarepta Sidoniae, ad mulierem viduam.

27. Et multi leprosi erant in Israel, sub Elisaeo propheta: et nemo eorum mundatus est nisi Naaman Syrus.

28. Et repleti sunt omnes in synagoga ira, haec audientes.

29. Et surrexerunt, et ejecerunt illum extra civitatem: et duxerunt illum usque ad supercilium montis, super quem civitas illorum erat aedificata, ut praecipitarent eum.

30. Ipse autem transiens per medium illorum, ibat.

31. Et descendit in Capharnaum civitatem Galilaeae, ibique docebat illos sabbatis.

32. Et stupebant in doctrina ejus, quia in potestate erat sermo ipsius.

33. Et in synagoga erat homo habens daemonium immundum, et exclamavit voce magna,

34. Dicens: Sine, quid nobis, et tibi Jesu Nazarene? venisti perdere nos? scio te quis sis, Sanctus Dei.

35. Et increpavit illum Jesus, dicens: Obmutesce, et exi ab eo. Et cum projecisset illum daemonium in medium, exiit ab illo, nihilque illum nocuit.

36. Et factus est pavor in omnibus, et colloquebantur ad invicem, dicentes: Quod est hoc verbum, quia in potestate et virtute imperat immundis spiritibus, et exeunt?

37. Et divulgabatur fama de illo in omnem locum regionis.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium secundum Lucam, caput IV, 1-37.)

## LESSON XVIII

### UNIT ONE

Corpus Dómini nostri Jesu Christi custódiat ánimam tuam in vitam aetérnam.	<i>May the body of our Lord Jesus Christ preserve thy soul to life everlasting.</i>
--	---

### Vocabulary

vínculum, -i, n., *bond, chain*  
Judaéi, Judaeórum, m., *Jews*  
poena, -ae, f., *pain, punishment, penalty*  
tártarus, -i, m., *hell*  
praémium, -ii, n., *gift, reward*  
ros, roris, m., *dew*  
os, ossis, n., *bone*  
umbra, -ae, f., *shadow*  
vicis (gen.) (nom. missing), f., *punishment, change*  
turma, -ae, f., *squadron, troop, throng*  
túmulus, -i, m., *mound, grave*  
vanus, -a, -um, *empty, vain*  
perénis (m. and f.), perénne (n.), *eternal*  
optáre, *to desire*  
litigáre, *to quarrel, to dispute, to strive*  
absorbére, *to absorb, to swallow*  
repraesentáre, *to lead; to show, to represent*  
purgáre, *to cleanse*  
juráre, *to swear*  
júngere (junxi, junctus), *to join, to bind, to unite*  
párcere (pepérci, párcitus), *to spare*

**migráre**, *to depart*

**expedíre**, *to deliver from*

**jam** (adv.), *now, already*

**ínvicem**, *one another, each other*

**ad ínvicem**, *among themselves, reciprocally*

**quómo**do (interr. adv.), *how*

**olim** (adv.), *formerly, once*

**foras** (adv.), *out of doors, outside*

**páriter** (adv.), *at the same time*

**illic** (adv.), *there*

**quondam** (adv.), *formerly, once*

**nisi, ni** (conj.), *if not, unless, except*

**42. Impersonal verbs.** An impersonal verb is one that is used in the third person singular only, its subject being the impersonal pronoun *it*.

**licére**, *to be permitted, to be lawful*

*I am permitted to do this.*

**Hoc mihi fácere licet** (It is permitted to me).

*They were permitted to enter the building.*

**Intráre in aedificium eis licébat** (It was permitted to them).

**decére**, *to fit, suit, to be becoming*

*It is suitable to offer gifts to the king.*

**Múnera regi offérre decet.**

Verbs not ordinarily impersonal are frequently used impersonally in the passive voice.

*He (they, etc.) came.*

**Ventum est** (It was come).

*They ate.*

**Coenátum est** (It was eaten).

*It happened, it came to pass.*

**Factum est** (It was made).

**43. Adjectives of special declension.** The following adjectives have **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-i** in the dative singular of all genders. Otherwise they are declined like **bonus**.

<b>alius</b> ( <i>n. aliud</i> ), other	<b>neuter</b> ( <i>neutríus</i> ) neither (of two)
<b>alter</b> , the other (of two)	
<b>ullus</b> , any	<b>solus</b> , alone
<b>nullus</b> , no, not any	<b>totus</b> , whole
<b>uter</b> ( <i>utríus</i> ), which (of two)	<b>unus</b> , one
<i>of the other man</i>	<b>alíus hómínis</b>
<i>to any mother</i>	<b>ulli matri</b>
<i>to which boy</i>	<b>utri púero</b>
<i>of neither book</i>	<b>neutríus libri</b>
<i>of the whole world</i>	<b>totíus mundi</b>

#### 44. Uses of the dative.

a) As indirect object.

*He gave me the trumpet.*

**Tubam mihi dedit.**

b) With verbs compounded with **ab, ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, post, prae, pro, sub, super.**

*He was in command of the army.*

**Exercítui praéerat.**

*She laid the bread before us.*

**Panem nobis antepósuit.**

*We promised him a reward.*

**Munus ei promísimus.**

*They will help the boy.*

**Púero subvénient.**

c) With intransitive verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure, please* or *displease, command* or *obey, serve* or *resist, believe* or *distrust, persuade, pardon, spare, envy, threaten, be angry*, and the like.

*She has served you.*

**Ea tibi servívit.**

*This book will please them.*

**Hic liber eis placébit.**

*They do not believe me.*

**Mihi non credunt.**

*He persuaded the servants.*

**Servis persuásit.**

d) To express the agent with the passive periphrastic.

*You must open the gate.*

**Porta tibi aperiénda est.** (The gate must be opened by you.)

e) To express possession with *esse*, the possessor being in the dative case.

*The boy has a book.*

*Púero liber est.* (The book is to the boy.)

f) To denote purpose.

*They will send some men as an aid to the city.*

*Hómines áliquos civitáti auxílio mittent.* (Auxílio is dative of purpose.)

#### EXERCISES

**A. Suffixes.** The endings *-io*, *-tio*, and *-tus* are added to verb stems to form verbal nouns which denote an act or the result of an act.

1. *conjurátio*, conspiracy (from *conjuráre*, to conspire). 2. *orátio*, prayer (from *oráre*, to pray). 3. *suspíció*, suspicion (from *suspícere*, to suspect). 4. *dubitátio*, doubt (from *dubitáre*, to doubt). 5. *offénsio*, offense (from *offéndere*, to offend). 6. *dedítio*, surrender (from *dédere*, to surrender). 7. *conspéctus*, sight (from *conspícere*, to look at). 8. *fructus*, fruit (from *frui*, to enjoy). 9. *luctus*, mourning (from *lugére*, to mourn). 10. *fletus*, weeping (from *flere*, to weep). 11. *cantus*, song (from *cánere*, to sing). 12. *conátus*, an attempt (from *conári*, to attempt).

**B. Trans-** as a prefix means *through* or *across*.

1. *transíre* (to go through). 2. *trádere* (to give or hand across). 3. *tradúcere* (to lead across). 4. *transfígere* (to pierce through, to transfix). 5. *transportáre* (to carry across, to transport). 6. *transférre* (to bring through, to transfer). 7. *transmíttere* (to send across, to transmit). 8. *tranáre* (to swim across).

**C.** Read the Latin and translate into English.

1. *Litigábant ad ínicem, quóniam non credébant quod eis díxerat dómínus eórum.* 2. *Si nos júngimus turmis inimicórum, nobis non*



parcétur. 3. Quómodo túmulos mórtuis olim faciébant? 4. Juravérunt, nisi migrárent ex civitaté, ipsos eos ejectúros esse foras. 5. Púeri non in domo erant, dum ego illic eram. 6. Ossa multórum sanctórum et mártýrum in illis túmulis invénta sunt. 7. Virum alium non vidi, quia in umbra stabat. 8. Dicta hujus hóminis vera sunt, sed dicta alíus vana et dolósa sunt. 9. Nullus homo per ignem transíre potest incólumis. 10. Decébat praémia offérre eis qui multum sacrificáverant pro pátria sua. 11. Quondam eos convértere ab malítiis suis conátus erat, sed conátus sui vani erant. 12. Vita ullíus hóminis sine mácula esse debet, ut álios in vias rectas addúcat. 13. Libros neutri púero dabo. 14. Nobis non licébat remanére in civitaté illa die. 15. Multae ecclésiæ discípulis in terris novis aedificándaerant. 16. Cum fámuli sui ei bene servivíssent, servitútis fidélis eórum oblítus est. 17. Ópera bona vestra vobis profíciant, diebus quibus adjutórium aliórum necessárium erit. 18. Factum est, cum ad ínvicem conjuravíssent, rex per illam viam ibat. 19. Virgínibus auxilió veniébant. 20. Illa domus meo fratri est.

## UNIT Two

**A. 1.** Tibi soli peccávi, et malum coram te feci. **2.** Dómine Jesu Christi, Rex glóriæ, líbera ánimas ómnium fidélium defunctórum de poenis inférni et de profúndo lacu. **3.** Líbera eos de ore leónis, ne absórbeat eas tártarus, ne cadant in obscúrum, sed sígnifer sanctus Míchaël repraeséntet eas in lucem sanctam, quam olim Ábrahae promisísti, et sémini ejus. **4.** Fac eas, Dómine, de morte transíre ad vitam. **5.** Praesta, quaesumus, omnipotens Deus, ut ánima fámuli tui, quae hódie de hoc saéculo migrávit, his sacrificiis purgáta, et a peccátis expedita, indulgéntiam páriter et réquiem cápiat sempitérnam. **6.** Non intres in judícium cum servo tuo, Dómine, quia nullus apud te justificábitur homo, nisi per te ómnium peccatórum ei tribuátur remíssio. **7.** Deus, cui próprium est miseréri semper et párcere, te súpplíces exorámus pro ánima fámulae tuae, quam hódie de hoc

saéculo migráre jussísti, ut non tradas eam in manus inimíci, neque obliviscáris in finem, sed júbeas eam a sanctis Angelis súscipi, et ad pátriam paradísi perdúci; ut, quia in te sperávit et crédidit, non poenas inférni sustíneat, sed gáudia aetérna possídeat. 8. In illo témpore, dixit Jesus turbis Judaeórum: Omne, quod dat mihi Pater, ad me véniet: et, eum, qui venit ad me, non ejíciam foras, quia descénderi de caelo, non ut fáciam voluntátem meam, sed voluntátem ejus, qui misit me. 9. Fidélium, Deus, omnium Cónditor et Redémptor, animábus famulórum, famularúmque tuárum remissionem cunctórum tríbue peccatórum; ut indulgéntiam quam semper optavérunt, piis supplicatióibus consequántur. 10. Litigábant ergo Judaíi ad ínvicem, dicentes: Quómodo potest hic nobis carnem suam dare ad manducándum? 11. Illumináre his, qui in ténebris et in umbra mortis sedent; ad dirigéndos pedes nostros in viam pacis. 12. Fac, quaesumus, Dómine, hanc cum servo tuo defúncto misericórdiam, ut factórum suórum, in poenis non recípiat vicem, qui tuam in votis tenuit voluntátem; ut sicut hic eum vera fides junxit fidélium turmis ita illic eum tua miserátio sóciat angélicis choris.

B. Form as many sentences as possible with the following combinations and translate each into English.

Decet	}	aqua in lacu profúnda nimis erat.
Licébat		veritátem omnes hómines docére.
Decébat		nobis, ópera Dei judicáre.
Licébit		plebi intráre in ecclésias suas.
Licet		laudáre eos qui nobis sérviant bene.
Factum est:		peccáta dimíttre eórum qui conféssi sunt.
Décuit		terra nimis tremébat.
Non licébat		repéllere inimícos qui nos affligunt.
Non decet		honoráre viros ímpios et dolósos.
Non licet		sonum tubárum et córnuum in nocte audiébant.
		viris in illa regióne vinum bíbere.
		paupéribus múnera donáre.

**C.** Change the adjective in parentheses to the right form to agree with the noun.

1. (*alius*) vínculi. 2. (*nullus*) poenae. 3. (*totus*) mundi. 4. (*solus*) praémio. 5. (*unus*) Dei. 6. (*ullus*) óssibus. 7. (*alter*) túmuli. 8. (*uter*) virum. 9. (*neuter*) leónis. 10. (*ullus*) roris. 11. (*totus*) tártaro. 12. (*unus*) exercítui. 13. (*alius*) Judaéos. 14. (*alter*) ovi. 15. (*solus*) linguae. 16. (*ullus*) epíscopo. 17. (*nullus*) cíneris. 18. (*uter*) antístiti. 19. (*alius*) cálculo. 20. (*neuter*) diei.

### UNIT THREE

**A.** Explain the use of the dative in each of these sentences.

1. Nobis panem dedérunt. 2. Adhaéreat viscéribus meis. 3. Tectum domui superpónunt. 4. Prosit mihi ad tutaméntum mentis et córporis. 5. Nemo tibi nocébit. 6. Cívitas plebi condénda est. 7. Púeri virgínibus antebunt. 8. Paupéribus succúrrit. 9. Praémia eis non placébant. 10. Domus illa fratri meo est. 11. Dona nobis pacem. 12. Muros civitáti circumdábant. 13. Fac me tuis semper inhaerére mandátis. 14. Non mihi provéniat in júdícium et condemnatióem. 15. Fuit homo missus a Deo, cui nomen erat Joáannes. 16. Pláceat tibi. 17. Miserére nobis. 18. Carthágo Románis delénda est. 19. Confíteor Deo omnipoténti. 20. Ei mandávit, ut némini id díceret. 21. Fámula dómino servit. 22. Venérunt auxilió patri suo. 23. Offérimus praeclárae majestáti tuae. 24. Mátribus et fíliis pepercérunt. 25. Grátias ágimus tibi.

**B. Vocabulary building.**

a) **Derivations.** Find in Units One and Two the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. *jusjurándum* (oath). 2. *parce* (sparingly). 3. *vincíre* (to bind). 4. *umbrósus* (shady). 5. *expeditió* (expedition). 6. *par* (equal). 7. *annus* (year). 8. *vánitas* (emptiness). 9. *sorbére* (to suck). 10. *purus* (pure). 11. *juráre* (to swear). 12. *pérfrui* (to enjoy). 13. *ire* (to go). 14. *portáre* (to carry). 15. *ferre* (to bring). 16. *nare* (to swim).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
vici	vicissitude	perénnis	perennial
absorbére	absorbent	vanus	vanity
litigáre	litigant	purgáre	purgatory
júngere	conjunction	migráre	immigrant
expedíre	expeditious	os	ossify
juráre	jury	optáre	optional
tranáre	natatorium		

c) Observe the relation of

<i>these adjectives</i>	to	<i>these verbs</i>
dúbius (doubtful)		dubitáre (to doubt)
cálidus (warm)		calére (to be warm)
tímidus (timid)		timére (to fear)
purus (pure)		purgáre (to cleanse)
fidélis (faithful)		fidere (to trust)
amábilis (loveable)		amáre (to love)
dolorósus (sorrowful)		dolére (to suffer)
sanus (healthy)		sanáre (to heal)
mutábilis (changeable)		mutáre (to change)
salvus (safe)		salváre (to save)
vivus (living)		vívere (to live)
miséricors (merciful)		miseréri (to have mercy)

## READING LESSON

1. Et factum est cum esset in quodam loco orans, ut cessavit, dixit unus ex discipulis ejus ad eum: Domine, doce nos orare, sicut docuit et Joannes discipulos suos.

2. Et ait illis: Cum oratis, dicite: Pater, sanctificetur nomen tuum. Adveniat regnum tuum.

3. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie.

4. Et dimitte nobis peccata nostra, siquidem et ipsi dimittimus omni debenti nobis. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem.

5. Et ait ad illos: Quis vestrum habebit amicum, et ibit ad illum media nocte, et dicet illi: Amice, commoda mihi tres panes.

6. Quoniam amicus meus venit de via ad me, et non habeo quod ponam ante illum,

7. Et ille deintus respondens dicat: Noli mihi molestus esse, jam ostium clausum est, et pueri mei mecum sunt in cubili: non possum surgere, et dare tibi.

8. Et si ille perseveraverit pulsans, dico vobis: et si non dabit illi surgens eo quod amicus ejus sit, propter improbitatem tamen ejus surget, et dabit illi quotquot habet necessarios.

9. Et ego dico vobis: Petite, et dabitur vobis: quaerite, et invenietis: pulsate, et aperietur vobis.

10. Omnis enim qui petit, accipit: et qui quaerit, invenit: et pulsanti aperietur.

11. Quis autem ex vobis patrem petit panem, numquid lapidem dabit illi? Aut piscem: numquid pro pisce serpentem dabit illi?

12. Aut si petierit ovum: numquid porriget illi scorpionem?

13. Si ergo vos cum sitis mali, nostis bona data dare filiis vestris: quanto magis Pater vester de caelo dabit spiritum bonum petentibus se?

14. Et erat ejiciens daemonium, et illud erat mutum. Et cum eiecisset daemonium, locutus est mutus, et admiratae sunt turbae.

15. Quidam autem ex eis dixerunt: In Beelzebub principe daemoniorum eiecit daemonia.

16. Et alii tentantes, signum de caelo quaerebant ab eo.

17. Ipse autem ut videt cogitationes eorum, dixit eis: Omne regnum in seipsum divisum desolabitur, et domus supra domum cadet.

18. Si autem et Satanus in seipsum divisus est, quomodo stabit regnum ejus? quia dicitis in Beelzebub me eiecere daemonia.

19. Si autem ego in Beelzebub eicio daemonia: filii vestri in quo ejicient? Ideo ipsi iudices vestri erunt.

20. Porro si in digito Dei eicio daemonia: profecto pervenit in vos regnum Dei.

21. Cum fortis armatus custodit atrium suum, in pace sunt ea quae possidet.

22. Si autem fortior eo superveniens vicerit eum, universa arma ejus auferet, in quibus confidebat, et spolia ejus distribuet.

23. Qui non est mecum, contra me est: et qui non colligit mecum, dispergit.

24. Cum immundus spiritus exierit de homine, ambulat per loca inaquosa, quaerens requiem: et non inveniens dicit: Revertar in domum meam unde exivi.

25. Et cum venerit, invenit eam scopis mundatam et ornatam.

26. Tunc vadit, et assumit septem alios spiritus secum, nequiores se, et ingressi habitant ibi. Et fiunt novissima hominis illius pejora prioribus.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium secundum Lucam, caput XI, 1-26.)

## LESSON XIX

### UNIT ONE

**Ite, Missa est.**      *Go, the Mass is finished.*

#### Vocabulary

**relaxáre**, *to loosen*

**annúere** (**ánnui**), *to assent, to nod to, to hear*

**constitúere** (**constitui**, **constitútus**), *to constitute, to decree*

**contráhere** (**contráxi**, **contráctus**), *to contract*

**coronáre**, *to crown*

**dealbáre**, *to make white*

**delectáre**, *to be delighted*

**discútere** (**-io verb**) (**discússi**, **discússus**), *to disperse, to judge*

**gérere** (**gessi**, **gestus**), *to carry, to manage*

**ignoráre**, *to be ignorant of, not to know*

**sequestráre**, *to separate*

**latére**, *to lie hidden*

**útique**, *indeed, certainly*

**certámen**, **certáminis**, **n.**, *strife*

**cíthara**, **-ae**, **f.**, *harp*

**cura**, **-ae**, **f.**, *care*

**favilla**, **-ae**, **f.**, *ashes*

**haedus**, **-i**, **m.**, *goat*

**nix**, **nivis**, **f.**, *snow*

**reus**, **rei**, **m.**, *criminal, sinner; as adj., guilty*

**incolátus**, **incolátus**, **m.**, *sojourn, residence*

**cassus**, **-a**, **-um**, *vain, worthless*

**contribulátus**, **-a**, **-um**, *troubled*

**horréndus, -a, -um, dreadful**

**lacrimósus, -a, -um, tearful**

**quisquis** (decline both parts like *quis*), *whoever*

45. **Comparison of adjectives and adverbs.** The comparative of adjectives is formed by adding **-ior** (neuter, **-ius**) to the base of the positive, the comparative of adverbs being, for the most part, the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective. The superlative is usually formed by adding to the base of the positive **-issimus** for adjectives ending in **-s** or **-x** (adverbs **-íssime**), **-rimus** for adjectives ending in **-r** (adverbs **-rime**), and **-limus** for adjectives ending in **-ilis** (adverbs **-lime**).

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
<b>altus</b> , high	<b>áltior</b> , higher	<b>altíssimus</b> , highest
<b>fortis</b> , strong	<b>fórtior</b> , stronger	<b>fortíssimus</b> , strongest
<b>velox</b> , swift	<b>velócior</b> , swifter	<b>velocíssimus</b> , swiftest
<b>miser</b> , wretched	<b>misérior</b> , more wretched	<b>misérrimus</b> , most wretched
<b>acer</b> , sharp	<b>ácrior</b> , sharper	<b>acérrimus</b> , sharpest
<b>fácilis</b> , easy	<b>fácilior</b> , easier	<b>facíllimus</b> , easiest
<b>diffícilis</b> , difficult	<b>diffícilior</b> , more diffi- cult	<b>difficíllimus</b> , most difficult
<b>húmilis</b> , humble	<b>humílior</b> , humbler	<b>humíllimus</b> , hum- blest
<b>fórtiter</b> , bravely	<b>fórtius</b> , more bravely	<b>fortíssime</b> , most bravely
<b>mísere</b> , wretchedly	<b>misérius</b> , more wretchedly	<b>misérrime</b> , most wretchedly
<b>fácilis</b> , easily	<b>fácilius</b> , more easily	<b>facíllime</b> , most easily
<b>ácrius</b> , sharply	<b>ácrius</b> , more sharply	<b>acérrime</b> , most sharply

46. **Irregular comparisons.** Some common adjectives and adverbs are compared irregularly.



Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, good	mélior, better	óptimus, best
malus, bad	pejor, worse	péssimus, worst
magnus, great	major, greater	máximus, greatest
parvus, small	minor, smaller	mínimus, smallest
bene, well	mélius, better	óptime, best
male, badly	pejus, worse	péssime, worst
magnópere, greatly	magis, more	máxime, most
multum, much	plus, more	plúrimum, most
parum, little	minus, less	mínime, least

47. *Velle, to wish, to be willing; nolle, to be unwilling.* These partly irregular verbs double the l only in the infinitive and in the imperfect subjunctive. Elsewhere they have but one l. The present indicative only presents special difficulty.

#### Present Indicative

(velle, to wish, to be willing)		(nolle, to be unwilling)	
volo	vólumus	nolo	nólumus
vis	vultis	non vis	non vultis
vult	volunt	non vult	nolunt

The imperative of *nolle* is often used with an infinitive to express a command: *Noli dícere, Do not say.*

See Appendix for the remaining tenses.

#### 48. Uses of the ablative.

a) Ablative absolute.

*When they had received the king's commands they returned to the city.*      *Mandátis regis accéptis, ad civitátem redivérunť.*

b) Accompaniment with *cum*.

*The boys went to church with their father.*      *Púeri cum patre suo ad ecclé-siam iérunt.*

c) After a comparative when *quam* (*than*) is omitted.

*The boy is taller than his father.* { *Filius major est quam pater.*  
 { *Filius major patre est.*

d) To express the agent or doer of an action with the passive voice and the preposition *ab* (a).

*The kingdom was saved by its faithful men.* *Regnum ab hominibus suis fidelibus salvabatur.*

e) To express cause without a preposition.

*They all shouted with joy.* *Omnes gaudio clamabant.*

f) To express degree of difference in a sentence involving a comparison.

*This house is ten feet higher than that one.* *Haec domus decem pedibus altior est quam illa.*

g) To express manner with or without the preposition *cum*.

*They entered the city with loud shouts.* *Magnis clamoribus introibant in civitatem.*

h) To express means or instrument without a preposition.

*They have been saved by the grace of God.* *Gratia Dei salvati sunt.*

i) To express place *in*, *on*, or *from which* with the prepositions *in*, *ab*, *de*, and *ex*.

*They are standing in the shade.* *Stant in umbra.*  
*We live on the earth.* *In terra vivimus.*  
*They come from Rome.* *Roma veniunt.*  
*He descended from heaven.* *Descendit de caelis.*  
*They went out of the house.* *Ex domo ierunt.*

j) To express quality or description without a preposition, the noun being modified by an adjective.

*He was a king of great power.* *Rex magna potestate erat.*

k) To express specification without a preposition.

*He was ever diligent in the cause of peace.* Causa pacis semper diligens erat.

l) To express separation with or without a preposition.

*They will be delivered from their miseries.* Misériis suis eruéntur.

*From all evil, O Lord, deliver us.* Ab omni malo, líbera nos, Dómine.

m) To express time when, with or without a preposition.

*In one day many buildings were burned.* Una die multa aedificia cremáta sunt.

*Mercifully grant peace in our days.* Da propítius pacem in diébus nostris.

n) Certain prepositions, *ab, de, cum, ex, sine, pro,* and *prae* regularly govern the ablative.

*We cannot do this without help.* Non póssumus hoc fácere sine auxilió.

*They will speak in our behalf.* Loquéntur pro nobis.

*The men walked ahead of the boys.* Viri prae púeris ingrési sunt.

o) The deponent verbs *uti (to use), frui (to enjoy), fungi (to perform), potíri (to take possession of), vesci (to eat)* and their compounds take their direct objective in the ablative case.

*He will use our books.* Nostris libris utétur.

*They are enjoying their new freedom.* Nova libertáte sua fruúntur.

*He has performed his tasks well.* Opéribus suis bene functus est.

*The army got possession of all the hills around the city.* Milítia potíta est ómnibus móntibus circum civitátem.

*They eat meat and bread.* Carne atque pane vescunt.

## EXERCISES

**A. Suffixes.** The suffixes **-men**, **-mentum**, **-bulum**, **-culum**, **-crum**, **-trum** are added to verb stems to denote means or instrument.

1. **nomen**, name (from **nóscere**, to know; that is, a means of knowing). 2. **vínculum**, bond (from **vincíre**, to bind; that is, a means of binding). 3. **flúmen**, river (from **flúere**, to flow). 4. **certámen**, strife (from **certáre**, to contend). 5. **semen**, seed (from **sérere**, to sow). 6. **lumen**, light (from **lucére**, to shine). 7. **testaméntum**, testament (from **testári**, to bear witness). 8. **firmaméntum**, firmament, prop (from **firmáre**, to make firm). 9. **sepúlcrum**, sepulcher (from **sepelíre**, to bury). 10. **tutaméntum**, safeguard (from **tutáre**, to protect). 11. **monstrum**, portent (from **monére**, to warn). 12. **stábulum**, stable (from **stare**, to stand).

**B.** The prefix **in-** with adjectives has a negative force.

1. **inimícus**, enemy (**in** + **amícus** = not friendly). 2. **incredíbilis**, incredible (**in** + **credíbilis** = not credible). 3. **immortális**, immortal (**in** (**im**) + **mortális** = not mortal). 4. **incógnitus**, unknown (**in** + **cógnitus** = not known). 5. **ínsciens**, unaware (**in** + **sciens** = not knowing). 6. **iníquus**, uneven, unjust (**in** + **aequus** = not even). 7. **inútilis**, useless (**in** + **útilis** = not useful). 8. **indígnus**, unworthy (**in** + **dignus** = not worthy). 9. **inúltus**, unavenged (**in** + **ultus** = not avenged). 10. **incértus**, uncertain (**in** + **certus** = not certain). 11. **immúndus**, unclean (**in** + **mundus** = not clean). 12. **immaculátus**, immaculate (**in** + **maculátus** = not stained). 13. **ínnocens**, innocent (**in** + **nocens** = not harmful). 14. **infórmis**, shapeless (**in** + **forma** = not having a form).

## UNIT TWO

**A.** Read and translate into English.

1. In nómine Patris, et Fílii et Spíritus Sancti. 2. Discérne causam meam de gente non sancta. 3. Ab hómine iníquo et dolóso érué me. 4. Confitébor tibi in cíthara, Deus, Deus meus. 5. Sicut erat in prin-

cípío et nunc et semper. 6. Dimíssis peccátis tuis. 7. Quia peccávi nimis cogitatióne, verbo, et ópere. 8. Mea culpa, mea culpa, mea máxima culpa. 9. Dóminus vobíscum. Et cum spírítu tuo. 10. Aufer a nobis iniquitátes nostras, ut ad Sancta sanctorum puris mereámur méntibus introíre. 11. Glória in excélsis Deo, et in terra pax homínibus bonae voluntátis. 12. Munda cor meum, ac lábia mea, omnípotens Deus, qui lábia Isaíae prophétae cálculo mundásti igníto. 13. Dóminus sit in corde tuo. 14. Deum de Deo, lumen de lúmíne, Deum verum de Deo vero. 15. Crucifíxus étiam pro nobis, sub Póntio Piláto passus, et sepúltus est. 16. Et íterum ventúrus est cum glória. 17. Qui cum Patre, et Fílio simul adorátur. 18. Offérimus tibi, Dómine, cálicem salutáris, tuam deprecántes cleméntiam, ut in conspéctu divínae majestátis tuae, pro nostra, et totíus mundi salúte cum odóre suavitátis ascéndat. 19. In spírítu humilitátis, et in ánimo contríto suscipiámur a te, Dómine. 20. Ne perdas cum ímpiis, Deus, ánimam meam, et cum viris sánguinum vitam meam. 21. In quorum mánibus iniquitátes sunt, délixtera eórum repléta est munéribus. 22. In ecclésiis benedícam te, Dómine. 23. Pleni sunt caeli et terra glória tua. 24. Elevátis óculis. 25. Síмили modo. 26. Supra quae propítio ac seréno vultu respícere dignéris. 27. Omni benedictióne caeléstí et grátia repleámur. 28. Qui nos praecessérunt cum signo fídei et dórmiunt in somno pacis. 29. Praecéptis salutáribus móniti, et divína institutióne formáti, audémus dícere. 30. Sed líbera nos a malo. 31. Líbera nos, quaesumus, Dómine, ab ómnibus malis, praeterítis, praeséntibus et futúris, et intercedénte beáta, et gloriósa semper Vírgine Dei Genitríce María, cum beátis Apóstolis Petro et Paulo, atque Andréa, et ómnibus Sanctis, da propítius pacem in díebus nostris; ut ope misericórdiae tuae adjúti, et a peccáto simus semper líberi, et ab omni perturbatióne secúri. 32. Sed tantum dic verbo. 33. Quod ore sumpsimus, Dómine, pura mente capiámus. 34. Requíescant in pace. 35. Sine ipso factum est nihil, quod factum est. 36. Lux in ténebris lucet. 37. Aspérge me hyssópo, et mundábor; lavábis me, et super nivem dealbábor. 38. Holocáustis non delectáberis. 39. Sacrifícium Deo spírítus contri-

bulátus. 40. Fratres: Nólumus vos ignoráre de dormiéntibus, ut non contristémini, sicut et céteri qui spem non hábent. 41. Dies irae, dies illa, solvet saeculum (saéculum) in favilla. 42. Tantus labor non sit cassus. 43. Quantus tremor est futúrus, quando iudex est ventúrus, cuncta stricte discussúrus. 44. Quidquid latet, apparébit. 45. Inter oves locum praesta, et ab haedis me sequéstra. 46. Oro supplex et acclínis, cor contrítum quasi cinis, gere curam mei finis. 47. Ánnue nobis, quaésumus, Dómine, ut ánimae fámuli tui haec prosit oblátio, quam immolándo totíus mundi tribuísti relaxári delícta. 48. Quóniam, si voluístes sacrificium, dedísem útique; holocáustis non delectáberis. 49. Lacrimósa dies illa, qua resúrget ex favilla iudicándus homo reus; huic ergo parce Deus. 50. Tuis enim fidélibus, Dómine, vita mutátur, non tóllitur, et dissolúta hujus incolátus domo, aetérna in caelis habitátio comparátur. 51. Da nobis, Dómine, ut ánimam fámuli tui Epíscopi, quam de hujus saéculi eduxísti laborióso certámine, sanctórum tuórum tríbuas esse consórtem. 52. Caeléstis participátio sacraménti, quaésumus, Dómine, animábus patris et matris meae réquiem et lucem obtíneat perpétuam; meque cum illis grátia tua corónet aetérna. 53. Pro animábus famulórum, famularúmque tuárum, et ómnium catholicórum hic et ubique in Christo dormiéntium, hóstiam, Dómine, súscipe benígnus oblátam; ut hoc sacrificio singulári, vínculis horréndae mortis exúti, vitam mereántur aetérnam. 54. Súplices, Dómine, pro animábus famulórum, famularúmque tuárum preces effúndimus; obsecrántes, ut quidquid conversatióne contraxérunt humána, et cleménter indúlgeas, et in tuórum sede laetántium consútuas redemptórum.

**B.** Give the comparative and superlative forms of each of these adjectives and adverbs.

1. potens. 2. altus. 3. diléctus. 4. magnópere. 5. fortis. 6. nova. 7. sancti. 8. beátum. 9. clemens. 10. fáciie. 11. velox. 12. bene. 13. fórtiter. 14. mísera. 15. acris. 16. malus. 17. bonus. 18. male. 19. multum. 20. magnus. 21. parva. 22. parum. 23. excélsus. 24. nóbilis. 25. certus.

## UNIT THREE

A. Give the forms of *velle* and *nolle* as indicated.*velle*

<b>ego</b>	{	present indicative
		imperfect subjunctive
		future
		pluperfect subjunctive
		imperfect indicative

<b>vos</b>	{	future perfect indicative
		present indicative
		perfect subjunctive
		imperfect subjunctive
		pluperfect indicative

*nolle*

<b>nos</b>	{	present subjunctive
		future
		imperfect indicative
		perfect subjunctive
		present indicative

<b>ei</b>	{	imperfect indicative
		future perfect indicative
		present indicative
		present subjunctive
		imperfect subjunctive

B. Write ten short sentences in Latin, each one to illustrate a different use of the ablative.

## C. Vocabulary building.

a) **Derivations.** Find in Units One and Two the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. *coróna* (wreath). 2. *albus* (white). 3. *discússio* (dispersal). 4. *certáre* (to contend). 5. *latro* (robber). 6. *nivósus* (snowy). 7. *reátus* (criminal condition). 8. *lácrima* (tear). 9. *curáre* (to care for). 10. *testis* (witness). 11. *laetári* (to rejoice). 12. *monstruósus* (monstrous).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>relaxáre</b>	relaxation	<b>coronáre</b>	coronet
<b>delectáre</b>	delectable	<b>latére</b>	latent
<b>cúra</b>	curate	<b>contribulátus</b>	tribulation
<b>nomen</b>	nominate	<b>lumen</b>	luminous

c) Observe these word families.

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Verb</i>
<b>ignorántia</b> (ignorance)	<b>ignótus</b> (unknown)	<b>ignoráre</b> (to be ignorant of)
<b>nix</b> (snow)	<b>nivósus</b> (snowy)	<b>níngere</b> (to snow)
<b>horror</b> (horror)	<b>horréndus</b> (dreadful)	<b>horrére</b> (of hair, to stand on end)
<b>lácrima</b> (tear)	<b>lacrimósus</b> (tearful)	<b>lacrimáre</b> (to weep)
<b>cura</b> (care)	<b>curiósus</b> (careful)	<b>curáre</b> (to care for)



## READING LESSON

1. Haec cum dixisset Jesus, egressus est cum discipulis suis trans Torrentem Cedron, ubi erat hortus in quem introivit ipse, et discipuli ejus.

2. Sciebat autem et Judas, qui tradebat eum, locum: quia frequenter Jesus convenerat illuc cum discipulis suis.

3. Judas ergo cum accepisset cohortem, et a pontificibus et pharisaeis ministros, venit illuc cum laternis et facibus, et armis.

4. Jesus itaque sciens omnia quae ventura erant super eum, processit, et dixit eis: Quem quaeritis?

5. Responderunt ei: Jesum Nazarenum. Dicit eis Jesus: Ego sum. Stabat autem et Judas qui tradebat eum, cum ipsis.

6. Ut ergo dixit eis, Ego sum, abierunt retrorsum et ceciderunt in terram.

7. Iterum ergo interrogavit eos: Quem quaeritis? Illi autem dixerunt: Jesum Nazarenum.

8. Respondit Jesus: Dixi vobis quia ego sum: si ergo me quaeritis, sinite hos abire.

9. Ut impleretur sermo quem dixit: Quia quos dedisti mihi, non perdi ex eis quemquam.

10. Simon ergo Petrus habens gladium eduxit eum: et percussit pontificis servum: et abscidit auriculam ejus dexteram. Erat autem nomen servo Malchus.

11. Dixit ergo Jesus Petro: Mitte gladium tuum in vaginam. Calicem quem dedit mihi Pater, non bibam illum?

12. Cohors ergo, et tribunus, et ministri Judaeorum comprehenderunt Jesum, et ligaverunt eum:

13. Et adduxerunt eum ad Annam primum; erat enim socer Caiaphae, qui erat pontifex anni illius.

14. Erat autem Caiphas, qui consilium dederat Judaeis: Quia expedit, unum hominem mori pro populo.

15. Sequebatur autem Jesum Simon Petrus, et alius discipulus. Discipulus autem ille erat notus pontifici, et introivit cum Jesu in atrium pontificis.

16. Petrus autem stabat ad ostium foris. Exivit ergo discipulus alius qui erat notus pontifici, et dixit ostiariae: et introduxit Petrum.

17. Dicit ergo Petro ancilla ostiaria: Numquid et tu ex discipulis es hominis istius? Dicit ille: Non sum.

18. Stabant autem servi et ministri ad prunas, quia frigus erat, et calefaciebant se: erat autem cum eis et Petrus stans, et calefaciens se.

19. Pontifex ergo interrogavit Jesum de discipulis suis, et de doctrina ejus.

20. Respondit ei Jesus: Ego palam locutus sum mundo: ego semper docui in synagoga, et in templo, quo omnes Judaei conveniunt: et in occulto locutus sum nihil.

21. Quid me interrogas? Interroga eos qui audierunt quid locutus sim ipsis: ecce hi sciunt quae dixerim ego.

22. Haec autem cum dixisset, unus assistens ministrorum dedit alapam Jesu, dicens: Sic respondens pontifici?

23. Respondit ei Jesus: Si male locutus sum, testimonium perhibe de malo: si autem bene, quid me caedis?

24. Et misit eum Annas ligatum ad Caipham pontificem.

25. Erat autem Simon Petrus stans, et calefaciens se. Dixerunt ergo ei: Numquid et tu ex discipulis ejus es? Negavit ille, et dixit: Non sum.

26. Dicit ei unus ex servis pontificis, cognatus ejus, cujus abscidit Petrus auriculam: Nonne ego te vidi in horto cum illo?

27. Iterum ergo negavit Petrus: et statim gallus cantavit.

28. Adducunt ergo Jesum a Caipha in praetorium. Erat autem mane: et ipsi non introierunt in praetorium, ut non contaminarentur sed ut manducarent pascha.

29. Exivit ergo Pilatus ad eos foras, et dixit: Quam accusationem affertis adversus hominem hunc?

30. Responderunt, et dixerunt ei: Si non esset hic malefactor, non tibi tradidissemus eum.

31. Dixit ergo eis Pilatus: Accipite eum vos, et secundum legem vestram iudicate eum. Dixerunt ergo ei Iudaei: Nobis non licet interficere quemquam.

32. Ut sermo Jesu impleretur, quem dixit, significans qua morte esset moriturus.

33. Introivit ergo iterum in praetorium Pilatus, et vocavit Jesum, et dixit ei: Tu es rex Iudaeorum?

34. Respondit Jesus: A temetipso hoc dicis, an alii dixerunt tibi de me?

35. Respondit Pilatus: Numquid ergo Iudaeus sum? Gens tua et pontifices tradiderunt te mihi: quid fecisti?

36. Respondit Jesus: Regnum meum non est de hoc mundo: si ex hoc mundo esset regnum meum, ministri mei utique decertarent ut non traderer Iudaeis; nunc autem regnum meum non est hinc.

37. Dixit itaque ei Pilatus: ergo rex es tu? Respondit Jesus: Tu dicis quia rex sum ego. Ego in hoc natus sum, et ad hoc veni in mundum, ut testimonium perhibeam veritati: omnis qui est ex veritate, audit vocem meam.

38. Dicit ei Pilatus: Quid est veritas? Et cum hoc dixisset, iterum exivit ad Iudaeos, et dicit eis: Ego nullam invenio in eo causam.

39. Est autem consuetudo vobis, ut unum dimittam vobis in pascha: vultis ergo dimittam vobis regem Iudaeorum?

40. Clamaverunt ergo rursus omnes dicentes: Non hunc, sed Barabbam. Erat autem Barabbas latro.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium secundum Joannem, caput XVIII, 1-40.)

## LESSON XX

### UNIT ONE

Benedicat vos omnípotens Deus, *May almighty God bless you, the*  
Pater et Fílius et Spíritus Sanctus. *Father, the Son, and the Holy*  
*Ghost.*

### Vocabulary

exsultáre, *to exult*

vigére, *to thrive, to be active*

ingemíscere (ingémui), *to sigh, to groan*

obsecráre, *to implore*

possidére (possédi, posséssus), *to possess*

prémere (pressi, pressus), *to press (upon)*

rápere (rápui, raptus) (-io verb), *to snatch, to seize*

recordári, dep., *to remember*

respiráre, *to breathe*

reveláre, *to reveal, to unveil*

rubére, *to be red, to blush*

stupére, *to be amazed*

póscere (popósci), *to demand*

unde (adv.), *therefore, thence, whence*

usque (adv.), *all the way; ad usque, even until*

valde (adv.), *exceedingly*

vix (adv.), *scarcely, with difficulty*

neque (adv. and conj.), *and not, neither, nor*

nec non (adv.), *and also, nor less*

óbviam (adv.), *on the way*

tamquam (adv.), *like*

fons, fontis, m., *fountain, source*

vítulus, -i, m., *calf*

nubes, nubis (g. pl., núbium), f., *cloud*

refrigérium, -ii, n., *refreshment*

sermo, sermónis, m., *word, discourse*

occúltus, -a, -um, *hidden*

propínquus, -a, -um, *near*; as a noun, *a near relative*

singuláris, m. and f., singuláre, n., *remarkable, excellent*

memor, m., f., and n.; gen. mémoris, *mindful*

#### 49. Questions.

a) A question that may be answered by “*yes*” or “*no*” may merely be a matter of vocal inflection.

*You believe this.*

**Credis hoc.**

*Do you believe this?*

**Credis hoc?**

Or the syllable **-ne** may be attached to the most emphatic word, usually the first.

*Was he carrying the cross?*

**Portabátne crucem?**

b) When the answer “*yes*” is expected, the question is introduced by **nonne**.

*Do they not please you?*

**Nonne tibi placent?**

c) When the answer “*no*” is expected, the question is introduced by **num** or, frequently, **numquid**.

*Can we all be saints?*

**Numquid omnes póssumus esse sancti?**

d) Double questions are introduced by **utrum . . . an; -ne . . . an**, or just **an** before the alternative part of the question.

*Is he a friend or an enemy?*

{ **Utrum amícus est an inimícus?**  
 { **Amícusne est an inimícus?**  
 { **Amícus est an inimícus?**

e) Latin has no single word that is equivalent to our word "yes," although various adverbs, such as **etiam**, *even so*, are used as a substitute or the important part of the question is repeated as a statement.

*Do you believe this? Yes.*                      **Credis hoc? Credo or Etiam.**

"No" may be expressed by the simple word **non** or the verb of the question may be repeated with **non**.

*Can you do these things? No.*              **Potestísne haec fácere? Non or Non póssumus.**

**50. Defective verbs.** These are verbs that have lost certain of their tenses.

a) **coepísse**, *to have begun*; **odísse**, *to hate*; **meminísse**, *to remember*. These verbs occur only in the perfect tenses.

PERFECT INFINITIVE: **coepísse**, *to have begun*; **odísse**, *to hate*; **meminísse**, *to remember*.

PERFECT INDICATIVE: **coépi**, *I began*; **odi**, *I hate*; <sup>1</sup> **mémini**, *I remember*.

PAST PARTICIPLE: **coeptus**, *begun*; **osus**, *hated*.

OBSERVE. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of **odísse** and **meminísse** have the meanings of a present, imperfect and future respectively.

**odi**, *I hate*; **óderam**, *I hated*; **ódero**, *I shall hate*.

**mémini**, *I remember*; **memíneram**, *I remembered*; **memínero**, *I shall remember*.

b) Other verbs have lost their perfect tenses and are partly defective in other tenses.

**áio**, *I say*. The commonest forms of this verb are the third person singular and plural of the present indicative: **áit**, *he says (saith)*, **aiunt**, *they say*.

<sup>1</sup> Also, sometimes, *I hated*.

## 51. Uses of the accusative.

a) As the direct object of a verb.

*We saw your brother.*

Vidimus fratrem tuum.

b) After certain prepositions, the commonest being *ad*, *ante*, *apud*, *circum*, *contra*, *inter*, *per*, and *trans*.*They sent aid to the city.*

Adjutórium ad civitátem misérunt.

*He stood in the presence of the king.*

Stabat apud regem.

*We built a wall around our house.*

Aedificávimus murum circum domum nostram.

c) As subject of the infinitive in indirect discourse.

*He said that his mother had come.*

Dixit matrem suam venísse.

d) To express duration of time and extent of space.

*They will stay here for one day.*Unam diem <sup>1</sup> hic remanébunt.*The wall extended for many feet.*

Murus multos pedes exténdit.

## EXERCISES

**A. Suffixes.** The suffix *-ax* is added to verb stems to form adjectives denoting a tendency, usually an extreme tendency.

1. *audax*, bold (from *audére*, to dare). 2. *ferax*, fertile (from *ferre*, to bear). 3. *sagax*, clever (from *sagíre*, to perceive quickly). 4. *mendax*, lying (from *mentíri*, to lie). 5. *edax*, greedy (from *édere*, to eat). 6. *tenax*, tenacious (from *tenére*, to hold).

**B.** The suffix *-idus* is added to verb stems to form adjectives denoting a state or settled condition.

1. *tímídu*s, timid (from *tímére*, to fear). 2. *cúpidu*s, desirous (from

<sup>1</sup> The ablative may also be used.

**cúpere**, to desire). 3. **lánguidus**, weak (from **languére**, to be weak). 4. **frígídu**s, cold (from **frigére**, to be cold). 5. **áridus**, dry (from **arére**, to be dry). 6. **rápídu**s, rapid (from **rápere**, to snatch). 7. **válidus**, strong, well (from **valére**, to be strong, to be well). 8. **nítídu**s, bright (from **nitére**, to shine). 9. **cándídu**s, shining white (from **candére**, to glitter). 10. **pállídu**s, pale (from **palére**, to be pale).

## UNIT TWO

### A. Read and translate into English.

1. Te ígitur, clementíssime Pater, per Jesum Christum Fílium tuum Dóminum nostrum, súpplíces rogámus, ac pétimus, uti accépta hábeas, et benedícas, haec dona, haec múnera, haec sancta sacrificia illibáta. 2. In primis, quae tibi offérimus pro Ecclésia tua sancta cathólica; quam pacificáre, custodíre, adunáre, et régere dignéris toto orbe terrárum; una cum fámulo tuo Papa nostro Pío, et Antístite nostro Paulo, et ómnibus orthodóxis atque cathólicae, et apostólicae fídei cultóribus. 3. Meménto (*imperative*), Dómine, famulórum famulárumque N. et N. et ómnium circumstántium, quorum tibi fides cógnita est, et nota devótio, pro quibus tibi offérimus; vel qui tibi offerunt hoc sacrificium laudis, pro se, suisque ómnibus; pro redemptione animárum suárum, pro spe salútis, et incolumitátis suae; tíbique reddunt vota sua aetérno Deo, vivo et vero. 4. Unde et mémore, Dómine, nos servi tui, sed et plebs tua sancta, ejúsdem Christi Fílii tui Dómini nostri tam beatae Passiónis, nec non et ab ínferis Resurrectionis, sed et in caelos gloriósae Ascensiónis; offérimus praecláae Majestati tuae, de tuis donis, ac datis, hóstiam puram, hóstiam sanctam, hóstiam immaculátam, Panem sanctum vitae aetérnae et Cálícem salútis perpétuae. 5. Meménto, etiam, Dómine, famulórum, famularúmque tuárum N. et N. qui nos praecessérunt cum signo fídei et dórmunt in somno pacis. 6. Ipsi, Dómine, et ómnibus in Christo quiescéntibus, locum refrigeríi, lucis et pacis, ut indúlgeas, deprecámur. 7. Quotquot autem recepérunt eum, dedit eis potestátem fílios Dei fíeri, his, qui credunt in nómine ejus; qui non ex sanguínibus,



neque ex voluntáte carnis, neque ex voluntáte viri, sed ex Deo nati sunt. 8. Tibi soli peccávi, et malum coram te feci; ut justificéris in sermónibus tuis, et vincas cum judicáris. 9. Ecce enim veritátem dilexísti; incérta et occúlta sapiéntiae tuae manifestásti mihi. 10. Deínde nos, qui vívimus, qui relínquimur, simul rapiémur cum illis in núbibus óbviám Christo in áëra et sic semper cum Dómino érimus. 11. Mors stupébit et natúra, cum resúrget creatúra, judicánti responsúra. 12. Quid sum miser tunc dictúrus? Quem patrónum rogatúrus, cum vix justus sit secúrus? 13. Rex treméndae Majestátis, qui salvádos salvás gratis, salva me, fons pietátis. 14. Recordáre, Jesu pie, quod sum causa tuae viae; ne me perdas illa die. 15. Ingemísco, tamquam reus; culpa rubet vultus meus; supplicánti parce, Deus. 16. Dixit Martha ad Jesum: Dómine, si fuísses hic, frater meus non fuíisset mórtuus; sed et nunc scio, quia quaecúmque popósceris a Deo, dabit tibi Deus. 17. Ait illi: Útique, Dómine, ego crédidi, quia tu es Christus Fílius Dei vivi, qui in hunc mundum venísti. 18. Non ergo eum, quaésumus, tua judiciális senténtia premat, quem tibi vera supplicatio fídei Christiánae comméndat; sed grátia tua illi succurrénte mereátur evádere júdicium ultiónis, qui dum víveret, insignítus est signáculo sanctae Trinitátis. 19. Dies illa, dies irae, calamitátis et misériae, dies magna et amára valde. 20. Salus ex inimícis nostris, et de manu ómnium qui odérunt nos. 21. Absólve, quaésumus, Dómine, ánimam fámuli tui ab omni vínculo delictórum; ut in resurrecciónis glória inter sanctos et eléctos tuos resuscitátus respíret. 22. Deus, véniae largítor, et humánae salútis amátor; quaésumus cleméntiam tuam; ut nostrae congregatiónis fratres, propínquos, et benefactóres, qui ex hoc saéculo transiérunt, beáta María semper Vírgine intercedénte cum ómnibus sanctis tuis, ad perpétuae beatitúdinis consórtium perveníre concédas. 23. Pro animábus famulórum, famularúmque tuárum, et ómnium catholicórum hic et ubíque in Christo dormiéntium, hóstiam, Dómine, súscipe benígna oblátam; ut hoc sacrificio singulári, vínculis horréndae mortis exúti, vitam mereántur aetérnam. 24. Súpplícites, Dómine pro animábus famulórum, famularúmque tuárum preces efúndimus; obsecrántes, ut quidquid conversatióne contraxérunt hu-

mána, et cleménter indúlgeas, et in tuórum sede laetántium constítuas redemptórum. 25. Tunc acceptábis sacrificium justítiae, oblatiónes et holocáusta; tunc impónent super altáre tuum vítulos. 26. Deus, cui proprium est miseréri semper et párcere, te súplices exorámus pro ánima fámuli tui N., quam hódie de hoc saéculo migráre jussísti; ut non tradas eam in manus inimíci; neque obliviscáris in finem, sed júbeas eam a sanctis Angelis súscipi, et ad pátriam paradísi perdúci; ut, quia in te sperávit et crédidit, non poenas inférni sustíneat, sed gáudia aetérna possídeat. 27. Vere dignum et justum est, aequum et salutáre, nos tibi semper, et ubíque grátias ágere; Dómine sancte, Pater omnípotens aetérne Deus; qui cum unigénito Fílio tuo, et Spírítu Sancto, unus es Deus, unus es Dóminus; non in uníus singularitáte personae, sed in uníus Trinitáte substántiae. 28. Quod enim de tua glória, revelánte te, crédimus, hoc de Fílio tuo, hoc de Spírítu Sancto, sine differéntia discretiónis sentímus. 29. Quaésumus, Dómine, ut ánimae fámuli tui N., cujus depositiónis diem tértium commemorámus, sanctórum atque electórum tuórum largíri dignéris consórtium; et rorem misericórdiae tuae perénnem infúndas. 30. Deus, qui inter apostólicos Sacerdótes, fámulum tuum N. pontificáli fecísti dignitáte vigére; praesta, quaésumus, ut eórum quoque perpétuo aggregétur consórtio.

### UNIT THREE

A. a) Explain the use of **-ne**, **nonne**, **num**, **numquid** in asking questions.

b) How are double questions expressed?

B. a) Name four defective verbs.

b) Which ones are conjugated only in the perfect tenses?

c) Which one has no perfect tenses?

d) What is unusual about the meaning of the perfect forms of **odísse** and **meminísse**?

C. Give four uses of the accusative case and illustrate each with a short sentence in Latin.

D. Vocabulary building.

a) Derivations. Find in Units One and Two the words that have the same derivation as the following:

1. *occúltum* (hidden thing). 2. *singuláritas* (oneness). 3. *velum* (curtain, veil). 4. *ruber* (red). 5. *stúpidus* (stupid). 6. *via* (road). 7. *núbilus* (cloudy). 8. *frígídis* (cold). 9. *occúlte* (secretly). 10. *prope* (near). 11. *memorári* (to remember). 12. *horríbilis* (horrible).

b) Observe the relation between these Latin and English words.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>rápere</i>	rapture	<i>recordári</i>	recorder
<i>respiráre</i>	respiratory	<i>reveláre</i>	revelation
<i>rubére</i>	rubrics	<i>stupére</i>	stupefy
<i>fons</i>	font	<i>refrigérium</i>	refrigerator
<i>propínquus</i>	propinquity	<i>memor</i>	memorable
<i>sagax</i>	sagacious	<i>mendax</i>	mendacious

c) Diminutives. Endings such as *-lus*, *-ulus*, *-culus*, *-ellus* in any gender are frequently added to nouns or adjectives to give the word a special significance, such as endearment, pity or contempt, or merely smallness.

1. *navícula*, a little ship, a skiff (from *navis*, ship). 2. *castéllum*, castle, fortress (from *castrum*, fort). 3. *tabernáculum*, tent, a small hut (from *taberna*, a hut). 4. *léctulus*, a small bed (from *lectus*, a bed). 5. *ósculum*, a little mouth, a kiss (from *os*, mouth). 6. *muliércula*, a disgraceful woman (from *múlier*, woman). 7. *párvulus*, very small (from *parvus*, small). 8. *libéllus*, note-book (from *liber*, book). 9. *flagéllum*, a small whip (from *flagrum*, a scourge, a whip). 10. *círculus*, a small circle (from *circus*, circle). 11. *málléolus*, a little hammer (from *málleus*, a hammer, a mallet). 12. *tabélla*, a tablet (from *tábula*, a board).

## REVIEW LESSON NUMBER IV

**A.** Give a noun in Latin suggested by each of the following adjectives.

1. gloriósus. 2. beátus. 3. sanctus. 4. humánus. 5. corpóreus. 6. magnus. 7. aetérnus. 8. clemens. 9. iníquus. 10. miséricors. 11. fortis. 12. fratérnus. 13. matérnus. 14. miser. 15. fidélis. 16. dignus. 17. potens. 18. evangélicus. 19. temporális. 20. apostólicus. 21. sacerdotális. 22. terribilis. 23. memorábilis. 24. pius. 25. laboriósus. 26. ínnocens. 27. prudens. 28. verus. 29. vivus. 30. salvus. 31. altus. 32. multus. 33. unigénitus. 34. suavis. 35. sócius. 36. lassus. 37. largus. 38. própius. 39. divínus. 40. voluntárius.

**B.** Write six short sentences in Latin involving indirect discourse, two after a verb of saying, two after a verb of knowing, and two after a verb of thinking.

**C.** Give a noun in Latin suggested by each of the following verbs.

1. posse. 2. vocáre. 3. salváre. 4. laudáre. 5. dúcere. 6. dícere. 7. servíre. 8. clamáre. 9. oráre. 10. judicáre. 11. speráre. 12. dormíre. 13. scríbere. 14. docére. 15. peccáre. 16. conturbáre. 17. salutáre. 18. cogitáre. 19. deprecári. 20. sequi. 21. dilígere. 22. ascéndere. 23. offérre. 24. redímere. 25. timére. 26. scire. 27. vívere. 28. fácere. 29. mori. 30. fídere.

**D.** Give an adjective that describes correctly each of the following nouns.

1. vultus. 2. óvibus. 3. voluntátis. 4. die. 5. spem. 6. somno. 7. pace. 8. panes. 9. córporum. 10. cordis. 11. verbis. 12. muri. 13. púerum. 14. monti. 15. lábia.

**E.** Compose four Latin questions and answers illustrating the use of **-ne, nonne, num, and numquid.**

**F.** Indicate whether these statements are right or wrong.

1. Pius nomen Papae est. 2. Non vidémus quod invisibile est. 3. Pes pars vultus est. 4. Homo potens, sed Deus omnípotens est. 5. Ecclésia cathólica semper crucem habet. 6. Fílii boni non credunt id quod dicunt patres sui. 7. Ópera sanctórum mirabília erant. 8. Quando ego sum cum fratre meo, non solus sum. 9. Púeri diligétes labórem díligunt. 10. In pátria nostra multae civitátes sunt. 11. Oves pastórem sequúntur. 12. Nocte mundus in ténebris est. 13. Quando lassí sumus, dormímus. 14. Homo qui multum paupéribus dat, laudis dignus est. 15. Inimíci nostri semper repélli possunt. 16. In novíssimo die innocétes recípiunt munus suum in regno caelórum. 17. Multae veritátes tam difícíles sunt, ut non comprehendántur ab ómnibus. 18. Áliquae natiónes magnos exércitus sústinent. 19. Omnes púeri canunt bene. 20. Per óstium in domum introímus.

**G.** Give the meaning of each of these words.

1. princípium. 2. posse. 3. culpa. 4. cor. 5. acer. 6. nunc. 7. pónere. 8. nomen. 9. gens. 10. audére. 11. juvéntus. 12. quare. 13. erúere. 14. sicut. 15. pars. 16. ígitur. 17. fácies. 18. somnus. 19. ecce. 20. item. 21. vultus. 22. spes. 23. dexter. 24. valére. 25. lábium. 26. amárus. 27. céterus. 28. foras. 29. óstium. 30. atque. 31. sanguis. 32. auris. 33. pes. 34. ignis. 35. lumen. 36. autem. 37. prídie. 38. accéndere. 39. vox. 40. tértius. 41. vespertínus. 42. num. 43. quot. 44. scelus. 45. quotidiánus. 46. frángere. 47. dignári. 48. íngredi. 49. pétere. 50. ténebrae.

**H.** Write ten short sentences in Latin, each one to illustrate a different use of the ablative.

**I.** Write complete Latin sentences using the following words or expressions.

1. lumen. 2. illumináre. 3. salvátio. 4. ímpius. 5. non movére. 6. deprecátio. 7. vultus. 8. mundáre. 9. non beátus. 10. tenére. 11. loquí.

12. vir. 13. dare laudem. 14. vocáre alta voce. 15. ovis júvenis. 16. millítia. 17. non certus. 18. servus. 19. spem habére. 20. condítio. 21. sólvete. 22. eíccere foras. 23. dimíttere. 24. indulgéntia. 25. quondam. 26. benígus. 27. praémium. 28. saéculum. 29. parens famílie. 30. aetérnus. 31. domus Dei. 32. bíbere. 33. manducáre. 34. valére. 35. fidem habére. 36. spíritus. 37. omnis. 38. quia. 39. liberáre. 40. magnus nimis. 41. amáre multum. 42. quod offértur. 43. intráre. 44. discípulus Christi. 45. partes córporis quibus ingrédimur. 46. requiéscere in somno. 47. non abíre. 48. non vivus. 49. non dignus. 50. pétere.

**J.** Use each of the following in a question and compose a suitable answer to each question.

1. quisquis. 2. póscere. 3. nubes. 4. certámen. 5. gérere. 6. útique. 7. quondam. 8. ad ívicem. 9. párcere. 10. túmulus. 11. céterus. 12. amárus. 13. ovis. 14. exércitus. 15. conspéctus. 16. dirígere. 17. nimis. 18. dexter. 19. spes. 20. adjutórium. 21. vultus. 22. verbum. 23. opus. 24. osténdere. 25. novus. 26. docére. 27. somnus. 28. tectum. 29. panis. 30. missa. 31. fides. 32. ergo. 33. crédere. 34. pauper. 35. miseréri. 36. gaudére. 37. tutaméntum. 38. caro. 39. aperíre. 40. íngredi. 41. loqui. 42. lassus. 43. quaérere. 44. cinis. 45. argéntum. 46. effulgére. 47. ténebrae. 48. meréri. 49. antístes. 50. dilígere.

## READING LESSON

1. Una autem sabbati, Maria Magdalene venit mane, cum adhuc tenebrae essent, ad monumentum et vidit lapidem sublatum a monumento.

2. Cucurrit ergo, et venit ad Simonem Petrum, et ad alium discipulum quem amabat Jesus, et dicit illis: Tulerunt Dominum de monumento, et nescimus ubi posuerunt eum.

3. Exiit ergo Petrus, et ille alius discipulus, et venerunt ad monumentum.

4. Currebant autem duo simul, et ille alius discipulus praecucurrit citius Petro, et venit primus ad monumentum.

5. Et cum se inclinasset, vidit posita linteamina, non tamen introivit.

6. Venit ergo Simon Petrus sequens eum, et introivit in monumentum, et vidit linteamina posita.

7. Et sudarium quod fuerat super caput ejus, non cum linteaminibus positum, sed separatim involutum in unum locum.

8. Tunc ergo introivit et ille discipulus qui venerat primus ad monumentum, et vidit, et credidit:

9. Nondum enim sciebant Scripturam, quia oportebat eum a mortuis resurgere.

10. Abierunt ergo iterum discipuli ad semetipsos.

11. Maria autem stabat ad monumentum foris, plorans. Dum ergo fleret, inclinavit se, et prospexit in monumentum:

12. Et vidit duos angelos in albis, sedentes, unum ad caput, et unum ad pedes, ubi postum fuerat corpus Jesu.

13. Dicunt ei illi: Mulier, quid ploras? Dicit eis: Quia tulerunt Dominum meum; et nescio ubi posuerunt eum.

14. Haec cum dixisset, conversa est retrorsum, et vidit Jesum stantem: et non sciebat quia Jesus est.

15. Dicit ei Jesus: Mulier, quid ploras? quem quaeris? Illa existi-

mans quia hortulanus esset, dicit ei: Domine, si tu sustulisti eum, dicito mihi ubi posuisti eum; et ego eum tollam.

16. Dicit ei Jesus: Maria. Conversa illa, dicit ei: Rabboni (quod dicitur magister).

17. Dicit ei Jesus: Noli me tangere, nundum enim ascendi ad Patrem meum: vade autem ad fratres meos, et dic eis: Ascendo ad Patrem meum, et Patrem vestrum, Deum meum, et Deum vestrum.

18. Venit Maria Magdalene annuntians discipulis: Quia vidi Dominum, et haec dixit mihi.

19. Cum ergo sero esset die illo, una sabbatorum, et fores essent clausae, ubi erant discipuli congregati propter metum Judaeorum; venit Jesus, et stetit in medio, et dixit eis: Pax vobis.

20. Et cum hoc dixisset, ostendit eis manus et latus. Gavisi sunt ergo discipuli, viso Domino.

21. Dixit ergo eis iterum: Pax vobis. Sicut misit me Pater, et ego mitto vos.

22. Haec cum dixisset, insufflavit, et dixit eis: Accipite Spiritum Sanctum.

23. Quorum remisieritis peccata, remittuntur eis: et quorum retinueritis, retenta sunt.

24. Thomas autem unus ex duodecim, qui dicitur Didymus, non erat cum eis quando venit Jesus.

25. Dixerunt ergo ei alii discipuli: Vidimus Dominum. Ille autem dixit eis: Nisi videro in manibus ejus fixuram clavorum, et mittam digitum meum in locum clavorum, et mittam manum meam in latus ejus, non credam.

26. Et post dies octo, iterum erant discipuli ejus intus: et Thomas cum eis. Venit Jesus, januis clausis, et stetit in medio, et dixit: Pax vobis.

27. Deinde dicit Thomae: Infer digitum tuum huc, et affer manum tuam, et mitte in latus meum: et noli esse incredulus, sed fidelis.

28. Respondit Thomas, et dixit ei: Dominus meus et Deus meus.

29. Dixit ei Jesus: Quia vidisti me, Thoma, credidisti: beati qui non viderunt et crediderunt.



30. Multa quidem et alia signa fecit Jesus in conspectu discipulorum suorum, quae non sunt scripta in libro hoc.

31. Haec autem scripta sunt ut credatis quia Jesus est Christus Filius Dei: et ut credentes, vitam habeatis in nomine ejus.

(Jesu Christi Evangelium secundum Joannem, caput XX, 1-31.)

## APPENDIX

### 52. Irregular declensions.

deus, m., <i>God</i>	dea, f., <i>goddess</i>	domus, f., <i>house</i>	vis, f., <i>force, strength</i>
-------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------	------------------------------------

#### Singular

Nom. deus	dea	domus	vis
Gen. dei	deae	domus, -i	
Dat. deo	deae	dómui, -o	
Acc. deum	deam	domum	vim
Abl. deo	dea	domu, -o	vi

#### Plural

Nom. dei, dii, di	deae	domus	vires
Gen. deórum, deum	deárum	dómuum, -órum	vírium
Dat. deis, diis, dis	deábus	dómibus	víribus
Acc. deos	deas	domus, -os	viris, -es
Abl. deis, diis, dis	deábus	dómibus	víribus

### 53. Numerals.

Cardinal	Ordinal
1. unus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo	secúndus
3. tres, tria	tértius
4. quattuor	quartus
5. quinque	quintus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	séptimus
8. octo	octávus

9. <b>novem</b>	<b>nonus</b>
10. <b>decem</b>	<b>décimus</b>
11. <b>úndecim</b>	<b>undécimus</b>
12. <b>duódecim</b>	<b>duodécimus</b>
13. <b>trédecim</b>	<b>tértius décimus</b>
14. <b>quattuórdecim</b>	<b>quartus décimus</b>
15. <b>quíndecim</b>	<b>quintus décimus</b>
16. <b>sédecim</b>	<b>sextus décimus</b>
17. <b>septéndecim</b>	<b>séptimus décimus</b>
18. <b>duodevigínti</b>	<b>duodevicésimus</b>
19. <b>undevigínti</b>	<b>undevicésimus</b>
20. <b>vigínti</b>	<b>vicésimus</b>
21. <b>vigínti unus</b> ( <b>unus et vigínti</b> )	<b>vicésimus primus</b>
29. <b>undetrigínta</b>	<b>undetricésimus</b>
30. <b>trigínta</b>	<b>tricésimus</b>
40. <b>quadragínta</b>	<b>quadragésimus</b>
50. <b>quingúagínta</b>	<b>quingúagésimus</b>
60. <b>sexagínta</b>	<b>sexagésimus</b>
70. <b>septuagínta</b>	<b>septuagésimus</b>
80. <b>octogínta</b>	<b>octogésimus</b>
90. <b>nonagínta</b>	<b>nonagésimus</b>
100. <b>centum</b>	<b>centésimus</b>
200. <b>ducénti, -ae, -a</b>	<b>ducentésimus</b>
300. <b>trecénti</b>	<b>trecentésimus</b>
400. <b>quadringénti</b>	<b>quadringentésimus</b>
500. <b>quingénti</b>	<b>quingentésimus</b>
600. <b>sescénti</b>	<b>sescentésimus</b>
700. <b>septingénti</b>	<b>septingentésimus</b>
800. <b>octingénti</b>	<b>octingentésimus</b>
900. <b>nongénti</b>	<b>nongentésimus</b>
1000. <b>mille</b>	<b>millésimus</b>
2000. <b>duo mília</b>	<b>bis millésimus</b>

## VERBS

## REGULAR VERBS

## 54. First conjugation

laudáre, *to praise*

## Indicative

## Present

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

laudo	laudámus	laudor	laudámur
laudas	laudátis	laudáris <sup>1</sup>	laudámini
laudat	laudant	laudátur	laudántur

## Imperfect

laudábam	laudabámus	laudábar	laudabámur
laudábās	laudabátis	laudabáris	laudabámini
laudábat	laudabant	laudabátur	laudabántur

## Future

laudábo	laudábimus	laudábor	laudábimur
laudábis	laudábitis	laudáberis	laudabímini
laudábit	laudábunt	laudábitur	laudabúntur

## Perfect

laudávi	laudávimus	laudátus sum	laudáti sumus
laudavísti	laudavístis	laudátus es	laudáti estis
laudávit	laudavérunt	laudátus est	laudáti sunt
	(laudavére)		

## Pluperfect

laudáveram	laudaverámus	laudátus eram	laudáti erámus
laudáveris	laudaverátis	laudátus eras	laudáti erátis
laudáverat	laudáverant	laudátus erat	laudáti erant

<sup>1</sup> In the present, imperfect, and future of the passive voice, the second person singular has also a form in *-re*. Thus *laudáre, laudabáre, laudábere*.

## Future Perfect

laudávero	laudavérimus	laudátus ero	laudáti érimus
laudáveris	laudavéritis	laudátus eris	laudáti éritis
laudáverit	laudáverint	laudátus erit	laudáti erunt

## Subjunctive

## Present

laudem	laudémus	lauder	laudémur
laudes	laudétis	laudéris	laudémini
laudet	laudent	laudétur	laudéntur

## Imperfect

laudárem	laudarémus	laudárer	laudarémur
laudáres	laudarétis	laudaréris	laudarémini
laudáret	laudárent	laudarétur	laudaréntur

## Perfect

laudáverim	laudavérimus	laudátus sim	laudáti simus
laudáveris	laudavéritis	laudátus sis	laudáti sitis
laudáverit	laudáverint	laudátus sit	laudáti sint

## Pluperfect

laudavíssem	laudavissémus	laudátus essem	laudáti essémus
laudavísset	laudavissétis	laudátus esses	laudáti essétis
laudavísset	laudavissent	laudátus esset	laudáti essent

## Imperative

<i>Sing.</i> , lauda	<i>Plur.</i> , laudáte	<i>Sing.</i> , laudáre	<i>Plur.</i> , laudámini
----------------------	------------------------	------------------------	--------------------------

## Infinitive

Pres. laudáre, <i>to praise</i>	laudári, <i>to be praised</i>
Perf. laudavísse, <i>to have praised</i>	laudátus esse, <i>to have been praised</i>
Fut. laudatúrus esse, <i>to be about to praise</i>	laudátum iri, <i>to be about to be praised</i>

## Participles

Pres. <i>laudans, -antis, praising</i>	Perf. <i>laudátus, -a, -um, having been praised</i>
Fut. <i>laudáturus, -a, -um, about to praise</i>	

## Gerund

## Gerundive

Gen. <i>laudándi, of praising</i>	<i>laudándus, -a, -um, to be praised, etc.</i>
Dat. <i>laudándo, for praising</i>	
Acc. <i>laudándum, praising</i>	
Abl. <i>laudándo, by praising</i>	

## Supine

Acc. <i>laudátum, to praise</i>
Abl. <i>laudátu, to praise</i>

## 55. Second conjugation.

*monére, to advise, warn*

## Indicative

## Present

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
<i>móneo</i>	<i>monémus</i>	<i>móneor</i>	<i>monémur</i>
<i>mones</i>	<i>monétis</i>	<i>monéris</i>	<i>monémini</i>
<i>monet</i>	<i>monent</i>	<i>monétur</i>	<i>monéntur</i>

## Imperfect

<i>monébam</i>	<i>monebámus</i>	<i>monébar</i>	<i>monebámur</i>
<i>monébas</i>	<i>monebátis</i>	<i>monebáris</i>	<i>monebámini</i>
<i>monébat</i>	<i>monébant</i>	<i>monebátur</i>	<i>monebántur</i>

## Future

<i>monébo</i>	<i>monébitis</i>	<i>monébor</i>	<i>monébitis</i>
<i>monébis</i>	<i>monébitis</i>	<i>monéberis</i>	<i>monebímini</i>
<i>monébit</i>	<i>monébunt</i>	<i>monébitur</i>	<i>monebúntur</i>

## Perfect

<b>mónui</b>	<b>monúimus</b>	<b>mónitus sum</b>	<b>móniti sumus</b>
<b>monuísti</b>	<b>monuístis</b>	<b>mónitus es</b>	<b>móniti estis</b>
<b>mónuit</b>	<b>monuérunt</b> (monuére)	<b>mónitus est</b>	<b>móniti sunt</b>

## Pluperfect

<b>monúeram</b>	<b>monuerámus</b>	<b>mónitus eram</b>	<b>móniti erámus</b>
<b>monúeras</b>	<b>monuerátis</b>	<b>mónitus eras</b>	<b>móniti erátis</b>
<b>monúerat</b>	<b>monúerant</b>	<b>mónitus erat</b>	<b>móniti erant</b>

## Future Perfect

<b>monúero</b>	<b>monuérimus</b>	<b>mónitus ero</b>	<b>móniti érimus</b>
<b>monúeris</b>	<b>monuéritis</b>	<b>mónitus eris</b>	<b>móniti éritis</b>
<b>monúerit</b>	<b>monúerint</b>	<b>mónitus erit</b>	<b>móniti erunt</b>

## Subjunctive

<b>móneam</b>	<b>moneámus</b>	<b>mónear</b>	<b>moneámur</b>
<b>móneas</b>	<b>moneátis</b>	<b>moneáris</b>	<b>moneámini</b>
<b>móneat</b>	<b>móneant</b>	<b>moneátur</b>	<b>moneántur</b>

## Imperfect

<b>monérem</b>	<b>monerémus</b>	<b>monérer</b>	<b>monerémur</b>
<b>monéres</b>	<b>monerétis</b>	<b>moneréris</b>	<b>monerémini</b>
<b>monéret</b>	<b>monérent</b>	<b>monerétur</b>	<b>moneréntur</b>

## Perfect

<b>monúerim</b>	<b>monuérimus</b>	<b>mónitus sim</b>	<b>móniti simus</b>
<b>monúeris</b>	<b>monuéritis</b>	<b>mónitus sis</b>	<b>móniti sitis</b>
<b>monúerit</b>	<b>monúerint</b>	<b>mónitus sit</b>	<b>móniti sint</b>

## Pluperfect

<b>monuíssem</b>	<b>monuissémus</b>	<b>mónitus essem</b>	<b>móniti essémus</b>
<b>monuísset</b>	<b>monuissétis</b>	<b>mónitus esses</b>	<b>móniti essétis</b>
<b>monuísset</b>	<b>monuísset</b>	<b>mónitus esset</b>	<b>móniti essent</b>

## Imperative

## Present

*Sing. mone*    *Plur. monéte*    *Sing. monére*    *Plur. monémini*

## Infinitive

Pres. *monére, to advise*

*monéri, to be advised*

Perf. *monúisse, to have advised*

*mónitus esse, to have been advised*

Fut. *monitúrus esse, to be about to advise*

*mónitum iri, to be about to be advised*

## Participles

Pres. *monens, -entis, advising*

Perf. *mónitus, -a, -um, having*

Fut. *monitúrus, -a, -um, about to advise*

*been advised*

## Gerund

## Gerundive

Gen. *monéndi, of advising*

*monéndus, -a, -um, to be advised*

Dat. *monéndo, for advising*

Acc. *monéndum, advising*

Abl. *monéndo, by advising*

## Supine

Acc. *mónitum, to advise*

Abl. *mónitu, to advise*

## 56. Third conjugation.

*dúcere, to lead*

## Indicative

## Present

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

*duco*

*dúci-mus*

*duc-or*

*dúci-mur*

*duc-is*

*dúci-tis*

*dúce-ris*

*dúci-mini*

*duc-it*

*duc-unt*

*dúci-tur*

*duc-úntur*



## Imperfect

ducébam	ducebámus	ducébar	ducebámur
ducébas	ducebátis	ducebáris	ducebámini
ducébat	ducébant	ducebátur	ducebántur

## Future

ducam	ducémus	ducar	ducémur
duces	ducétis	ducéris	ducémini
ducet	ducent	ducétur	ducéntur

## Perfect

duxi	dúximus	ductus sum	ducti sumus
duxísti	duxístis	ductus es	ducti estis
duxit	duxérunt (duxére)	ductus est	ducti sunt

## Pluperfect

dúxeram	duxerámus	ductus eram	ducti erámus
dúxeras	duxerátis	ductus eras	ducti erátis
dúxerat	dúxerant	ductus erat	ducti erant

## Future Perfect

dúxero	duxérimus	ductus ero	ducti érimus
dúxeris	duxéritis	ductus eris	ducti éritis
dúxerit	dúxerint	ductus erit	ducti erunt

## Subjunctive

## Present

ducam	ducámus	ducar	ducámur
ducas	ducátis	ducáris	ducámini
ducat	ducant	ducátur	ducántur

## Imperfect

dúcerem	ducerémus	dúcerer	ducerémur
dúceres	ducerétis	duceréris	ducerémini
dúceret	dúcerent	ducerétur	duceréntur

## Perfect

dúxerim	duxérimus	ductus sim	ducti simus
dúxeris	duxéritis	ductus sis	ducti sitis
dúxerit	dúxerint	ductus sit	ducti sint

## Pluperfect

duxíssem	duxissémus	ductus essem	ducti essémus
duxísses	duxissétis	ductus esses	ducti essétis
duxíisset	duxíissent	ductus esset	ducti essent

## Imperative

## Present

Sing. duc(e)	Plur. dúcite	Sing. dúcere	Plur. ducímini
--------------	--------------	--------------	----------------

## Infinitive

Pres. dúcere, <i>to lead</i>	duci, <i>to be led</i>
Perf. duxísse, <i>to have led</i>	ductus esse, <i>to have been led</i>
Fut. ductúrus esse, <i>to be about to lead</i>	ductum iri, <i>to be about to be led</i>

## Participles

Pres. ducens, -entis, <i>leading</i>	Perf. ductus, -a, -um, <i>having been led</i>
Fut. ductúrus, -a, -um, <i>about to lead</i>	

## Gerund

Gen. ducéndi, <i>of leading</i>
Dat. ducéndo, <i>for leading</i>
Acc. ducéndum, <i>leading</i>
Abl. ducéndo, <i>by leading</i>

## Gerundive

ducéndus, -a, -um, *to be led*

## Supine

Acc. ductum, *to lead*Abl. ductu, *to lead*

## 57. Fourth conjugation.

audire, *to hear*

## Indicative

## Present

	Active Voice		Passive Voice
<b>áudio</b>	<b>audímus</b>	<b>áudior</b>	<b>audímur</b>
<b>audis</b>	<b>audítis</b>	<b>audírís</b>	<b>audímini</b>
<b>audit</b>	<b>áudiunt</b>	<b>audítur</b>	<b>audiúntur</b>

## Imperfect

<b>audiébam</b>	<b>audiebámus</b>	<b>audiébar</b>	<b>audiebámur</b>
<b>audiébas</b>	<b>audiebátis</b>	<b>audiebáris</b>	<b>audiebámini</b>
<b>audiébat</b>	<b>audiébant</b>	<b>audiebátur</b>	<b>audiebántur</b>

## Future

<b>áudiam</b>	<b>audiémus</b>	<b>áudiar</b>	<b>audiémur</b>
<b>áudies</b>	<b>audiétis</b>	<b>audiéris</b>	<b>audiémini</b>
<b>áudiet</b>	<b>áudient</b>	<b>audiétur</b>	<b>audiéntur</b>

## Perfect

<b>audívi</b>	<b>audívimus</b>	<b>audítus sum</b>	<b>audíti sumus</b>
<b>audivísti</b>	<b>audivístis</b>	<b>audítus es</b>	<b>audíti estis</b>
<b>audívit</b>	<b>audivérunt</b>	<b>audítus est</b>	<b>audíti sunt</b>

## Pluperfect

<b>audíveram</b>	<b>audiverámus</b>	<b>audítus eram</b>	<b>audíti erámus</b>
<b>audíveras</b>	<b>audiverátis</b>	<b>audítus eras</b>	<b>audíti erátis</b>
<b>audíverat</b>	<b>audíverant</b>	<b>audítus erat</b>	<b>audíti erant</b>

## Future Perfect

audívero	audivérimus	audítus ero	audíti érimus
audíveris	audivéritis	audítus eris	audíti éritis
audíverit	audíverint	audítus erit	audíti erunt

## Subjunctive

## Present

áudiam	audiámus	áudiar	audiámur
áudias	audiátis	audiáris	audiámini
áudiat	áudiant	audiátur	audiántur

## Imperfect

audírem	audirémus	audírer	audirémur
audíres	audirétis	audiréris	audirémini
audíret	audírent	audirétur	audiréntur

## Perfect

audíverim	audivérimus	audítus sim	audíti simus
audíveris	audivéritis	audítus sis	audíti sitis
audíverit	audíverint	audítus sit	audíti sint

## Pluperfect

audívissem	audivissémus	audítus essem	audíti essémus
audívisses	audivissétis	audítus esses	audíti essétis
audívisset	audivissent	audítus esset	audíti essent

## Imperative

## Present

Sing. audi	Plur. audíte	Sing. audíre	Plur. audímini
------------	--------------	--------------	----------------

## Infinitive

Pres. audíre, <i>to hear</i>	audíri, <i>to be heard</i>
Perf. audívísse, <i>to have heard</i>	audítus esse, <i>to have been heard</i>
Fut. auditúrus esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	audítum iri, <i>to be about to be heard</i>

## Participles

Pres. <i>áudiens, -entis, hearing</i>	<i>audítus, -a, -um, heard, having</i>
Fut. <i>auditúrus, -a, -um, about to</i>	<i>been heard</i>
<i>hear</i>	

## Gerund

## Gerundive

Gen. <i>audiéndi, of hearing</i>	<i>audiéndus, -a, -um, to be heard</i>
Dat. <i>audiéndo, for hearing</i>	
Acc. <i>audiéndum, hearing</i>	
Abl. <i>audiéndo, by hearing</i>	

## Supine

Acc. <i>audítum, to hear</i>
Abl. <i>audítu, to hear</i>

## 58. Third conjugation verbs in -io.

*cápere, to take*

## Indicative

## Present

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
<i>cápio</i>	<i>cápmus</i>	<i>cápior</i>	<i>cápmur</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>cápitís</i>	<i>cáperis</i>	<i>capímíni</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>cápiunt</i>	<i>cápitur</i>	<i>capíuntur</i>

## Imperfect

*capiébam, etc.**capiébar, etc.*

## Future

<i>cápiam</i>	<i>capíemus</i>	<i>cápiar</i>	<i>capíemur</i>
<i>cápies</i>	<i>capíetís</i>	<i>capíerís</i>	<i>capíemíni</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capíent</i>	<i>capíétur</i>	<i>capíentur</i>

## Perfect

*cepi, etc.**captus sum, etc.*

## Pluperfect

céperam, etc.

captus eram, etc.

## Future Perfect

cépero, etc.

captus ero, etc.

## Subjunctive

## Present

cápiam

capiámus

cápiar

capiámur

cápias

capiátis

capiáris

capiámini

cápiat

capiant

capiátur

capiántur

## Imperfect

cáperem, etc.

cáperer, etc.

## Perfect

céperim, etc.

captus sim, etc.

## Pluperfect

cepíssem, etc.

captus essem, etc.

## Imperative

## Present

Sing. cape

Plur. cápite

Sing. cápere

Plur. capímini

## Infinitive

Pres. cápere, *to take*capi, *to be taken*Perf. cepísse, *to have taken*captus esse, *to have been taken*Fut. captúrus esse, *to be about to take*captum iri, *to be about to be taken*

## Participles

Pres. cápiens, -ientis, *taking*Perf. captus, -a, -um, *taken, hav-*Fut. captúrus, -a, -um, *about to take*ing *been taken*

## Gerund

Gen.	<i>capiéndi, of taking</i>
Dat.	<i>capiéndo, for taking</i>
Acc.	<i>capiéndum, taking</i>
Abl.	<i>capiéndo, by taking</i>

## Gerundive

*capiéndus, -a, -um, to be taken*

## Supine

Acc.	<i>captum, to take</i>
Abl.	<i>captu, to take</i>

## IRREGULAR VERBS

59. *esse, to be**posse, to be able*

## Indicative

## Present

<b>sum</b>	<b>sumus</b>	<b>possum</b>	<b>póssumus</b>
<b>es</b>	<b>estis</b>	<b>potes</b>	<b>potéstis</b>
<b>est</b>	<b>sunt</b>	<b>potest</b>	<b>possunt</b>

## Imperfect

<b>eram</b>	<b>erámus</b>	<b>póteram</b>	<b>poterámus</b>
<b>eras</b>	<b>erátis</b>	<b>póteras</b>	<b>poterátis</b>
<b>erat</b>	<b>erant</b>	<b>póterat</b>	<b>póterant</b>

## Future

<b>ero</b>	<b>érimus</b>	<b>pótero</b>	<b>potérimus</b>
<b>eris</b>	<b>éritis</b>	<b>póteris</b>	<b>potéritis</b>
<b>erit</b>	<b>erunt</b>	<b>póterit</b>	<b>póterunt</b>

## Perfect

<b>fui</b>	<b>fúimus</b>	<b>pótui</b>	<b>potúimus</b>
<b>fuísti</b>	<b>fuístis</b>	<b>potuísti</b>	<b>potuístis</b>
<b>fuit</b>	<b>fuérunt</b>	<b>pótuit</b>	<b>potuérunt</b>

## Pluperfect

<b>fúeram</b>	<b>fuérámus</b>	<b>potúeram</b>	<b>potuerámus</b>
<b>fúeras</b>	<b>fuérátis</b>	<b>potúeras</b>	<b>potuerátis</b>
<b>fúerat</b>	<b>fúerant</b>	<b>potúerat</b>	<b>potúerant</b>

## Future Perfect

<b>fúero</b>	<b>fuérimus</b>	<b>potúero</b>	<b>potuérimus</b>
<b>fúeris</b>	<b>fuéritis</b>	<b>potúeris</b>	<b>potuéritis</b>
<b>fúerit</b>	<b>fúerint</b>	<b>potúerit</b>	<b>potúerint</b>

## Subjunctive

## Present

<b>sim</b>	<b>simus</b>	<b>possim</b>	<b>possimus</b>
<b>sis</b>	<b>sitis</b>	<b>possis</b>	<b>possitis</b>
<b>sit</b>	<b>sint</b>	<b>possit</b>	<b>possint</b>

## Imperfect

<b>essem</b>	<b>essémus</b>	<b>possem</b>	<b>possémus</b>
<b>esses</b>	<b>essétis</b>	<b>posses</b>	<b>possétis</b>
<b>esset</b>	<b>essent</b>	<b>posset</b>	<b>possent</b>

## Perfect

<b>fúerim</b>	<b>fuérimus</b>	<b>potúerim</b>	<b>potuérimus</b>
<b>fúeris</b>	<b>fuéritis</b>	<b>potúeris</b>	<b>potuéritis</b>
<b>fúerit</b>	<b>fúerint</b>	<b>potúerit</b>	<b>potúerint</b>

## Pluperfect

<b>fúissem</b>	<b>fuissémus</b>	<b>potúissem</b>	<b>potuissémus</b>
<b>fúisses</b>	<b>fuissétis</b>	<b>potúisses</b>	<b>potuissétis</b>
<b>fúisset</b>	<b>fúissent</b>	<b>potúisset</b>	<b>potuissent</b>

## Imperative

*Sing. es**Plur. este*

—

—



## Infinitive

Pres. <i>esse, to be</i>	<i>posse, to be able</i>
Perf. <i>fuisse, to have been</i>	<i>potuisse, to have been able</i>
Fut. <i>futúrus esse,</i>	} <i>to be about</i>
or	
<i>fore</i>	

## Participles

Future	Present
<i>futúrus, -a, -um, about to be</i>	<i>potens, -éntis (used as an adjective), powerful</i>

60. *velle, to wish*    *nolle, to be unwilling*    *malle, to prefer*

## Indicative

## Present

<i>volo</i>	<i>vólumus</i>	<i>nolo</i>	<i>nólumus</i>	<i>malo</i>	<i>málumus</i>
<i>vis</i>	<i>vultis</i>	<i>non vis</i>	<i>non vultis</i>	<i>mavis</i>	<i>mavúltis</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>volunt</i>	<i>non vult</i>	<i>nolunt</i>	<i>mavult</i>	<i>malunt</i>

## Imperfect

*volébam*                      *nolébam*                      *malébam*

## Future

*volam*                              *nolam*                              *malam*

## Perfect

*vólui*                                  *nólui*                                  *málui*

## Pluperfect

*volúeram*                              *nojúeram*                              *malúeram*

## Future Perfect

*volúero*                                  *nolúero*                                  *malúero*

## Subjunctive

## Present

<b>velim</b>	<b>velimus</b>	<b>nolim</b>	<b>nolimus</b>	<b>malim</b>	<b>malimus</b>
<b>velis</b>	<b>velitis</b>	<b>nolis</b>	<b>nolitis</b>	<b>malis</b>	<b>malitis</b>
<b>velit</b>	<b>velint</b>	<b>nolit</b>	<b>nolint</b>	<b>malit</b>	<b>malint</b>

## Imperfect

<b>vellem</b>	<b>nollem</b>	<b>mallem</b>
---------------	---------------	---------------

## Perfect

<b>volúerim</b>	<b>nolúerim</b>	<b>malúerim</b>
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

## Pluperfect

<b>voluíssem</b>	<b>noluíssem</b>	<b>maluíssem</b>
------------------	------------------	------------------

## Imperative

## Present

*Sing.* noli      *Plur.* nolíte

## Infinitive

Pres. velle	nolle	malle
Perf. voluísse	noluísse	maluísse

## Participles

Pres. volens	nolens	——
--------------	--------	----

61. *ferre, to bear, carry*

## Present

## Active Voice

<b>fero</b>	<b>férimus</b>
<b>fers</b>	<b>fertis</b>
<b>fert</b>	<b>ferunt</b>

## Passive Voice

<b>feror</b>	<b>férimur</b>
<b>ferris</b>	<b>ferimini</b>
<b>fertur</b>	<b>feruntur</b>

## Imperfect

**ferébam****ferébar**

## Future

**feram****ferar**

## Perfect

**tuli****latus sum**

## Pluperfect

**túleram****latus eram**

## Future Perfect

**túlero****latus ero**

## Subjunctive

## Present

**feram****ferar**

## Imperfect

**ferrem****ferrer**

## Perfect

**túlerim****latus sim**

## Pluperfect

**tulíssem****latus essem**

## Imperative

*Sing. fer**Plur. ferte**Sing. ferre**Plur. ferímini*

## Infinitive

Pres. **ferre****ferri**Perf. **tulísse****latus esse**Fut. **latúrus esse****latum iri**

## Participles

Pres. <b>ferens</b>	—
Perf. —	<b>latus</b>
Fut. <b>latúrus</b>	—

Gerund	Gerundive
Gen. <b>feréndi</b>	<b>feréndus</b>
Dat. <b>feréndo</b>	
Acc. <b>feréndum</b>	
Abl. <b>feréndo</b>	

## Supine

Acc. <b>latum</b>
Abl. <b>latu</b>

62. *ire, to go*

## Indicative

Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect	Pluperfect
<b>eo imus</b>	<b>ibam</b>	<b>ibo</b>	<b>ii</b>	<b>ieram</b>
<b>is itis</b>				
<b>it eunt</b>				

## Future Perfect

**iero**

## Subjunctive

Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
<b>eam</b>	<b>irem</b>	<b>ierim</b>	<b>issem</b>

## Imperative

Present

*Sing. i*

*Plur. ite*

## Infinitive

Pres. ire

Perf. isse (iisse)

Fut. itúrus esse

## Participles

Pres. iéns, eúntis

Fut. itúrus

## Gerund

Gen. eúndi

Dat. eúndo

Acc. eúndum

Abl. eúndo

## Supine

Acc. itum

Abl. itu

63. *fieri, to be made, become*

## Indicative

Present		Imperfect	Future
<b>fio</b>	<b>fimus</b>	<b>fiébam</b>	<b>fiam</b>
<b>fis</b>	<b>fitis</b>		
<b>fit</b>	<b>fiunt</b>		
Perfect		Pluperfect	Future Perfect
<b>factus sum</b>		<b>factus eram</b>	<b>factus ero</b>

## Subjunctive

Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
<b>fiam</b>	<b>fierem</b>	<b>factus sim</b>	<b>factus essem</b>

Imperative

*Sing. fi Plur. fite*

Infinitive

Pres. **fieri**

Perf. **factus esse**

Fut. **factum iri**

Participles

Pres. —

Perf. **factus**

Gerundive

**faciendus**

## EXPLANATION

1. All proper nouns that are the same in both languages have been omitted from this vocabulary.
2. Numbers following verbs refer to conjugations.
3. After some verbs, **eo** is added to indicate that the verb is a compound of **ire**.
4. After some verbs, **io** is added to indicate that the verb is an **-io** verb of the third conjugation.
5. The following abbreviations are used:

*c.*, common gender

*defect.*, defective

*f.*, feminine

*impers.*, impersonal

*m.*, masculine

*n.*, neuter

*voc.*, vocative

## VOCABULARY

### A

a, by, from

a (*interj.*), ah

ab, by, from

abalienári, *dep.*, to be estranged, go away

abba, abba, Father

abbas, -atis, *m.*, abbot

abbátia, -ae, *f.*, abbacy, abbey

abbreviáre, to shorten

ábdere, -didi, -ditus, to secrete, hide

abdicáre, to abandon, give up

ábditum, -i, *n.*, hidden place, secret

aberráre, to go astray

abesse, abfui or afui, afutúrus, to be away; absit, God forbid! Far from it!

abhorrére, to shrink away from

Abías, -ae, *m.*, Abia

abiégnus, -a, -um, of fir, of the fir tree

ábies, -etis, *f.*, fir tree

abígere, -egi, -actus, to rid, banish, drive away

abíre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (**eo**), to go away

abjéctio, -onis, *f.*, outcast

abjícere, -jeci, -jectus, to cast off or away, refuse

abjurátio, -onis, *f.*, abjuration

ablactáre, to wean

ablúere, -lui, -lutus, to wash away

ablútio, -onis, *f.*, a washing away

abnegáre, to deny

abolére, -evi, -itus, to abolish, destroy

abominábilis, -e, hateful

abominári, *dep.*, to abhor

abominátio, -onis, *f.*, abomination

- abortívus, -a, -um**, born prematurely  
**abra, -ae, f.**, maid  
**Abrahámus, -i, m.**, Abraham  
**abrenuntiáre**, to renounce  
**abríperere, -rípui, -reptus**, to drag away  
**abs, prep.**, from, by  
**Absalómus, -i, m.**, Absalom  
**abscédere, -cessi, -cessus**, to depart  
**abscíndere, -scidi, -scissus**, to cut off, take away  
**abscóndere, -condi, -cónditus**, to hide, shield  
**abscóndite**, secretly  
**abscónditum, -i, n.**, hidden thing; in  
**abscóndito**, in secret, in the secret part  
**absónsio, -onis, f.**, shelter  
**absónsus, -a, -um**, hidden, secret  
**absis, -idis, f.**, apse  
**absistere, -stiti, -stitus**, to be banished, cease  
**absolúte**, absolutely, completely, alone  
**absolútio, -onis, f.**, absolution  
**absólvere, -solvi, -solútus**, to absolve, complete  
**absorbére**, to swallow up  
**absque**, without, except, besides  
**abstémius, -a, -um**, temperate  
**abstergére, -tersi, -tersus**, to wipe away, blot out  
**abstinéntia, -ae, f.**, abstinence  
**abstinére, -tínui, -tentus**, to refrain, abstain  
**abstráhere, -traxi, -tractus**, to draw away, bring forth  
**absumere, -sumpsi, -sumptus**, to consume, take away  
**absúrde**, absurdly  
**absýnthium, -ii, n.**, wormwood  
**Ábula, -ae, f.**, Avila  
**abundánter**, abundantly, fully  
**abundántia, -ae, f.**, abundance, prosperity  
**abundántius**, more frequently  
**abundáre**, to abound  
**abúnde**, abundantly  
**abúσιο, -onis, f.**, scorn, contempt  
**abúti, -usus sum, dep. 3**, to destroy  
**abýssus, -i, f.**, the deep, depths, abyss  
**ac, and**  
**académia, -ae, f.**, academy  
**Accaronítac, -arum, m.**, Accaronites; people of Accaron or Ekron  
**accédere, -cessi, -cessus**, to come, approach  
**acceleráre**, to hasten  
**accelerátio, -onis, f.**, hastening  
**accéndere, -cendi, -census**, to kindle  
**acceptábilis, -e**, acceptable  
**acceptáre**, to accept, receive with pleasure  
**accéptio, -onis, f.**, respect  
**accéptus, -a, -um**, agreeable, welcome, worthy  
**accérsere, -ivi, -itus**, to send for, summon  
**accéssus, -us, m.**, access  
**accidéntia, -orum, n.**, accidents, appearances  
**accídere, -cidi**, to happen  
**accíngere, -cínxi, -cinctus**, to gird about  
**accíperere, -cepi, -ceptus**, to take, receive, accept  
**acclínis, -e**, leaning, bowing  
**ácola, -ae, c.**, sojourner  
**accomodáre**, to adjust, incline  
**accrésere, -crevi, -cretus**, to grow  
**accubáre**, to lie down  
**accúbitus, -us, m.**, repose; seat  
**accúmbere, -cúbui, -cúbitus**, to sit at table  
**accuráte**, accurately  
**accurátus, -a, -um**, careful, accurate  
**accúrrere, -curri and -cucúrri, -cursus**, to run to  
**accusáre**, to accuse  
**accusátio, -onis, f.**, accusation  
**accusátor, -oris, m.**, accuser



- acer, acris, acre**, sharp, bitter, ardent  
**acérbitas, -atis, f.**, bitterness, evil, wickedness  
**acérbus, -a, -um**, sour  
**acérta, -ae, f.**, casket for incense  
**acérvus, -i, m.**, heap  
**acétum, -i, n.**, vinegar  
**Achíllas, -ae, m.**, Achilles  
**ácies, -ei, f.**, edge, keenness; line of battle; pupil of the eye or the eye itself  
**ácinus, -i, m.**, berry, grape  
**acólythus, -i, m.**, acolyte  
**acquiéscere, -quíevi, -quíetus, to follow, agree**  
**acquirere, -quisívi, -quisítus, to acquire, procure**  
**acquisítio, -onis, f.**, purchase, acquisition  
**actio, -onis, f.**, action, deed; **gratíarum actio**, thanksgiving  
**actor, -oris, m.**, governor  
**actuósus, -a, -um**, active  
**actus, -us, m.**, act, office, work, celebration, deed  
**acúere, -ui, -utus, to sharpen**  
**acúeus, -i, m.**, sting, sharp point, prick  
**acus, -us, f.**, pin  
**acútus, -a, -um**, sharp; **bis acútus**, two-edged  
**ad, to, toward, unto, at, against, near**  
**adamántinus, -a, -um**, adamantine, unconquered  
**adamáre, to love**  
**ádamas, -antis, m.**, adamant  
**Adamítí, -orum, m.**, Adamites  
**Adámus, -i, m.**, Adam  
**adaperíre, -pérui, -pertus, to open**  
**adaquáre, to water, to give to drink**  
**adaugére, -auxi, -auctus, to increase**  
**áddere, -didi, -ditus, to give, to add**  
**addicere, -dixi, -dictus, to doom, adjudge, condemn**  
**addúcere, -duxi, -ductus, to bring, provoke**  
**ádeo, even, so much, to that point**  
**adeps, -ipis, m. and f.**, fat, marrow, the best, finest  
**adése, áffui (ádfui), to attend, be present, relieve, be mindful of**  
**adhaerére, -haesi, -haesus, to adhere to, cleave to**  
**adhibére, to add to, apply, take**  
**adhuc, yet, still, now, as**  
**adimplére, -plevi, -pletus, to fill**  
**adinveníre, -veni, -ventus, to find**  
**adinvéntio, -onis, f.**, plan, device, deed, work  
**adipísci, adéptus sum, dep. 3, to gain, obtain**  
**adíre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to approach**  
**áditus, -us, m.**, approach, gate  
**adjícere, -jeci, -jectus, (io), to add, grant, to direct one's thoughts toward**  
**adjudicáre, to give sentence**  
**adjumentum, -i, n.**, help  
**adjúngere, -junxi, -junctus, to join**  
**adjuráre, to adjure**  
**adjútor, -oris, m.**, helper, coadjutor  
**adjutórium, -ii, n.**, help  
**adjútrix, -icis, f.**, helper  
**adjuváre, -juvi, jutus, to help**  
**adlaboráre, to toil**  
**adléctus, -i, m.**, member elected into a collegium  
**adminículum, -i, n.**, support, prop  
**adminíster, -tri, m.**, assistant  
**administráre, to minister, adminster**  
**administratórius, -a, -um**, ministering  
**admirábilis, -e**, wonderful, admirable  
**admirári, dep., to wonder, be in admiration**  
**admittere, -misi, -missus, to join, admit**  
**admíxtio, -onis, f.**, mixture

- admonére, to warn  
 adniti, -nisus or -nixus sum, *dep. 3*,  
 to strive  
 adnotáre, to note  
 adolére, to burn, smell  
 adoléscens, -entis, *m.*, young man  
 adolescéntia, -ae, *f.*, youth  
 adolescéntior, -oris, younger; *as a*  
*noun*, young man  
 adolescéntula, -ae, *f.*, young maiden  
 adolescéntulus, -i, *m.*, young man  
 adóptio, -onis, *f.*, adoption  
 adorándus, -a, -um, adorable  
 adoráre, to adore, worship  
 adorátor, -oris, *m.*, adorer, worshiper  
 adorári, -ortus sum, *dep. 4*, to under-  
 take  
 adornáre, to adorn  
 adsciscere, -scivi, -scitus, to admit, re-  
 ceive  
 adscriptus, -a, -um, approved  
 adspicere, -spexi, -spectus, to look on  
 adspiráre, to inspire, to breathe upon  
 adstáre, -stiti, to stand by  
 adstipulári, *dep.*, to assent to, strengthen  
 adsum; *see* adesse  
 adulátio, -onis, *f.*, flattery  
 adúlter, -i, *m.*, adulterer  
 adúltera, -ae, *f.*, adulteress  
 adulteráre, to commit adultery  
 adulterínus, -a, -um, not genuine,  
 bastard  
 adultérium, -ii, *n.*, adultery  
 adúlterus, -a, -um, adulterous  
 adúltus, -a, -um, adult, grown  
 adunáre, to unite  
 adúrere, -ussi, -ustus, to kindle, set fire  
 to, burn  
 ádvena, -ae, *c.*, stranger  
 adveníre, -veni, -ventus, to come  
 adventáre, to come  
 advéntus, -us, *m.*, coming, arrival, ad-  
 vent  
 advérsa, -orum, *n.*, adverse things, ad-  
 versity  
 adversári, *dep.*, to oppose, resist  
 adversárius, -ii, *m.*, adversary, foe  
 advérsitas, -atis, *f.*, adversity, harm  
 advérsus, -i, *n.*, harm  
 advérsus, against; *ex advérso*, oppo-  
 site, over against, in the front  
 advérsus, against, in comparison with  
 advértere, -verti, -versus, to perceive,  
 remark  
 advesperáscit, -avit, *imperson. 3*, to  
 be toward evening  
 advocáre, to call to  
 advocátus, -i, *m.*, advocate  
 advoláre, to fly, hasten  
 advólvere, -volvi, -volútus, to roll  
 aedes, -is, *f.*, temple  
 aedícula, -ae, *f.*, little house or build-  
 ing  
 aedificans, -antis, *m.*, builder  
 aedificáre, to build  
 aedificátio, -onis, *f.*, building, edifying  
 aedificátor, -oris, *m.*, repairer  
 aedítuus, -i, *m.*, keeper or warden of  
 a temple  
 Aegéa, -ae, *f.*, Aegae  
 aeger, -gra, -grum, sick  
 Aegídius, -ii, *m.*, Giles  
 aegre, badly, ill  
 aegritúdo, -inis, *f.*, sickness  
 aegrotáre, to be sick, fall sick  
 aegrotátio, -onis, *f.*, illness  
 aegrótus, -a, -um, sick  
 Aegyptíacus, -a, -um, Egyptian  
 Aegýptii, -orum, *m.*, Egyptians  
 Aegyptius, -a, -um, Egyptian  
 Aegýptus, -i, *f.*, Egypt  
 Aelamítae, -arum, *m.*, Elamites  
 Aemília, -ae, *f.*, Emilia  
 Aemiliánus, -i, *m.*, Aemilian  
 aémula, -ae, *f.*, rival  
 aemulári, *dep.*, to envy  
 aemulátio, -onis, *f.*, emulation, envy

- aemulátor, -oris, m.,** zealous imitator  
**aéneus, -a, -um,** brazen  
**aenígma, -atis, n.,** riddle, hard question, obscurity; in **aenígmate,** in a dark manner  
**aequális, -e,** equal  
**aequálitás, -atis, f.,** equality  
**aequanímíter,** calmly  
**aequáre,** to equal  
**aequiparáre,** to compare  
**aéquitás, -atis, f.,** justice, righteousness  
**aéquor, -oris, n.,** sea  
**aéquus,** equal, right; **aéquo ánimo,** cheerful in mind  
**aër, aëris (pl., aëres, aëra), m.,** air  
**aerárium, -ii, n.,** treasury  
**aëreus, -a, -um,** airy, windy, raging  
**aéreus, -a, -um,** of brass, bronze, or copper  
**aerúgo, -inis, f.,** rust, blight, mildew  
**aerúmna, -ae, f.,** hardship, affliction  
**aerumnosus, -a, -um,** sorrowing  
**aes, aeris, n.,** brass, copper, money; **aes aliénúm,** debt  
**aestas, -atis, f.,** summer  
**aestimáre,** to esteem, consider, suppose, account  
**aestimátio, -onis, f.,** evaluation, appraisal; count  
**aestimátor, -oris, m.,** one who esteems  
**aestívus, -a, -um,** of the summer  
**aestuáre,** to be hot; scorch; kindle  
**aestus, -us, m.,** heat  
**aetas, -atis, f.,** age; **aetátem habére,** to be of age  
**aeternális, -e,** eternal  
**aetérnitás, -atis, f.,** eternity  
**aetérnus, -a, -um,** eternal, everlasting; in **aetérnum,** forever  
**aether, -eris (acc., aethera), m.,** upper air, sky  
**aethéreus, -a, -um,** airy, ethereal; of heaven  
**Aethiópia, -ae, f.,** Ethiopia  
**Aéthiops, -opis, m.,** Ethiopian  
**aevum, -i, n.,** eternity  
**Afer, -fra, -frum,** African  
**affári, dep.,** to speak, say  
**áfátim,** sufficiently, earnestly  
**afféctus, -us, m.,** devotion, love, affection; sense  
**afférre, attúli, allátus,** to bring forth, give; bring to  
**affícere, -feci, -fectus, (io),** to affect, cause a change in; to treat  
**affirmáre,** to affirm  
**affixio, -onis, f.,** fastening, nailing  
**affláre,** to inspire, teach  
**afflátus, -us, m.,** a blowing upon; breath, inspiration, spirit  
**afflictátio, -onis, f.,** suffering, misery, chastisement  
**afflíctio, -onis, f.,** affliction  
**afflígere, -flixi, -flictus,** to afflict, mortify, punish  
**affluére, -fluxi, -fluxus,** to abound, flow to  
**Áfricus, -i, m.,** south, south wind  
**Agaréni, -orum, m.,** Agarites  
**Ágatha Gothórum, -ae, f.,** Agata dei Goti (church)  
**ager, -gri, m.,** field; county, country, district  
**ágere, egi, actus,** to do, drive, put in motion, deal, practice; **grátias ágere,** to give thanks  
**Aggaéus, -i, m.,** Aggeus  
**agger, aggeris, m.,** mound  
**aggraváre,** to be heavy  
**ággredi, -gressus sum, (io), dep. 3,** to approach  
**aggregáre,** to add to, to join with  
**agitáre,** to shake  
**agmen, -inis, n.,** throng, host  
**agnéllus, -i, m.,** little lamb  
**agnítio, -onis, f.,** knowledge  
**Agnoítae, -arum, m. pl.,** Agnoites  
**agnómen, -inis, n.,** surname

- Agnónus, -i, f.,** Agnone  
**agnóscere, -novi, -notus,** to know, understand, acknowledge, recognize  
**agnus, -i, m.,** lamb  
**agon, -onis, m.,** a contest in the public games; agony; **in agóne,** for the mastery  
**agonía, -ae, f.,** agony  
**agonizáre,** to die  
**agréstis, -e,** wild  
**agrícola, -ae, m.,** farmer, husbandman  
**agricultúra, -ae, f.,** farming  
**ait. def. verb,** he says  
**aiunt,** they say  
**ajébat = aiébat,** he said  
**ajunt = aiunt**  
**ala, -ae, f.,** wing  
**alabástrum, -i, n.,** alabaster box  
**álacer (álacris), -cris, -cre,** quick, active, cheerful  
**alácritas, -atis, f.,** eagerness  
**alácriter,** eagerly  
**álapa, -ae, f.,** blow, box on the ear, slap  
**alátus, -a, -um,** winged  
**Alba, -ae, f.,** Alva  
**Albanénsis, -e,** of Albano  
**Albertus, -i, m.,** Albert  
**albéscere,** to grow white or bright  
**Albigénses, -ium, m.,** Albigensians  
**album, -i, n.,** tablet; list  
**albus, -a, -um,** white  
**aleph,** the first letter of the Hebrew alphabet  
**áler, álui, altus and álitus,** to feed, nourish  
**Ales, Hales**  
**ales, -itis,** winged  
**Alexándria, -ae, f.,** Alexandria; Alesandria  
**Alexandríni, -orum, m.,** Alexandrians  
**Alexandrínus, -a, -um,** of Alexandria  
**Aléxius, -ii, m.,** Alexis  
**alga, -ae, f.,** sea weed  
**álgidus, -a, -um,** cold  
**álias,** elsewhere  
**álibi,** elsewhere  
**alienáre,** to estrange  
**alienátus, -a, -um,** strange  
**alienígena, -ae, m.,** foreigner, stranger  
**aliénus, -a, -um,** strange  
**aliméntum, -i, n.,** food, refreshment  
**alimónium, -ii, n.,** nourishment  
**alióquin,** otherwise  
**aliquámdiu,** for a while  
**aliquándo,** at any time, heretofore, at last  
**aliquántisper,** for a while  
**aliquántulum,** a little, somewhat  
**aliquátenu,** to a certain degree  
**áliqui, -quae, -quod,** some  
**áliquis, -qua, -quid,** someone, something, anyone, anything  
**áliquot,** some, several  
**aliquóties,** several times  
**áliter,** otherwise  
**aliúnde,** another way  
**álius, -a, -ud,** other, another; **álius . . . álius,** one another; **álii . . . álii,** some . . . others  
**allaboráre,** to labor  
**allegoría, -ae, f.,** allegory, figure  
**allelúia, alleluia** (*Hebrew*, praise ye the Lord)  
**alleváre,** to lift up  
**alleviáre,** to raise up  
**allicere, -lexi, -lectus, (io),** to allure, charm, attract  
**allídere, -lisi, -lisus,** to strike against, cast down  
**alligáre,** to bind  
**allocútio, -onis, f.,** address, speech; encouragement, comfort  
**álloqui, -locútus sum, 3, dep.,** to converse with  
**allóquium, -ii, n.,** conversation, exhortation  
**almus, -a, -um,** gracious, kind; — **Spíritus,** Holy Ghost

- áloc, -es, f., aloc**  
**Aloísus, -ii, m., Aloysius**  
**alpha, alpha** (the first letter of the Greek alphabet)  
**Alphaeus, -i, m., Alpheus**  
**altáre, -is, n., altar**  
**alter, -tera, -terum, the other of two; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; alter . . . ab áltero, one from the other; — altérius, of one another; in áltero . . . in áltero, on the one hand . . . on the other hand**  
**altercári, to dispute**  
**alternáre, to change**  
**alternátim, alternately**  
**altérnus, -a, -um, one after the other, by turns, alternate**  
**altéruiter, -tra, -trum, one of two, one toward another; ad altérutrum, one to another**  
**áltilis, -e, fattened; altília, fatlings**  
**altitúdo, -inis, f., height, high place; depth**  
**altum, -i, n., the deep**  
**altus, -a, -um, high; deep; exalted**  
**alúmnus, -i, m., student**  
**alvéolus, -i, m., bowl**  
**Alvérnica, -ae, f., Alverno; Mons Alvérnica, Mount Alverno**  
**Alvérnus, -a, -um, Alverno**  
**álveus, -i, m., channel, bed (of a river)**  
**alvus, -i, f., womb**  
**Amálfis, -is, f., Amalfi**  
**amánter, lovingly**  
**amáre, to love**  
**amáre (adv.), bitterly**  
**amaréscere, to become bitter**  
**Amarias, -ae, m., Amarias**  
**amaritúdo, -inis, f., bitterness, anguish**  
**amárus, -a, -um, bitter; amára, n. pl., bitterness**  
**amátor, -oris, m., lover**  
**amátrix, -icis, f., lover**  
**Ambiánum, -i, n., Amiens**  
**ambígere, to doubt, hesitate**  
**ambíre, to strive for**  
**ambitiósus, -a, -um, ambitious**  
**ámbitus, -us, m., circle; cope**  
**ambo, -ae, -o, both**  
**Ambrosiánus, -a, -um, Ambrosian, of St. Ambrose**  
**Ambrósius, -ii, m., Ambrose**  
**ambuláre, to walk**  
**amen, amen (Hebrew, so be it)**  
**améntia, -ae, f., madness, insanity**  
**amethýstus, -i, f., amethyst**  
**amicítia, -ae, f., friendship, friends; league**  
**amíctus, -a, -um, clothed**  
**amíctus, -us, m., vesture**  
**amícus, -i, m., friend**  
**Amidéus de Amidéis, -i, m., Amadeo de' Amidei**  
**amíttere, -misi, -missus, to disperse, to send away**  
**Ammonítes, -is, m., Ammonite**  
**Ammonítidae, -arum, f., women of Ammon**  
**ámodo, henceforth, hereafter**  
**amoénus, -a, -um, pleasant**  
**amor, -oris, m., love**  
**Amorrhaeus, -a, -um, Amorrhite**  
**amovére, -movi, -motus, to put aside, turn away, remove**  
**amphiteátrum, -i, n., amphitheater**  
**ámphora, -ae, f., bottle, pitcher**  
**amplécti, -plexus sum, dep. 3, to embrace**  
**amplificáre, to increase**  
**amplificátor, -oris, m., one who extends or increases**  
**ámplior, ámplius, greater**  
**ámplius (adv.), yet more, any more**  
**ampúlla, -ae, f., bottle, phial**  
**amputáre, to cut off, remove, take away**

- an**, *conj.*, or  
**anachoréticus**, -a, -um, eremitical  
**anachoríta**, -ae, *m.*, hermit, anchorite  
**anáthema**, anathema  
**anathematizáre**, to curse  
**anceps**, -cipitis, two-edged  
**ánchora**, -ae, *f.*, anchor  
**ancilla**, -ae, *f.*, handmaid, maidservant, bondwoman  
**anfráctus**, -us, *m.*, bending, winding  
**Andréas**, -ae, *m.*, Andrew  
**Ángela Merícia**, -ae, *f.*, Angela Merici  
**Angélicae**, -arum, *f.*, Angelicals  
**angélicus**, -a, -um, angelic  
**ángelus**, -i, *m.*, angel  
**ángere**, to trouble  
**Angli**, -orum, *m.*, English  
**Ánglia**, -ae, *f.*, England  
**ánglice** (*adv.*), into English  
**Ánglicus**, -i, *m.*, Englishman  
**angor**, -oris, *m.*, distress  
**angoriáre**, to force  
**anguis**, -is, *c.*, snake  
**anguláris**, -e, angular, corner  
**ángulus**, -i, *m.*, corner; bastion, stay  
**angústia**, -ae, *f.*, straitness; want  
**angústiae**, -arum, *f.*, distresses, necessities, tribulations  
**angustiátus**, -a, -um, distressed  
**angústus**, -a, -um, narrow  
**Aniánus**, -i, *m.*, Annianus  
**Anícium**, -ii, *n.*, Le Puy  
**ánima**, -ae, *f.*, soul, life  
**animadvérsio**, -onis, *f.*, punishment  
**animadvértere**, *verti*, -versus, to mark, take notice of  
**áñimal**, -is, *n.*, animal, living creature, beast  
**ánimans**, -antis, living; *as a noun*, living creature  
**animátus**, -a, -um, living  
**animósitas**, -atis, *f.*, high spirits  
**ánimus**, -i, *m.*, heart, mind, spirit; **ex ánimo**, from the heart  
**Annésium**, -ii, *n.*, Annecy  
**annículus**, -a, -um, of one year, one year old  
**anniversárius**, -a, -um, anniversary  
**annóna**, -ae, *f.*, crop, grain; means of subsistence, rations  
**annúere**, -nui, to nod, beckon, wink; assent, grant  
**áñnulus**, -i, *m.*, ring  
**annumeráre**, to number  
**annuntiáre**, to announce, declare, show forth, relate  
**annuntiátio**, -onis, *f.*, declaration, announcement  
**annuntiátor**, -oris, *m.*, announcer, herald  
**annus**, -i, *m.*, year  
**áñnuus**, -a, -um, annual, yearly, by the year  
**ansa**, -ae, *f.*, handle; opportunity  
**Ansélmus**, -i, *m.*, Anselm  
**ante**, before; (before an expression of time), ago  
**ánteá**, before, formerly  
**anteáctus**, -a, -um, past  
**antecedere**, -cessi, -cessus, to go before, to surpass  
**antecéllere**, to excel  
**antecéssor**, -oris, *m.*, predecessor  
**anteíre**, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to go before  
**antelucánum**, -i, *n.*, dawn  
**antelucánus**, -a, -um, before daybreak  
**antemurále**, -is, *n.*, bulwark  
**ántequam**, before  
**antérior**, -oris, previous, before  
**antevértere**, -verti, -versus, to come before, precede  
**anticipáre**, to prevent, to anticipate  
**Antiochéni**, -orum, *m.*, Antiochians  
**Antiochénsis**, -e, of Antioch  
**Antiochénus**, -a, -um, of Antioch  
**Antióchia**, -ae, *f.*, Antioch  
**antíphona**, -ae, *f.*, antiphon

- antiquárius, -ii, m.,** antiquary, old scribe  
**antíquus, -a, -um,** former, of old  
**Antissiodorénsis, -e,** of Auxerre  
**antístes, -stitis, m.,** bishop  
**Antónius, -ii, m.,** Anthony  
**antrum, -i, n.,** cave, den  
**Antvérpia, -ae, f.,** Antwerp  
**anus, -us, f.,** old woman  
**anxiári, dep.,** to be in anguish  
**anxietas, -atis, f.,** anxiety  
**aper, apri, m.,** boar  
**aperíre, -péruí, -pertus,** to open  
**aperítio, -onis, f.,** opening  
**apernári, dep.,** to scorn  
**apérte,** openly, clearly, plainly  
**apex, -icis, m.,** top or summit, point  
**apis, apis, f.,** bee  
**Apocalýpsis, -is, f.,** revelation, Apocalypse  
**apócrypha, -orum, n.,** apocryphal gospels  
**apócryphus, -a, -um,** apocryphal  
**apología, -ae, f.,** defense, justification  
**apoplécticus, -a, -um,** apoplectic  
**apopléxia, -ae, f.,** apoplexy  
**aporiári, dep.,** to be in need, be straitened, be perplexed  
**apostásia, -ae, f.,** apostasy  
**apóstata, -ae, m.,** apostate  
**apostatáre,** to fall off or away from  
**apostáticus, -a, -um,** rebel, apostate  
**apostátrix, -icis,** rebellious, apostate  
**apostolátus, -us, m.,** apostleship  
**apostólicus, -a, -um,** apostolic  
**apóstolus, -i, m.,** apostle  
**apothéca, -ae, f.,** storeroom  
**apparére, to appear, show oneself, shine forth**  
**apparítio, -onis, f.,** manifestation, apparition  
**appáritor, -oris, m.,** servant  
**appelláre, to call**  
**appellátio, -onis, f.,** appellation  
**appéllere, -puli, -pulsus,** to bring or drive to  
**appéndere, -pendi, -pensus,** to weigh, weigh out, balance  
**appétere, -ivi and -ii, -itus,** to hunger after, reach to, pursue, seize on  
**appetítor, -oris, m.,** coveter  
**appetítus, -us, m.,** hunger, appetite, passion  
**Áppius, -a, -um,** Appian  
**applicáre, -avi, -atus and -ui, -itus,** to bring, add to; to set to shore  
**appónere, -pósui, -pósitus,** to add to, put to, do unto, proceed  
**appósitus, -a, -um,** placed near; appropriate  
**apprehéndere, -prehéndi, -prehénsus,** to take hold of, lay hands on, seize, embrace, apprehend  
**appretiáre, to prize, value, put a price on**  
**appríme, exceedingly, above all**  
**approbátio, -onis, f.,** sanction, approbation  
**appropriáre, to come near**  
**appropinquáre, to approach, be at hand**  
**approximáre, to approach**  
**Aprílis, -is, m.,** April  
**Aprútius, -ii, m.,** the Abruzzi  
**aptáre, to fit to, adapt to, prepare**  
**aptus, -a, um,** fitting  
**apud, to, with, near, in the presence of, at the house of**  
**aqua, -ae, f.,** water  
**aquadúctus, -us, m.,** water course, conduit, aqueduct  
**Aquae Tarbéllae, -arum, f.,** Dax  
**Aquénsis, -e,** of Aix  
**áquila, -ae, f.,** eagle  
**Aquilánus, -a, -um,** of Aquila  
**Aquilejénsis, -e,** of Aquileia  
**áquilo, -onis, m.,** north  
**Aquinas, -atis,** of Aquin

- Aquínus, -i, m.,** Aquinas  
**Aquisgranénsis, -e,** of Aachen  
**Aquitánia, -ae, f.,** Aquitaine  
**Aquitánus, -a, -um,** of Aquitaine  
**ara, -ae, f.,** altar  
**Arabéllae, -arum, f.,** Arabella (*Arbella, Arbel*)  
**Árabes, -um, m.,** Arabs, Arabians  
**Aragónia, -ae, f.,** Aragon  
**Aragónius, -a, -um,** Aragonian  
**aránea, -ae, f.,** spider  
**aráre, to plow;** devise  
**arátor, -oris, m.,** plowman  
**arátrum, -i, n.,** plow  
**árbiter, -tri, m.,** judge  
**arbitrári, dep., to think**  
**arbitrátus, -us, m.,** choice, will  
**arbitrium, -ii, n.,** free choice, free will  
**arbor, -oris, f.,** tree  
**arbústum, -i, n.,** orchard; **arbústa, n. pl.,** branches  
**arca, -ae, f.,** ark  
**Arcádus, -a, -um,** Arcadian  
**arcánus, -i, n.,** secret place  
**arcánus, -a, -um,** secret; **arcána, n.,** hidden or secret things  
**arcére, -ui, to prevent**  
**arcéssere, -ivi, -itus, to summon, call**  
**archángelus, -i, m.,** archangel  
**archibasilica, -ae, f.,** basilica, cathedral church  
**archiconfratérnitas, -atis, f.,** archconfraternity  
**archiepiscopátus, -us, m.,** archbishopric  
**archimandrita, -ae, m.,** archimandrite  
**archipraésul, -is, m.,** archbishop  
**archisodáalitas, -atis, f.,** archsodality  
**archisynagógus, -i, m.,** ruler of the synagogue  
**architéctus, -us, m.,** architect  
**architriclínus, -i, m.,** chief steward  
**árctius, more closely, more firmly**  
**arctus, -a, -um,** narrow, tight  
**arcus, -us, m.,** bow; rainbow  
**Ardeátinus, -a, -um,** of Ardea, Ardeatine  
**ardens, -entis,** flaming, burning  
**ardénter, ardently**  
**ardére, arsi, arsus, to burn**  
**Ardferténsis, -e,** of Ardfert  
**ardor, -oris, m.,** burning  
**árduus, -a, -um,** steadfast  
**área, -ae, f.,** floor, threshing floor  
**arefácere, -feci, -factus, (io), to parch**  
**Areláte, n., and Árelas, -atis, f., Arles**  
**Arelaténsis, -e,** of Arles  
**aréna, -ae, f.,** sand  
**arenária, -ae, f.,** sand pit  
**aréola, -ae, f.,** small plot, garden-bed  
**Areopagíta, -ae, m.,** Areopagite  
**arére, arui, to wither, dry up**  
**aréscere, áruí, to become dry, wither away;** to pine away  
**Argentárius: Mons —, Mount Argentario**  
**argénteus, -a, -um,** of silver  
**argénteus, -i, m.,** piece of silver  
**Argentorátum, -i, n.,** Strasbourg  
**argéntum, -i, n.,** silver; money  
**argúere, -ui, -utus, to rebuke, reprove, accuse, convince**  
**argumentátio, -onis, f.,** argument, debate  
**argumentósus, -a, -um,** busy  
**argumentum, -i, m.,** proof  
**Ari, vocative of Arius**  
**Ariáni, -orum, m.,** Arians  
**Arianísmus, -i, m.,** Arianism  
**árida, -ae, f.,** dryness, dry land  
**áridus, -a, -um,** dry, withered  
**áries, -etis, m.,** ram  
**Arimathaéa, -ae, f.,** Arimathea  
**Ariminénsis, -e,** of Rimini  
**ariólus, -i, m.,** cunning man, soothsayer  
**arma, -orum, n.,** arms, weapons, armor



- Armachána, -ae, f.,** Armagh  
**armatúra, -ae, f.,** armor  
**armátus, -a, -um,** armed  
**Arméni, -orum, m.,** Armenians  
**arméntum, -i, n.,** cattle; a herd  
**ármiger, -gera, -gerum,** bearing arms  
 or armor  
**armílla, -ae, f.,** bracelet  
**armus, -i, m.,** shoulder  
**aróma, -atis, n.,** spice; perfume, aroma  
**aromatízans, -antis,** aromatic  
**Arrétium, -ii, n.,** Arezzo  
**arrídere, -risi, -risus,** to smile, laugh  
**arrípere, rípuí, réptus, (io),** to lay  
 hold on, seize, take  
**ars, artis, f.,** art, artifice, scheme,  
 knowledge; trade  
**arthrítis, -idis, f.,** gout  
**artículus, -i, m.,** finger; moment; **in**  
**artículo diéi illíus,** in the same day  
**ártifex, -icis, m.,** artificer  
**artífícium, -ii, n.,** handicraft, art, skill  
**artus, -us, m.,** joint, limb  
**arundinétum, -i, n.,** reeds; a growth of  
 reeds  
**arúndo, -inis, f.,** reed  
**áruspex, -icis, m.,** soothsayer  
**arvum, -i, n.,** field  
**arx, arcis, f.,** fortress, castle; throne  
**as, assis, m.** (a small bronze coin), far-  
 thing  
**ascéndere, -scendi, -scensus,** to ascend,  
 grow up, climb up  
**ascénsio, -onis, f.,** Ascension; ascent,  
 going up  
**ascénsor, -oris, m.,** rider  
**ascénsus, -us, m.,** ascent, means of as-  
 cent; chariot  
**ascéta, -ae, m.,** ascetic, hermit  
**ascetéríum, -ii, n.,** monastery  
**áscia, -ae, f.,** hatchet  
**ascíre,** to take, get  
**ascícere, -scivi, -scitus,** to receive  
**Asculánus, -a, -um,** of Ascoli  
**Ásculum, -i, n.,** Ascoli  
**aséllus, -i, m.,** a young ass, donkey  
**Asiánus, -a, -um,** of Asia, Asian  
**ásina, -ae, f.,** a she-ass  
**asinárius, -a, -um,** pertaining to an  
 ass; **mola asinária,** millstone  
**ásinus, -i, m.,** ass  
**Asmodaéus, -i, m.,** Asmodeus  
**aspéctus, -us, m.,** vision; sightliness;  
 countenance  
**ásper, -a, -um,** sharp, rough, difficult  
**asperáre,** to make rough  
**aspergére, -spersi, -spersus,** to sprinkle  
**asprnári, dep.,** to despise  
**asprnátor, -oris, m.,** contemner  
**aspérsio, -onis, f.,** sprinkling  
**aspersus, -a, -um,** sprinkled, spattered  
**aspícere, -spexi, -spectus, (io),** to re-  
 gard, behold  
**aspiráre,** to assist, be favorable to  
**aspis, -idis, f.,** asp, adder  
**asportáre,** to bring  
**ássecla, -ae, m.,** follower  
**assentíri, -sensus sum, dep. 4,** to agree  
**ássequi, -secútus sum, dep. 3,** to fol-  
 low  
**asser, -eris, m.,** board, plank, lath  
**assérere, -sérui, -sértus,** to declare, jus-  
 tify, assert; remark  
**assértor, -oris, m.,** champion, defender  
**asseveránter,** absolutely, emphatically  
**Assidaéi, -orum, m.,** Assideans  
**assidúitas, -atis, f.,** custom  
**assíduus, -a, -um,** continual  
**assignáre,** to assign, designate  
**assimiláre,** to make like to, compare  
**assimilári, dep.,** to become like, be  
 compared  
**Assisinas, -atis, of Assisi**  
**Assisíum, -ii, n.,** Assisi  
**assístere, ástiti,** to be present, stand  
 around; to have come  
**assístrix, -icis, f.,** helper  
**assólére,** to be accustomed, be usual

- assumere**, -sumpsi, -sumptus, to take, receive, take up, take unto oneself  
**assumptio**, -onis, *f.*, Assumption; protection  
 Assur, Assyria  
**assus**, -a, -um, roasted, broiled  
 Assýrii, -orum, *m.*, Assyrians  
**ast** (at), but  
**astáre** (adstare), ástiti, to stand by or near  
**asteriscus**, -i, *m.*, asterisk  
**astringere**, -strinxi, -strictus, to bind, fetter; draw closer; **se** —, to be guilty of  
**astruere**, -struxi, -structus, to establish, add, form, build; teach  
**astrum**, -i, *n.*, star  
**astus**, -us, *m.*, cunning, cleverness  
**astútia**, -ae, *f.*, craftiness, subtlety  
**at**, but  
**ater**, atra, atrum, dark, black  
**Athanasíanus**, -a, -um, of Athanasius  
**Athénae**, -arum, *f.*, Athens  
**Atheniénsis**, -e, of Athens, Athenian  
**athléta**, -ae, *m.*, wrestler, athlete, champion  
**Atlánticus**, -a, -um, Atlantic  
**atque**, and  
**atraméntum**, -i, *n.*, ink  
**Atrébas**, -batis, *m.*, Arras  
**átrium**, -ii, *n.*, court, hall  
**atrox**, -cis, terrible, fierce, horrible  
**áttamen**, nevertheless  
**atténdere**, -tendí, -tentus, attend, take heed, hearken, to beware  
**atténte**, attentively  
**atténtius**, more attentively  
**attenuáre**, to weaken  
**attétere**, -trivi, -tritrus, to bruise; destroy  
**attestátio**, -onis, *f.*, act of attesting; proof, evidence  
**attéxere**, -tétui, -tectus, to add  
**attinére**, -tínui, -tentus, to pertain to  
**attingere**, -tigi, -tactus, to manage  
**attóllere**, to support, lift up  
**attónitus**, -a, -um, astonished  
**atráhere**, -traxi, -tractus, to draw to  
**attractáre**, to feel, touch, lay hands on  
**attribútio**, -onis, *f.*, giving  
**atritus**, -a, -um, hard  
**auctor**, -oris, *m.*, author, creator, founder  
**auctóritas**, -atis, *f.*, authority  
**auctrix**, -icis, *f.*, authoress, mother, forebear  
**audácter**, boldly  
**audére**, ausus sum, *semidep.* 2, to dare  
**audíre**, to hear  
**audítio**, -onis, *f.*, hearing, report  
**audítor**, -oris, *m.*, hearer, listener  
**audítus**, -us, *m.*, hearing  
**auférre**, ábstuli, ablátus, to take away  
**aufúgere**, -fugi (io), to flee  
**augére**, auxi, auctus, to increase  
**augéscere**, áuxi, to increase  
**augméntum**, -i, *n.*, increase, advancement  
**augur**, -uris, *c.*, soothsayer  
**Augústa Praetória**, -ae, -ae, *f.*, Aosta  
**Augustínus**, -i, *m.*, Augustine  
**Augustodunénsis**, -e, of Autun  
**Augustodúnium**, -i, *n.*, Autun  
**Augústus**, -i, *m.*, Augustus; August  
**aula**, -ae, *f.*, dwelling, temple; court; — *transvérsa*, transept  
**aura**, -ae, *f.*, air, breath, breeze  
**Áurea**, -ae, *f.*, Aurea, Aure  
**Aureliánus**, -i, *m.*, Aurelian  
**Aurélius**, -a, -um, Aurelian  
**áureus**, -a, -um, of gold, golden  
**áureus**, -i, *m.*, piece of gold  
**aurichálcum**, -i, *n.*, fine brass  
**aurícula**, -ae, *f.*, ear  
**auríga**, -ae, *c.*, charioteer  
**auris**, -is, *f.*, ear  
**auróra**, -ae, *f.*, morning  
**áurum**, -i, *n.*, gold

**auscultáre**, to listen to  
**auspicári**, *dep.*, to begin  
**auspicátus**, -a, -um, happy, auspicious  
**auspícium**, -ii, *n.*, divination, omen  
**auster**, -tri, *m.*, south; south wind  
**austéritis**, -atis, *f.*, rigor  
**austérus**, -a, -um, austere  
**austrális**, -e, south  
**Austríacus**, -a, -um, of Austria  
**aut**, or  
**autem**, but, however; and, and also;  
 whereupon  
**autumnális**, -e, autumn, autumnal;  
 withered  
**autúmnus**, -i, *m.*, autumn  
**auxiliári**, *dep.*, to help  
**auxiliátor**, -oris, *m.*, helper  
**auxiliátrix**, -icis, *f.*, helper  
**auxílium**, -ii, *n.*, help, aid  
**Auximánus**, -i, *n.*, of Ossimo  
**Auximum**, -i, *n.*, Ossimo  
**avarítia**, -ae, *f.*, covetousness  
**avárus**, -a, -um, covetous  
**avárus**, -i, *m.*, miser  
**ave**, hail  
**Avellanénsis**, -e, of Avellano  
**Avellanítae**, -arum, *m.*, inhabitants or  
 inmates of Font-Avellano  
**avéllere**, -velli and -vulsus, -vulsus, to  
 withdraw, tear away, separate  
**Avénio**, -onis, *f.*, Avignon  
**avérnus**, -i, *m.*, the infernal regions  
**aversáre**, to turn away from  
**avérsio**, -onis, *f.*, apostasy  
**avértere**, -verti, -versus, to turn away;  
 pervert  
**áva**, -ae, *f.*, grandmother  
**ávide**, eagerly  
**avídus**, more eagerly  
**avis**, avis, *f.*, bird  
**avítus**, -a, -um, ancestral  
**avocáre**, to withdraw oneself  
**avúnculus**, -i, *m.*, uncle  
**avus**, -i, *m.*, grandfather

**Azariás**, -ae, *m.*, Azarias  
**Azótii**, -orum, *m.*, Azotians  
**ázyma**, -orum, *n.*, unleavened bread;  
 azyme  
**ázymus**, -a, -um, unleavened

## B

**Babylónii**, -orum, *m.*, Babylonians  
**bacca**, -ae, *f.* (berry), fruit of the olive  
**bacillum**, -i, *n.*, staff  
**Bactri**, -orum, *m.*, Bactrians  
**báculus**, -i, *m.*, staff  
**bajuláre**, to bear, carry  
**baláre**, to bleat  
**balbutíre**, to babble  
**Baleáres**, -ium, *f.*, Balearic Islands  
**Baleáris Major**, -is, *f.*, Majorca  
**Balneorégium**, -ii, *n.*, Bagnorea  
**bálneum**, -i, *n.*, bath  
**bálsamum**, -i, *n.*, balm  
**bálteus**, -i, *m.*, belt  
**Baltimorénsis**, -e, of Baltimore  
**Bambérge**, -ae, *f.*, Bamberg  
**Bambergénsis**, -e, of Bamberg  
**baptísma**, -atis, *n.*, baptism  
**baptísmus**, -i, *m.*, baptism  
**Baptísta**, -ae, *m.*, Baptist  
**baptistérium**, -ii, *n.*, baptistery  
**baptizáre**, to baptize  
**báráthrum**, -i, *n.*, bottomless pit, the  
 lower world  
**barba**, -ae, *f.*, beard  
**Bábari**, -orum, *m.*, natives of Barbary  
**bárbarus**, -a, -um, of Barbary; foreign,  
 strange  
**Barbatiánus**, -i, *m.*, Barbatian  
**Bárcino**, -onis, *f.*, Barcelona  
**Barcinonénsis**, -e, of Barcelona  
**Barénsis**, -e, of Bari  
**Bárium**, -ii, *n.*, Bari  
**Bartholomaeús**, -i, *m.*, Bartholomew  
**basílica**, -ae, *f.*, church  
**basilíscus**, -i, *m.*, basilisk

- Basílius, -ii, m.,** Basil  
**basis, -is, f.,** base, foundation, pedestal; bases, feet  
**Baváricus, -a, -um,** of Bavaria  
**beáre, to** bless  
**beatitúdo, -inis, f.,** happiness  
**Béatrix, -icis, f.,** Beatrice  
**beátus, -a, -um,** happy, blessed  
**Beccénsis, -e,** of Bec  
**Beda, -ae, m.,** Bede  
**Belgae, -arum, m.,** Belgians  
**belláre, to** fight against, make war  
**bellátor, -oris, m.,** warrior  
**bellicósus, -a, -um,** of war, warlike  
**bélicus, -a, -um,** warlike; *vasa bélica,* arms  
**belligeráre, to** war, wage war  
**béllua, -ae, f.,** monster, savage beast  
**bellum, -i, n.,** war, battle  
**Benácus (Lacus), -i, m.,** Lake Garda  
**bene, well**  
**benedícere, -dixi, -dictus, to** bless  
**benedictio, -onis, f.,** blessing, benediction  
**Benedíctus, -i, m.,** Benedict  
**benefícere, -feci, -factus, (io), to** do good, do well  
**benefáctor, -oris, m.,** benefactor  
**benefáctum, -i, n.,** good deed; benefit, favor  
**beneficéncia, -ae, f.,** liberality  
**benefícium, -ii, n.,** benefit  
**benéficus, -a, -um,** beneficent  
**beneplácens, -entis,** acceptable  
**beneplácitum, -i, n.,** good pleasure, favor; pleasure, lust  
**beneplácitus, -a, -um,** acceptable  
**benesónans, -antis,** loud; sweet-sounding  
**Benevéntum, -i, n.,** Benevento  
**benévolus, -a, -um,** kind  
**benígne,** favorably  
**benígnitas, -atis, f.,** goodness, benignity, favor  
**benígnus, -a, -um,** merciful, favorable, good, benign, loving  
**Benítii, -orum, m.,** Benizzi  
**Berengária, -ae, f.,** Berenguela  
**Berengáriu, -ii, m.,** Berenger  
**Bergoménsis, -e,** of Bergamo  
**Bérgomum, -i, n.,** Bergamo  
**Bernárdinus, -i, m.,** Bernardine  
**Bernárdus, -i, m.,** Bernard  
**Berothíta, -ae, m.,** Berothite  
**Berthóldus, -i, m.,** Berthold  
**berýllus, -i, c.,** beryl  
**béstia, -ae, f.,** beast  
**beth,** second letter of the Hebrew alphabet corresponding to English *b*  
**Bethlehemítis, -is, m.,** Bethlehemite  
**Bethsamítae, -arum, m.,** Bethsamites  
**bíbere, bibi, bíbitus, to** drink  
**biceps, -cípitis,** two-headed, two-edged  
**bícolor, -oris,** of two colors  
**bidens, -entis, f.,** animal for sacrifice, sheep  
**bíduum, -i, n.,** space of two days  
**biénnium, -ii, n.,** space of two years  
**bilínguis, -e,** double-tongued, treacherous  
**bilocátio, -onis, f.,** the ability to be in more than one place at the same time  
**bimátus, -us, m.,** the age of two years  
**bini, -ae, -a,** two, two apiece, two of a sort  
**bipertítus, -a, -um,** having two parts, double  
**Birgítta, -ae, f.,** Bridget  
**bis,** twice  
**Biscópius, -ii, m.,** Biscop  
**Biterrénsis, -e,** of Beziers  
**bitúmen, -inis, n.,** pitch, slime, cement  
**Blancha, -ae, f.,** Blanche  
**blandiméntum, -i, n.,** allurement  
**blandíri, dep. 4,** to caress  
**blandítia, -ae, f.,** flattery  
**blandus, -a, -um,** soft, soothing

Blásius, -ii, *m.*, Blaise  
 blasphémia, -ae, *f.*, blasphemy  
 blasphémus, -i, *m.*, blasphemer  
 Blésium, -ii, *n.*, Blois  
 Boéticus, -a, -um, Andalusian  
 Boétis, -is, *f.*, Andalusia  
 Bogoténsis, -e, of Bogota  
 Bohémi, -orum, *m.*, Bohemians  
 Bolesláus, -i, *m.*, Boleslav  
 Boleslávia, -ae, *f.*, Mlada Boleslav  
 Bonajúncta Manéttus, -ae, -i, *m.*,  
 Bonajuncta Manetti  
 Bonaventúra, -ae, *m.*, Bonaventure  
 Bonfílius Monáldius, -i, -i, *m.*, Bonfig-  
 lio Monaldi  
 Bonifátius, -ii, *m.*, Boniface  
 bónitas, -atis, *f.*, goodness  
 Bonónia, -ae, *f.*, Bologna  
 bonus, -a, -um, good; in bonum, for  
 good  
 bonum, -i, *n.*, good, advantage; bona,  
*n.*, goods, possessions  
 boreális, -e, northern; boreália, *n.*,  
 northern parts  
 borith (*indecl.*), borith; possibly the  
 soapwort used formerly for cleaning  
 Borna, -ae, *f.*, Born  
 Borromaéi, -orum, *m.*, the Borromeos  
 bos, bovis, *m.* and *f.*, ox  
 Boschum, -i, *n.*, Bosco  
 botrus, -i, *m.*, bunch, cluster of grapes  
 brácca, -ae, *f.*, coat  
 bráchium, -ii, *n.*, arm  
 bránchia, -ae, *f.*, gill  
 Bráulius, -ii, *m.*, Braulio  
 bravíum, -ii, *n.*, prize  
 breve, -is, *n.*, brief  
 breviáre, to shorten  
 breviárium, -ii, breviary  
 breviculus, -a, -um, somewhat short;  
 in brevículo, after a little while  
 brevis, -e, short; in brevi, in a short  
 space  
 Brígida, -ae, *f.*, Brigid

Británni, -orum, *m.*, Britons  
 Británnia, -ae, *f.*, England; Brittany  
 Brithuáldus, -i, *m.*, Brithwald  
 Britónes, -um, *m.*, Britons  
 Bríxia, -ae, *f.*, Brescia  
 Brixíanus, -a, -um, of Brescia  
 brúchus, -i, *m.*, bruchus, locust  
 bruma, -ae, *f.*, winter  
 brumális, -e, of winter, wintry  
 búbalus, -i, *m.*, buffalo  
 buccélla, -ae, *f.*, morsel, sop, fragment  
 búccina, -ae, *f.*, trumpet  
 buccináre, to sound a trumpet  
 Bucclánicum, -i, *n.*, Bacchianico  
 Bulgári, -orum, *m.*, Bulgarians  
 Burdígala, -ae, *f.*, Bordeaux  
 Burdigalénsis, -e, of Bordeaux  
 Burgénsis, -e, of Burgos  
 Burgúndia, -ae, *f.*, Burgundy  
 bútyrum, -i, *n.*, butter  
 býssinus, -a, -um, of silk or fine linen  
 byssus, -i, *m.*, fine linen  
 Byténius, -ii, *m.*, Byten  
 Byzantínus, -a, -um, Byzantine

## C

cabus, -i, *m.*, a corn measure, cabe  
 cácabus, -i, *m.*, earthen pot  
 cacúmen, -inis, *n.*, top, summit, high-  
 est point  
 cadáver, -eris, *n.*, corpse, carcass  
 cádere, cécidi, cassus, to fall, fall down  
 cadúctitas, -atis, *f.*, frailty, perishable-  
 ness  
 cadúcus, -a, -um, perishable, transitory  
 cadus, -i, *m.*, a large vessel, a jug  
 caecátus, -a, -um, blinded  
 Caecília, -ae, *f.*, Cecilia  
 caécitas, -atis, *f.*, blindness, darkness  
 caecus, -a, -um, blind  
 caecus, -i, *m.*, blind man  
 caédere, cecídi, caesus, to strike, beat;  
 cut, hew

- caedes, -is, f.**, slaughter  
**caeles, -itis**, heavenly  
**Caelestínus, -i, m.**, Celestine  
**caeléstis, -e**, heavenly, divine; **caeléstia, n.**, heavenly things, high places  
**caelícola, -ae, m.**, inhabitant of heaven  
**caélicus, -a, -um**, heavenly, angelic  
**caélitus**, divinely, by heavenly direction  
**Caélius, -a, -um**, Caelian  
**caelum, -i, n.**, heaven  
**caeméntum, -i, n.**, mortar  
**caéperis = coéperis (coepi, etc.)**, began  
**caerúleus, -a, -um**, blue  
**caesar, -aris, m.**, emperor  
**Caesaraéa, -ae, f.**, Caesarea  
**Caesaraugústa, -ae, f.**, Saragossa  
**Caesariénsis (Caesareénsis), -e**, of Caesarea  
**caesáries, -ei, f.**, head of hair  
**caetus (coetus), -us, m.**, assemblage  
**Cáinus, -i, m.**, Cain  
**Cajetánus, -i, m.**, Cajetan  
**Calamína, -ae, f.**, Coromandel Coast  
**calámitas, -atis, f.**, calamity, distress  
**cálamus, -i, m.**, reed; fishing rod; pen  
**Calaróga, -ae, f.**, Calaruega  
**calcábilis, -e**, that can be trod upon  
**calcáneum, -i, n.**, heel  
**calcar, -aris, n.**, spur  
**calcáre**, to tread upon, trample  
**calcátor, -oris, m.**, trader  
**calceaméntum, -i, n.**, shoe  
**calceáre**, to put on (shoes)  
**calceátus, -a, -um**, shod, with shoes on  
**calcitráre**, to kick  
**cáculus, -i, m.**, pebble, stone  
**caldária, -ae, f.**, cauldron  
**calefácere, -feci, -factus, (io)**, to warm  
**calefieri, -factus sum**, to grow warm  
**caléndae, -arum, f. pl.**, the first day of the month  
**cálíga, -ae, f.**, sandal  
**caligáre**, to be misty, be in darkness  
**caliginósus, -a, -um**, misty, dark  
**cáligo, -inis, f.**, mist, cloud, dark cloud; darkness  
**cálipha, -ae, m.**, caliph  
**calix, -icis, m.**, chalice, cup  
**cállide**, craftily  
**callíditas, -atis, f.**, craftiness  
**cállidus, -a, -um**, subtle  
**callis, -is, m. and f.**, footpath  
**callus, -i, m.**, hard skin  
**calor, -oris, m.**, heat  
**calúmnia, -ae, f.**, false accusation; oppression  
**calumniáre (-ari)**, to calumniate; oppress  
**calumniátor, -oris, m.**, oppressor  
**Calvária, -ae, f.**, Calvary  
**calvária, -ae, f.**, skull  
**Calviniánus, -a, -um**, Calvinist, of Calvin  
**Calvinísta, -ae, m.**, Calvinist  
**calx, -cis, f.**, heel; lime; **viva calce**, in quick lime  
**Camaldulénsis, -e**, of Camaldoli, Camaldolese  
**Camaldulénsis, -is, m.**, Camaldolese hermit  
**camélus, -i, m. and f.**, camel  
**cámera, -ae, f.**, vault  
**Cameracénsis, -e**, of Cambrai  
**Camerínus, -i, n.**, Camerino  
**Camiénsis, -e**, of Camien  
**Camiliánus, -i, n.**, Camiliano  
**camínus, -i, m.**, furnace  
**Campánia, -ae, f.**, Champagne, Campagna  
**Campánus, -a, -um**, of Campagna  
**campéster, -tris, -tre**, pertaining to a plain, flat  
**campus, -i, m.**, field, plain  
**camus, -i, m.**, bit, curb  
**Canadénsis, -e**, of Canada  
**Canáriae insulae, -arum, -arum, f.**, Canary Islands

- cancellátus, -a, -um**, crossed  
**cancellus, -i, m.**, lattice, enclosure;  
 grating  
**candéla, -ae, f.**, candle  
**candelábrum, -i, n.**, candlestick  
**Candacénsis, -e**, of Candé  
**candens, -entis**, glowing hot  
**candidátio, -onis, f.**, glistening white-  
 ness  
**candidátus, -a, -um**, white robed  
**candor, -oris, m.**, brightness  
**cánere, cécini, cantus**, to sing; blow;  
 prophesy  
**canis, -is, m. and f.**, dog  
**canístrum, -i, n.**, basket  
**caníties (-em, -e; other cases are lack-  
 ing), f.**, gray, old age  
**canon, -onis, m.**, canon  
**canonicátus, -us, m.**, office of a canon,  
 canonry  
**canónicus, -i, m.**, canon  
**canonizátio, -onis, f.**, canonization  
**canor, -oris, m.**, song  
**canórus, -a, -um**, melodious  
**cantábilis, -e**, worthy of song  
**Cantabrigia, -ae, f.**, Cambridge  
**cantáre, to sing**; crow  
**cantátio, -onis, f.**, song  
**cánticum, -i, n.**, canticle, song  
**cántio, -onis, f.**, song  
**Cántium, -ii, n.**, Kent  
**Cántius, -ii, m.**, Kenty or Kanty (St.  
 John), Cantius  
**Cantuária, -ae, f.**, Canterbury  
**Cantuariénsis, -e**, of Canterbury  
**cantus, -us, m.**, crowing  
**Canúrus, -i, m.**, Canute  
**capax, -acis**, capable, fit for  
**capella, -ae, f.**, chapel; **sancta —**, Sainte  
 Chapelle  
**capellánus, -i, m.**, chaplain  
**cápere, cepi, captus, (io)**, to receive,  
 take, obtain; to hold, contain; to un-  
 derstand  
**capéssere, -ivi and -ii, -itus**, to seize;  
 gain  
**caph**, the eleventh letter of the He-  
 brew alphabet corresponding to  
 English *k*  
**capillus, -i, m.**, hair  
**Capistránus, -i, n.**, Capistrano  
**capitális, -e**, capital  
**Capitolínus, -a, -um**, Capitoline  
**capítulum, -i, n.**, little chapter  
**Cáppadox, -ocis**, Cappadocian  
**cáprea, -ae, f.**, roe  
**caprínus, -a, -um**, relating to a goat  
**capsélla, -ae, f.**, coffer, little box  
**captáre, to strive after; desire; seize,**  
 win  
**cáptio, -onis, f.**, prey; net, trap  
**captívitas, -atis, f.**, captivity  
**captívus, -a, -um**, captive  
**captúra, -ae, f.**, catch (of fish)  
**captus, -us, m.**, catching, capture  
**Capuccini, -orum, m.**, Capuchins  
**Capuccínus, -a, -um**, Capuchin  
**caput, -itis, n.**, head; chapter  
**carbasínus, -a, -um**, green  
**carbo, -onis, m.**, coal  
**carbúnculus, -i, m.**, carbuncle  
**Carcasóna, -ae, f.**, Carcassonne  
**carcer, -eris, m.**, prison  
**cardinalátus, -us, m.**, office of cardi-  
 nal  
**cardinális, -is, m.**, cardinal  
**cardo, -inis, m.**, pole of the earth;  
 hinge; door  
**carduus, -i, m.**, thistle  
**cáritas, -atis, f.**, charity, love  
**Carmelítae, -arum, m. and f.**, Carmel-  
 ites  
**Carmélus, -i, m.**, Carmel  
**carmen, -inis, n.**, song, lay, canticle  
**carnális, -e**, bodily, carnal  
**carnálitas, -atis, f.**, carnality, sensuality  
**carnáliter, carnally**  
**cárneus, -a, -um**, of flesh, fleshly

- cárnifex, -icis, m.**, executioner  
**carníficus, -a, -um**, of the flesh, corporal  
**caro, carnis, f.**, flesh, meat  
**Cárolus Borromaéus, -i, -i, m.**, Charles Borromeo  
**Cárolus, -i, m.**, Charles  
**Cárolus Martéllus, -i, -i, m.**, Charles Martel  
**cárpere, -psi, -ptus**, to pluck, seize  
**cartállus, -i, m.**, basket  
**Carthaginiénsis, -e**, of Carthage  
**Carthágo, -inis, f.**, Carthage; **Nova** —, Cartagena  
**Carthusiáni, -orum, m.**, Carthusians, charterhouse monks  
**carus, -a, -um**, dear, beloved; **caríssimi**, dearly beloved  
**cáseum, -i, n.**, cheese  
**cásia, -ae, f.**, cassia  
**Casimírus, -i, m.**, Casimir  
**Cássia, -ae, f.**, Cascia  
**Cassiánus, -i, m.**, Cassian  
**Cassinás, -atis**, of Monte Cassino  
**Cassinénsis, -e**, of Monte Cassino  
**Cassinum, -i, n.**, Cassino  
**cassis, -idis, f.**, helmet  
**cassus, -a, -um**, vain, useless  
**Castélla, -ae, f.**, Castile; — **Nova**, New Castile  
**Castellátium, -ii, n.**, Castellazzo  
**Castéllio, -onis, f.**, Châtilion  
**Castéllio Stivórum, -onis, f.**, Castiglione delle Stiviere  
**castéllum, -i, n.**, town, village  
**castigáre**, to chastise, punish, chasten  
**castigátio, -onis, f.**, chastisement  
**castimónia, -ae, f.**, chastity  
**cástitas, -atis, f.**, chastity  
**castramentári, dep.**, to pitch camp, encamp  
**castráre**, to castrate  
**castrum, -i, n.**, fortress, castle; **castra, n. pl.**, camp, army  
**Castrum novum, -i, n.**, Castelnuovo  
**castus, -a, -um**, chaste  
**cásula, -ae, f.**, cottage  
**casus, -us, m.**, case; peril, misfortune  
**catábulum, -i, n.**, menagerie  
**catacúmba, -ae, f.**, catacomb  
**Cataláunia, -ae, f.**, Catalonia  
**catálogus, -i, m.**, list, catalogue  
**Cátana, -ae, f.**, Catania  
**Catanénsis, -e**, of Catania; **Catanéneses**, people of Catania  
**catarácta, -ae, f.**, cataract, floodgate  
**catásta, -ae, f.**, block, scaffold, rack  
**catástrophe, -es, f.**, disaster, catastrophe  
**catechésis, -is, f.**, catechesis; oral instruction to catechumens  
**catechísmus, -i, m.**, catechism  
**catechizáre**, to instruct, teach  
**catechúmena, -ae, f.**, catechumen  
**catechúmenus, -i, m.**, catechumen  
**catéllus, -i, m.**, whelp  
**caténa, -ae, f.**, chain  
**caténula, -ae, f.**, chain  
**catérva, -ae, f.**, crowd, congregation  
**catervátim, adv.**, in troops  
**Catharína, -ae, f. (Senénsis)**, Catharine (of Siena)  
**Catharína Flisca, -ae, -ae, f.**, Caterina Fieschi  
**cáthedra, -ae, f.**, chair; professorship  
**cathedrális, -e**, cathedral  
**Cathólicus, -a, -um**, Catholic  
**catínus, -i, n.**, and **catínus, -i, m.**, dish  
**cátulus, -i, m.**, cub, whelp  
**cauda, -ae, f.**, tail  
**caula, -ae, f.**, fold, sheepfold  
**causa, -ae, f.**, cause; means; matter; sine —, in vain  
**caute**, carefully, circumspectly  
**cáutio, -onis, f.**, caution, warning; guilt; bill  
**cávea, -ae, f.**, cage  
**cavére, cavi, cautus**, to take heed, beware



- cavérna, -ae, *f.*, hollow place, cave  
 cédere, cessi, cessus, to yield  
 cédrinus, -a, -um, of cedar  
 cedrus, -i, *f.*, cedar  
 celáre, to hide  
 céleber, -bris, -bre, solemn  
 celebráre, to celebrate  
 célébritas, -atis, *f.*, celebration, feast  
 cella, -ae, *f.*, cellar  
 cellárium, -ii, *n.*, chamber  
 célula, -ae, *f.*, hut  
 celsitúdo, -inis, *f.*, height, exaltation  
 celsus, -a, -um, high, sublime  
 celtis, -is, *m.*, instrument, tool, chisel  
 cenodóxia, -ae, *f.*, vainglory  
 censére, -sui, -sum, to call; approve  
 census, -us, *m.*, tribute; cost, expense  
 centenárius, -a, -um, hundredfold  
 centésimus, -a, -um, hundredth  
 centrum, -i, *n.*, center  
 centum, one hundred  
 Centum Cellae, -arum, *f.*, Civita Vecchia  
 céntuplum, a hundredfold  
 centúrio, -onis, *m.*, captain over a hundred men, centurion  
 cera, -ae, *f.*, wax  
 cérebro, -i, *n.*, brain  
 ceremónia, -ae, *f.*, ceremony  
 céreus, -i, *m.*, wax taper, candle  
 cérnere, crevi, cretus, to see, discern  
 cérnuus, -a, -um, falling down, prostrate  
 certámen, -inis, *n.*, strife, fight  
 certáre, to fight  
 certátim, eagerly  
 certe, surely  
 certus, -a, -um, certain, fixed, determined; *cértior fieri*, to be informed  
 cervix, -icis, *f.*, neck  
 cervus, -i, *m.*, deer, stag, hart  
 Cervus Frigidus, -i, -i, *m.*, Cerfroid  
 cespes, -itis, *m.*, turf, grassy sward  
 cessáre, to cease  
 céterus, -a, -um, the other; *de cétero*, finally  
 Cethaétus, -a, -um, Cethite  
 cetus, -i, *m.* (*pl.*, *cete*, *n.*), whale  
 ceu, as, like, as when  
 Chaballícensis, -e, of Chablais  
 Chalcedonénsis, -e, of Chalcedon  
 chalcedónius, -ii, *f.*, chalcedony  
 Chaldaei, -órum, *m.*, Chaldees  
 Chaldaeus, -a, -um, Chaldean  
 Chaldáicus, -a, -um, Chaldaic  
 chameúnia, -ae, *f.*, sleeping on the floor or ground  
 Chananaeus, -a, -um, Canaanite  
 chaos, *n.*, chaos, the lower world  
 carácter, -eris, *m.*, character  
 charisma, -ae, *m.*, spiritual gift  
 charta, -ae, *f.*, paper  
 chártula, -ae, *f.*, a small piece of paper  
 Chazári, -orum, *m.*, Khazars  
 Chersona, -ae, *f.*, Cherson, Gallipoli  
 cherub (*indecl.*), *pl.*, *chérubim*, *m.*, cherub  
 Chicagiénsis, -e, of Chicago  
 chirógraphum, -i, *n.*, handwriting  
 chlamys, -ydis, *f.*, cloak  
 Chloës, Chloe  
 chorda, -ae, *f.*, string, stringed instrument  
 choréa, -ae, *f.*, choir  
 chorus, -i, *m.*, choir; dancing  
 chrisma, -atis, *n.*, chrism  
 Christiades, -um, *m.*, Christians  
 Christiádum, -i, *n.*, Christendom  
 Christiánitas, -atis, *f.*, Christianity  
 Christiánus, -a, -um, Christian  
 Christífer, -fera, -ferum, Christ-bearing  
 Christifidélis, -e, faithful to Christ, Christian  
 Christóphorus, -i, *m.*, Christopher  
 Christus, -i, *m.*, Christ  
 christus, -a, -um, anointed  
 chrysolíthus, -i, *m.* and *f.*, chrysolite, topaz

- chrysóprasus, -i, *f.*, chrysoprasus  
 Chrysóstomus, -i, *m.*, Chrysostom  
 cibáre, to feed, to give to eat  
 cibária, -orum, *n. pl.*, food, victuals  
 cibus, -i, *m.*, food, meat; fuel  
 cicátrix, -icis, *f.*, scar, wound  
 cicónia, -ae, *f.*, stork, crane  
 cicúta, -ae, *f.*, hemlock  
 cíere, civi, citus, to call by name, in-  
 voke  
 cilícium, -ii, *n.*, sackcloth, haircloth,  
 hair shirt  
 cimélium, -ii, *m.*, treasure  
 Cinaeus, -i, *m.*, Cinite  
 Cincinnaténsis, -e, of Cincinnati  
 cinctórium, -ii, *n.*, girdle  
 cinctus, -us, *m.*, girding, girdle  
 cingulum, -i, *n.*, girdle  
 cingulus, -i, *m.*, girdle  
 cínifes, -um, *m.*, gnats  
 cinis, -eris, *m.*, ashes, embers; **Feria IV**  
 Cínerum, Ash Wednesday  
 cinnamómum, -i, *n.*, cinnamon  
 cínyrum, -i, *n.*, lute  
 circa, *adv.*, about; *prep.*, with  
 círciter, *adv.*, about  
 circuíre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to go  
 about; compass  
 circúitus, -us, *m.*, circuit; in circúitu,  
 round about  
 círculus, -i, *m.*, circle  
 circumamíctus, -a, -um, clothed about  
 circumcídere, -cidi, -císus, to circum-  
 cize  
 circumcíngere, -cínxi, -cinctus, to gird  
 about  
 circumcísio, -onis, *f.*, circumcision  
 circumcursátio, -onis, *f.*, attention  
 circumdáre, -dedi, -datus, to encom-  
 pass  
 circumdoláre, to hew about with an  
 axe  
 circumdúcere, -duxi, -ductus, to lead  
 about
- circumférre, -tuli, -latus, to carry about  
 circumfódere, -fodi, -fóssus, (io), to  
 dig a ditch around  
 circumfúlgerere, -fulsi, -fulsus, to shine  
 round about  
 circumligáre, to bind up  
 circumornátus, -a, -um, adorned  
 round about  
 circumplécti, -plexus sum, *dep. 3*, to  
 compass about  
 circumpónere, -pósui, -pósitus, to put  
 upon  
 circumquáque, *adv.*, all around  
 circumséptus, -a, -um, covered on all  
 sides  
 circumspéctor, -oris, *m.*, one who sees  
 all  
 circumspícere, -spexi, -spectus, to look  
 about  
 circumstántia, -ae, *f.*, fortification; de-  
 tails, circumstances  
 circumstáre, -steti, to stand around, to  
 be present  
 circumtécus, -a, -um, covered about  
 circumveníre, -veni, -ventus, to cir-  
 cumvent, overreach  
 circumvéntio, -onis, *f.*, a surrounding  
 circumvoláre, to fly about  
 Cisterciénsis, -e, of Citeaux, Cistercian  
 cistérna, -ae, *f.*, pit  
 citátus, -a, -um, swift  
 citérior, -ius, hither  
 cíthara, -ae, *f.*, harp  
 cítháraedus, -i, *m.*, harper  
 cítharizáre, to play on a harp  
 cito, *adv.*, speedily, easily  
 citra, *prep.*, beyond  
 cítrinus, -a, -um, citrous; malum cítri-  
 num, lime  
 cívicus, -a, -um, civic  
 civis, -is, *m.* and *f.*, citizen  
 cívitas, -atis, *f.*, city  
 clades, -is, *f.*, disaster, defeat  
 clam, privately

- clamáre**, to cry out, proclaim  
**clamítáre**, to shout loudly  
**clamor**, -oris, *m.*, cry  
**clangor**, -oris, *m.*, sound  
**Clara**, -ae, *f.*, Clare  
**Claravallénsis**, -e, of Clairvaux  
**claréscere**, **cláruí**, to shine forth  
**clarificáre**, to glorify  
**clarificátio**, -onis, *f.*, glorification  
**cláritas**, -atis, *f.*, light, clarity, brightness; renown, glory  
**clarus**, -a, -um, clear; well-known  
**classis**, -is, *f.*, class; navy, fleet  
**cláudere**, **clausi**, **clausus**, to shut, close  
**claudicáre**, to limp  
**claudus**, -a, -um, lame  
**claustrális**, -e, of the cloister, cloistral  
**clava**, -ae, *f.*, cudgel, maul  
**claviculárius**, -ii, *m.*, key bearer  
**clavis**, -is, *f.*, key  
**clavus**, -i, *m.*, nail  
**Clemens**, -entis, *m.*, Clement  
**clemens**, -entis, merciful  
**cleménter**, mercifully, graciously  
**cleméntia**, -ae, *f.*, clemency  
**clericális**, -e, priestly  
**cléricus**, -i, *m.*, cleric, clerk, priest  
**clerus**, -i, *m.*, clergy; something assigned by lot, spoil  
**clíbanus**, -i, *m.*, oven  
**Clippiácum**, -i, *n.*, Clichy  
**clivus**, -i, *m.*, hill  
**cloáca**, -ae, *f.*, sewer  
**Clodoáldus**, -i, *m.*, Clodoald, (St.)  
 Cloud  
**Clodovéus**, -i, *m.*, Clovis  
**Clonardiénsis**, -e, of Clonard  
**Clonferténsis**, -e, of Clonfert  
**Cluniacénsis**, -e, of Cluny  
**Cluniácum**, -i, *n.*, Cluny  
**clusor**, -oris, *m.*, smith  
**clýpeus**, -i, *m.*, buckler  
**coacerváre**, to heap up  
**coácte**, *adv.*, by constraint  
**coadjútor**, -oris, *m.*, coadjutor  
**coadunáre**, to unite  
**coaedificáre**, to build together  
**coaequális**, -e, coequal  
**coaequáre**, to rank with, make equal; fill up  
**coaetáneus**, -a, -um, equal  
**coaetérnus**, -a, -um, coeternal  
**coaévus**, -i, *m.*, one equal in age  
**coagitáre**, to shake together  
**coagmentáre**, to join together  
**coaguláre**, to curdle  
**coagulátus**, -a, -um, curdled; craggy  
**coaléscere**, -álui, -álitus, to grow together, take firm root  
**coangustáre**, to straiten, hem in  
**coapóstolus**, -i, *m.*, fellow apostle  
**coarctáre**, to straiten  
**coccíneus**, -a, -um, scarlet  
**cóccinum**, -i, *n.*, scarlet  
**cocus**, -i, *m.*, cook  
**codex**, -icis, *m.*, document, scroll; book  
**Coelesýria**, -ae, *f.*, Coelesyria  
**coelibátus**, -us, *m.*, celibacy  
**coelum**, -i, *n.*, heaven  
**coemetérium**, -ii, *n.*, cemetery  
**coena**, -ae, *f.*, supper, dinner, feast  
**coenáculum**, -i, *n.*, dining room  
**coenáre**, to sup, have supper  
**coenobíta**, -ae, *m.*, monk  
**coenobíticus**, -a, -um, monastic  
**coenóbium**, -ii, *n.*, convent  
**coenomyía**, -ae, *f.*, dog fly  
**coepíscopus**, -i, *m.*, fellow bishop  
**coepisse**, **coeptus** (*defect.*), to begin  
**coércere**, -cui, -citus, to restrain  
**coetus**, -us, *m.*, assembly, host  
**cógere**, **coégi**, **coáctus**, to lead, bring, assemble; constrain  
**cogitáre**, to think; purpose; take counsel together  
**cogitátio**, -onis, *f.*, thought  
**cogitátum**, -i, *n.*, care

- cogitátus, -us, m.,** counsel  
**cognáta, -ae, f.,** cousin  
**cognátio, -onis, f.,** kindred  
**cognátus, -i, m.,** kinsman  
**cógnitor, -oris, m.,** knower, witness  
**cognoméntum, -i, n.,** name  
**cognomináre, to name**  
**cognominári, dep., to be surnamed**  
**cognóscere, -novi, -nitus, to know**  
**cognoscíbiliter, recognizably**  
**cohaerére, -haesi, -haesus, to cleave to**  
**cohéres, -edis, m.,** coheir  
**cohibére, to hinder, restrain**  
**cohors, -tis, f.,** band, guard, cohort  
**cohortátio, -onis, f.,** exhortation  
**coinquináre, to defile**  
**colaphizáre, to box one's ears**  
**cólaphus, -i, m.,** a box on the ear  
**coláre, to refine**  
**cólere, cólui, cultus, to till; worship,**  
 adore, revere; celebrate  
**collábi, -lapsus sum, dep. 3, to fall,**  
 collapse  
**collactáneus, -i, m.,** foster brother  
**collactári, dep., to rejoice together**  
**collátio, -onis, f.,** gathering, meeting  
**collaudáre, to praise together**  
**collaudátio, -onis, f.,** praise  
**collécta, -ae, f.,** collection or contribu-  
 tion in money; collect  
**colléctus, -a, -um, shut**  
**colléga, -ae, m.,** companion, fellow  
**collégium, -i, n.,** company, society;  
 school  
**collidére, -lisi, -lisus, to dash together,**  
 bruise, crush; cast down  
**colligáre, to bind**  
**colligátio, -onis, f.,** band  
**colligere, -legi, -lectus, to gather up,**  
 take in  
**collineáre, to direct in a straight line**  
**colliquefáceré, -feci, -factus, (io), to**  
 melt  
**colliquéscere, to melt**  
**collis, -is, m.,** hill  
**collocáre, to place**  
**collóqui, -cutus or -quutus sum, dep.**  
 3, to converse together  
**collucére, to shine, burn**  
**colluctátio, -onis, f.,** wrestling  
**collum, -i, n.,** neck  
**collustráre, to illuminate**  
**collýrium, -i, n.,** salve  
**colónia, -ae, f.,** city  
**Colónia Agrippína, -ae, -ae, f.,** Cologne  
**Colónienses, -e, of Cologne**  
**colónus, -i, m.,** inhabitant, dweller  
**color, -oris, m.,** color  
**Colossenses, -ium, m.,** Colossians  
**colúmba, -ae, f.,** dove, pigeon  
**Columbénis, -e, of Columbus**  
**cólumen, -inis, n.,** pillar, support  
**colúmna, -ae, f.,** pillar  
**coma, -ae, f.,** hair, lock of hair; **comam**  
**nutrírre, to allow hair or beard to**  
 grow freely  
**combúreré, -bussi, -bustus, to burn**  
**combústio, -onis, f.,** burning  
**comédere, -edi, -esus or -estus, to eat,**  
 devour; **comedétis vescentes, you**  
 shall eat in plenty  
**comes, -itis, m.,** companion; count,  
 earl  
**comessátio, -onis, f.,** revel, feasting,  
 riotous feasting  
**coméstio, -onis, f.,** eating  
**cóminus, adv.,** in close combat  
**comitári, dep., to accompany, follow,**  
 be together  
**comitátus, -us, m.,** company, train  
**commártyr, -is, c.,** fellow martyr  
**commemoráre, to commemorate**  
**commemorátio, -onis, f.,** commemora-  
 tion  
**commendáre, to commend**  
**commendátio, -onis, f.,** recommenda-  
 tion  
**commensális, -is, m.,** table companion

- commentárius, -ii, m.,** commentary  
**comméntum, -i, n.,** fiction, invention  
**commércium, -ii, n.,** intercourse, fellowship; work; rite  
**commigráre, to go, travel**  
**commílito, -onis, m.,** comrade in war, fellow soldier  
**commínári, dep.,** to threaten  
**commúnúere, -ui, -utus, to break into small pieces**  
**commiscére. -míscui, -mixtus or -mixtus, to mingle, to lie with**  
**commissárius, -ii, m.,** commissary  
**commíttere, -misi, -missus, to bring together, unite; to begin, set forth; commit**  
**commíxtio, -onis, f.,** mingling  
**commodáre, to lend**  
**cómmodum, -i, n.,** favor, blessing  
**commonére, to admonish, remind, warn**  
**commonítio, -onis, f.,** reminder, warning  
**commorári, dep., to stay, tarry, abide**  
**commorátio, -onis, f.,** dwelling, habitation  
**cómmeri, -mortuus sum, (io), to die together with**  
**commótió, -onis, f.,** movement, commotion, disturbance  
**commovére, -movi, -motus, to move**  
**commúne, -is, n.,** common  
**communicáre, to communicate; receive Communion; partake of; associate with**  
**communicátor, -oris, m.,** partaker  
**commúnio, -onis, f.,** communion  
**communíre, to strengthen**  
**commúnitas, -atis, f.,** commonwealth  
**commúniter, together**  
**commutáre, to change**  
**commutátio, -onis, f.,** change, barter, sale; price  
**compáctus, -a, -um, compacted**  
**compáges, -is, f.,** a joining together; joint  
**compagináre, to join together**  
**compágo, -inis, f.,** joining together; bodily structure  
**compar, -aris, c.,** companion  
**compar, -aris, adj.,** like, similar, equal  
**comparáre, to prepare; buy; compare**  
**comparátio, -onis, f.,** comparison; preparation  
**compárticeps, cipis, sharing jointly**  
**compáti, -passus sum, dep. 3, (io), to suffer with**  
**compátiens, -entis, having compassion**  
**compeditus, -i, m.,** prisoner, captive  
**compéllere, -puli, -pulsus, to subdue, constrain, oblige, compel**  
**comperíre, -peri, -pertus, to find**  
**compes, -edis, f.,** a fetter for the feet  
**compéscere, -péscui, to withhold, restrain**  
**competéter, fitly**  
**compétere, -ivi and -ii, -itus, to be capable of**  
**compíngere, -pegi, -pactus, to construct; furnish with**  
**cómpitum, -i, n.,** crossroad  
**complacére, -cui or -citus sum, to please, be acceptable to**  
**complanáre, to make plain; to level, plane**  
**complantáre, to plant together**  
**complécti, -plexus sum, dep. 3, to encircle**  
**complére, -plevi, -pletus, to fill, fulfill, accomplish, end**  
**completórium, -ii, n.,** compline  
**complexáre, to embrace**  
**complicáre, to fold together**  
**complódere, -plosi, -plosus, to beat or strike together**  
**Complútum, -i, n.,** Alcalá de Henares  
**compónere, -pósui, -pósitus, to place, order, compose; reconcile; forge**

- comportáre**, to lay up, to collect, to bring together
- compos**, -otis, possessed of, sharing in;  
**compos voti**, one whose wish is fulfilled
- compositio**, -onis, *f.*, composing, arrangement
- compósitus**, -a, -um, comely, decked out
- Compostellánus**, -a, -um, of Compostela
- comprehéndere**, -prehéndi, -prehénsus, to comprehend; obtain; take; overtake, apprehend; seize
- comprimere**, -pressi, -pressus, to suppress, restrain
- comprobáre**, to approve
- compúncio**, -onis, *f.*, compunction, sorrow
- compúngere**, -punxi, -punctus, to prick, wound; feel remorse
- computáre**, to reckon, count
- Comum**, -i, *n.*, Como
- conári**, *dep.*, to strive
- concaléscere**, -cálui, to grow hot, burn, glow
- concaptívus**, -i, *m.*, fellow captive
- cóncava**, -ae, *f.*, glen
- concedere**, -cessi, -cessus, to grant
- concelebráre**, to celebrate together
- concéntus**, -us, *m.*, harmony, concord
- concéptio**, -onis, *f.*, idea, conception
- concéptus**, -us, *m.*, conception
- concertáre**, to strive eagerly
- concessio**, -onis, *f.*, concession
- Conchessa**, -ae, *f.*, Conchessa
- concidere**, -cidi, to fall down; be disheartened
- concidere**, -cidi, -císus, to cut, slice
- conciáliabulum**, -i, *n.*, market place
- conciáliare**, to procure, obtain
- conciáliatrix**, -icis, *f.*, ambadress
- concílium**, -ii, *n.*, council
- concinere**, -cínui, -centus, to sing
- concináre**, to arrange; frame, weave, forge
- concínus**, -a, -um, elegant, polished
- cóncio**, -onis, *f.*, sermon
- concionári**, *dep.*, to preach
- concionátor**, -oris, *m.*, preacher
- concíperere**, -cepi, -ceptus, (io), to conceive
- concitáre**, to stir up, arouse, move, raise
- concívis**, -is, *c.*, fellow citizen
- concláve**, -is, *n.*, a room that may be locked
- conclúdere**, -clusi, -clusus, to conclude; enclose; to shut up
- conclúsió**, -onis, *f.*, conclusion
- concordáre**, to be of one mind, agree
- concórdia**, -ae, *f.*, union, peace
- concórditer**, with one accord
- concorporátus**, -a, -um, united in one body
- concorpóreus**, -a, -um, of one body with
- concors**, -cordis, of one mind, harmonious
- concremáre**, to kindle, burn up
- concrepáre**, -ui, to rattle, resound
- concreścere**, -crevi, -cretus, to grow together; increase
- concrétus**, -a, -um, thickened, dried up
- concubína**, -ae, *f.*, concubine
- concupinárius**, -ii, *m.*, keeper of concubines
- concupítor**, -oris, *m.*, one who lives or sleeps with another
- concupíbitus**, -us, *m.*, cohabitation
- conculcáre**, to tread on, trample under foot
- concúmbere**, -cúbui, -cúbitus, to lie with
- concupiscéntia**, -ae, *f.*, lust; love
- concupiscere**, -pivi, -pitus, to long for, covet
- concupiscibilis**, -e, very desirable

- concútere, -cussi, -cussus, (io), to**  
 strike, cause to tremble  
**condecoráre, to decorate**  
**condelectári, dep., to be delighted with**  
**condemnáre, to condemn**  
**condénsus, -a, -um, thickly covered;**  
**condénsa, n. pl., leafy boughs; thick**  
**woods**  
**cóndere, -didi, -ditus, to found, cre-**  
**ate; put in; lay up**  
**condescéndere, -scendi, -scensus, to**  
 condescend; descend  
**condícere, -dixi, -dictus, to appoint**  
**condígnus, -a, -um, worthy to be com-**  
 pared with  
**condiméntum, -i, n., spice, seasoning**  
**condíre, to season; embalm**  
**condiscípulus, -i, m., fellow disciple**  
**condítio, -onis, f., condition, nature**  
**cónditor, -oris, m., founder, creator**  
**condólere, -dólui, to have compassion**  
**condúcere, -duxi, -ductus, to hire**  
**confabulári, dep., to talk**  
**conférre, -tuli, collátus, to accompany;**  
 grant, confer; ponder; gain; press  
 down; se —, to betake oneself to  
**confessárius, -ii, m., confessor**  
**conféssio, -onis, f., confession; praise**  
**conféssor, -oris, m., confessor**  
**conféstim, immediately, forthwith**  
**confíctus, -a, -um, forged**  
**confidéntia, -ae, f., confidence**  
**confídere, -físus sum (semidep.), to**  
 trust, confide, hope, be of good heart  
**confígere, -fíxi, -fíxus, to nail, fasten**  
 or fix in  
**configuráre, to fashion**  
**configurátus, -a, -um, made like or**  
 conformable  
**confirmáre, to strengthen, uphold**  
**confitéri, -fessus sum, dep. 2, to**  
 confess, acknowledge, praise; give  
 thanks, give glory  
**conflans, -antis, refining**
- confláre, to weld, forge, refine, melt**  
**conflátilis, -e, molten**  
**conflictáre, to contend with**  
**conflictus, -us, m., conflict**  
**conflígere, -fíxi, -fíctus, to strive**  
**conflúere, -fluxi, to stream together;**  
 resort  
**confódere, -fodi, -fossus, (io), to stab**  
**confoederáre, to bind together**  
**confoederátio, -onis, f., confederation,**  
 union  
**conformáre, to conform**  
**confortáre, to strengthen**  
**confortári, dep., to take courage, wax**  
 strong  
**confortátio, -onis, f., solace**  
**confráctio, -onis, f., breaking; gap,**  
 breach  
**confrátres, -um, m. pl., guild brothers**  
**confrígere, -fíxi, -fíctus, to burn up**  
**confríngere, -fregi, -fractus, to break**  
 in pieces, burst, shatter, destroy  
**confúgere, -fugi, (io), to flee**  
**confúsió, -onis, f., confusion, shame**  
**confúsus, -a, -um, confused, disor-**  
 dered  
**confutáre, to confute**  
**confúndere, -fudi, -fusus, to confound;**  
 put to shame  
**congaudére, -gavísus sum, semidep.,**  
 to rejoice with  
**congelátus, -a, -um, frozen**  
**congéner, -eris, of the same kind, kin-**  
 dred  
**congerére, -gessi, -gestus, to heap**  
**conglorificáre, to glorify**  
**conglutináre, to bind together**  
**conglutinári, dep., to cleave to**  
**congratulári, dep., to rejoice with**  
**congregáre, to gather together, collect,**  
 assemble  
**congregátio, -onis, f., company, gath-**  
 ering, assembly, congregation  
**congréssio, -onis, f., meeting**

- cóngruens, -entis**, proper, suitable, seasonable
- congruénter**, suitably, becomingly
- congrúere, -ui**, to correspond with
- cóngruus, -a, -um**, fitting, becoming
- Conímbría, -ae, f.**, Coimbra
- Conimbricénsis, -e**, of Coimbra
- conjícere, -jeci, -jectus, (io)**, to cast; conjecture, guess
- conjugális, -e**, conjugal
- conjúctio, -onis, f.**, joining together, union, conjunction
- conjúgere, -junxi, -junctus**, to join, have affinity with
- conjux, -jugis, c.**, husband, wife, spouse
- Connácti, -orum, m.**, Connaught
- connectere, -nexus, -nexus**, to fasten together, unite; cause
- connexus, -a, -um**, joined together
- connúbium, -ii, n.**, matrimony
- connumeráre**, to number among
- conopéum, -i, n.**, canopy
- conquadráre**, to cut square
- conquassáre**, to crush
- cónqueri, -questus sum, dep. 3**, to complain
- conquiescere, -quíevi, -quíetus**, to rest
- conquisítio, -onis, f.**, dispute
- conquisítor, -oris, m.**, disputer
- conregnáre**, to reign with
- consalutáre**, to salute one another
- consanguíneus, -a, -um**, of one blood with
- consanguíneus, -i, m.**, cousin
- conséndere, -scendi, -scensus**, to ascend
- consciéntia, -ae, f.**, consciousness; conscience; acknowledgment
- conscíndere, -scidi, -scissus**, to rend
- cónsciús, -a, -um**, conscious, knowing
- conscriptus, -a, -um**, written
- consecráre**, to consecrate, sanctify, hallow
- consecrátio, -onis, f.**, consecration
- consénior, -oris, m.**, ancient, elder
- consensus, -us, m.**, concord, harmony
- consentáneus, -a, -um**, consonant with, fit, suitable
- consentíre, -sensi, -sensus**, to consent
- consepelíre, -sepelivi and -ii, -sepúltus**, to bury with
- consequénter**, consequently
- cónsequi, -secútus sum, dep. 3**, to follow; obtain
- consérere, -sevi, -situs**, to sow
- conserváre**, to keep, preserve
- conservátus, -a, -um**, inviolate
- conservus, -i, m.**, fellow servant or slave
- consessus, -us, m.**, seat, place; **primi consessus**, foremost places, precedence
- consideráre**, to look, consider
- consignáre**, to sign with
- consiliári, dep.**, to meditate
- consiliárius, -ii, m.**, counselor, adviser, judge
- consílium, -ii, n.**, counsel; assembly
- consímilis, -e**, like
- consistere, -stiti**, to stand together, continue
- consociáre**, to associate with, share
- consolári, dep.**, to comfort
- consolátio, -onis, f.**, consolation, comfort
- consolátor, -oris, m.**, comforter
- consolidáre**, to strengthen
- cónsonus, -a, -um**, in harmony with, harmonious
- consors, -sortis**, having a common lot, partaking
- consors, -sortis, c.**, sharer, fellow
- consórtium, -ii, n.**, consort, company
- conspéctor, -oris, m.**, beholder
- conspéctus, -us, m.**, sight, presence
- conspérgere, -spersi, -spersus**, to sprinkle, strew



- conspérsio, -onis, f.**, paste, dough  
**conspícere, -spexi, -spectus, (io), to**  
 see, consider, look at, stare upon  
**conspiráre, to unite, agree**  
**conspirátio, -onis, f.**, one common  
 opinion; agreement  
**conspúere, -spui, -sputus, to spit upon**  
**constánter, earnestly**  
**Constantiniánus, -a, -um, of Constantine**  
**Constantinópolis, -is, f.**, Constantinople  
**Constantinopolitánus, -a, -um, of Constantinople**  
**Constantínus, i, m.**, Constantine  
**constáre, -steti, -statúrus, to consist; exist**  
**consternátus, -a, -um, in consternation**  
**constitúere, -ui, -utus, to constitute, decree, appoint, set, ordain; stand**  
**constitútio, -onis, f.**, constitution; order, foundation  
**constringere, -strinxí, -strictus, to bind fast**  
**constrúere, -struxi, -structus, to build; frame together**  
**constupráre, to corrupt**  
**consubstantiális, -e, consubstantial**  
**consudáre, to sweat**  
**consúere, -sui, -sutus, to sew together**  
**consuéscere, -suevi, -suetus, to be accustomed**  
**consuetúdo, -inis, f.**, custom, intercourse, intimacy  
**consuétus, -a, -um, wonted, accustomed**  
**consul, -sulis, m.**, consul  
**consúltum, -i, n.**, resolution  
**consúltus, -a, -um, wise; consúltius, more wisely**  
**consumere, -sumpsi, -sumptus, to consume, bring to an end**  
**consummáre, to consummate, accomplish, fulfill, consume, spend, finish**  
**consummátio, -onis, f.**, perfecting; consummation; end of the world  
**consumptio, -onis, f.**, utter destruction; a wasting  
**consúrgere, -surréxi, -surréctus, to rise up or with, stand up**  
**contabéscere, -tábui, to pine away**  
**contáctus, -us, m.**, contact, touch, approach  
**contágio, -onis, f.**, contagion  
**contagiósus, -a, -um, contagious**  
**contágium, -ii, n.**, touch, contagion; temptation  
**contamináre, to defile**  
**contégere, -texi, -tectus, to cover, envelop**  
**contemnáre, to despise**  
**contémnere, -tempsi, -temptus, to despise, slight**  
**contemperáre, to mix, infuse**  
**contempláre, to behold, contemplate**  
**contemplátor, -oris, m.**, contemplator  
**contemptibilis, -e, contemptible**  
**contémptio, -onis, f.**, contempt  
**contémptor, -oris, m.**, despiser  
**contémptus, -us, m.**, contempt  
**conténdere, -tendi, -tentus, to maintain, assert; strive**  
**conténtio, -onis, f.**, contention, strife, obstinacy  
**contentióse, contentiously, rebelliously**  
**conténtus, -a, -um, content**  
**contérrere, -trivi, -tritus, to break in pieces, grind to powder, crush, destroy; bruise**  
**contérritus, -a, -um, frightened**  
**contestári, dep.**, to testify  
**contéxtus, -a, -um, woven**  
**conticéscere, -tícuí, to be silent**  
**contignátio, -onis, f.**, woodwork  
**cóntinens, -entis, f.**, continent, mainland  
**continéntia, -ae, f.**, self-denial, restraint, abstinence

- continére, -tínui, -tentus, to uphold;**  
 stop; keep silence; possess, hold fast;  
 contain; keep back  
**contíngere, -tígi, -tactus, to touch;**  
 happen to, fall to; belong to  
**continuátus, -a, -um, continual**  
**contínuo, immediately**  
**contínuus, -a, -um, continuous, infinite**  
**contorquére, -torsí, -torsus, to wind**  
 about  
**contra, prep. and adv., against, before;**  
 the opposite, on the contrary; **e**  
**contra, coming toward him**  
**contradícere, -dixi, -dictus, to contra-**  
 dict; resist, contend with  
**contradictio, -onis, f., contradiction;**  
 strife  
**contráhere, -traxi, -tractus, to contract,**  
 draw in; commit  
**contraíre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to go**  
 against, brave  
**contrárius, -a, -um, against, contrary;**  
**e contrário, on the contrary**  
**contrectáre, to handle**  
**contrémere, -trémui, to tremble**  
**contremiscere, -trémui, to tremble**  
**contribuláre, to crush**  
**contribulátus, -a, -um, troubled**  
**contribulis, -is, m., countryman**  
**contristáre, to sadden**  
**contrítio, -onis, f., grief, contrition**  
**contrítus, -a, -um, contrite**  
**controvérsia, -ae, f., controversy**  
**contubernium, -ii, n., a common**  
 dwelling; comradeship, intimacy  
**contuérí, -túitus sum, dep. 2, to con-**  
 sider  
**contumácia, -ae, f., insolence**  
**contumélia, -ae, f., outrage**  
**contumeliáre, to outrage**  
**contumeliósus, -a, -um, contumelious**  
**contúndere, -tudi, -tusus, to bruise,**  
 crush  
**conturbáre, to disquiet, trouble**
- conturbátio, -onis, f., trouble, vexa-**  
 tion  
**contutári, dep., to keep safe; to com-**  
 municate with  
**convalére, -váluí, to recover strength,**  
 to regain health  
**convalescere, -váluí, to gain strength**  
**convállis, -is, f., valley**  
**convéniens, -entis, agreeing**  
**conveniénter, duly**  
**conveníre, -veni, -ventus, to come to-**  
 gether, agree; resort  
**convénticulum, -i, n., meeting, gather-**  
 ing  
**convéntio, -onis, f., agreement, con-**  
 cord  
**conventuális, -e, pertaining to a con-**  
 vent; **Minóres Conventuáles, Friars**  
**Minor Conventuals**  
**convéntus, -us, m., assembly, — Lau-**  
**dántium, Guild of Praise**  
**conversáre, to turn around**  
**conversári, dep., to converse**  
**conversátio, -onis, f., intercourse, con-**  
 versation; manner of living, con-  
 duct  
**convérsio, -onis, f., conversion**  
**convérsus, -a, -um, turned toward**  
**convértere, -verti, -versus, to convert,**  
 change  
**convésci, dep. 3, to eat with**  
**convícium, -ii, n., reproach, insult**  
**convíncere, -vici, -victus, to convict**  
**convitiári, dep., to revile**  
**convivántes, -ium, m. pl., banqueters**  
**convivári, dep., to feast with**  
**convivificáre, to quicken together with**  
**convívium, -ii, n., banquet**  
**convólvere, -volvi, -volútus, to roll up**  
**cooperáre, to cooperate**  
**cooperátor, -oris, m., fellow helper**  
**cooperíre, -pérui, -pertus, to cover**  
**coopértus, -a, -um, clothed, arrayed**  
**cooptáre, to elect**

- cóphinus, -i, m.**, basket, hod  
**cópia, -ae, f.**, abundance, store  
**copiósitas, -atis, f.**, abundance  
**copiósus, adv.**, in greater numbers  
**copiósus, -a, -um**, plentiful, great  
**cópula, -ae, f.**, union  
**copuláre, to join together**  
**copulári, dep.**, to be united with; to embrace  
**cóquere, coxi, coctus, to cook, boil, bake**  
**cor, cordis, n.**, heart  
**coram, prep.**, in the presence of, before  
**corbóna, -ae, f.**, treasury  
**Corcyrénsis, -e**, of Corfu  
**Córduba, -ae, f.**, Córdoba  
**Cordubénsis, -e**, of Cordoba  
**coriárius, -ii, m.**, tanner  
**Corínthii, -orum, m. pl.**, Corinthians  
**Corínthus, -i, f.**, Corinth  
**córium, -ii, n.**, hide  
**Corneliénsis, -e**, of Imola  
**Cornélius, -a, -um**, Cornelian  
**córneus, -a, -um**, made of horn  
**corniculárius, -ii, m.**, trumpeter  
**cornu, -us, n.**, horn; mountain top  
**coróna, -ae, f.**, wreath, crown  
**coronáre, to crown**  
**coronátor, -oris, m.**, crowner, bestower  
**corporáliter, with one body; bodily**  
**corpóreus, -a, -um**, bodily, corporeal  
**corpus, -oris, n.**, body; carcass  
**corpúsculum, -i, n.**, small body  
**corréctio, -onis, f.**, correction; prop, support  
**corréptio, -onis, f.**, correction, chastising  
**corrígere, -rexi, -rectus, to correct; establish**  
**corrígia, -ae, f.**, shoe lace  
**corrípere, -rípuí, -reptus, (io), to rebuke, admonish, chastise, smite**  
**corrobáre, to strengthen**  
**corrogátio, -onis, f.**, contribution  
**corrósio, -onis, f.**, gnawing  
**corrúere, -rui, to fall (to the ground)**  
**corrumpens, -entis, baleful**  
**corrumpere, -rupi, -ruptus, corrupt, pervert**  
**corruptéla, -ae, f.**, bribery, corruption  
**corruptibilis, -e, corruptible**  
**corruptibilitas, -atis, f.**, corruptibility  
**corrúptio, -onis, f.**, corruption  
**corrúptus, -a, -um**, corrupted  
**corus, -i, m.**, quarter, measure  
**coruscáre, to glitter, shine, gleam**  
**coruscátio, -onis, f.**, lightning  
**corúscus, -i, m.**, lightning  
**corvus, -i, m.**, raven  
**Cósmedin, Cosmedine**  
**costa, -ae, f.**, side; rib  
**cóstula, -ae, f.**, rib  
**Cottiénsis, -e**, of Cotyaeus  
**cotúrnix, -icis, f.**, quail  
**couti, -usus sum, dep. 3, to communicate with**  
**Cracóvia, -ae, f.**, Cracow  
**Cracoviénsis, -e**, of Cracow  
**crápula, -ae, f.**, surfeiting, drunkenness  
**crapulátus, -a, -um**, surfeited  
**cras, adv.**, tomorrow  
**crassities, -ei, f.**, grossness, coarseness  
**crassitúdo, -inis, f.**, thickness, fatness; a clod  
**crassus, -a, -um**, thick, fat  
**crastinus, -a, -um**, relating to tomorrow  
**crastína die, tomorrow; dies crastína, the following day; in crastinum, on the next day**  
**crater, -eris, m.**, a large bowl in which wine was mixed with water; chalice  
**cráticula, -ae, f.**, gridiron, grating  
**cratis, -is, f.**, grating, gridiron  
**créare, to create**  
**creátio, -onis, f.**, creation  
**creátor, -oris, m.**, creator  
**creatúra, -ae, f.**, creature  
**crebro, adv.**, frequently

- crédere**, -didi, -ditus, to believe, trust; to be faithful (in the passive)  
**credíbilis**, -e, trustworthy  
**créditor**, -oris, *m.*, creditor  
**créditus**, -a, -um, entrusted, committed to the care of  
**credúlitas**, -atis, *f.*, faith, belief  
**cremáre**, to burn  
**crémium**, -ii, *n.*, fuel  
**crepáre**, -ui, -itus, to crack, burst asunder  
**crepido**, -inis, *f.*, base, foot  
**crépitus**, -us, *m.*, explosion  
**crepúsculum**, -i, *n.*, twilight  
**créscere**, crevi, cretus, to increase, grow; spring up  
**Creta**, -ae, *f.*, Crete  
**Creténses**, -ium, *m. pl.*, Cretans  
**Cretes**, -um, *m. pl.*, Cretans  
**cribráre**, to sift  
**crimen**, -inis, *n.*, guilt, sin  
**crimináre**, to accuse  
**criminári**, *dep.*, to accuse  
**criminátor**, -oris, *m.*, detractor  
**criminátrix**, -icis, *f.*, false accuser  
**croceus**, -a, -um, scarlet  
**crocus**, -i, *m.*, saffron  
**cruciáre**, to torture, torment  
**cruciátio**, -onis, *f.*, punishment  
**crucifigere**, -fixi, -fixus, to crucify  
**crudélis**, -e, cruel  
**crudus**, -a, -um, raw  
**cruentáre**, to torture, lash  
**cruentátus**, -a, -um, bleeding  
**cruentus**, -a, -um, bloody  
**cruur**, -oris, *m.*, gore, blood  
**crus**, cruris, *n.*, leg  
**crux**, crucis, *f.*, cross  
**crypta**, -ae, *f.*, crypt, catacomb  
**Crýptula**, -ae, *f.*, La Grotella  
**crystállus**, -i, *f.*, crystal; ice  
**cubáre**, -ui, -itus, to lie down  
**cubiculárius**, -ii, *m.*, cubicular, chamberlain  
**cubiculum**, -i, *n.*, chamber, bedroom  
**cubíle**, -is, *n.*, bed, couch; lair, den  
**cúbitum**, -i, *n.*, cubit  
**cúbitus**, -us, *m.*, cubit  
**cucúlla**, -ae, *f.*, cowl  
**cucumerárium**, -ii, *n.*, garden of cucumbers  
**cúdere**, to stamp, coin  
**cujus** (cuius), genitive of **qui** and **quis**, whose, of whom  
**cúlcitra**, -ae, *f.*, mattress, bed  
**culex**, -icis, *m.*, gnat  
**culmen**, -inis, *n.*, top, summit, height  
**culpa**, -ae, *f.*, fault, guilt, sin  
**cultor**, -oris, *m.*, cultivator; dresser; professor; worshiper; dweller, inhabitant  
**cultrix**, -icis, *f.*, worshiper  
**cultúra**, -ae, *f.*, worship  
**cultus**, -us, *m.*, cultivation, care; worship  
**cum**, *prep.*, with  
**cum**, *conj.*, when, while; whereas; although; since  
**cumuláre**, to heap up, increase  
**cumulátius**, *adv.*, more fully  
**cúmulus**, -i, *m.*, heap, pile  
**cunae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, cradle  
**cunctári**, *dep.*, to delay  
**cunctus**, -a, -um, all  
**Cunegúnda**, -ae, *f.*, Cunigundis  
**cúpere**, -ivi and -iü, -itus, (io), to desire, long for  
**cúpide**, gladly  
**cupíditas**, -atis, *f.*, desire, greed  
**cúpido**, -inis, *f.*, desire  
**cúpidus**, -a, -um, desirous  
**cúpiens**, -entis, desirous  
**cur**, why?  
**cura**, -ae, *f.*, care  
**curáre**, to cure, heal  
**curátio**, -onis, *f.*, healing, cure  
**curátrix**, -icis, *f.*, guardian, warden  
**cúria**, -ae, *f.*, senate house

**Cúria**, -ae, *f.*, Coire  
**Curiménsis**, -e, of Gurina  
**currens**, -entis, current  
**cúrrere**, **cucúrri**, **cursus**, to run, hasten  
**cúrrilis**, -e, pertaining to a chariot  
**currus**, -us, *m.*, chariot  
**cursitáre**, to run up and down or  
 hither and thither  
**cursus**, -us, *m.*, course; voyage  
**curváre**, to bend; humble  
**curvéscere**, to bend over  
**cuspis**, -idis, *f.*, point (of a spear)  
**custódia**, -ae, *f.*, watch; prison, ward,  
 cell  
**custódiens**, -entis, *m.*, keeper  
**custodíre**, to protect, preserve, keep;  
 watch over  
**custos**, -odis, *m.* and *f.*, guard, watch-  
 man  
**Cuthbértus**, -i, *m.*, Cuthbert  
**cutis**, -is, *f.*, skin  
**cyclas**, -adis, *f.*, robe  
**cýmbalum**, -i, *n.*, cymbal  
**cýnicus**, -i, *m.*, cynic  
**Cydónia**, -ae, *f.*, Canea (in Crete)  
**cypréssinus**, -a, -um, of cypress  
**cypréssus**, -i, *f.*, cypress tree  
**Cypriánus**, -i, *m.*, Cyprian  
**Cýprius**, -a, -um, Cyprian  
**cyprus**, -i, *f.*, cypress  
**Cyrenaéus**, -a, -um, of Cyrene, Cyre-  
 nian  
**Cyrenénsis**, -e, of Cyrene, Cyrenian  
**Cyrillus**, -i, *m.*, Cyril

## D

**Daciánus**, -i, *m.*, Dacian  
**daemon**, -onis, *m.*, devil  
**daemoníacus**, -i, *m.*, possessed person  
**daemónium**, -ii, *n.*, devil  
**daleth**, fourth letter of the Hebrew  
 alphabet corresponding to Eng-  
 lish *d*

**Dálmatae**, -arum, *m. pl.*, Dalmatians  
**dalmática**, -ae, *f.*, dalmatic  
**Damascéni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Damascenes  
**Damascénus**, -a, -um, Damascene  
**Damiánus**, -i, *m.*, Damian  
**damnáre**, to condemn  
**damnátio**, -onis, *f.*, damnation, con-  
 demnation  
**damnósus**, -a, -um, mistaken, harmful  
**damnum**, -i, *n.*, damage, loss, evil, in-  
 jury, punishment  
**Dani**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Danes  
**Danúbius**, -ii, *m.*, the Danube  
**Daphníticus**, -a, -um, of Daphne  
**daps**, **dapis**, *f.*, meal, banquet, food  
**dare**, **dedi**, **datus**, to give, grant, yield  
**dator**, -oris, *m.*, giver  
**datum**, -i, *n.*, gift  
**Davídicus**, -a, -um, Davidical  
**de**, from, down from, out of; concern-  
 ing  
**dea**, -ae, *f.*, goddess  
**dealbáre**, to make white  
**deambuláre**, to walk about  
**deargentáre**, to plate with silver  
**deaurátus**, -a, -um, gilded  
**debelláre**, to wage war  
**debére**, to owe; ought  
**débilis**, -e, feeble; maimed  
**debilitas**, -atis, *f.*, weakness  
**débitor**, -oris, *m.*, debtor  
**débitrix**, -icis, *f.*, debtor  
**débitum**, -i, *n.*, debt  
**débitus**, -a, -um, due  
**decachórdus**, -a, -um, ten stringed  
**decálogus**, -i, *m.*, decalogue, the Ten  
 Commandments  
**decantáre**, to sing  
**decantátio**, -onis, *f.*, singing  
**decas**, -adis, *f.*, decade, set of ten  
**decem**, ten  
**decem et octo**, eighteen  
**decénni**, -ae, -a, ten years; **decénnis**, at  
 the age of ten

- decénte*r*, fittingly  
 Decentiánum, -i, *n.*, Desenzano  
 decéptor, -oris, *m.*, deceiver, enemy  
 decérnere, -crevi, -cretus, to intend, ordain, determine  
 decérpere, -cerpsi, -cerptus, to take away  
 decertáre, to strive  
 decéssor, -oris, *m.*, predecessor  
 decet, -uit, *impers.* 2, it is becoming  
 décidens, -entis, fading  
 decídere, -cidi, to fall down, die, wither  
 décima, -ae, *f.*, tenth, tithe  
 decimátio, -onis, *f.*, tithe  
 décimus, -a, -um, tenth  
 décimus (-a, -um) nonus (-a -um), nineteenth  
 décimus (-a, -um) octávus (-a, -um), eighteenth  
 décimus (-a, -um) quartus (-a, um), fourteenth  
 décimus (-a, -um) sextus (-a, -um), sixteenth  
 decípere, -cepi, -ceptus, (io), to deceive  
 declaráre, to signify  
 declarátio, -onis, *f.*, declaration  
 declináre, to incline; go aside, turn away, step aside, lean to one side  
 decolláre, to behead  
 decollátio, -onis, *f.*, beheading  
 decoloráre, to discolor  
 decóquere, -coxi, -coctus, to cook, boil, roast  
 decor, -oris, *m.*, beauty, comeliness  
 decoráre, to adorn; honor; endow  
 decorticáre, to tear off the bark, to strip bare  
 decórus, -a, -um, beauteous, comely  
 decrépitus, -a, -um, infirm  
 decréscere, -crevi, -cretus, to decrease, wane  
 decretália, -orum, *n. pl.*, decretals  
 decretórius, -a, -um, decreeing, embodying a decree  
 decrétum, -i, *n.*, decree  
 decúrio, -onis, *m.*, counselor; captain over ten men  
 decúrrere, -curri and -cúcurri, -cursus, trickle down; run through  
 decúrsus, -us, *m.*, completion; maneuver, attack; a running down  
 decus, -oris, *n.*, grace, beauty; honor, glory  
 dédecens, -entis, unbecoming  
 dédecus, -oris, *n.*, dishonor, shame  
 dedicáre, to dedicate  
 dedicátio, -onis, *f.*, dedication  
 dedignári, *dep.*, to scorn, disdain, reject as unworthy  
 dedignátio, -onis, *f.*, scorn, indignation  
 déditus, -a, -um, devoted  
 dedúcere, -duxi, -ductus, to lead, conduct, bring down  
 deése, -fui, to be wanting, be lacking  
 defaecátus, -a, -um, purified, refined  
 deféctio, -onis, *f.*, fainting  
 deféctus, -us, *m.*, failing, defect  
 deféndere, -fendi, -fensus, to defend, revenge  
 defénsio, -onis, *f.*, defense, protection  
 deférre, -tuli, -latus, to offer, bring  
 defícere, -feci, -fectus, (io), to fail, faint; waste; vanish  
 definíre, to determine, define, solve  
 defíxus, -a, -um, fixed  
 defléctere, -flexi, -flexus, to turn aside  
 deflére, -flevi, -fletus, to weep  
 defluére, -fluxi, to pass away, fall, wither  
 defóret (for deésset), another form of the imperfect subjunctive of deése  
 deformáre, to engrave  
 defúnctus, -a, -um, dead  
 dégener, -eris, unworthy, ignoble  
 dégere, degi, to live, spend time  
 deglutíre, to swallow up  
 degustáre, to taste, partake of  
 déifer, -fera, -ferum, God-bearing

- dein, thereupon, then  
 deinceps, henceforth, again, any more,  
 any longer; successively, in order of  
 succession  
 deinde, then  
 deintus, from within  
 Deípara, -ae, *f.*, Mother of God, the  
 Blessed Virgin  
 Déitas, -atis, *f.*, Deity, Godhead, Di-  
 vinity  
 dejéctus, -a, -um, fallen  
 dejícere, -jeci, -jectus, (io), to break  
 down; cast down  
 delectábilis, -e, delightful  
 delectaméntum, -i, *n.*, delight, sweet-  
 ness; sweetness and delight  
 delectáre, to be delighted, rejoice  
 delectátió, -onis, *f.*, pleasure, delight  
 delegáre, to entrust, assign  
 delére, -evi, -etus, to blot out, wash  
 away, destroy  
 delibáre, to sacrifice  
 delibúere, -ui, -utus, to besmear, anoint  
 delicátus, -a, -um, delightful  
 delícia, -ae, *f.*, delight  
 delictum, -i, *n.*, crime, sin, dishonor  
 delineáre, to outline; prophesy  
 delínquere, -liqui, -lictus, to fail, of-  
 fend, sin  
 delitescere, -tui, to lie hidden  
 delúbrum, -i, *n.*, temple, shrine  
 demandáre, to entrust  
 démere, dempsi, demptus, to take  
 away  
 demeréri, *dep.* 2, to deserve  
 demérgere, -mersi, -mersus, to sink,  
 plunge into, drown; swallow  
 demirári, *dep.*, to be amazed, wonder  
 at  
 demísse, humbly  
 demíssio, -onis, *f.*, lowliness  
 demíssus, -a, -um, lowly, humble  
 demolíri, *dep.* 4, to consume, demolish,  
 destroy  
 demonstráre, to show, discover  
 demorári, *dep.*, to abide, dwell  
 demóri, -mórtuus sum, *dep.* 3 (io),  
 to die  
 demulcére, -mulsí, -mulsus or -mulc-  
 tus, to soften, persuade  
 demum, at length, at last  
 denárius, -ii, *m.*, denarius (a coin  
 worth about twenty cents)  
 denegáre, to deny  
 deni, -ae, -a, by tens; ter denis, thirty-  
 fold  
 denotáre, to denote  
 dens, dentis, *m.*, tooth  
 densus, -a, -um, thick  
 denudáre, to lay bare  
 denuntiáre, to threaten  
 dénuo, again, a second time  
 deórsum, down, beneath, lower  
 deosculári, *dep.*, to kiss  
 depáscere, -pavi, -pastus, to feed upon  
 depéllere, -puli, -pulsus, to keep from,  
 drive away, dispel  
 depíngere, -pinxi, -pictus, to paint  
 deploráre, to grieve over, deplore  
 depónere, -pósui, -pósitus, to lay;  
 bring down, take down; remove;  
 cast headlong  
 depopulári, *dep.*, to ravage  
 deportáre, to bring; banish  
 depóscere, -popósci, to beseech; de-  
 mand; appoint  
 depositio, -onis, *f.*, laying aside, put-  
 ting away; burial  
 depraedáre, to rob  
 depraváre, to pervert, corrupt  
 deprecábilis, -e, merciful, gracious  
 deprecári, *dep.*, to beseech  
 deprecátió, -onis, *f.*, prayer, supplica-  
 tion  
 deprecátor, -oris, *m.*, intercessor,  
 pleader  
 deprehéndere, -prehéndi, -prehénsus,  
 to find, take, seize; perceive

- deprímere**, -pressi, -pressus, to press down, weigh down; oppress, afflict  
**deprómere**, -prompsi, -promptus, to bring forth, fetch out, pour out, produce  
**depurgáre**, to wash  
**deputáre**, to appoint, depute; condemn; reckon, count; prune, cut off  
**derelinquere**, -liqui, -lictus, to leave, forsake  
**derepente**, suddenly  
**deridére**, -risi, -risus, to laugh at, deride  
**derísus**, -us, *m.*, derision  
**deriváre**, to divert; convey abroad  
**desaevíre**, to rage violently  
**descéndere**, -scendi, -scensus, to come down, run down, descend  
**describere**, -scripsi, -scriptus, to enroll; describe  
**descriptio**, -onis, *f.*, enrolling; description  
**desérere**, -séruí, -sertus, to forsake, neglect; fail to appear  
**desértio**, -onis, *f.*, desertion, treason  
**desértor**, -oris, *m.*, rebel  
**desértum**, -i, *n.*, desert, wilderness  
**desértus**, -a, -um, deserted, desolate, arid  
**deservíre**, to serve  
**deses**, -idis, idle, lazy, slothful  
**desiderábilis**, -e, desirable  
**desideráre**, to desire  
**desidérium**, -ii, *n.*, desire; lust  
**desídia**, -ae, *f.*, sloth  
**designáre**, to appoint; signify  
**desilíre**, -silui, -sultus, to leap  
**desínere**, -sivi or -sii, -situs, to cease  
**desoláre**, to bring to desolation, lay waste  
**desolátio**, -onis, *f.*, desolation  
**desolatórius**, -a, -um, destroying; **carbónibus desolatóriis**, with hot burning coals  
**desolatórius**, -ii, *m.*, destroyer  
**desolátus**, -a, -um, desolate  
**despéctio**, -onis, *f.*, contempt, a looking down upon  
**desperáre**, to despair  
**despicábilis**, -e, unworthy  
**despicere**, -spexi, -spectus, (*io*), to slight, despise, abhor  
**despoliáre**, to strip  
**despondére**, -spondi, -sponsus, to promise in marriage, espouse, betroth  
**desponsátus**, -a, -um, espoused  
**destitúere**, -stítui, -stitútus, to abandon; to be lacking (in the passive)  
**destrúctor**, -oris, *m.*, destroyer  
**destrúere**, struxi, -structus, to pull or tear down, ruin, destroy; overcome  
**desuécere**, -suevi, -suetus, to lay aside a custom  
**desúmere**, -sumpsi, -sumptus, to choose, select  
**désuper**, from above, from the top; thereon  
**desúrsum**, from above  
**detégere**, -texi, -tectus, to uncover, lay bare, disclose  
**deténtio**, -onis, *f.*, abode  
**detergére**, -tersi, -tersus, to cancel, wipe away  
**detérior**, -ius, worse  
**determináre**, to determine  
**deterrére**, -térui, -térritis, to deter by fear  
**detestári**, *dep.*, to curse  
**detinére**, -tínui, -tentus, to hold back, withhold, detain  
**detráhere**, -traxi, -tractus, to take away; bring down; slander  
**detrectáre**, to speak against, disparage; refuse  
**detriméntum**, -i, *n.*, loss  
**detrúdere**, -trusi, -trusus, to thrust down



- Deus, -i, m.,** God  
**deuteronómium, -ii, n.,** Deuteronomy  
**deveníre, -veni, -ventus,** to come to  
**deviáre,** to wander away from  
**devíncere, -vici, -victus,** to conquer, overcome  
**devitáre,** to shun, avoid  
**dévius, -a, -um,** wandering from the way  
**devoráre,** to devour  
**devorátio, -onis, f.,** devouring; prey  
**devóte,** devoutly  
**devótio, -onis, f.,** devotion  
**devótus, -a, -um,** devout, devoted  
**devovére, -vovi, -votus,** to devote, consecrate  
**dexter, -a, -um, or -tra, -trum,** right; ad **déxtera,** at the right hand  
**déxtera (dextra), -ae, f.,** the right hand  
**déxteritas, -atis, f.,** skill  
**dextralíolum, -i, n.,** bracelet  
**diabólicus, -a, -um,** diabolic, of the devil  
**diábolus, -i, m.,** devil  
**diaconía, -ae, f.,** hospice, chapel  
**diaconátus, -us, m.,** diaconate  
**diáconus, -i, m.,** deacon  
**diadéma, -atis, n.,** diadem  
**diálogus, -i, m.,** dialogue, conversation  
**dicáre,** to dedicate, devote  
**dicátus, -a, -um,** hallowed  
**dicere, dixi, dictus,** to say, tell, call; **dicitur,** is called  
**dício (dítio), -onis, f.,** dominion  
**dictio, -onis, f.,** language  
**dictum, -i, n.,** word  
**dictus, -us, m.,** word, saying, command  
**dies, -ei, m. and f.,** day; **de die in diem,** from day to day  
**diétim,** day by day, daily  
**diffamáre,** to spread abroad; accuse  
**díferens, -entis,** different  
**differéntia, -ae, f.,** difference  
**differéntior, -ius,** more different, more excellent  
**différre, dístuli, dilátus,** to cast off; defer; differ  
**dífficultas, -atis, f.,** difficulty; obstinacy  
**diffidéntia, -ae, f.,** suspicion, unbelief  
**diffidere, -fusus sum, semidep. 3,** to mistrust  
**diffitéri, dep. 2,** to deny, disavow  
**diffúere, -fluxi, -fluxus,** to fall or flow out; flow freely  
**diffúgere, -fugi, -fúgitus, (io),** to flee  
**diffúndere, -fudi, -fusus,** to pour abroad, pour forth, spread throughout  
**digérerere, -gessi, -gestus,** to digest  
**digéstus, -a, -um,** set in order  
**dígitus, -i, m.,** finger; toe  
**dignánte,** worthily  
**dignári, dep.,** to grant, vouchsafe  
**dignátio, -onis, f.,** condescension, graciousness  
**digne,** worthily, rightly  
**dígnitas, -atis, f.,** worth, merit, dignity  
**dignóscere, -novi,** to discern, distinguish  
**dignus, -a, -um,** worthy, becoming, deserved  
**dígređi, -gressus sum, dep. 3, (io),** to depart; digress  
**dijudicáre,** to discern, examine, judge  
**dilaceráre,** to tear to pieces  
**dilaniáre,** to tear in pieces, rend  
**dilargíre,** to give liberally  
**dilatáre,** to make broad, extend, enlarge, spread; increase, multiply  
**dilátio, -onis, f.,** delay  
**diléctio, -onis, f.,** love  
**diléctus, -a, -um,** beloved; lovely  
**diligénte,** diligently  
**diligéntius,** more diligently, more carefully  
**dilígere, -lexi, -lectus,** to love

- dilúcido, clearly  
 dilúculum, -i, *n.*, dawn, daybreak, morning light; dilúculo, early  
 dilúere, -lui, -lutus, to wash, efface  
 dilúvium, -ii, *n.*, flood  
 dimanáre, to flow in different directions  
 dimetiri, -mensus sum, *dep. 4.*, to measure, mete out  
 dimicáre, to fight, struggle  
 dimidiáre, to divide into halves  
 dimidiátus, -a, -um, half  
 dimídius, -a, -um, half  
 dimídium, -ii, *n.*, the half  
 diminúere, -ui, -utus, to lessen, diminish  
 dimíttere, -misi, -missus, to put or send away; dismiss, release; leave; forgive; let down  
 dinumeráre, to number  
 Diocletíanus, -i, *m.*, Diocletian  
 dioecésanus, -a, -um, diocesan  
 dioecésis, -is, or -eos, *f.*, diocese  
 Dionýsius, -ii, *m.*, Dionysius; Denis  
 díoryx, -ygis, *f.*, channel, canal  
 Díoscorus, -i, *m.*, Dioscorus  
 díplóis, -idis, *f.*, a double cloak, mantle  
 diplóma, -atis, *n.*, privilege conferred by the government  
 dipóndium, -ii, *n.*, two farthings  
 diréctio, -onis, *f.*, direction; upright-ness  
 diréctus, -a, -um, direct; **in dirécto**, in the direct way  
 diréptio, -onis, *f.*, separation  
 dirígere, -rexi, -rectus, to direct; straighten; prosper (in the passive)  
 dirípere, -ripui, -reptus, (*io*), to plunder  
 dirúmpere, -rupi, -ruptus, to break asunder, to cleave  
 dirus, -a, -um, cruel  
 discédere, -cessi, -cessus, to pass away, depart  
 disceptáre, to dispute with, discuss, determine  
 disceptátio, -onis, *f.*, dispute  
 discere, didici, to learn  
 discernere, -crevi, -cretus, to discern, distinguish  
 discérpere, -cerpsi, -cerptus, to tear, to rend  
 discéssio, -onis, *f.*, revolt  
 discéssus, -us, *m.*, removal  
 disciplína, -ae, *f.*, study, instruction; chastisement, discipline  
 discipulátus, -us, *m.*, discipleship  
 discipulus, -i, *m.*, disciple  
 discissus, -a, -um, torn, rent  
 díscolor, -oris, of different colors, speckled  
 díscolus, -a, -um, deformed  
 discórdia, -ae, *f.*, dissension  
 discrepáre, to disagree with, be different from; depart from  
 discrétio, -onis, *f.*, discernment; separation  
 discrétor, -oris, *m.*, discerner  
 discrimen, -inis, *n.*, danger, peril, hazard  
 discrimináre, to plait, braid  
 discrucíare, to torture  
 discúmbens, -entis, *m.*, guest  
 discúmbere, -cúbui, -cúbitus, to sit down  
 discúrrere, -cucúrri and -curri, -cursus, to run to and fro  
 discus, -i, *m.*, dish  
 discússio, -onis, *f.*, dispersal  
 discútere, -cussi, -cussus, to disperse  
 disérte, eloquently  
 disertus, -a, -um, eloquent  
 disgregáre, to rend asunder  
 disjúngere, -junxi, -junctus, to put asunder  
 dispar, -is, unlike, different, unequal  
 dispéndere, -pensus sum, *semidep. 3.*, to weigh out, dispense

- dispensáre**, to distribute  
**dispensátio**, -onis, *f.*, dispensation, administration  
**dispensátor**, -oris, *m.*, dispenser, steward  
**dispensatórius**, -a, -um, dispensing, administering  
**dispéredere**, -didi, -ditus, to cut off, destroy  
**dispérgere**, -spersi, -spersus, to scatter  
**disperíre**, -ii, (eo), to perish  
**dispérsio**, -onis, *f.*, dispersal  
**dispertíre**, to distribute; separate, part, divide  
**displicére**, -plícui, -plícitus, to displease  
**dispónere**, -pósui, -pósitus, to dispose, order  
**dispositio**, -onis, *f.*, disposition, providence, decree  
**dispósitor**, -oris, *m.*, disposer  
**disputáre**, to treat about, dispute  
**disputátio**, -onis, *f.*, argumentation  
**disrúmpere**, -rupi, -ruptus, to break asunder  
**dissecáre**, to dry up  
**dissecáre**, -sécuti, -sectus, to cut  
**dissénsio**, -onis, *f.*, quarrel  
**dissérrere**, -séruí, -sertus, to discuss, converse, discourse  
**díssidens**, -entis, being at variance, dissenting  
**díssidére**, -sedí, -sessus, to disagree  
**dissídium**, -ii, *n.*, quarrel; disunion  
**dissimilitúdo**, -inis, *f.*, difference  
**dissimuláre**, to dissemble, conceal  
**dissipáre**, to destroy, abolish; scatter; waste; lay waste  
**dissipátio**, -onis, *f.*, desolation  
**díssitus**, -a, -um, widely scattered  
**dissolútus**, -a, -um, loose; feeble  
**dissólvere**, -solvi, -solútus, to loose, dissolve, destroy; scatter  
**dissonántia**, -orum, *n. pl.*, differences  
**dístans**, -antis, separate, distant  
**distántia**, -ae, *f.*, distance  
**distáre**, to be different, distinct or distant from  
**disténdere**, -tendi, -tentus, to stretch apart, rack  
**disténtus**, -a, -um, busy, occupied  
**distilláre**, to drip or drop  
**distillátio**, -onis, *f.*, bodily fluid  
**distíncte**, distinctly  
**distínctio**, -onis, *f.*, distinction  
**distínctus**, -a, -um, adorned  
**distínguere**, -stinxi, -stinctus, to discriminate; speak distinctly  
**distórtus**, -a, -um, misshapen  
**distribúere**, -bui, -butus, to distribute  
**distribútio**, -onis, *f.*, allotment, distribution  
**distribútor**, -oris, *m.*, giver  
**distrícte**, severely  
**distríctio**, -onis, *f.*, strictness, severity  
**ditáre**, to enrich, endow  
**dítio**, -onis, *f.*, power, dominion, jurisdiction, authority, sovereignty  
**dítius**, more abundantly  
**dittáre**, to declare, repeat  
**diu**, *adv.*, long  
**diúrnus**, -a, -um, a day, per day; lasting for a day  
**diutúrnus**, -a, -um, of long duration; chronic  
**divéllere**, -velli, -vulsus, to tear asunder  
**divéndere**, -véndidi, -vénditus, to sell  
**divérsitas**, -atis, *f.*, diversity  
**diversórium**, -ii, *n.*, inn; lodging; guest chamber  
**divérsus**, -a, -um, different; **in divérsus**, back  
**divértere**, -verti, to turn aside  
**díves**, dívitis, rich  
**divexáre**, to plunder; tear asunder  
**divídere**, -visi, -visus, to divide, part, put asunder  
**divinátio**, -onis, *f.*, divination

- divínitas, -atis, *f.*, divinity  
 divínitus, divinely, by divine influence  
 divínus, -a, -um, divine  
 Dívio, -onis, *f.*, Dijon  
 divisio, -onis, *f.*, diversity; part  
 divítia, -ae, *f.*, wealth; divítiae, riches  
 divórtium, -ii, *n.*, divorce  
 divus, -a, -um, divine  
 Divus, -i, *m.*, saint  
 docére, -ui, doctus, to teach  
 docibilis, -e, apt, teachable  
 doctor, -oris, *m.*, doctor, teacher  
 doctrína, -ae, *f.*, instruction, learning,  
 doctrine  
 documéntum, i, *n.*, example  
 dogma, -atis, *n.*, dogma; edict  
 dogmáticus, -a, -um, dogmatic  
 doláre, to hew with an axe  
 dolére, to suffer, grieve, be sorrowful  
 dolíolum, -i, *n.*, small keg or cask  
 dólíum, -ii, *m.*, earthenware cask  
 dolor, -oris, *m.*, sorrow, pain  
 dolorósus, -a, -um, sorrowful  
 dolóse, deceitfully  
 dolósus, -a, -um, deceitful, false  
 dolus, -i, *m.*, fraud, subtlety, deceit  
 doma, -atis, *n.*, roof; house, dwelling  
 domáre, -ui, -itus, to conquer  
 domésticus, -a, -um, domestic, home;  
 of the household  
 domésticus, -i, *m.*, domestic; **doméstici**,  
 those of the household  
 domicílium, -ii, *n.*, dwelling, home,  
 house  
 dómina, -ae, *f.*, mistress  
 dominári, *dep.*, to rule, have dominion  
 over  
 dominátio, -onis, *f.*, dominion  
 dominátor, -oris, *m.*, ruler, lord, Lord  
 dómíne, *voc.*, Sir; Dómíne, Lord  
 Dómínica, -ae, *f.*, Sunday  
 dominicális, -e, pertaining to Sunday  
 Dómínicus, -i, *m.*, Dominick  
 Dóminus, -i, *m.*, Lord  
 dóminus, -i, *m.*, lord, master  
 Domitiánus, -i, *m.*, Domitian  
 domne (*voc.* of dóminus), Sir  
 domúncula, -ae, *f.*, little dwelling  
 domus, -i or -us, *f.*, house; **de domo in**  
 domum, from house to house  
 donáre, to give, grant; forgive; remit  
 a debt  
 donárium, -ii, *n.*, shrine  
 donátio, -onis, *f.*, giving; gift  
 Donatístae, -arum, *m. pl.*, Donatists  
 donátus, -us, *m.*, gift  
 donec, until; while  
 donum, -i, *n.*, gift, present  
 Dorestádium, -ii, *n.*, Dorestadt  
 dormíre, to sleep, lie down to rest  
 dormitare, to slumber  
 dormitátio, -onis, *f.*, slumber  
 dormítio, -onis, *f.*, sleep, repose  
 Doróthea, -ae, *f.*, Dorothy  
 dorsum, -i, *n.*, back  
 dos, dotis, *f.*, gift  
 dotáre, to endow  
 drachma, -ae, *f.*, drachma  
 draco, -onis, *m.*, dragon  
 dromedáriu, -ii, *m.*, dromedary  
 dubietas, -atis, *f.*, doubt  
 dubitánte, hesitatingly  
 dubitáre, to hesitate, waver, doubt;  
 non —, to firmly believe  
 ducátus, -us, *m.*, leadership, guidance;  
 rank  
 ducentésimus, -a, -um, two hundredth  
 ducéti, -ae, -a, two hundred  
 dúcere, duxi, ductus, to lead, bring;  
 marry; launch out; hold, consider;  
 derive  
 dúctilis, -e, beaten out (of metal),  
 drawn  
 ductor, -oris, *m.*, leader  
 dudum, *adv.*, a little while ago, even  
 now  
 duéllum, -i, *n.*, conflict  
 dulcédo, -inis, *f.*, sweetness, goodness

- dulcēscere** (dulcēssit), to become sweet  
**dulcis**, -e, sweet, fresh; kind  
**dulcisonus**, -a, -um, sweet sounding,  
 harmonious  
**dūlciter**, sweetly  
**dulcor**, -oris, *m.*, sweetness  
**dum**, while  
**dūmmo**, provided that  
**dumtāxat**, *adv.*, in so far as, only  
**Dunclīnum**, -i, *n.*, Durham  
**duo**, -ae, -o, two  
**duódecim**, twelve  
**duodécimus**, -a, -um, twelfth  
**duodenárius**, -a, -um, twelve  
**duodéni**, -ae, -a, twelve  
**duodeviginti**, eighteen  
**duplex**, -icis, double, twofold; **duplí-**  
**cibus**, with double garments  
**duplicāre**, to double  
**duplicātus**, -a, -um, double  
**duplicitas**, -atis, *f.*, deceit  
**duplum**, -i, *n.*, the double  
**durítia**, -ae, *f.*, hardness  
**durities**, -ei, *f.*, hardness  
**durus**, -a, -um, stiff, hard; obstinate;  
*dura*, *n. pl.*, hardships  
**dux**, ducis, *m.* and *f.*, leader, captain,  
 guide; duke, earl  
**dýscolus**, -a, -um, bold, impudent

## E

- e**, **ex**, *prep.*, from, out of, of  
**eātenus**, *adv.*, so far  
**ebibere**, -bibī, -bitus, to drink up,  
 drink in  
**Ebionítæ**, -arum, *m. pl.*, Ebionites  
**Eborácum**, -i, *n.*, York  
**ebrietas**, -atis, *f.*, drunkenness  
**ebriósus**, -i, *m.*, drunkard  
**ébríus**, -a, -um, drunk, drunken; *as a*  
*noun*, drunken man  
**ebullíre**, to break forth; bubble  
**ebur**, -oris, *n.*, ivory  
**ebúrneus**, -a, -um, of ivory  
**ecce**, *interj.*, behold  
**ecclésia**, -ae, *f.*, church; assembly  
**ecclesiásticus**, -a, -um, of or for the  
 church  
**Echínadae**, *f. pl.* (Echínades, -um, *f.*  
*pl.*), the Urchin Islands (Lepanto)  
**écstasis**, -is, *f.*, ecstasy, trance  
**édere**, -didi, -ditus, to bring forth, pro-  
 duce, publish  
**édere**, edi, esus, to eat  
**Edessénus**, -a, -um, of Edessa  
**edíctum**, -i, *n.*, decree  
**edíscere**, -dídici, to learn thoroughly  
**edissérere**, -sérui, -sertus, to expound,  
 explain, set forth  
**edítio**, -onis, *f.*, birth, a bringing  
 forth; a statement  
**edocére**, -ui, -doctus, to teach com-  
 pletely  
**edoláre**, to hew, plane  
**edomáre**, -dómui, -dómitus, to tame  
 thoroughly, subdue entirely  
**Eduárdus**, -i, *m.*, Edward  
**educáre**, to bring up, nourish  
**educátor**, -oris, *m.*, tutor  
**edúcere**, -duxi, -ductus, to bring forth,  
 produce; take away  
**édulis**, -e, edible; **edúlia**, *n. pl.*, food  
**effári**, -fatus sum, *dep. 1.*, to utter  
**effátu** (*supine*), to express  
**efféctor**, -oris, *m.*, maker  
**efféctus**, -us, *m.*, effect, work; reward;  
 answer  
**effeminátus**, -a, -um, effeminate  
**effératus**, -a, -um, wild, raging  
**effére**, éxtuli, elátus, to bring or carry  
 out; bear, lift up  
**effervéscere**, -férbui and -fervi, to boil  
 up, rage  
**efficácia**, -ae, *f.*, accomplishment  
**efficáciter**, effectually  
**éfficax** -acis, powerful, effectual; zeal-  
 ous

- efficere, -feci, -fectus, (io),** to make, render; make ready; become (in the passive)  
**effigies, -ei, f.,** figure, image  
**efflagitare,** to entreat  
**efflare,** to breathe out, give forth  
**efflorere, -ui,** to flourish  
**effluere, -fluxi,** to flow forth  
**effodere, -fodi, -fossus, (io),** to break through  
**efformare,** to form, shape  
**effrons, -tis,** bold, brazen, shameless, insulting  
**effugare,** to drive away from  
**effugatio, -onis, f.,** driving away  
**effugere, -fugi, -fugitus, (io),** to escape  
**effulgere, -fulsi, -fulsus, 2,** to shine upon  
**effundere, fudi, -fusus,** to shed, pour out or forth; bring out; slip  
**effusus, -a, -um,** pouring, excessive  
**egens, -entis,** needy  
**egenus, -a, -um,** needy, poor  
**egere, -ui,** to be in want, have need of  
**egestas, -atis, f.,** want, poverty, need  
**ego, I**  
**egredi, -gressus sum, dep. 3, (io),** to come out, go out or forth  
**egrégius, -a, -um,** illustrious  
**egréssio, -onis, f.,** going forth, departure  
**egréssus, -us, m.,** going forth  
**cheu, interj.,** ah  
**eia (eja), interj.,** quick! come then! well!  
**ejéctio, -onis, f.,** banishment  
**ejéctus, -us, m.,** casting out; exile  
**ejicere, -jeci, -jectus, (io),** to cast out; bring forth  
**ejulátus, -us, m.,** lamenting, cry  
**ejurare,** to refuse; abandon; deny  
**ejus,** genitive of *is*, of him, his  
**Elamítæ, -arum, m. pl.,** Elamites  
**elánguens, -entis,** growing weak  
**elápsus, -us, m.,** lapse  
**eláta, -æ, f.,** spray  
**elátio, -onis, f.,** elevation; breaker, billow  
**Elcesaús, -i, m.,** Elcesite  
**Eleázarus, -i, m.,** Eleazar  
**eléctio, -onis, f.,** election  
**eléctrum, -i, n.,** amber  
**eléctus, -a, um,** chosen, elect; bright; **elécta, n. pl.,** chosen bits, dainties  
**eleemósyna, -æ, f.,** alms  
**élegans, -antis,** elegant  
**eléison (Greek),** have mercy on us  
**eleméntum, -i, n.,** element; the letters of the alphabet  
**elevare,** to lift up, elevate  
**elevátio, -onis, f.,** lifting up, elevation  
**elícere, -lícui, -lícitus, (io),** to bring forth, produce, elicit  
**Elíci, -orum, m. pl.,** Elicians  
**elídere, -lisi, -lisus,** to throw down  
**elígere, -legi, -lectus,** to choose, elect  
**elimináre,** to eradicate  
**Elisabeth, Elizabeth, Isabel**  
**Eliséus, -i, m.,** Eliseus  
**elongáre,** to be or go or remove far off  
**eloquéntia, -æ, f.,** eloquence, oratory  
**elóquium, -ii, n.,** word  
**Elpediánum, -i, n.,** Heldelfs  
**Elpidiénsis, -e,** of Helfta  
**Elpidius, -ii, m.,** Elpidius  
**elucidáre,** to explain  
**eluscéscere,** to begin to be light  
**emanáre,** to flow out  
**emacére,** to wither, decay  
**emendáre,** to amend; chastise  
**emendicáre,** to beg  
**emendátio, -onis, f.,** correction  
**ementúri, dep. 4,** to falsify, pretend  
**émere, emi, emptus,** to buy  
**Eméricus, -i, m.,** Emeric  
**eméritus, -a, -um,** deserving; veteran  
**eméritus, -i, m.,** one who has served his time

- emicáre**, -mícui, -micátus, *v.*, to shine forth; pour forth  
**Emígdíus** (Emýgdíus), -ii, *m.*, Emidius  
**emigráre**, to depart  
**éminens**, -entis, excellent  
**eminére**, -mínui, to be above, stand out, project  
**éminus**, *adv.*, at a distance  
**emíssio**, -onis, *f.*, perfume  
**emittere**, -misi, -missus, to send out, emit; yield up; cast out  
**empórium**, -ii, *n.*, market  
**émpitio**, -onis, *f.*, buying, purchase  
**emundáre**, to cleanse  
**emundátio**, -onis, *f.*, cleansing  
**emolumentum**, -i, *n.*, gain, advantage  
**en**, *interj.*, lo, behold  
**enarráre**, to tell, relate, show forth  
**enavigáre**, to sail away; swim  
**Encaénia**, -orum, *n. pl.*, Feast of the Dedication  
**encaeniáre**, to put on something new, to consecrate  
**enchirídium**, -ii, *n.*, handbook, manual  
**enérviter**, weakly  
**enim**, *conj.*, for  
**enímvero**, *adv.*, to be sure, certainly  
**eníti**, -nisus or -nixus sum, *dep. 3*, to bring forth  
**enodáre**, to make clear  
**ensis**, -is, *m.*, sword  
**enucleáre**, plainly  
**enumerátio**, -onis, *f.*, enumeration  
**enuntiáre**, to announce, declare  
**enutríre**, to sustain, nourish  
**Eóbanus**, -i, *m.*, Eoban  
**Eóus**, -a, -um, eastern, from the East; morning  
**coúsque**, *adv.*, to that point  
**ephébia**, -orum, *n. pl.*, place for youth, youth center  
**ephébus**, -i, *m.*, page  
**Ephésii**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Ephesians  
**Ephesínus**, -a, -um, of Ephesus  
**ephod**, *indecl.*, ephod, amice  
**Ephrathaeús**, -i, *m.*, Ephrathite  
**Epiphánia**, -ae, *f.*, Epiphany, appearance  
**episcopális**, -e, episcopal  
**episcopátus**, -us, *m.*, episcopacy, bishopric; office of bishop  
**epíscopus**, -i, *m.*, bishop; patriarch  
**epístola**, -ae, *f.*, epistle, letter  
**epistolium**, -ii, *n.*, letter  
**epithalámium**, -ii, *n.*, marriage song  
**épulae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, feast, feasts  
**epulári** (*dep.*), to feast  
**eques**, -itis, *m.*, horseman  
**equéster**, -tris, -tre, equestrian  
**équidem**, *adv.*, truly  
**equúlcus**, -i, *m.*, rack  
**équus**, -i, *m.*, horse  
**erádere**, -rasi, -rasus, to strike or cut off, destroy  
**eradicáre**, to root up  
**Ercus**, -i, *m.*, Ere  
**erectio**, -onis, *f.*, lifting up  
**eréctus**, -a, -um, attentive  
**eremíta**, -ae, *m.*, hermit  
**eremíticus**, -a, -um, eremitical  
**erémus**, -i, *m.* and *f.*, desert, wilderness  
**erga**, *prep.*, toward; with  
**ergástulum**, -i, *n.*, house of correction for slaves; prison  
**ergo**, therefore, then  
**erígere**, -rexi, -rectus, to raise up, lift up, erect  
**erípere**, -rípui, -reptus, (io), to rescue, deliver from  
**Ermembérga**, -ae, *f.*, Ermenburga  
**erogáre**, to distribute, disperse abroad  
**erráre**, to wander, go astray, err  
**erro**, -onis, *m.*, wanderer, night-prowler  
**error**, -oris, *m.*, error  
**erubéscere**, -rúbui, to be ashamed  
**crúca**, -ae, *f.*, palmer worm  
**eructáre**, to utter, publish; overflow

- erudire**, to teach, instruct; discipline  
**eruditio**, -onis, *f.*, learning  
**erucere**, -ui, -utus, to deliver  
**erumpere**, -rupi, -ruptus, to break,  
 break forth, break up, crush  
**esca**, -ae, *f.*, food, meat  
**esse** (sum), fui, futurus, to be  
**essentia**, -ae, *f.*, essence  
**esurire**, to be hungry  
**esus**, -us, *m.*, food, bread; eating  
**et**, and, also  
**Etchenus**, -i, *m.*, Etchen  
**etenim**, *conj.*, for, but  
**Ethelbertus**, -i, *m.*, Ethelbert  
**ethnici**, -orum, *m. pl.*, heathen  
**etiam**, *adv.*, also; certainly; yes  
**etiánum**, *adv.*, still, yet  
**Etrúria**, -ae, *f.*, Tuscany  
**Etrúscus**, -a, -um, Tuscan  
**etsi**, *adv.*, yet  
**etymologíae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, Etymologíae  
 (of St. Isidore)  
**euge**, *interj.*, well done!  
**Eugénus**, -ii, *m.*, Eugene  
**Eugubinus**, -a, -um, of Gubbio  
**Eugúbium**, -ii, *n.*, Gubbio  
**eunúchus**, -i, *m.*, eunuch  
**Európa**, -ae, *f.*, Europe  
**Eustáchius**, -ii, *m.*, Eustace  
**Euthychiánus**, -a, -um, of Eutyches  
**Eva**, -ae, *f.*, Eve  
**evacuare**, to make void; do away with;  
 put away  
**evadere**, -vasi, -vasus, to escape, evade  
**evagare**, to wander, stray away  
**evaginare**, to unsheathe  
**evanescere**, -váuui, to vanish  
**evangélicus**, -a, um, of the Gospel  
**evangelista**, -ae, *m.*, evangelist  
**Evangélium**, -ii, *n.*, Gospel  
**evangelizare**, to preach the Gospel,  
 evangelize  
**evéhere**, -vexi, -vectus, to raise  
**evéllere**, -vellí, -vulsus, to pluck
- evenire**, -veni, -ventus, to come forth  
**evéntus**, -us, *m.*, occurrence  
**everrere**, -verri, -versus, to sweep out  
**evérsio**, -onis, *f.*, overthrow, destruc-  
 tion  
**evértere**, -verti, -versus, to turn away,  
 pervert; overturn, overthrow  
**evidénter**, manifestly  
**evidéntia**, -ae, *f.*, evidence  
**evigilare**, to awaken  
**evíncere**, -vici, -victus, to bring it about  
 that  
**evocare**, to call forth  
**evolare**, to take flight  
**evulgare**, to make known, publish  
**ex**, of, from, out of  
**exacerbare**, to provoke, embitter  
**exacerbatio**, -onis, *f.*, bitterness, exas-  
 peration  
**exáctio**, -onis, *f.*, exaction or levying of  
 tribute  
**exáctor**, -oris, *m.*, one who demands,  
 oppressor, tax collector  
**exacúere**, -ui, -utus, to sharpen  
**exacútus**, -a, -um, sharpened  
**exaedificare**, to build  
**exaequare**, to equal, make equal  
**exaestuare**, to burn; surge or boil up  
**exaggerare**, to increase, grow worse  
**exagitare**, to drive out; attack  
**exaltare**, to lift up, exalt, extol  
**exaltatio**, -onis, *f.*, exaltation; high  
 praise  
**examinare**, to try, test  
**exantlare**, to suffer, endure; exhaust  
**exarare**, to write on wax tablets  
**exarchus**, -i, *m.*, exarch  
**exardere**, -arsi, -arus, to kindle  
**exardescere**, -arsi, -arsus, to take fire,  
 flame out, be inflamed  
**exarmare**, to disarm  
**exasperare**, to provoke  
**exasperatrix**, -icis, provoking  
**exaudire**, to hear favorably



- exauditor, -oris, m.**, one who listens favorably to a prayer
- excaecare**, to blind
- excalceatus, -a, -um**, discalced, bare-footed
- excandescere, -candui**, to become hot; become violently angry
- excarnificare**, to tear to pieces
- excédere, -cessi, -cessus**, to exceed
- excellens, -entis**, excellent, distinguished
- excellere, -célui**, to excel
- excelsitas, -atis, f.**, pre-eminence
- excelsus, -a, -um**, high, lofty; most high; **excelsa, n. pl.**, high places; in **excelsio**, on high; in **excelsis**, in the highest
- exceptus, -a, -um**, except, only
- excéssus, -us, m.**, excess; ecstasy
- excidere, -cidi**, to fall away
- excidere, -cedi, -cisus**, to cut down, hew out
- excidium, -ii, n.**, destruction
- excipere, -cepi, -ceptus, (io)**, to take out, except
- excísus, -us, m.**, piece, cut; slip
- excitare**, to stir up, raise up, awaken
- excitator, -oris, m.**, awakener
- exclamare**, to cry out, exclaim
- excludere, -clusi, -clusus**, to keep from, drive away
- excogitatio, -onis, f.**, invention, devising
- excólere, -cólui, -cultus**, to tend carefully; work for; cultivate
- excommunicare**, to excommunicate
- excommunicatio, -onis, f.**, excommunication
- excóquere, -coxi, -coctus**, to boil down, refine
- excrescere, -crevi, -cretus**, to grow
- excubare, -ui, -itus**, to keep watch
- excúbiae, -arum, f. pl.**, a keeping watch or guard
- excusare**, to excuse; ad **excusandas excusationes**, to seek excuses
- excusatio, -onis, f.**, excuse
- excússus, -a, -um**, cast out
- excútere, -cussi, -cussus, (io)**, to shake, shake off, drive out
- exémplar, -aris, n.**, model
- exémplum, -i, n.**, example
- exenterare**, to disembowel
- extenteratus, -a, -um**, disemboweled
- exercere**, to exercise; use, employ
- exercitare**, to occupy; to ponder (in the passive)
- exercitatio, -onis, f.**, exercise
- exercitus, -us, m.**, army, host
- exfornicatus, -a, -um**, given to fornication
- exháustus, -a, -um**, exhausted
- exhibere**, to present, exhibit; return
- exhibitio, -onis, f.**, example; display; performance
- exhilare**, to gladden, make cheerful
- exhonorare**, to disgrace, dishonor
- exhonoratio, -onis, f.**, shame
- exhorrere**, to shrink, shudder
- exhorrere, -hórrui**, to shudder
- exhortare (-ari)**, to exhort
- exhortatio, -onis, f.**, exhortation, an encouraging
- exíguus, -a, -um**, little
- exíltas, -atis, f.**, shrillness
- exímere, -emi, -emptus**, to take or draw out
- exímus, -a, -um**, priceless; wonderful
- exinanire**, to empty, pour forth
- exinanitio, -onis, f.**, emptiness
- exínde, adv.**, henceforth
- exire, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo)**, to go out; come forth or from
- existimare**, to deem, reckon, think, take account of
- existimatio, -onis, f.**, esteem, estimation
- exitiális, -e**, destructive

**exítium**, -ii, *n.*, destruction  
**éxitus**, -us, *m.*, departure end, result;  
**éxitus viárum**, highways  
**exoptáre**, to hope or desire eagerly  
**exoráre**, to plead, beseech, pray  
**exorcísta**, -ae, *m.*, exorcist  
**exorcístus**, -i, *m.*, exorcist  
**exorcísmus**, -i, *m.*, exorcism  
**exorcizáre**, to exorcize  
**exórdium**, -ii, *n.*, beginning, institution  
**exoríri**, -ortus sum, *dep.* 3 and 4, to  
 rise or spring up  
**exornáre**, to provide with, adorn  
**exornátus**, -a, -um, embellished  
**exosculáre**, to kiss  
**exósus**, -a, -um, lured  
**expándere**, -pansi, -pansus and -passus,  
 to spread, stretch out  
**expavéscere**, -pavi, to be terrified, be  
 affrighted, tremble  
**expedíre**, to deliver; detach; be expe-  
 dient  
**expéditus**, -a, -um, well appointed,  
 light armed  
**expéllere**, -puli, -pulsus, to drive away,  
 expel  
**expéndere**, -pendi, -pensus, to weigh  
**expérgisci**, -perrectus sum, *dep.* 3, to  
 awake  
**experíri**, -pertus sum, *dep.* 4, to expe-  
 rience  
**expers**, -ertis, destitute of, lacking  
**expértus**, -a, -um, tested, experienced  
**expétere**, -ivi, -itus, to desire  
**expiáre**, to cleanse, purify; atone, ex-  
 piate  
**expiátio**, -onis, *f.*, atonement, expia-  
 tion  
**explanáre**, to expound, explain  
**explanátio**, -onis, *f.*, explanation  
**explantáre**, to cast out  
**explére**, -plevi, -pletus, to fill, fulfill  
**explétió**, -onis, *f.*, expiration  
**explicáre**, to unfold, extend; explain

**exploráre**, to implore; investigate  
**expolíre**, to polish; redecorate  
**expónere**, -pósi, -pósius, to set be-  
 fore, make manifest  
**exporrígere**, -rexi, -rectus, to expand,  
 stretch out  
**expóscere**, -póposci, to plead  
**exprímere**, -pressi, -pressus, to repre-  
 sent, express  
**exprobráre**, to reproach, upbraid  
**expugnáre**, to fight against; overthrow  
**expurgáre**, -a, -um, expurgated  
**Exquíliae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, the Esquiline  
 Hill  
**Exquílínus**, -a, -um, Esquiline  
**exquírere**, -sivi, -situs, to seek after,  
 inquire diligently  
**exquísitor**, -oris, *m.*, searcher  
**exquísitus**, -a, -um, exquisite; painful  
**exsánguis**, -e, bloodless  
**exsaturáre**, to satisfy, satiate  
**exsaturátus**, -a, -um, filled, having  
 enough  
**exsecrábilis**, -e, abhorrent  
**exsecrári**, *dep.*, to curse  
**exsecrátio**, -onis, *f.*, abomination; curse  
**éxsequi**, -secútus sum, *dep.* 3, to per-  
 form; follow; secure  
**exsérere**, -serui, -sertus, to thrust forth,  
 exert  
**exsiccáre**, to dry up  
**exsilíre**, -sílui, -sultus, 4, to leap, leap  
 out  
**exsílíum**, -ii, *n.*, exile  
**exsístere**, -stiti, -stitus, to come forth,  
 appear  
**exsólvere**, -solvi, -solútus, to present;  
 pay back  
**exsors**, -sortis, deprived of  
**expectáre**, to look for, wait for, long  
 for, expect  
**expectátio**, -onis, *f.*, hope, expectation  
**expiráre**, to die, expire  
**exspoliáre**, to despoil, rob

**expúere, -spui, -sputus**, to spit  
**exstáre, -stiti**, to stand forth, come forth, appear  
**extinctio, -onis, f.**, annihilation, dissolution; slaughter  
**extínguere, -stinxi, -stinctus**, to extinguish  
**extrúere, -struix, -structus**, to build  
**exstúffáre**, to blow away  
**exsui, -sulis**, banished; (as a noun), an exile  
**exsuláre**, to be banished  
**exsultábilis, -e**, joyful  
**exsultáre**, to rejoice, exult  
**exsultátio, -onis, f.**, joy, gladness, exultation  
**exsuperáre**, to excel, surpass  
**exsúrgere, -surréxi, -surréctus**, to arise, awaken  
**éxtasis, -is, f.**, amazement  
**exténdere, -tendi, -tensus or -tentus**, to stretch out, spread, extend  
**extenuáre**, to weaken, reduce; chasten, punish  
**extergére, -tersi, -tersus**, to wipe  
**extérior, -ius**, outward, exterior  
**extermináre**, to cut off; disfigure; lay waste  
**exterminátor, -oris, m.**, destroyer  
**extermínium, -ii, n.**, utter destruction  
**extérnus, -a, -um**, belonging to another  
**exterrére, -térui, -térrius**, to frighten  
**éterus, -a, -um**, foreign  
**éterus, -i, m.**, foreigner  
**extiméscere, -tímui**, to fear  
**extolléntia, -ae, f.**, insolence, haughtiness  
**extóllere, -tuli**, to lift up, raise up, exalt; be insolent (in the passive)  
**extorquére, -torsí, -tortus**, to wring forth  
**extórris, -e**, exiled  
**extra, prep.**, beside, beyond, except, outside of, without, out of

**extráhere, -traxi, -tractus**, to draw out  
**extráneus, -i, m.**, stranger, foreigner  
**extrémum, -i, n.**, end, tip; farthest part  
**extrémus, -a, -um**, last; latter  
**extricáre**, to extricate  
**extrínsecus, adv.**, without, on the outside, outwardly  
**extrúdere, -trusi, -trusus**, to thrust out  
**exturbáre**, to drive away  
**exuberáre**, to abound  
**exúere, -ui, -utus**, to take off, strip; free from, deliver  
**exundáre**, to abound, overflow  
**exúrere, -ussi, -ustus**, to burn up, consume  
**exúviae, -arum, f. pl.**, remains  
**Ezeccías, -ae, m.**, Ezechias

## F

**faber, -bri, m.**, worker, artificer; carpenter  
**Fabiánus, -i, m.**, Fabian  
**fabrefácere, -feci, -factus, (io)**, to make, manufacture  
**Fabriánus, -i, n.**, Fabriano  
**fábrica, -ae, f.**, building  
**fabricáre**, to make, build; work  
**fabricátor, -oris, m.**, creator; forger  
**fabrílis, -e**, of a carpenter; **fabrilia, n. pl.**, carpenter work  
**fábula, -ae, f.**, byword  
**fabuláre**, to talk  
**fabulátio, -onis, f.**, fable; lie  
**fabulátor, -oris, m.**, a teller of fables  
**fácere, feci, factus, (io)**, to make, cause; grant; yield or bring forth (fruit); commit  
**facéssere, -cessi**, to depart  
**fácies, -ei, f.**, face, appearance; presence; a **fácie**, because of; from before; **fácie ad fáciem**, face to face  
**facílius**, more easily  
**facínus, -oris, n.**, sin, crime

- fáctio**, -onis, *f.*, faction  
**factiósus**, -a, -um, quarrelsome  
**factor**, -oris, *m.*, doer, maker  
**factum**, -i, *n.*, deed, act, fact  
**factúra**, -ae, *f.*, creation  
**facúltas**, -atis, *f.*, ability; strength; authority; means, goods, possessions, resources (usually in plural)  
**faeculéntus**, -a, -um, pertaining to dregs; worthless  
**faeneráre**, to lend money at interest  
**faenerátor**, -oris, *m.*, creditor  
**faex**, faecis, *f.*, dregs; mire, ooze  
**Falco**, -onis, *m.*, Faucon  
**fallácia**, -ae, *f.*, deceit, falsehood  
**falláciter**, falsely  
**fallax**, -acis, deceitful; unreliable  
**fállere**, féfelli, falsus, to deceive; make a slip, make ineffective; be mistaken (in the passive)  
**falsus**, -a, -um, false  
**falx**, -falcis, *f.*, sickle  
**fama**, -ae, *f.*, fame, good report  
**famélicus**, -a, -um, hungry, famished  
**fames**, -is, *f.*, hunger, famine  
**família**, -ae, *f.*, family, household  
**familiáris**, -e, intimate, friendly  
**familiáritas**, -atis, *f.*, intimacy  
**famósus**, -a, -um, renowned  
**fámula**, -ae, *f.*, servant  
**famulári**, *dep.*, to serve  
**famulátus**, -us, *m.*, service, obedience  
**fámulus**, -i, *m.*, servant  
**fanum**, -i, *n.*, temple  
**Fanum**, -i, *n.*, Fano  
**farína**, -ae, *f.*, meal  
**farínula**, -ae, *f.*, meal  
**fáschia**, -ae, *f.*, band, bandage  
**fascículus**, -i, *m.*, bundle, little bundle; sheaf  
**fascinatio**, -onis, *f.*, bewitching, fascination  
**fastidiósus**, -a, -um, fastidious, disdainful  
**fastídium**, -ii, *n.*, weariness  
**fastígium**, -ii, *n.*, summit, height; dignity  
**fastus**, -us, *m.*, pride, arrogance  
**fatéri**, fessus sum, *dep. 2*, to admit, confess, avow  
**fatigátio**, -onis, *f.*, toil  
**fatigátus**, -a, -um, wearied  
**fatíscere**, to crack  
**fátue**, foolishly  
**fatúitas**, -atis, *f.*, folly  
**fátuus**, -a, -um, foolish  
**fátuus**, -i, *m.*, a fool  
**fauces**, -ium, *f. pl.*, jaws, throat, palate  
**faústitas**, -atis, *f.*, prosperity  
**fautor**, -oris, *m.*, adviser, patron, protector, favorer  
**favilla**, -ae, *f.*, ashes  
**Favéntia**, -ae, *f.*, Faenza  
**Faventíni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, citizens of Faenza  
**favor**, -oris, *m.*, favor, approval; **care**  
**favus**, -i, *m.*, honey comb  
**fax**, facis, *f.*, torch; flame  
**febris**, -is, *f.*, fever  
**Februárius**, -ii, *m.*, February  
**fecundus**, -a, -um, fruitful  
**fel**, fellis, *n.*, gall  
**Feliciánus**, -i, *m.*, Felician  
**felícitas**, -atis, *f.*, felicity  
**felíciter**, happily  
**felix**, -icis, happy, blessed  
**fémína**, -ae, *f.*, woman, female  
**feminínus**, -a, -um, female  
**femorália**, -orum, *n. pl.*, breeches  
**femur**, -oris, *n.*, thigh  
**fenéstra**, -ae, *f.*, window  
**fera**, -ae, *f.*, beast  
**ferális**, -e, deadly  
**férculum**, -i, *n.*, tray, dish; course, food, bread  
**Ferdinándus**, -i, *m.*, Ferdinand  
**fere**, *adv.*, almost  
**féretrum**, -i, *n.*, bier

- féria**, -ae, *f.*, day of the week; — **secunda**, Monday, — **tértia**, Tuesday; — **quarta**, Wednesday; — **quinta**, Thursday; — **sexta**, Friday
- feriális**, -e, week day, ferial
- ferire**, to strike, slay; make; make a treaty
- féritas**, -atis, *f.*, fierceness, savagery
- ferme**, *adv.*, almost
- fermentáre**, to leaven
- ferméntum**, -i, *n.*, leaven
- ferrátus**, -a, -um, sharp
- ferre**, tuli, latus, to carry; bring; **prae se ferre**, to display
- Ferrérius**, -ii, *m.*, Ferrer
- féreus**, -a, -um, of iron, iron
- ferrum**, -i, *n.*, iron; sword
- fertilis**, -e, fertile
- ferus**, -i, *m.*, wild beast
- fervens**, -entis, hot; fervent; **fervénte** die, in the heat of the day
- fervéntius**, more fervently
- fervére**, -vui, to glow
- fervor**, -oris, *m.*, fervor
- fessus**, -a, -um, weary
- festinánter**, *adv.*, in haste
- festináre**, to be quick, hasten
- festinátio**, -onis, *f.*, haste, hurry
- festináto**, *adv.*, speedily
- festívitas**, -atis, *f.*, festival, festivity
- festúca**, -ae, *f.*, stalk; rod; mote
- festus**, -a, -um, festal, festival
- festum**, -i, *n.*, feast, festival; **fésta**, *n. pl.*, festival
- Fesulánus**, -a, -um, of Fiesole
- fibra**, -ae, *f.*, fiber, filament; vocal chord, voice
- ficte**, *adv.*, falsely, with pretense
- fictilis**, -e, made of clay, earthen
- fictio**, -onis, *f.*, guile
- fictor**, -oris, *m.*, maker
- fictus**, -a, -um, feigned, deceitful
- ficúlnea**, -ae, *f.*, fig tree
- ficus**, -i and -us, *f.*, fig, fig tree
- fidélis**, -e, faithful, believing
- fidéliter**, faithfully, confidently
- fidénter**, confidently, courageously
- fides**, -ei, *f.*, faith, faithfulness
- fidúcia**, -ae, *f.*, confidence; **cum fidúcia**, boldly
- fiduciáliter**, boldly, with confidence
- fiduciálius**, more confidently
- fieri**, factus sum, to become, be made; happen, fulfill; **factum est**, it came to pass
- figére**, fixi, fixus, to pierce; make firm
- figméntum**, -i, *n.*, creation; formation; frame; workmanship; pillar
- figulus**, -i, *m.*, potter
- figúra**, -ae, *f.*, figure, fashion
- figuráliter**, figuratively
- figuráre**, to symbolize
- fília**, -ae, *f.*, daughter
- filiális**, -e, filial
- filiátio**, -onis, *f.*, sonship
- filiolus**, -i, *m.*, little child
- fílius**, -ii, *m.*, son, child; foal
- fímbria**, -ae, *f.*, hem, fringe
- finus**, -i, *m.*, dung
- finális**, -e, final
- fíngere**, fixi, fictus, to feign; make
- Finiánus**, -i, *m.*, Finnian
- finíre**, to end, make an end of
- finis**, -is, *m.* and *f.*, end, boundary; **fines**, *pl.*, territory, country; **sine fine**, continually
- finítimus**, -a, -um, neighboring
- fírmaméntum**, -i, *n.*, firmament; strength
- fírmáre**, to make strong, strengthen; fix, establish
- fírmítas**, -atis, *f.*, steadfastness
- fírmíter**, firmly, strongly
- fírmus**, -a, -um, firm
- fístula**, -ae, *f.*, reed, sweet cane, flute; ulcer, hemorrhoids
- fixúra**, -ae, *f.*, print
- fláccidus**, -a, -um, weak, drooping

- flagelláre, to scourge  
 flagellátio, -onis, *f.*, scourging  
 flagéllum, -i, *n.*, scourge  
 flagítáre, to beseech  
 flagitiósus, -a, -um, disgraceful  
 flagítium, -ii, *n.*, shameful crime  
 flagráre, to burn; be eager or zealous  
 flamen, -inis, *n.*, a blowing; wind;  
     breath  
 flamen, -inis, *m.*, divine breath or  
     spirit; Holy Ghost  
 flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame  
 flammans, -antis, flaming  
 flamméscere, to become inflamed  
 flámmeus, -a, -um, fiery, flaming  
 flámmifer, -fera, -ferum, flaming  
 fláre, to blow  
 flatus, -us, *m.*, blowing; breath  
 flébilis, -e, weeping, sorrowing,  
     wretched  
 fléctere, flexi, flexus, to bend, bow;  
     move  
 flére, flevi, fletus, to weep, lament  
 fletus, -us, *m.*, weeping  
 flexíbilis, -e, supple  
 flexus, -a, -um, bent; genu flexo, kneel-  
     ing  
 florens, -entis, in flower  
 Floréntia, -ae, *f.*, Florence  
 Florentinus, -a, -um, of Florence  
 florére, -ui, to flower, bloom; flourish,  
     prosper  
 flóridus, -a, -um, flourishing, plentiful  
 flos, floris, *m.*, flower  
 flósculus, -i, *m.*, little flower  
 fluctuáre, to toss about; be tossed to  
     and fro; vacillate  
 fluctuátio, -onis, *f.*, a being tossed to  
     and fro; insecurity  
 fluctus, -us, *m.*, wave  
 fluéntum, -i, *n.*, stream, river  
 flúere, fluxi, fluxus, to flow  
 flumen, -inis, *n.*, river  
 flúvius, -ii, *m.*, stream, river  
 fluxus, -a, -um, transitory  
 fluxus, -us, *m.*, flowing, issue  
 focária, -ae, *f.*, cook  
 fódere, fodi, fossus, (io), to dig; pierce  
 foecundáre, to make fruitful  
 foecundus, -a, -um, fruitful, abundant  
 foedáre, to disfigure  
 foederátus, -a, -um, united  
 foedus, -eris, *n.*, covenant  
 foedus, -a, -um, detestable  
 foéditas, -atis, *f.*, filth  
 foenerátor, -oris, *m.*, money lender  
 foenum, -i, *n.*, grass; dry herb  
 foenus (faenus), -eris, *n.*, loan  
 foetans, -antis, *f.*, milch-ewe  
 foetére, to stink  
 foétidus, -a, -um, stinking  
 foetósus, -a, -um, prolific  
 foetus, -us, *m.*, offspring, increase  
 fólium, -ii, *n.*, leaf, foliage  
 foméntum, -i, *n.*, poultice  
 fomes, -itis, *m.*, tinder; fire; nourish-  
     ment  
 fons, fontis, *m.*, fount, fountain; well,  
     spring; source; baptistery  
 Fons Avellána (Fontis Avellánae),  
     *f.*, Font-Avellano  
 Fonscoopértus, -i, *m.*, Fontcouverte  
 Fonsíberus, -i, *m.*, Fontibere, Fuenter-  
     ravia  
 Fontáni, -orum, *m. pl.*, Fontaines  
 Fontisplánus, -i, *m.*, Fuenlana  
 forámen, -inis, *n.*, hole, cleft  
 foras, *adv.*, out, forth, out of doors  
 forceps, -ipis, *m.* and *f.*, tongs  
 Forénsis, -e, of Forez  
 forénsis, -e, forensic; legal  
 forent, a form of the imperf. subj. of  
     esse, for essent  
 forínsecus, *adv.*, from without  
 foris, *adv.*, outwardly, without, outside  
 foris, foris, *f.*, door  
 forma, -ae, *f.*, pattern; form  
 formáre, to form, train, guide, fashion

- Fórmia**e, -arum, *f. pl.*, Mola di Gaëta  
**formidáre**, to be afraid, be in awe  
**formído**, -inis, *f.*, dread, terror  
**formidolósus**, -a, -um, fearful  
**formósus**, -a, -um, beautiful  
**formax**, -acis, *f.*, furnace, oven  
**fornicári** (*dep.*), to commit fornication  
**fornicária**, -ae, *f.*, fornicatress  
**fornicátio**, -onis, *f.*, fornication  
**fornicátor**, -oris, *m.*, fornicator  
**fórsitan**, *adv.*, perhaps  
**fortásse** (**fortássis**), *adv.*, perhaps  
**forte**, *adv.*, perhaps  
**fortis**, -e, strong, mighty, valiant; grievous  
**fórtiter**, mightily, valiantly, firmly  
**fortitúdo**, -inis, *f.*, strength, power  
**fortúito** (**fortúitu**), by chance  
**forum**, -i, *n.*, open space, market place, forum  
**Forum Cornélii**, -i, *n.*, Imola  
**fossa**, -ae, *f.*, ditch  
**Fossa Nova**, -ae -ae, *f.*, Fossa-Nuova  
**fóvea**, -ae, *f.*, pit, ditch  
**fovére**, fovi, fatus, to warm, keep warm; foment; cherish  
**fráctio**, -onis, *f.*, breaking  
**fractúra**, -ae, *f.*, breaking  
**fraenáre**, to bridle, restrain  
**frágilis**, -e, frail, weak, poor  
**fragílit**as, -atis, *f.*, frailty  
**fragmen**, -inis, *n.*, piece  
**fragmentum**, -i, *n.*, fragment  
**fragrántia**, -ae, *f.*, fragrant smell  
**frámea**, -ae, *f.*, sword  
**Franci**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Franks  
**Francísca**, -ae, *f.*, Frances  
**Francísca de Nigro**, -ae, *f.*, Francesca di Negro  
**Franciscánus**, -a, -um, Franciscan  
**Francíscus**, -i, *m.*, Francis  
**Francíscus Bórgia**, -i, -ae, *m.*, Francis Borgia  
**Francíscus Salésius**, -i, -ii, *m.*, Francis de Sales  
**frángere**, fregi, fractus, to break; deal  
**frater**, -tris, *m.*, brother; friar  
**fratérnit**as, -atis, *f.*, brotherhood  
**fraudáre**, to defraud; withhold  
**fraudulénter**, falsely, deceitfully  
**fraus**, fraudis, *f.*, wile; error  
**frémere**, -ui, -itus, to murmur; groan; rage, roar  
**frémitus**, -us, *m.*, fury, anger  
**frendére**, -ui, fresus, or fressus, to gnash  
**frenum**, -i, *n.*, bridle, curb  
**frequens**, -entis, frequent; much  
**frequentáre**, to frequent; have recourse to; celebrate  
**frequentátio**, -onis, *f.*, frequentation  
**frequénter**, often  
**frequentía**, -ae, *f.*, number, frequency  
**fretum**, -i, *n.*, the sea  
**fretus**, -a, -um, strengthened; relying on  
**Fribúrgus**, -i, *m.*, Freiburg  
**Friderícus**, -i, *m.*, Frederick  
**frigéscere**, frixi, to become cold  
**frigus**, -oris, *n.*, cold  
**Frisácum**, -i, *n.*, Friesach  
**Frísia**, -ae, *f.*, Friesland  
**Frísónes**, -um, *m. pl.*, Frieslanders  
**frixórium**, -ii, *n.*, frying pan  
**frondére**, to be leafy; flourish  
**frondéscere**, -ui, to blossom, to become leafy  
**frons**, frondis, *f.*, leaf; leafy branch or twig  
**frons**, frontis, *f.*, forehead; van, front line in battle  
**frúctifer**, -fera, -ferum, fruitful  
**fructificáre**, to be fruitful  
**fructificátio**, -onis, *f.*, production of fruit  
**fructuósus**, -a, -um, fruitful  
**fructus**, -us, *m.*, fruit

- frugálitás, -atis, f.**, frugality, simplicity  
**frúgifer, -fera, -ferum**, fruitful  
**frúitio, -onis, f.**, enjoyment  
**fruméntum, -i, n.**, corn  
**frustra, adv.**, in vain  
**frustrári, dep.**, to make void  
**frutétum, -i, n.**, branch  
**frutex, -icis, m.**, shrub, plant; shoot  
**frux, -gis, f.**, fruit  
**fucáre**, to paint, disguise  
**fucus, -i**, red or purple color; rouge  
**fuga, -ae, f.**, refuge; flight  
**fugáre**, to put to flight  
**Fugátius, -ii, m.**, Ffagan  
**fúgere, fugi, fúgitus, (io)**, to flee  
**fulciméntum, -i, n.**, prop  
**fulcíre, fulsi, fultus, 4**, to prop up,  
 stay, support, strengthen  
**Fuldénsis, -e**, of Fulda  
**fulgére, fulsi**, to shine, glow  
**fúlgidus, -a, -um**, shining  
**fulgor, -oris, m.**, brightness  
**fulgur, -uris, n.**, lightning  
**fulguráre**, to flash forth  
**fullo, -onis, m.**, fuller  
**fulmen, -inis, n.**, lightning, thunder-  
 bolt  
**fultus, -a, -um**, supported by, charged  
 with  
**fulvus, -a, -um**, gold colored  
**fumáre**, to smoke  
**fumigabúndus, -a, -um**, smoking  
**fumigáre**, to smoke  
**fumus, -i, m.**, smoke  
**funda, -ae, f.**, sling  
**fundaméntum, -i, n.**, foundation  
**fundáre**, to found, establish  
**fundátor, -oris, m.**, founder  
**fúndere, fudi, fusus**, to shed, pour out,  
 pour forth  
**Fundi, -orum, m. pl.**, Fondi  
**fundibulárius, -ii, m.**, slinger  
**fúnditus, adv.**, completely  
**fundus, -i, m.**, base, foundation  
**fungi, functus sum, dep. 3**, to perform,  
 exercise  
**funiculus, -i, m.**, little cord; inher-  
 itance  
**funis, -is, m.**, line, cord, rope, band  
**funus, -eris, n.**, funeral, interment  
**fur, furis, m. and f.**, thief  
**furári, dep.**, to steal  
**fúria, -ae, f.**, fury  
**furor, -oris, m.**, wrath, indignation  
**furtum, -i, n.**, theft; — **fácere**, to steal  
**fuscáre**, to darken  
**fuscínula, -ae, f.**, flesh hook, fork  
**fuscus, -a, -um**, black  
**fúsius, adv.**, more fully  
**fustis, -is, m.**, club  
**fusus, -i, m.**, spindle  
**futúrus, -a, -um**, future; — **esse**, to be  
 about to be

## G

- Galaadítis, -is, m.**, Galaadite  
**Gálatae, -arum, m. pl.**, Galatians  
**gálbanum, -i, n.**, galbanum  
**gálea, -ae, f.**, helmet  
**galeátus, -i, m.**, man wearing a helmet  
**gáleo, -onis, m.**, galleon  
**Gálgala, -ae, f.**, Galgal  
**Galilaéa, -ae, f.**, Galilee  
**Galilaéus, -a, -um**, Galilean  
**Gállia, -ae, f.**, Gaul; France  
**Gallicánus, -a, -um**, Gallican, French  
**gallína, -ae, f.**, hen  
**gallus, -i, m.**, cock, rooster  
**Gallus, -i, m.**, Frenchman  
**Gargánus, -i, m.**, Monte di San Angelo  
**gaudére, gavisus sum, semidep. 2**, to  
 rejoice, be glad  
**gáudium, -ii, n.**, joy  
**Gavus, -i, m.**, Gave  
**gaza, -ae, f.**, treasure, riches  
**gazophylácium, -ii, n.**, treasure-house;  
 treasury; treasure



- gehéna**, -ae, *f.*, hell  
**gelu**, -us, *n.*, frost  
**gemebúndus**, -a, -um, groaning  
**gémere**, -ui, -itus, to groan; sigh; mourn  
**geminátus**, -a, -um, twofold; doubled  
**gémínus**, -a, -um, double, twin  
**gémítus**, -us, *m.*, moan, groan; sighing; sorrow  
**gemma**, -ae, *f.*, jewel  
**gémmula**, -ae, *f.*, gem  
**gena**, -ae, *f.*, cheek  
**genealogía**, -ae, *f.*, genealogy  
**generális**, -is, *m.*, general  
**generálitás**, -atis, *f.*, generality  
**generáre**, to engender  
**generátio**, -onis, *f.*, generation; pedigree; fruit  
**generátor**, -oris, *m.*, first author  
**génere**, -ui, -itus, to beget, bear  
**Genestánus**, -i, *n.*, Genazzano  
**Genestanus**, -a, -um, of Genazzano  
**Genevénsis**, -e, of Geneva  
**génimen**, -inis, *n.*, fruit, offspring  
**genitále**, -is, *n.*, womb  
**genitális**, -e, pertaining to birth  
**génitor**, -oris, *m.*, father  
**génitrix**, -icis, *f.*, mother  
**génítus**, -a, -um, begotten; new born  
**Genováfa**, -ae, *f.*, Guinevere  
**gens**, **gentis**, *f.*, nation, family, gens; gentes, Gentiles  
**Genséricus**, -i, *m.*, Genseric  
**gentílis**, -e, gentile, heathen  
**gentílitás**, -atis, *f.*, the gentile or heathen world, paganism, heathendom  
**genu**, -us, *n.*, knee; **flectáre génua**, to kneel; **genu flexo**, kneeling  
**Genuénsis**, -e, of Genoa  
**genufféctere**, -flexi, -flexus, to genuflect  
**genus**, -eris, *n.*, kind, race; nation; **ex génere**, from my own nation  
**Geórgius**, -ii, *m.*, George  
**Geraséni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Gergesenes  
**gérere**, **gessi**, **gestus**, to bear; reign; do; celebrate  
**Germánia**, -ae, *f.*, Germany  
**Germánicus**, -a, -um, German  
**germánitas**, -atis, *f.*, relationship between brothers and sisters  
**germánus**, -i, *m.*, brother  
**Germánus**, -i, *m.*, German  
**germen**, -inis, *n.*, bud, sprout  
**germináre**, to bud forth, blossom; bring forth; to spring (of seed)  
**Gertrúdis**, -is, *f.*, Gertrude  
**Gervásius**, -ii, *m.*, Gervase  
**gestáre**, to carry, wear  
**gestatórium**, -ii, *n.*, litter  
**gestátus**, -us, *m.*, bearing  
**gestíre**, to desire passionately, long for  
**Gethaéi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Gethites, people of Gath  
**Gethsémani**, Gethsemane  
**ghimel**, the third letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to English *g* (hard)  
**Ghisélla**, -ae, *f.*, Gisela  
**Ghislérii**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Ghisleri  
**Giennénsis**, -e, of Jaen  
**Giénnium**, -ii, *n.*, Jaen  
**gigas**, -antis, *m.*, giant, strong man; hero  
**gígnere**, **génui**, **génítus**, to bring forth, beget  
**Girvénsis**, -e, of Jarrow  
**Girvum**, -i, *n.*, Jarrow  
**glácies**, -ei, *f.*, ice  
**gládus**, -ii, *m.*, sword  
**gleba**, -ae, *f.*, clod or lump of earth  
**glíscere**, to swell; blaze up, rage  
**glóbulus**, -i, *m.*, ball, shot  
**globus**, -i, *m.*, ball  
**gloria**, -ae, *f.*, glory; boasting  
**gloriánter**, exultingly  
**gloriári**, *dep.*, to glory in, boast of  
**gloriátio**, -onis, *f.*, glory; boasting  
**glorificáre**, to glorify

**glorificatio, -onis, f.,** glory  
**glorióse,** gloriously  
**gloriósus, -a, -um,** glorious  
**gluten, -inis, n.,** glue  
**glutíre,** to swallow  
**gnárus, -a, -um,** knowing  
**Gordíanus, -ii, m.,** Gordian  
**Gothi, -orum, m. pl.,** Goths  
**grabátus, -i, m.,** bed, cot  
**Gradénsis, -e,** of Grado  
**gradi, gressus sum, (io), dep. 3,** to walk; follow  
**graduále, -is, n.,** gradual  
**gradus, -us, m.,** step; degree; place, position  
**gracce, adv.,** in Greek  
**Graeci, -orum, m. pl.,** Greeks  
**Graécia, -ae, f.,** Greece  
**Graecus, -a, -um,** Greek  
**gramen, -inis, n.,** grass  
**grammática, -ae, f.,** grammar  
**Granaténsis, -e,** of Granada  
**grandaévus, -a, -um,** of great age  
**grandilóquus, -a, -um,** eloquent  
**grandís, -e,** great  
**grandiúsculus, -a, -um,** somewhat grown up, a little older  
**grando, -inis, f.,** hail, hail storm  
**Granérius, -ii, m.,** Granier  
**gránulum, -i, n.,** pip, seed  
**granum, -i, n.,** grain  
**grassári, dep.,** to proceed violently, rage  
**grates, f. pl.,** thanks  
**grátia, -ae, f.,** grace; thankfulness, thanks; sake; **grátias ágere,** to give thanks; gratis, free, without recompense; **verbi grátia,** for example  
**Gratianopolítanus, -a, -um,** of Grenoble  
**Gratiánus, -i, m.,** Gratian  
**gratificáre,** to grace  
**gratificári, dep.,** to oblige, gratify  
**gratiósus, -a, -um,** favored

**gratúitus, -a, -um,** free, voluntary  
**gratulabúndus, -a, -um,** joyful  
**gratulári, dep.,** to rejoice  
**gratus, -a, -um,** gracious; thankful, agreeable  
**graváre,** to burden, grieve, be burdensome to, be chargeable to; be heavy  
**gravátus, -a, -um,** heavy  
**gravidári, dep.,** to grow heavy; become pregnant  
**grávidus, -a, -um,** heavy  
**gravis, -e,** heavy; grievous  
**gráviter,** seriously  
**Gregórius, -i, m.,** Gregory  
**Gregórius Nazianzénus, -i, -i, m.,** Gregory of Nazianzus  
**gressus, -us, m.,** step; going  
**grex, gregis, m.,** flock  
**grossus, -i, m.,** green fig  
**Guadalupénsis, -e,** of Guadalupe  
**Gualbértus, -i, m.,** Gualbert  
**gubernáculum, -i, n.,** helm; government  
**gubernáre,** to govern  
**gubernátio, -onis, f.,** government  
**Guiscárdus, -i, m.,** Guiscard  
**gula, -ae, f.,** gullet; gluttony  
**Guliélmus, -i, m.,** William  
**Gundúlphus, -i, m.,** Gundulf  
**gurges, -itis, m.,** eddy; stream; waters; sea; raging abyss  
**gustáre,** to taste  
**gustátus, -us, m.,** taste; tasting  
**gustus, -us, m.,** taste; tasting, partaking  
**gutta, -ae, f.,** drop; myrrh oil, aloes  
**guttur, -uris, n.,** throat; palate; taste; mouth  
**gymnásium, -ii, n.,** place of exercise, gymnasium  
**gyrus, -i, m.,** circle; compass

## H

**habére**, to have, hold, consider; **bene** —, to be well, recover; (**se**) **male** —, to be ill  
**habitáculum**, -i, *n.*, dwelling, house; apartment  
**hábitans**, -antis, *m.*, dweller  
**habitáre**, to dwell  
**habitátio**, -onis, *f.*, dwelling, habitation  
**habitátor**, -oris, *m.*, dweller, inhabitant  
**hábitus**, -us, *m.*, dress, habit, clothing, garments  
**hac illac**, *adv.*, here and there  
**háctenus**, *adv.*, so far, up to this point  
**Hadriánus**, -i, *m.*, Hadrian; Adrian  
**haécce** (**haec** + **ci** + **ne**), is this? are these the things?  
**haedus**, -i, *m.*, young goat, kid  
**haemorrhóissus**, -a, -um, having a flow of blood  
**haerére**, **haesi**, **haesus**, to stick fast  
**haeresiárcha**, -ae, *m.*, arch heretic  
**haéresis**, -is, *f.*, heresy  
**haeréticus**, -i, *m.*, heretic  
**haeréticus**, -a, -um, heretical  
**haesitáre**, to waver, hesitate; stagger  
**haesitátio**, -onis, *f.*, hesitation  
**Hagulstadénsis**, -e, of Hexham  
**hálitus**, -us, *m.*, breath  
**hamus**, -i, *m.*, fish hook  
**hariólus**, -i, *m.*, soothsayer  
**Hassi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Hessians  
**Hássia**, -ae, *f.*, Hesse  
**hasta**, -ae, *f.*, spear  
**hastíle**, -is, *n.*, shaft; staff  
**haud**, *adv.*, not at all, by no means  
**haudquáquam**, *adv.*, not at all  
**hauríre**, **hausi**, **haustus**, to draw out; drink up  
**haustus**, -us, *m.*, draught, drink  
**he**, the fifth letter of the Hebrew al-

phabet, corresponding to English *h*  
**hebdómada**, -ae, *f.*, week  
**hebdomadárius**, -ii, *m.*, hebdomadary  
**hébdomas**, -adis, *f.*, week  
**hebes**, -itis, stupefied  
**hebetáre**, to blunt  
**hebetúdo**, -inis, *f.*, dulness, confusion  
**Hebraeus**, -i, *m.*, Hebrew  
**hebráice**, *adv.*, in Hebrew  
**Hebráicis**, -e, Hebrew  
**hebráicus**, -a, -um, Hebrew  
**hédera**, -ae, *f.*, ivy  
**Hedwígis**, -is, *f.*, Hedwig  
**hei!** *interj.*, woe! alas!  
**Heléna**, -ae, *f.*, Helen  
**Helvétii**, -orum, *m. pl.*, the Swiss  
**Hélvii**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Helvii, ancient inhabitants of Vivarais  
**Henricus**, -i, *m.*, Henry  
**herba**, -ae, *f.*, grass; herb; blade (of wheat)  
**hereditáre**, to inherit, to cause to inherit  
**hereditárius**, -a, -um, hereditary; original  
**heréditas**, -atis, *f.*, generation; inheritance  
**heres**, -edis, *m. and f.*, heir  
**heri**, *adv.*, yesterday  
**herinácius**, -ii, *m.*, hedgehog  
**Herluinus**, -i, *m.*, Herluin  
**Hermenegíldus**, -i, *m.*, Hermenegild  
**Hermoniim**, *plural* of **Hermon**, mountain range in Palestine  
**Heródes**, -is, *m.*, Herod  
**Herodiáni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Herodians  
**Herodiánus**, -a, -um, of Herod  
**heródius**, -ii, *m.*, heron  
**hestérnus**, -a, -um, of or relating to yesterday; **dies hestérna**, yesterday  
**heth**, the eighth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to German *ch*.  
**Hethacús**, -i, *m.*, Hethite

- heu!** *interj.*, oh! alas! woe!  
**Heva**, -ae, *f.*, Eve  
**Hevaécus**, -i, *m.*, Hevite  
**hiáre**, to gape  
**Hibérni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, the Irish  
**Hibérnia**, -ae, *f.*, Ireland  
**Hiberniénsis** -e, of Ireland  
**hic**, haec, hoc, this; he, she, it  
**hic**, *adv.*, here  
**hiemális**, -e, pertaining to winter; win-  
 try  
**hiems**, -emis, *f.*, winter  
**hierarchía**, -ae, *f.*, hierarchy  
**Hierónymus**, -i, *m.*, Jerome  
**Hierosólýma**, -orum, *n. pl.*, Jerusalem  
**hilaréscere**, to become joyful  
**Hilário**, -onis, *m.*, Hilarion  
**hílaris**, -e, cheerful, smiling  
**hiláritas**, -atis, *f.*, cheerfulness  
**Hilárius**, -ii, *m.*, Hilary  
**Hildebrándus**, -i, *m.*, Hildebrand  
**hinc**, *adv.*, fro, hence, away from here;  
 hinc et hinc, one on each side  
**hinníre**, to neigh; make a joyful noise  
**hínnulus**, -i, *m.*, young hart  
**Hipponénsis**, -e, of Hippo  
**hircus**, -i, *m.*, goat  
**hirúndo**, -inis, *f.*, a swallow  
**Hispális**, -is, *f.*, Seville  
**Hispalénsis**, -e, of Seville  
**Hispánia**, -ae, *f.*, Spain  
**Hispánia Baética**, -ae, -ae, *f.*, Andalusia  
**Hispánia citérior**, -ae, -is, *f.*, Granada  
**Hispánus**, -i, *m.*, Spaniard  
**Hispánus**, -i, *m.*, river in Spain; prob-  
 ably the Guadalquivir  
**híspidus**, -a, -um, rough, coarse  
**história**, -ae, *f.*, history  
**hódie**, *adv.*, today, this day  
**hodiérnus**, -a, -um, relating to today;  
 this day's; hodiérna die, on this day  
**hoedínus**, -a, -um, of a young goat  
**hoedus** (haedus), -i, *m.*, kid, young  
 goat  
**holocáustum**, -i, *n.*, holocaust, burnt  
 offering  
**holoséricum**, -i, *n.*, silk  
**homicídium**, -ii, *n.*, murder  
**homilía**, -ae, *f.*, homily  
**homo**, -inis, *m.*, man; husband  
**honestáre**, to make honorable  
**honéstas**, -atis, *f.*, honor, riches  
**honéste**, honorably  
**honéstus**, -a, -um, honest  
**honor**, -oris, *m.*, honor  
**honorábilis**, -e, honorable  
**honoráre**, to honor  
**honorárius**, -a, -um, of honor  
**honorátus**, -a, -um, honorable  
**honorificáre**, to honor, glorify  
**honorificátus**, -a, -um, honorable  
**honorificéntia**, -ae, *f.*, honor  
**honos**, -oris, *m.*, honor  
**hora**, -ae, *f.*, hour  
**hordeáceus**, -a, -um, of barley  
**hórdeum**, -i, *n.*, barley  
**horológium**, -ii, *n.*, dial  
**horréndus**, -a, -um, dreadful  
**horrére**, -ii, to abhor  
**horréscere**, -ui, to spurn  
**hórreum**, -i, *n.*, barn  
**horribilis**, -e, dreadful  
**hórridus**, -a, -um, dreadful  
**horror**, -oris, *m.*, horror  
**hortaméntum**, -i, *n.*, exhortation  
**hortári**, *dep.*, to exhort  
**hortátor**, -oris, *m.*, encourager, com-  
 forter  
**hortulánus**, -i, *m.*, gardener  
**hortus**, -i, *m.*, garden  
**Hosánna**, Hosanna, a Hebrew excla-  
 mation of praise to the Lord, or an  
 invocation of blessings  
**hospes**, -itis, *m.* and *f.*, host, guest  
**hospitále**, -is, *n.*, guest-house, hospital  
**hospitális**, -e, relating to a guest; hos-  
 pitable; **hospitáli domo**, in a guest-  
 house or hospital

**hospitálitás, -atis, f.**, hospitality; **fratres**  
**Hospitalitátis, Hospital** brethren,  
 Hospitallers  
**hospítium, -ii, n.**, hospice, asylum;  
 hospitality  
**hóstia, -ae, f.**, host, sacrifice, victim, of-  
 fering  
**hósticus, -a, -um**, hostile  
**hostílis, -e**, hostile  
**hostílitás, -atis, f.**, enmity; enemy  
**hostis, -is, m.** and **f.**, enemy  
**huc, adv.**, hither; — **et illuc**, to and  
 fro  
**húccine, adv.**, so far? as far as this?  
**Hugo, -onis, m.**, Hugh  
**hujuscémodi, (of)** any such  
**hujusmódi, of** such, such a one, such  
 a kind  
**humánitas, -atis, f.**, humanity, kind-  
 ness; human nature; culture, good  
 breeding  
**humánus, -a, -um**, human  
**húmerus, -i, m.**, shoulder  
**humicubátio, -onis, f.**, lying on the  
 ground  
**humiliáre, to** bring low, humble, hu-  
 miliate; afflict; bow down  
**humiliátio, -onis, f.**, humiliation  
**húmilis, -e, m.**, humble, lowly  
**humílitás, -atis, f.**, humility, abjection,  
 lowness, misery  
**humíliter, humbly, lowly**  
**humor, -oris, m.**, moisture; fluid; de-  
 sire  
**humus, -i, f.**, soil, earth, land  
**Hungária, -ae, f.**, Hungary  
**Hunni, -orum, m. pl.**, Huns  
**Hussíti, -orum, m. pl.**, Hussites  
**hyacínthinus, -a, -um**, violet  
**hyacínthus, -i, f.**, jacinth  
**Hyacínthus, -i, m.**, Hyacinth  
**Hyblaéus, -a, -um**, Hyblaean  
**hydria, -ae, f.**, water jar or pot  
**hydrópsis, -is, f.**, dropsy

**hydrópsicus, -a, -um**, afflicted with  
 dropsy, dropsical  
**hyems (hiems), -emis, f.**, winter  
**hýetos**, Greek word meaning rain  
**hymnódia, -ae, f.**, singing of hymns  
**hymnus, -i, m.**, hymn  
**hyperbólice, adv.**, hyperbolically, with  
 exaggeration  
**hypócrisis, -is, f.**, hypocrisy  
**hypócrita, -ae, m.**, hypocrite  
**Hycráni, -orum, m. pl.**, Hyrcanians  
**hyssópus, -i, f.**, hyssop

## I

**ibi, adv.**, there  
**ibídem, adv.**, in the same place  
**Iconómachi, -orum, m. pl.**, Iconoclasts  
**ictus, -us, m.**, blow; stream; twinkling  
**idcírco, adv.**, therefore  
**idem, eadem, idem, same**  
**idéntidem, adv.**, repeatedly  
**ídeo, adv.**, therefore  
**idióma, -matis, n.**, language  
**idípsum, together; forthwith**  
**idolólátra, -ae, m.**, idolater  
**idololatría, -ae, f.**, idolatry  
**idólum, -i, n.**, idol  
**idóneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable**  
**Idumaéa, -ae, f.**, Edom  
**Idumaéus, -a, -um, of Edom; Edomite**  
**idus, -uum, f. pl.**, Ides, the middle of  
 the Roman month  
**ígitur, adv.**, therefore, accordingly  
**ignárus, -a, -um, ignorant of**  
**ignávus, -a, -um, idle, slothful**  
**ignéscere, to burn**  
**ígneus, -a, -um, fiery**  
**ígnis, -is, m.**, fire  
**ignítus, -a, -um, burning, fiery; refined**  
**ignóbilis, -e, base**  
**ignóbilitás, -atis, f.**, dishonor  
**ignomínia, -ae, f.**, shame  
**ignoránter, adv.**, through ignorance

- ignorántia, -ae, f.**, ignorance  
**ignoráre**, to be ignorant  
**ignóscere, -novi, -notus**, not to take notice of; forgive  
**ilex, -icis, f.**, holm oak  
**Ilkusiénsis, -e**, of Olkusz  
**illabi, -lapsus sum, dep. 3**, to fall, sink down, descend  
**illaésus, -a, -um**, unharmed  
**illamentátus, -a, -um**, unlamented  
**ille, illa, illud**, that; **illum et illum locum**, such and such a place  
**illécebra, -ae, f.**, allurements, blandishment  
**illibátus, -a, -um**, unblemished  
**illic, adv.**, there  
**illicere, -lexi, -lectus, (io)**, to allure  
**illicite, adv.**, illegally  
**illicitus, -a, -um**, forbidden  
**illico, adv.**, on the spot, immediately  
**illigáre**, to fetter  
**illínere, -levi, -litus**, to smear, bedaub  
**illo, adv.**, thither  
**illuc, adv.**, there, thither  
**illucéscere, -luxi**, to shine upon  
**illúdere, -lusi, -lusus**, to mock, delude, deceive; play  
**illumináre**, to make or cause to shine, illuminate; enlighten  
**illuminátio, -onis, f.**, light  
**illúsió, -onis, f.**, mockery, illusion  
**illustráre**, to illuminate; enlighten; make illustrious  
**illustrátio, -onis, f.**, brightness  
**imaginátio, -onis, f.**, imagination  
**imágo, -inis, f.**, image, picture  
**imbecíllitas, -atis, f.**, weakness  
**imbecíllus, -a, -um**, weak, feeble  
**imbéllis, -e**, unwarlike, cowardly  
**imber, -bris, m.**, rain, shower  
**imbúere, -ui, -utus**, to fill; nourish; instruct  
**imitári, dep.**, to imitate  
**imitátio, -onis, f.**, example  
**imitátor, -oris, m.**, follower  
**imitátrix, -icis, f.**, follower, imitator  
**immaculátus, -a, -um**, spotless, undefiled, immaculate  
**immánis, -e**, brutal, savage  
**immánitas, -atis, f.**, fierceness  
**immániter**, cruelly  
**immarcescibilis, -e**, that cannot fade or wither, unwithering, imperishable  
**immediáte**, immediately  
**immedicábilis, -e**, incurable  
**immémor, -oris**, unmindful  
**imménsitas, -atis, f.**, infinity  
**imménsus, -a, -um**, immense, infinite  
**immérito, adv.**, undeservedly; unfitly  
**imméritus, -a, -um**, unworthy  
**imminens, -entis**, threatening  
**imminúere, -ui, -utus**, to diminish, abate  
**immiséricors, -dis**, unmerciful, merciless  
**immisio, -onis, f.**, a letting loose, sending forth; infusion  
**immítis, -e**, harsh; **immítia, n. pl.**, harsh things, cruel sights  
**immíttere, -misi, -missus**, send; put into; encamp  
**immóbilis, -e**, immovable  
**immoderántia, -ae, f.**, excess  
**immoderátus, -a, -um**, excessive, immoderate  
**immódicus, -a, -um**, excessive, immoderate  
**immoláre**, to sacrifice, immolate  
**immolátio, -onis, f.**, offering  
**immorári, dep.**, to stay  
**immortális, -e**, immortal  
**immortalitas, -atis, f.**, immortality  
**immótus, -a, -um**, unmoved, steadfast  
**immundítia, -ae, f.**, uncleanness  
**immúndus, -a, -um**, unclean  
**immúnitas, -atis, f.**, immunity  
**immúnis, -e**, free from, preserved, immune

- immutáre**, to change, alter; do something new or different  
**immutári**, *dep.*, to change  
**imparílitas**, -atis, *f.*, inequality  
**impartíre**, to impart  
**impassibilis**, -e, not susceptible to pain  
**impediméntum**, -i, *m.*, impediment  
**impedíre**, to bring low, prostrate  
**impéllere**, -puli, -pulsus, to push  
**impéndere**, -pendi, -pensus, to spend, expend; grant, extend; ensure  
**impéndium**, -ii, *n.*, charge, expense  
**impéñse**, *adv.*, urgently; at great cost  
**imperáre**, to command  
**imperátor**, -oris, *m.*, emperor  
**imperféctio**, -onis, *f.*, imperfection  
**imperfectum**, -i, *n.*, something imperfect  
**imperítia**, -ae, *f.*, ignorance  
**impérium**, -ii, *n.*, reign, dominion, empire; precept, command; pride  
**impertíre**, to bestow  
**impérvius**, -a, -um, impassable  
**impétere**, to attack  
**impetráre**, to gain, obtain  
**ímpetus**, -us, *m.*, force, violence; impulse, rapid motion  
**ímpie**, wickedly  
**impíetas**, -atis, *f.*, wickedness, ungodliness, transgression  
**ímpiger**, -gra, -grum, diligent  
**impíngere**, -pégi, -pactus, to put or push back; strike  
**impinguáre**, to grow fat or thick; anoint  
**ímpius**, -a, -um, wicked, godless  
**implére**, -plevi, -pletus, to fill, accomplish; celebrate  
**implicáre**, to entangle  
**imploráre**, to implore  
**impollútus**, -a, -um, undefiled  
**impónere**, -pósui, -pósitus, to lay or put upon  
**importábilis**, -e, insupportable  
**importúne**, *adv.*, out of season  
**impositio**, -onis, *f.*, a laying on; imposition  
**impossibilis**, -e, impossible  
**impréssio**, -onis, *f.*, impression  
**imprimere**, -pressi, -pressus, to print, imprint; press or thrust into  
**improbáre**, to blame  
**impróbitas**, -atis, *f.*, importunity  
**improbus**, -a, -um, troublesome  
**improperáre**, to reproach  
**impropérium**, -ii, *n.*, reproach  
**imprúdens**, -entis, foolish  
**impudéntia**, -ae, *f.*, shamelessness  
**impudicítia**, -ae, *f.*, immodesty, impurity  
**impugnáre**, to beset, fight against  
**impugnátio**, -onis, *f.*, assault  
**impugnátor**, -oris, *m.*, enemy  
**imputáre**, to impute  
**imus**, -a, -um, lowest  
**in**, in, into, unto, upon, for, at, to, against, among, toward  
**inaccessibilis**, -e, inaccessible  
**inaccessus**, -a, -um, inaccessible  
**inacúere**, -ui, -utus, to sharpen; inflame  
**inaestimábilis**, -e, inestimable, priceless  
**inambuláre**, to walk  
**inamissibilis**, -e, unable to be lost  
**inánis**, -e, vain, empty, void; *inánia*, *n. pl.*, vain things  
**inánitas**, -atis, *f.*, emptiness  
**inániter**, vainly  
**inaquósum**, -i, *n.*, desert  
**inaquósus**, -a, -um, without water, dry  
**inarátus**, -a, -um, unplowed  
**ináuris**, -is, *f.*, earring  
**incaléscere**, -cálui, to grow warm  
**incanéscere**, -cánui, to be gray-headed  
**incantáre**, to charm  
**incarnáre**, to make incarnate  
**incarnátio**, -onis, *f.*, incarnation

- incarnátus, -a, -um**, incarnate  
**incédere, -cessi, -cessus**, to go, walk  
**incéndere, -cendi, -census**, to heat, burn; kindle, set fire to  
**incéndium, -ii, n.**, fire, flame  
**incénsum, -i, n.**, incense  
**incénsus, -a, -um**, incensed  
**incéntívum, -i, n.**, incentive  
**incéntor, -oris, m.**, promoter  
**incértum, -i, n.**, uncertainty; uncertain thing  
**incertus, -a, -um**, hidden, uncertain  
**incessábilis, -e**, unceasing  
**incessánte**, continually  
**inchoáre**, to begin  
**inchoátio, -onis, f.**, beginning  
**incídere, -cidi**, to fall into  
**incípere, -cepi, -ceptus, (io)**, to begin  
**incircumcísus, -a, -um**, uncircumcised  
**incircumscriptus, -a, -um**, incomprehensible  
**incísus, -a, -um**, not cut  
**incítáre**, to provoke, blaspheme  
**incítátor, -oris, m.**, instigator  
**inclamáre**, to cry out loudly  
**inclináre**, to bow, bend, incline  
**includere, -clusi, -clusus**, to include  
**inclusíve, adv.**, inclusive  
**ínclytus, -a, -um**, renowned, glorious  
**incoenátus, -a, -um**, without supper  
**íncola, -ae, m. and f.**, stranger, sojourner, exile; dweller  
**incolátus, -us, m.**, sojourn, residence  
**incolúmitas, -atis, f.**, safety  
**incombústus, -a, -um**, not burnt  
**incommutábilis, -e**, unchanging, unchangeable, immutable  
**incomparábilis, -e**, incomparable  
**incomprehensibilis, -e**, incomprehensible  
**inconcúbis, -a, -um**, relating to the dead of night  
**incongruus, -a, -um**, unfitting, incongruous  
**inconstántia, -ae, f.**, wandering  
**inconsútilis, -e**, not sewed together, made in one piece; without a seam  
**incontaminátus, -a, -um**, undefiled  
**incorporári, dep.**, to enter into a body, be incorporated  
**incorpóreus, -a, -um**, without a body, incorporeal  
**incorruptíbilis, -e**, incorruptible  
**incorrúptio, -onis, f.**, corruption  
**incorrúptus, -a, -um**, incorruptible  
**incrassáre**, to grow fat  
**increátus, -a, -um**, uncreated  
**incredíbilis, -e**, incredulous  
**incredúlitas, -atis, f.**, unbelief, incredulity  
**incrédulus, -a, -um**, faithless, incredulous  
**increméntum, -i, n.**, increase  
**inrepáre**, to reprove, rebuke  
**inrepátio, -onis, f.**, rebuke  
**inrepatórius, -a, -um**, rebuking  
**incubáre, -cúbui, -cúbitus**, to lie upon  
**incumbere, -cúbui, -cúbitus**, to lie upon  
**incunábula, -orum, n. pl.**, swaddling clothes; beginning  
**incunctánte**, not slowly, readily  
**incurábilis, -e**, incurable  
**incúria, -ae, f.**, indifference  
**incúrrere, -curri (cucúrri), -cursus**, to come into  
**incúrsio, -onis, f.**, attack  
**incúrsus, -us, m.**, assault  
**incurváre**, to bend  
**incurvári, dep.**, to bow down  
**incútere, -cussi, -cussus, (io)**, to strike  
**indagáre**, to investigate, inquire into  
**inde, adv.**, hence; thereafter  
**indeclinábilis, -e**, unwavering  
**indeféssus, -a, -um**, unwearied  
**indeféciens, -entis**, unfailing, never failing  
**índere, -didi, -ditus**, to give to; put in or into



- indésinéter**, unceasingly  
**index**, -icis, *c.*, sign, token  
**Indi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, natives of India  
**Indiae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, Indies  
**indicáre**, to tell; bespeak, indicate, show  
**indicíbilis**, -e, unable to be told in words  
**indícium**, -ii, *n.*, sign, evidence  
**Indicus**, -a, -um, Indian  
**indifferénte**, not differently  
**índigens**, -entis, needy  
**indigére**, -ui, to need, stand in need of  
**indígnans**, -antis, indignant, angry  
**indignári**, *dep.*, to be indignant, be angry  
**indignátio**, -onis, *f.*, indignation  
**indígne**, indignantly; — **ferre**, to have indignation  
**indígnus**, -a, -um, unworthy  
**indisciplínátus**, -a, -um, unskillful  
**indissolúbilis**, -e, imperishable  
**índitus**, -a, -um, given or imposed (as a name)  
**indivíduus**, -a, -um, undivided  
**indivísus**, -a, -um, undivided  
**índoles**, -is, *f.*, talent, genius  
**indubitánte**, indubitably  
**indubitátus**, -a, -um, unwavering  
**indúcere**, -duxi, -ductus, to lead; bring into  
**indúciae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, extension of time, truce  
**indúere**, -ui, -utus, to put on; clothe  
**indulgéntia**, -ae, *f.*, pardon, forgiveness, indulgence  
**indulgére**, -dulse, -dultus, to grant; forgive  
**induméntum**, -i, *n.*, apparel  
**induráre**, to harden; dry up  
**indúsium**, -ii, *n.*, shirt  
**indústria**: de —, on purpose  
**indústrius**, -a, -um, industrious  
**inebriáre**, to water, soak; make drunk  
**inédia**, -ae, *f.*, fasting, abstinence, hunger  
**ineffábilis**, -e, ineffable  
**ineffabíliter**, in an unspeakable manner  
**inenarrábilis**, -e, unspeakable  
**inécptus**, -a, -um, stupid  
**inérmis**, -e, unarmed, defenseless  
**inerudítio**, -onis, *f.*, ignorance  
**inése**, -fui, to be on or in  
**inexcusábilis**, -e, inexcusable  
**inexháustus**, -a, -um, inexhaustible  
**inexpectátus**, -a, -um, unexpected  
**inexplébilis**, -e, insatiable; extraordinary  
**inexplebíliter**, insatiably  
**inexpugnábilis**, -e, invincible  
**inextinguíbilis**, -e, inextinguishable  
**inextricábilis**, -e, inextricable  
**infallíbilis**, -e, infallible  
**infámia**, -ae, *f.*, evil report  
**infans**, -antis, *m.* and *f.*, infant, child, babe; **infántes expósi**, foundlings  
**infántia**, -ae, *f.*, childhood, infancy  
**infántula**, -ae, *f.*, babe  
**infántulus**, -i, *m.*, infant  
**infatigabíliter**, indefatigably  
**infatuátus**, -a, -um, tasteless  
**infecúndus**, -a, -um, sterile  
**infelícitas**, -atis, *f.*, unhappiness, wretchedness  
**infélix**, -icis, unhappy  
**infénsus**, -a, -um, hostile, dangerous  
**inférior**, -ius, lower, below  
**inférnus**, -a, -um, of hell, infernal  
**inférnus**, -i, *m.*, grave, the underworld  
**inférre**, -tuli, illátus, to bring, bear, carry in  
**ínerus**, -a, -um, below; of hell  
**ínerus**, -i, *m.*, nether world, grave  
**infestátio**, -onis, *f.*, assault  
**inféstus**, -a, -um, hostile  
**inficere**, -feci, -fectus, (io), to infect, stain; pollute

- infidélis, -e**, unfaithful, unbelieving  
**infigere, -fixi, -fixus**, to fasten in, stick fast  
**infinítus, -a, -um**, infinite.  
**infirmáre**, to weaken  
**infirmári, dep.**, to be weak, sick, diseased  
**infirmítas, -atis, f.**, sickness, infirmity, disease  
**infirmus, -a, -um**, weak, sick, infirm  
**inflammáre**, to kindle; inflame  
**infláre**, to puff up  
**infléctere, -flexi, -flectus**, to bend  
**informáre**, to fashion  
**informátio, -onis, f.**, information  
**infra, prep. and adv.**, under, beneath  
**infrémere, -frémui**, to groan  
**infringere, -fregi, -fractus**, to break; infringe upon  
**infructuósus, -a, -um**, barren  
**infrunítus, -a, -um**, bold  
**infúndere, -fudi, -fusus**, to pour; water; infuse  
**infúsis, -onis, f.**, outpouring; infusion  
**ingemináre**, to repeat  
**ingémiscere, -gémui**, to groan, sigh  
**ingénitus, -a, -um**, unbegotten  
**ingénium, -i, n.**, natural character  
**ingens, -entis**, great, vast  
**ingérene, -gesse, -gestus**, to pour into, infuse  
**ingraváre**, to aggravate  
**ingravéscere**, to become serious  
**ingredi, -gressus sum, dep. 3 (io)**, to walk along; come in  
**ingréssus, -us, m.**, procession  
**ingrúere, -ui**, to assault  
**inguen, -inis, n.**, groin  
**inhabitábilis, -e**, not inhabited; uninhabitable  
**inhabitáre**, to dwell  
**inhaerére, -haesi, -haesus**, to adhere to  
**inhiáre**, to gape after; long for  
**inhonéste, adv.**, with dishonor  
**inhonoráre**, to dishonor  
**inhonorátio, -onis, f.**, dishonor  
**inhumánus, -a, -um**, brutal  
**inhumátus, -a, -um**, unburied  
**inibi, adv.**, in that place  
**inimicítia, -ae, f.**, enmity  
**inimícus, -a, -um**, hostile  
**inimícus, -i, m.**, enemy  
**ininterpretábilis, -e**, difficult to explain  
**iníque**, wickedly, unjustly  
**iníquitas, -atis, f.**, iniquity  
**iníquus, -a, -um**, unjust  
**iníre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo)**, to enter; enter upon, undertake  
**inítiáre**, to initiate  
**inítium, -ii, n.**, beginning; corner  
**ínitus, -a, -um**, begun, entered upon  
**injícere, -jeci, -jectus, (io)**, to lay upon  
**injúngere, -jungi, -junctus**, to enjoin, impose  
**injúria, -ae, f.**, wrong, injury  
**injúste**, unjustly  
**injustítia, -ae, f.**, iniquity, injustice  
**injústus, -a, -um**, unjust  
**innátus, -a, -um**, inborn, innate  
**inníti, -nixus sum, dep. 3**, to lean upon; rely upon  
**innocens, -entis**, innocent, clean, pure  
**Innocéntius, -ii, m.**, Innocent  
**innocénte, adv.**, innocently  
**innócuus, -a, -um**, innocent, blameless  
**innotéscere, -nótui**, to become known  
**innováre**, to renew  
**innóxius, -a, -um**, harmless, innocent  
**innúere, -ui**, to make a sign or signal to  
**innumerábilis, -e**, innumerable  
**innúmerus, -a, -um**, without number, countless  
**innúptus, -a, -um**, unmarried  
**inobediéntia, -ae, f.**, disobedience  
**inoffénsus, -a, -um**, unhurt; **inoffénso pede**, without tripping  
**inoléscere, -evi, -itus**, to grow in or on

- inólitus, -a, -um**, ingrown  
**inópia, -ae, f.**, poverty, want  
**inopinátus, -a, -um**, unexpected  
**inops, -opis**, needy, destitute, afflicted  
**inordináte, adv.**, unequally  
**inquam, defect. verb.**, I say  
**inquietáre, to disquiet**  
**inquiétus, -a, -um**, unquiet  
**inquinaméntum, -i, n.**, stain, filthiness  
**inquináre, to stain, defile**  
**inquinátus, -a, -um**, defiled  
**inquirere, -sivi, -situs, to seek, search**  
 for, desire  
**inquisítio, -onis, f.**, inquiry; search;  
 speculation  
**Inquisítio, -onis, f.**, Inquisition  
**inquisítor, -oris, m.**, inquisitor  
**inquit, defect. verb.**, he says  
**insanábilis, -e**, incurable  
**insánia, -ae, f.**, madness, insanity  
**insaníre, to be mad, be outrageous**  
**insánus, -i, m.**, madman  
**insatiábilis, -e**, insatiable; ambitious  
**inscítia, -ae, f.**, lack of knowledge, ig-  
 norance  
**inscribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, to write**  
 over  
**inscrutábilis, -e**, unsearchable, inscruta-  
 ble  
**inscúlpere, -sculpsi, -sculptus, to brand,**  
 carve, engrave  
**insecútor, -oris, m.**, pursuer, persecu-  
 tor; tyrant foe  
**insensátus, -i, m.**, fool  
**insensíbilis, -e**, insensible  
**inseparábilis, -e**, inseparable  
**insepúltus, -a, -um**, unburied  
**insérere, -sérui, -sertus, to enroll; en-**  
 tangle  
**insérere, -sevi, -situs, to implant**  
**insértus, -a, -um**, fixed, rooted  
**inservíre, to serve**  
**insidére, -sedi, -sessus, to rest upon**  
**insidia, -ae, f.**, deceit  
**insídiæ, -arum, f. pl.**, snare, snares,  
 ambush  
**insidiáre, to lay snares**  
**insidiári, dep.**, to lie in wait  
**insidiátor, -oris, m.**, traitor  
**insignére, to distinguish, honor, adorn,**  
 endow  
**insígnis, -e**, noted, notable; notorious  
**insígniter, remarkably**  
**insígnítus, -a, -um**, signed; known  
**insinuáre, to insinuate**  
**insípiens, -entis**, unwise, foolish  
**insipiéntia, -ae, f.**, folly, foolishness;  
 in **insipiéntia**, foolishly  
**ínsitus, -a, -um**, ingrafted  
**insoléscere, to become insolent, behave**  
 extravagantly  
**insolúbilis, -e**, insoluble; that cannot  
 be unlocked  
**insómnis, -e**, sleepless  
**insonáre, to resound**  
**insons, -ontis**, innocent  
**insperátus, -a, -um**, unhoped for, un-  
 expected  
**inspérgere, -spersi, -spersus, to sprinkle**  
**inspícere, -spexi, -spectus, to stare**  
 upon  
**inspiráre, to breathe into**  
**inspirátio, -onis, f.**, inspiration; breath,  
 blast  
**instábilis, -e**, unstable, inconstant, hav-  
 ing no fixed abode  
**instans, -antis**, present; instant  
**instántia, -ae, f.**, instance  
**instar, indecl., n.**, image, likeness  
**instáre, -stiti, -statúrus, to insist; await;**  
 threaten  
**instauráre, to renew; strengthen; com-**  
 prise  
**instaurátio, -onis, f.**, renewal  
**instaurátor, -oris, m.**, restorer  
**instíntus, -us, m.**, inspiration  
**ínsita, -ae, f.**, winding band  
**institor, -oris, m.**, merchant

- institúere, -ui, -utus, to institute, ordain**  
**institútio, -onis, f., institution; manner of life**  
**institútor, -oris, m., tutor; founder; creator**  
**institútrix, -icis, f., foundress**  
**institútum, -i, n., institute; institution**  
**instrúctus, -a, -um, drawn up in order of battle**  
**instrúere, -struxi, -structus, to draw up; instruct**  
**Insúbria, -ae, f., Lombardy**  
**insudáre, to sweat at or in**  
**insúere, -sui, -sutus, to sew up**  
**insuffláre, to blow; breathe upon**  
**insufflátio, -onis, f., a breathing upon or into**  
**ínsula, -ae, f., island; ínsulae Océani, Oceanic Islands**  
**insulánus, -i, m., islander**  
**insultáre, to scoff at**  
**insúmere, -sumpsi, -sumptus, to consume**  
**ínsuper, adv., in addition, moreover**  
**insúrgere, -surréxi, -surréctus, to rise up**  
**intáctus, -a, -um, inviolate**  
**intaminátus, -a, -um, unspotted**  
**ínteger, -gra, -grum, whole**  
**intégerrime, adv., most rigidly**  
**intégritas, -atis, f., wholeness; health; integrity**  
**intellectuális, -e, spiritual**  
**intelléctus, -us, m., sense, meaning; understanding, insight**  
**intelligéntia, -ae, f., knowledge, understanding, intelligence**  
**intelligere, -lexi, -lectus, to perceive, understand; heed, attend to**  
**intemerátus, -a, -um, spotless**  
**intempestívus, -a, -um, untimely**  
**intempestus, -a, -um, unseasonable; intempésta nox, the dead of night**  
**inténdere, -tendi, -tentus or -tensus, to mark, hearken, be attentive; direct; look steadfastly; look down mercifully upon; go forth; arcum —, to bend a bow**  
**intentátor, -oris, m., one who wars against, threatener; tempter**  
**inténtio, -onis, f., intention**  
**inténtus, -a, -um, intent, anxious**  
**inter, prep., between, among**  
**intercédere, -cessi, -cessus, to intercede**  
**intercésio, -onis, f., intercession**  
**intercésor, -oris, m., intercessor**  
**intercidere, -cidi, -cisus, to divide, cleave**  
**interdíctum, -i, n., interdict**  
**intérdiu, adv., by day**  
**intérea, adv., in the meantime**  
**intérére, -trivi, -tritus, to break, crumble**  
**intéresse, -fui, to be between; be different; take part in**  
**interfécior, -oris, m., slayer**  
**interficere, -feci, -fectus, (io), to kill, slay, put to death, destroy**  
**ínterim, adv., meanwhile**  
**interímere, -emi, -emptus, to slay**  
**intérior, -ius, inward; interióra, n. pl., entrails**  
**interíre, -ivi or -ii, -itus, (eo), to perish, die**  
**interítio, -onis, f., destruction**  
**intéritus, -us, m., destruction; overthrow**  
**intérius, adv., inwardly**  
**interminátus, -a, -um, endless**  
**intérminus, -a, -um, endless, infinite**  
**intermíssio, -onis, f., ceasing**  
**intermittere, -misi, -missus, to leave, let pass**  
**internécio, -onis, f., massacre, carnage**  
**interpelláre, to make intercession**  
**interpositio, -onis, f., a bringing forward, introducing**

- ínterpres**, -pretis, *c.*, interpreter, expounder  
**interpretáre**, to interpret  
**interpretári**, *dep.*, to expound  
**interpretátio**, -onis, *f.*, interpretation  
**interrogáre**, to ask questions, inquire  
**interrogátio**, -onis, *f.*, question, argument, inquisition; pledge  
**interrumpere**, -rupi, -ruptus, to break into; divide, cleave  
**intersérere**, -sérui, -sertus, to place between or among  
**intersérere**, -sevi, -situs, to sow or plant between  
**intervállum**, -i, *n.*, space  
**intervéntio**, -onis, *f.*, intercession  
**intervéntor**, -oris, *m.*, intercessor  
**intervéntus**, -us, *m.*, intercession  
**intestínium**, -i, *n.*, entrail; **intestína**, *n. pl.*, bowels  
**intimáre**, to tell, intimate  
**íntimus**, -a, -um, inmost; **íntima**, *n. pl.*, bowels  
**intíngere**, -tíngi, -tíngens, to dip in or steep  
**intolerábilis**, -e, overwhelming, unbearable  
**intonáre**, -tónui, -tonátus, to thunder  
**intra**, *prep.*, among, within  
**intráre**, to enter  
**intrínsecus**, *adv.*, within  
**intro**, *adv.*, in, within  
**introdúcere**, -duxi, -ductus, to bring into  
**intrógređi**, -gressus sum, *dep. 3 (io)*, to go or come in  
**introíre**, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to go in or into, enter  
**intróitus**, -us, *m.*, going in, entering, entrance, introit  
**intromittere**, -misi, -missus, to send into; cast within or into  
**introspicere**, -spexi, -spectus, (io), to look at  
**intuíeri**, -túitus sum, *dep. 2*, to look at, consider, behold earnestly  
**intúitus**, -us, *m.*, mind  
**intuméscere**, -túmui, to swell  
**intus**, *adv.*, inwardly, within  
**inúltus**, -a, -um, unpunished, unavenged  
**inundántia**, -ae, *f.*, inundation  
**inundáre**, to overflow  
**inundátio**, -onis, *f.*, flood, multitude  
**inúngere**, -unxi, -unctus, to anoint  
**inútilis**, -e, useless, profitless  
**inutiliter**, uselessly  
**invádere**, -vasi, -vasus, to invade, usurp  
**invaléscere**, -válui, to become strong, be more earnest, prevail  
**invéhere**, -vexi, -vectus, to attack  
**invénire**, -veni, -ventus, to come upon, find, obtain; to bring about, effect  
**invéntio**, -onis, *f.*, finding  
**invéntor**, -oris, *m.*, inventor  
**inverecúndia**, -ae, *f.*, impudence  
**investigábilis**, -e, unsearchable, unaccountable  
**investigáre**, to seek after, search out; trace  
**inveteráre**, to grow old  
**inveterátus**, -a, -um, old, decrepit  
**ínicem**, *adv.*, by turns, alternately; **ad** —, reciprocally, among themselves  
**invictus**, -a, -um, invincible, unconquerable  
**invidére**, -vidi, -visus, to envy  
**invidia**, -ae, *f.*, envy  
**ínvidus**, -i, *m.*, envious one  
**invigiláre**, to watch over  
**inviolábiliter**, inviolably  
**inviolátus**, -a, -um, pure  
**invisáre**, to go and see, visit  
**invisibilis**, -e, invisible  
**invisibíliter**, invisibly  
**invitaméntum**, -i, *n.*, invitation  
**invítáre**, to invite

invitátor, -oris, *m.*, one who invites  
 invitatórium, -ii, *n.*, invitatory  
 invítus, -a, -um, unwilling  
 ínvium, -ii, *n.*, trackless region, waste land  
 ínvius, -a, -um, trackless, pathless, impassable, desert  
 invocáre, to call upon, invoke  
 invocátio, -onis, *f.*, invocation  
 involuménta, -orum, *n. pl.*, swaddling clothes  
 invólvere, -volvi, -volútus, to wrap up; shut up  
 iota, *indecl.*, *n.*, iota, jot  
 ipse, -a, -um, *intensive pron.*, he (himself), etc.  
 ipsíssimus, -a, -um, one's very self; ipsíssima verba, the very words  
 ira, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath  
 iracúndia, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath  
 iracúndus, -a, -um, angry  
 irásci, irátus sum, *dep. 3*, to be angry; be kindled (of wrath)  
 irátus, -a, -um, angry  
 ire, ivi and ii, itus, (eo), to go  
 iris, -idis, *f.*, rainbow  
 irradiáre, to shine, illumine  
 irrationábilis, -e, irrational; irrationábília, *n. pl.*, irrational creatures, animals  
 irrationabíliter, senselessly  
 irrepere, -repsi, -reptus, to creep into  
 irrehensíbilis, -e, blameless, unspotted  
 irrevocábilis, -e, not to be turned back, irrevocable  
 irridére, -risi, -risus, to laugh at  
 irrígatio, -onis, *f.*, watering, moistening  
 irríguus, -a, -um, watered  
 irrísor, -oris, *m.*, one who scorns, derider  
 irritáre, to provoke  
 irritátio, -onis, *f.*, provocation

irritátor, -onis, *m.*, provoker of anger  
 irrítus, -a, -um, vain, void, unheard  
 irrogáre, to inflict, impose  
 irrúere, -ui, to rush or fall upon, beset, rush in, press upon  
 irrugére, to roar out  
 irrúmpere, -rupi, -ruptus, to extirpate  
 is, ea, id, *demons. pron.*, that; he, she, etc.  
 Isáacus, -i, *m.*, Isaac  
 Isáuricus, -i, *m.*, Isaurian  
 Iscarióta, -ae, *m.*, Iscariot  
 Iscariótes, -is, *m.*, Iscariot  
 Isidórus, -i, *m.*, Isidore  
 Islébiun, -ii, *n.*, Eisleben  
 Ismaelítac, -arum, *m. pl.*, Ismaelites  
 Ismahelíta, -ae, *m.*, Ismaelite  
 Israëlíta, -ae, *m.*, Israelite  
 Israelíticus, -a, -um, Israelitish  
 iste, -a, -ud, *demons. pron.*, this, that  
 istinc, *adv.*, hence, from the place  
 ita, *adv.*, so, even  
 Ítali, -orum, *m. pl.*, Italians  
 Itália, -ae, *f.*, Italy  
 itaque, *adv.*, therefore  
 item, *adv.*, likewise  
 iter, itíneris, *n.*, journey; departure; way, wayside  
 iterátio, -onis, *f.*, renewal, repetition  
 íterum, *adv.*, again  
 ítidem, *adv.*, in like manner, likewise  
 Ituraéa, -ae, *f.*, Iturea

## J

jacére, to lie, sleep  
 jácere, jeci, jactus, (io), to throw, cast  
 Jacobus, -i, *m.*, James  
 Jacobus de Flisco, -i, *m.*, Jacopo Fieschi  
 jactántia, -ae, *f.*, vainglory  
 jactáre, to cast  
 jactúra, -ae, *f.*, loss  
 jactus, -us, *m.*, cast, throw

- jāculum*, -i, *n.*, dart, arrow  
*jam*, *adv.*, now; (with negative) no longer, no more  
*jamdūdum*, *adv.*, now for a long time  
*jamjam*, *adv.*, on the point of  
*jamprīdem*, *adv.*, now for a long time  
*jānitor*, -oris, *m.*, gate keeper, porter  
*jānuā*, -ae, *f.*, door, gate  
*Januārius*, -ii, *m.*, January; Januarius  
*Japon*, -is, *m.*, Japan  
*Japōnia*, -ae, *f.*, Japan  
*Jarlāthus*, -i, *m.*, Jarlath  
*jaspis*, -idis, *f.*, jasper  
*Jebusaēus*, -i, *m.*, Jesusite  
*jecur*, *jécoris* (*jecinōris*), *n.*, liver  
*jejunāre*, to fast, abstain  
*jejúniūm*, -ii, *n.*, fast, fasting  
*jejúnus*, -a, -um, *fasting*  
*Jerosólýma*, -orum, *n. pl.*, Jerusalem  
*Jerosólými*, -orum, *m. pl.*, people of Jerusalem  
*Jerosolýmítānus*, -a, -um, of Jerusalem  
*Jesus Nave*, Josue the son of Nun  
*Jezielites*, -is, *f.*, Jezrahelites  
*Joānna*, -ae, *f.*, Johanna, Jane, Joan  
*Joānnes*, -is, *m.*, John  
*Joānnes Baptista*, -is, -ae, *m.*, John the Baptist  
*Joānnes Cāntius*, -is, -ii, *m.*, John Cantius  
*Jobus*, -i, *m.*, Job  
*jocāri*, *dep.*, to jest  
*jod*, the tenth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to English *y*  
*Jojada*, -ae, *m.*, Joiada  
*Jónathas*, -ae, *m.*, Jonathan  
*Jordanis*, -is, *m.*, the Jordan  
*Jósaphat* (us) *Kuncewítius*, -i, -ii, *m.*, Jehoshaphat Kuncewicz  
*Jovis*, -is, *m.*, Jove  
*jubar*, -aris, *n.*, a beaming light, radiance  
*jubére*, *jussi*, *jussus*, to command; ask  
*jubilaēus*, -i, *m.*, jubilee  
*jubilāre*, to shout, sing joyfully  
*jubilātio*, -onis, *f.*, jubilee; gladness; festival cry  
*júbilum*, -i, *n.*, jubilee, joy  
*jucundāre*, to shout for joy  
*jucundāri*, *dep.*, to have joy, be glad  
*jucúnde*, merrily  
*jucúnditas*, -atis, *f.*, cheerfulness, joy  
*jucúndus*, -a, -um, pleasing  
*Judaēa*, -ae, *f.*, Judea  
*Judaēus*, -i, *m.*, Jew  
*Judáicus*, -a, -um, Jewish  
*judaizāre*, to Judaize, convert to the doctrines or methods of the Jews  
*Judas*, -ae, *m.*, Judas; Jude  
*judex*, -icis, *m.*, judge  
*judicāre*, to judge  
*judiciālis*, -e, judicial  
*judiciūm*, -ii, *n.*, judgment, matter of judgment  
*jugālis*, -e, pertaining to a yoke; connecting  
*jugāre*, to bind together; marry, espouse  
*júgerum*, -i, *n.*, acre  
*jugis*, -e, perpetual, continual  
*júgiter*, *adv.*, ever, forever, always  
*jugulāre*, to cut the throat, slay  
*júgulum*, -i, *n.*, throat  
*jugum*, -i, *n.*, yoke, bond, fetter  
*Juliāna de Falconnērii*, -ae, *f.*, Juliana Falconieri  
*Juliānus*, -i, *m.*, Julian  
*Juliānus Adúrnu*, -i, -i, *m.*, Giuliano Adorno  
*Juliānus Apóstata*, -i, -ae, *m.*, Julian the Apostate  
*Július*, -ii, *m.*, July  
*jumentum*, -i, *n.*, beast; (pl.) cattle  
*junctúra*, -ae, *f.*, joint  
*juncus*, -i, *m.*, bulrush  
*júngere*, *junxi*, *junctus*, to join, bind, unite

júnior, -oris, young; younger  
 juníperus, -i, *f.*, juniper tree  
 Június, -ii, *m.*, June; Junius  
 juraméntum, -i, *n.*, oath  
 juráre, to swear  
 jurgáre, to contend in words, quarrel  
 jurgári, *dep.*, to quarrel  
 júrgum, -ii, *n.*, quarrel  
 jurisprudéntia, -ae, *f.*, law  
 jus, juris, *n.*, law  
 jusjurándum, jurisjurándi, *n.*, oath  
 jussio, -onis, *f.*, command  
 jussus, *m.*, used only in ablative, jussu,  
 by command  
 juste, righteously, justly  
 justificáre, to justify; do justice to  
 justificátio, -onis, *f.*, statute, ordi-  
 nance; justification  
 Justiniáni, -orum, *m. pl.*, Giustiniani  
 Justiniánus, -i, *m.*, Justinian  
 Justínus, -i, *m.*, Justin; Justinian  
 justítia, -ae, *f.*, justice  
 justus, -a, -um, right, righteous, just  
 juvámen, -inis, *n.*, help  
 Juvenális, -is, *m.*, Juvenal  
 júvencula, -ae, *f.*, maiden  
 júvenculus, -i, *m.*, bullock  
 juvenescere, -ui, to be young, to  
 reach the age of youth  
 júvenis, -e, young; (as a noun) young  
 man  
 júvénta, -ae, *f.*, youth  
 júvéntus, -utis, *f.*, youth  
 juxta, *prep.* and *adv.*, near, close to,  
 by, at hand; according to

## K

Kaléndae, -arum, *f. pl.*, calends, the  
 first day of the Roman month  
 Kalendárius, -ii, *m.*, calendar  
 Kerriénsis, -e, of Kerry  
 Killéedy, Killadysert

Kiowénsis, -e, of Kieff  
 Kyrie (Greek), Lord

## L

labáre, to totter, waver  
 labáscere, to begin to fall, totter  
 labes, -is, *f.*, stain, blemish  
 labi, lapsus sum, *dep. 3*, to fall  
 lábium, -ii, *n.*, lip  
 labor, -oris, *m.*, labor; mischief  
 laboráre, to labor  
 laboriósus, -a, -um, toilsome, laborious  
 labrúsca, -ae, *f.*, wild grape  
 labrum, -i, *n.*, lip  
 lac, lactis, *n.*, milk  
 lacer, -a, -um, torn, ragged  
 laceráre, to rend  
 lácrima, -ae, *f.*, tear  
 lacrimábilis, -e, woeful, worthy of  
 tears  
 lacrimári, *dep.*, to weep  
 lacrimósus, -a, -um, tearful  
 lactáre, to give suck  
 lactens, -entis, *f.*, suckling  
 lactúca, -ae, lettuce  
 lacus, -us, *m.*, lake; pit; den  
 laédere, laesi, laesus, to do harm, in-  
 jure  
 laetabúndus, -a, -um, full of joy  
 laetári, *dep.*, to rejoice  
 laetificáre, to give joy  
 laetítia, -ae, *f.*, gladness  
 laetus, -a, -um, joyful  
 laeva, -ae, *f.*, the left; left hand; **ad**  
 laevam, on the left hand or arm  
 laevigátus, -a, -um, smooth, polished  
 lagéna, -ae, *f.*, pitcher  
 Lagénia, -ae, *f.*, Leinster  
 laicális, -e, lay  
 láicus, -a, -um, lay, common  
 láicus, -i, *m.*, layman  
 Lalóvescum, -i, *n.*, La Louvesc



- lámberē, lambi, lámbitus**, to lick  
**lamed**, the twelfth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to English *l*  
**lamentáre**, to lament  
**lamentári, dep.**, to lament  
**lamentátio, -onis, f.**, lamentation  
**laméntum, -i, n.**, wailing, lamentation  
**lámia, -ae, f.**, sea monster  
**lámína, -ae, f.**, metal plate  
**lampas, -adis, f.**, lamp, torch; flame  
**Lampértus, -i, m.**, Lampert  
**lana, -ae, f.**, wool  
**láncea, -ae, f.**, spear, lance  
**Lancellótus, -i, m.**, Lancelot  
**lancináre**, to mangle  
**lancis, -is, f.**, event; *aequa lance*, likewise  
**Landúlfus, -i, m.**, Landulf  
**Landúnium, -i, n.**, Laon  
**láneus, -a, -um**, woolen  
**Lanfráncus, -i, m.**, Lanfranc  
**languens, -entis**, sick  
**languére, -ui**, to be faint or weak, swoon  
**lánguidus, -a, -um**, infirm  
**lánguor, -oris, m.**, disease, sickness, infirmity  
**laniáre**, to mangle  
**laniátus, m.**, mangling  
**lantérna, -ae, f.**, lantern  
**lantgrávius, -ii, m.**, landgrave  
**lapidáre**, to stone  
**lapídeus, -a, -um**, of stone; stony  
**lapíllus, -i, m.**, gem  
**lapis, -idis, m.**, stone  
**lapsus, -us, m.**, slipping, falling  
**láuquear, -aris, n.**, panel, rafter, ceiling  
**láuqueus, -i, m.**, snare, halter  
**lárgiens, -entis**, bountiful  
**lárgrí, dep. q.**, to grant, bestow  
**lárgitas, -atis, f.**, bounty  
**lárgítor, -oris, m.**, one who grants  
**lárgius, adv.**, more abundantly  
**largus, -a, -um**, abundant  
**larva, -ae, f.**, ghost  
**lassitúdo, -inis, f.**, weariness  
**lassus, -a, -um**, faint, tired  
**látebra, -ae, f.**, concealment, subterfuge  
**laténte, secretly**  
**later, -eris, m.**, brick  
**Lateranénsis, -e**, Lateran, of the Lateran  
**latére, -ui**, to be hidden  
**latérna, -ae, f.**, lantern  
**latex, -icis, m.**, liquid; water  
**latibulum, -i, n.**, hiding place, covert  
**latíne, adv.**, in Latin  
**latínus, -a, -um, Latin**  
**latítáre**, to lie hidden, be concealed  
**latitúdo, -inis, f.**, breadth; a large place; in *latitúdine*, at liberty  
**latráre**, to bark  
**latría, -ae, f.**, worship  
**latro, -onis, m.**, thief, robber  
**latrúnculus, -i, m.**, robber, bandit; rover  
**latus, -eris, n.**, side  
**latus, -a, -um**, broad  
**laudábilis, -e**, praiseworthy, laudable; glorious  
**laudábiliter**, laudably  
**laudáre**, to praise  
**laudátio, -onis, f.**, praise  
**laudátor, -oris, m.**, one who praises  
**laudes, -um, f. pl.**, lauds  
**laura, -ae, f.**, a kind of monastery  
**láurea, -ae, f.**, laurel; laurel crown; triumph, victory  
**laureátus, -a, -um**, crowned with laurel  
**Lauréntius, -ii, m.**, Lawrence  
**Lauretánus, -a, -um**, of Loreto  
**laus, laudis, f.**, praise  
**lavácrum, -i, n.**, laver; bath; water of baptism

- laváre (lávere), lavi, lautus (lotus), to wash  
 Lavicánus, -a, -um, Lavican  
 laxáre, to let down, relax  
 laxus, -a, -um, loose  
 leaéna, -ae, *f.*, lioness  
 lebes, -etis, *m.*, wash basin; kettle  
 léctio, -onis, *f.*, reading; lesson  
 lector, -oris, *m.*, reader, lector  
 léctulus, -i, *m.*, small bed; couch  
 lectus, -a, -um, choice, eminent  
 lectus, -i, *m.*, bed  
 lécythus, -i, *m.*, flask  
 legális, -e, legal  
 legátio, -onis, *f.*, duty of a legate; legation, embassy  
 legátus, -i, *m.*, legate, ambassador  
 légere, legi, lectus, to read  
 légifer, -i, *m.*, lawgiver  
 légio, -onis, *f.*, band; legion  
 Légio, -onis, *f.*, Leon  
 legislátor, -oris, *m.*, lawgiver; master  
 legisperítus, -i, *m.*, lawyer  
 legítume, lawfully  
 legitimum, -i, *n.*, ordinance  
 legítimus, -a, -um, legal  
 legúmen, -inis, *n.*, pulse; bean; vegetable  
 leníre, to mitigate, relieve  
 lenis, -e, smooth; mild, easy  
 lénitas, -atis, *f.*, meekness  
 léniter, gently  
 lentéscere, to relax  
 lentícula, -ae, *f.*, little bottle; vial  
 leo, -onis, *m.*, lion  
 Leo, -onis, *m.*, Leo  
 Leonárdus, -i, *m.*, Leonard  
 leopárdus, -i, *m.*, leopard  
 Leópolis, -is, *f.*, Lemberg  
 Leovigíldus, -i, *m.*, Leovigild  
 lepra, -ae, *f.*, leprosy  
 leprósus, -a, -um, leprous  
 leprósus, -i, *m.*, leper  
 Leptínensis, -e, of Lessines  
 lethális, -e, lethal  
 levámen, -inis, *n.*, consolation, alleviation  
 levaméntum, -i, *n.*, mitigation, rest  
 leváre, to lift up, raise  
 leúnculus, -i, *m.*, young lion  
 levigáre, to polish, furbish  
 levis, -e, light  
 Levíta, -ae, *m.*, Levite  
 lex, legis, *f.*, law; legem fácere, to keep the law  
 libámen, -inis, *n.*, libation, drink offering  
 líbanus, -i, *m.*, frankincense  
 libáre, to celebrate a religious rite  
 libátio, -onis, *f.*, libation; partaking  
 libatórium, -ii, *n.*, pouring vessel  
 libéllus, -i, *m.*, a writing, a bill  
 libénter, gladly  
 liber, -a, -um, free; fearless; abandoned  
 Liber, -i, *m.*, Bacchus  
 liber, -bri, *m.*, book  
 líbera, -ae, *f.*, free woman  
 liberáre, to free, deliver  
 liberátor, -oris, *m.*, deliverer  
 líbere, *adv.*, freely; steadfastly  
 líberi, -orum, *m. pl.*, children  
 Liberiánus, -a, -um, Liberian  
 libértas, -atis, *f.*, freedom  
 Libertíni, -orum, *m. pl.*, Libertines  
 libet (lubet), -buit, -bitum est, *impers.*, it pleases, is agreeable  
 libído, -inis, *f.*, lust  
 libra, -ae, *f.*, pound  
 libráre, to weigh, poise, balance  
 libráriu, -ii, *m.*, copyist  
 libum, -i, *n.*, a cake offered to the gods; an offering  
 licet, lícuit, lícítum est, *impers.*, it is allowed or lawful; one may or can; licet, although  
 liciatórium, -ii, *n.*, beam  
 Liciniánus, -a, -um, Licinian

- ligáre**, to bind  
**lígneus**, -a, -um, wooden  
**lignum**, -i, *n.*, wood; stick; staff; tree  
**ligo**, -onis, *m.*, spade  
**Ligórius**, -ii, *m.*, Liguori  
**Ligúria**, -ae, *f.*, Liguria; Piedmont  
**liliátus**, -a, -um, decorated with lilies;  
 lily white  
**lílium**, -ii, *n.*, lily  
**Limánus**, -a, -um, of Lima  
**linátus**, -a, -um, polished, furbished  
**limen**, -inis, *n.*, threshold  
**Limericénsis**, -e, of Limerick  
**limes**, -itis, *m.*, boundary, limit  
**limpidíssimus**, -a, -um, very smooth  
**limus**, -i, *m.*, mud, mire, dirt  
**línea**, -ae, *f.*, line  
**lineaméntum**, -i, *n.*, feature, delineation  
**línere**, *livi* and *levi*, **litus**, (io), to  
 anoint  
**líneus**, -a, -um, of flax; linen  
**língere**, *linxi*, **linctus**, to lick  
**língua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language  
**línguósus**, -a, -um, evil tongued  
**líñre**, to smear, besmear, spread;  
 anoint  
**linóstemus**, -a, -um, linen  
**línquere**, *liqui*, to leave  
**lin téamen**, -inis, *n.*, linen cloth  
**línteum**, -i, *n.*, towel; linen cloth  
**linum**, -i, *n.*, flax  
**Liparítánus**, -a, -um, of Lipari  
**liquáre**, to melt  
**liquefácere**, -feci, -factus, (io), to melt  
**liquefactívus**, -a, -um, melting  
**liquefactus**, -a, -um, melted  
**líquere**, *líqui* or *lícui*, to be evident  
**liquescere**, *lícui*, to melt  
**liquor**, -oris, *m.*, liquid  
**lis**, *litis*, *f.*, debate, contention  
**litania**, -ae, *f.*, litany  
**litáre**, to offer  
**Lithuáni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Lithuanians  
**litigáre**, to quarrel, strive, wrangle  
**litigiósus**, -a, -um, quarrelsome  
**líttera**, -ae, *f.*, letter of the alphabet,  
**litterae**, *pl.*, a letter; bill  
**litteratúra**, -ae, *f.*, learning; writing  
**littus**, -oris, *n.*, shore  
**litúra**, -ae, *f.*, daubing  
**liturgía**, -ae, *f.*, liturgy  
**lívidus**, -a, -um, envious  
**livor**, -oris, *m.*, bruise  
**locáre**, to place; let out, rent, hire out  
**lóculus**, -i, *m.*, coffin, bier; tomb; purse  
**lócuples**, -etis, rich  
**locupletáre**, to enrich  
**locus**, -i, *m.* (*pl. loca*, -orum, *n.*),  
 place; position, station; room  
**locústa**, -ae, *f.*, locust  
**locútio**, -onis, *f.*, word  
**Londinénsis**, -e, of London  
**Londínium**, -ii, *n.*, London  
**longaévus**, -a, -um, long-lived  
**longánimis**, -e, longsuffering  
**longanimitas**, -atis, *f.*, longsuffering  
**longe**, *adv.*, afar; **a longe**, afar off;  
**longe latéque**, far and wide  
**longínquus**, -a, -um, far, distant, afar  
 off; **de longínquo**, from afar  
**longitúdo**, -inis, *f.*, length  
**longitúrnis**, -atis, *f.*, length  
**Longobárdi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Lombards  
**loquéla**, -ae, *f.*, saying; speech  
**loqui**, **locútus sum**, *dep. 3*, to speak,  
 converse; profess  
**loríca**, -ae, *f.*, coat of mail; breastplate  
**lorum**, -i, *n.*, leather strap, thong;  
 scourge, whip  
**Lotharíngia**, -ae, *f.*, Lorraine  
**lotus**, -a, -um, washed  
**lúbicum**, -i, *n.*, slipperiness  
**lúbicus**, -a, -um, slippery; dangerous,  
 impure  
**Lucas**, -ae, *m.*, Luke  
**lucére**, -luxi, to shine  
**lucérna**, -ae, *f.*, candle, lamp

- lucēscere, luxi, to begin to dawn  
 Lúcia, -ae, *f.*, Lucy  
 lúcidus, -a, -um, bright  
 lúcifer, -i, *m.*, day star, morning star  
 Lucilla, -ae, *f.*, Lucille  
 lucrári, *dep.*, to gain  
 lucrátivus, -a, -um, profitable  
 lucrífacere, -feci, -factus, (*io*), to win  
 lucrum, -i, *n.*, lucre; gain  
 luctámen, -inis, *n.*, struggling, wrestling  
 luctátor, -oris, *m.*, wrestler  
 luctuósus, -a, -um, sorrowful  
 luctus, -us, *m.*, mourning  
 lucubrátio, -onis, *f.*, laborious study  
 luculénte, admirably  
 luculénter, excellently  
 luculéntus, -a, -um, bright  
 lucus, -i, *m.*, grove; sacred grove  
 lúdere, lusi, lusus, to play  
 ludíbrium, -ii, *n.*, mockery, scorn  
 Ludóvicus, -i, *m.*, Louis  
 Ludúlpus, -i, *m.*, Ludolph  
 ludus, -i, *m.*, game  
 lues, -is, *f.*, disease  
 Lugdunénsis, -e, of Lyons  
 Lugdúnnum, -i, *n.*, Lyons  
 lugére, luxi, luctus, to bewail, lament  
 Luitprándus, -i, *m.*, Luitprand  
 lumbus, -i, *m.*; (*pl.*) loins  
 lumen, -inis, *n.*, light  
 Lumilla, -ae, *f.*, Ludmilla  
 lumináre, -aris, *n.*, light  
 luna, -ae, *f.*, moon  
 lunáticus, -i, *m.*, lunatic  
 lupánar, -aris, *n.*, brothel  
 lupínus, -i, *m.*, lupine  
 lupínus, -a, -um, wolfish  
 lupus, -i, *m.*, wolf  
 Lusitánia, -ae, *f.*, Portugal  
 lustrális, -e, holy, blessed  
 lustráre, to purify  
 lustrum, -i, *n.*, a period of five years, a luster  
 lusus, -us, *m.*, game  
 Lutétia Parisiórum, -ae, *f.*, Paris  
 lúteus, -a, -um, of clay  
 Lútherus, -i, *m.*, Luther  
 lutum, -i, *n.*, clay, dirt  
 lux, lucis, *f.*, light, dawn  
 luxúria, -ae, *f.*, dissipation, lust; luxury  
 luxuriári, *dep.*, to live riotously  
 luxurióse, riotously  
 luxus, -us, *m.*, lust  
 lychnus, -i, *m.*, lamp  
 lymphá, -ae, *f.*, water  
 lyra, -ae, *f.*, lute  
 Lystrae, -arum, *f. pl.*, Lystra

## M

- Mácedo, -onis, *m.*, Macedonian  
 Macedónia, -ae, *f.*, Macedonia  
 maceráre, to afflict, mortify  
 macerátio, -onis, *f.*, mortification  
 macéria, -ae, *f.*, wall; fence  
 Machabáci, -orum, *m. pl.*, Machabees  
 Machaéa, -ae, *m.*, Mahew  
 machaína, -ae, *f.*, sword  
 máchina, -ae, *f.*, machine; device; fabric, frame  
 mácies, -ei, *f.*, thinness, emaciation  
 maciléntus, -a, -um, thin, lean  
 mactáre, to offer as a sacrifice, kill; punish  
 mácula, -ae, *f.*, stain, blemish  
 maculáre, to accuse  
 maculósus, -a, -um, spotted  
 madéfacere, -feci, -factus, (*io*), to make wet, soak  
 madére, mádui, to drink too much, be drunk  
 madéscere, mádui, to become wet  
 Madianíti, -orum, *m. pl.*, Madianites  
 maerére, to be sorrowful  
 maestus, -ae, -um, sad  
 Magdeburgénsis, -e, of Magdeburg  
 Magdeburgus, -i, *m.*, Magdeburg

- Magdaléna (Magdaléne)**, -ae, *f.*, Magdalen
- mágicus**, -a, -um, magic
- magis**, *adv.*, rather; plus magis, far more
- magíster**, -tri, *m.*, master; teacher
- magistérium**, -ii, *n.*, office, power
- magistra**, -ae, *f.*, teacher; mistress
- magistrátus**, -us, *m.*, magistrate
- magnália**, -ium, *n. pl.*, wonderful works, wonders
- magnátus**, -i, *m.*, great man
- magnes**, -etis, *m.*, magnet, loadstone
- Magnesiáni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Magnesians
- magnificáre**, to enlarge, magnify; glorify, exalt
- magnífice**, nobly, generously
- magnificéntia**, -ae, *f.*, magnificence, majesty
- magníficus**, -a, -um, glorious
- magníloquus**, -a, -um, boastful
- magnitúdo**, -inis, *f.*, greatness
- magnóperere**, *adv.*, greatly
- magnus**, -a, -um, great; magna, *n. pl.*, great things
- magus**, -i, *m.*, wise or learned man; magician, sorcerer
- Mahometáni (Mahumetáni)** -orum, *m. pl.*, Mohammedans
- májestas**, -atis, *f.*, majesty
- major**, majus, greater; elder
- Majórga**, -ae, *f.*, Mayorga
- Majus**, -i, *m.*, May
- Málaca**, -ae, *f.*, Malacca
- malágma**, -atis, *n.*, plaster
- Malcólmus**, -i, *m.*, Malcolm
- male**, *adv.*, badly, ill; grievously
- maledícere**, -dixi, -dictus, to speak evil, revile, curse
- maledíctio**, -onis, *f.*, curse
- maledíctum**, -i, *n.*, abusive language, railing
- malédicus**, -a, -um, evil speaking
- malédicus**, -i, *m.*, railer
- malefáctor**, -oris, *m.*, malefactor, evildoer
- malévolus**, -a, -um, malicious
- malignans**, -antis, malicious, wicked
- malignáre** (-ari), to do wickedly
- malignitas**, -atis, *f.*, evil, malice
- malignus**, -a, -um, malignant; (*as a noun*), evildoer
- malítia**, -ae, *f.*, malice; naughtiness; evil
- malitióse**, maliciously
- malle**, málui, to prefer
- malleátor**, -oris, *m.*, hammerer
- málleus**, -i, *m.*, hammer, mallet
- malum**, -i, *n.*, evil
- malum**, -i, *n.*, apple, — **púnicum**, pomegranate
- malus**, -a, -um, bad, evil, wicked
- Mamertínus**, -a, -um, Mamertine
- mamílla**, -ae, *f.*, breast, pap
- mamma**, -ae, *f.*, breast, pap
- mammóna**, -ae, *m.*, mammon
- manáre**, to flow, pour forth
- mancipáre**, to deliver up
- mancípium**, -ii, *n.*, slave
- mandáre**, to command, give charge over
- mándere**, mandí, mansus, to eat
- mandátum**, -i, *n.*, command, commandment
- mandragóra**, -ae, *f.*, mandrake
- manducáre**, to eat
- manducátio**, -onis, *f.*, eating
- mane**, *adv.*, in the morning, early morning; **primo** —, early in the morning; **sumo** —, **valde** —, very early in the morning
- manére**, mansi, mansus, to remain, abide, tarry, wait
- Manéttus Antellénsis**, -i, -is, *m.*, Manetto Antalli
- mánica**, -ae, *f.*, manicle
- Manichaéi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Manichaeans

- manifestáre**, to make manifest, discover, reveal  
**manifestátio**, -onis, *f.*, manifestation  
**manifesté**, openly, plainly, manifestly  
**manípulus**, -i, *m.*, handful; sheaf; maniple  
**manna**, -ae, *f.*, manna  
**mánsio**, -onis, *f.*, abode, dwelling  
**mansiúncula**, -ae, *f.*, little room  
**mansuetúdo**, -inis, *f.*, meekness  
**mansuétus**, -a, -um, meek, mild, humble  
**mansúrus**, -a, -um, enduring  
**mantéllum**, -i, *n.*, cloak  
**manufáctus**, -a, -um, made with hands  
**manus**, us, *f.*, hand; power  
**marcére**, to wither  
**marcéscere**, to fade away, to wither, to decay  
**márchio**, -onis, *m.*, marquis  
**márcidus**, -a, -um, withered; delicate  
**Márcio**, -onis, *f.*, Marcion  
**Marcus**, -i, *m.*, Mark  
**Mardocháeus**, -i, *m.*, Mardochai  
**mare**, maris, *n.*, sea  
**margaríta**, -ae, *f.*, pearl  
**Margaríta**, -ae, *f.*, Margaret  
**María**, -ae, *f.*, Mary  
**Mariális**, -e, of Mary  
**marínus**, -a, -um, sea, of the sea  
**maritális**, -e, of wedlock, marital  
**marítáre**, to marry, give in marriage  
**marítima**, -orum, *n. pl.*, seacoast  
**marítus**, -i, *m.*, husband  
**marmóreus**, -a, -um, marble, of marble  
**Maróchius** (**Marróchius**), -ii, *m.*, Morocco  
**marsúpium**, -ii, *n.*, purse  
**Martiális**, -is, *m.*, Martial  
**Martiniánus**, -i, *m.*, Martinian  
**Martínus**, -i, *m.*, Martin  
**Mártius**, -ii, *m.*, March  
**martyr**, -is, *m.*, martyr  
**martýrium**, -ii, *n.*, martyrdom  
**martyrológium**, -ii, *n.*, martyrology  
**masculínus**, -a, -um, masculine  
**másculus**, -a, -um, male  
**massa**, -ae, *f.*, lump  
**Massília**, -ae, *f.*, Marseilles  
**Massiliénsis**, -e, of Marseilles  
**mater**, -tris, *f.*, mother  
**materfamílias**, **matrisfamílias**, *f.*, mistress of the house  
**matéria**, -ae, *f.*, substance  
**matérnitas**, -atis, *f.*, maternity  
**materiáliter**, materially  
**matérnus**, -a, -um, maternal  
**matértera**, -ae, *f.*, mother's sister, maternal aunt  
**Matrítum**, -i, *n.*, Madrid  
**matróna**, -ae, *f.*, matron, lady  
**Matthaéus**, -i, *m.*, Matthew  
**matúre**, early  
**maturéscere**, -ui, to ripen  
**matúritas**, -atis, *f.*, fullness; early morning, dawn  
**matutínus**, -i, *n.*, matins; night watch  
**matutínus**, -a, -um, morning, early  
**Mauri**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Moors  
**Máuricus**, -a, -um, Moorish  
**Maurítius**, -ii, *m.*, Maurice  
**maxílla**, -ae, *f.*, jaw; cheek  
**máxime**, *adv.*, especially, chiefly  
**Maximiánus**, -i, *m.*, Maximian  
**Maximínus**, -i, *m.*, Maximin  
**maximóperere**, *adv.*, exceedingly  
**máximus**, -a, -um, greatest; very great; most grievous  
**medéla**, -ae, *f.*, healing remedy  
**medéri**, *dep. 2*, to heal  
**mediáre**, to be in the middle; **festo mediánte**, about the midst of the feast  
**mediátor**, -oris, *m.*, mediator  
**mediátrix**, -icis, *f.*, mediatrix  
**medicámen**, -inis, *n.*, medicine  
**medicátio**, -onis, *f.*, remedy, healing power

- medicína, -ae, f.**, remedy  
**medicinális, -e**, salutary, healing  
**médicus, -i, m.**, physician  
**medietas, -atis, f.**, the half  
**Mediolanénsis, -e**, of Milan, Milanese  
**Mediolánum, -i, n.**, Milan  
**meditáre (-ari)**, to meditate, devise  
**meditátio, -onis, f.**, thought, meditation  
**médium, -ii, n.**, the midst, middle  
**médius, -a, -um**, middle, midst  
**médius, adv.**, in the midst  
**medúlla, -ae, f.**, marrow  
**medullátus, -a, -um**, full of marrow  
**medúllitus, adv.**, in the very marrow  
**Medus, -i, m.**, Mede  
**meípsum, me + ipsum**, myself  
**mel, mellis, n.**, honey  
**Meldénsis, -e**, of Meaux  
**Meletíanus, -a, -um**, Meletian  
**mélior, -ius**, better; in **mélius**, for the better  
**mellífluus, -a, -um**, dripping with honey or sweetness  
**melos, -i, n.**, song, hymn, melody  
**melóta, -ae, f.**, sheepskin  
**melóte, -is, f.**, sheepskin coat  
**mem**, the thirteenth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to English *m*  
**membrána, -ae, f.**, parchment  
**membrátim, adv.**, limb from limb  
**membrum, -i, n.**, member, limb  
**memínisse, defect. verb.**, to be mindful  
**memor, -oris**, mindful  
**memoráre**, to recall, remember  
**memorári, dep.**, to remember  
**memorátus, -us, m.**, mention  
**memória, -ae, f.**, remembrance  
**memoriále, -is, n.**, memorial, remembrance  
**memoriális, -e**, memorial  
**mendácium, -ii, n.**, lie, lying, falsehood  
**mendax, -acis, false**  
**mendax, -acis, m.**, liar  
**mendicáre**, to beg  
**mendícitas, -atis, f.**, want, poverty  
**mendícus, -a, -um**, poor, needy  
**mendícus, -i, m.**, beggar  
**mens, mentis, f.**, mind; **mente capti**, lunatics  
**mensa, -ae, f.**, table; banquet; bank  
**mensis, -is, m.**, month  
**ensor, -oris, m.**, measurer  
**menstruáta, -ae, f.**, menstruous woman  
**menstruátus, -a, -um**, menstruous  
**ménstruus, -a, -um**, monthly  
**mensúra, -ae, f.**, measure  
**mensurábilis, -e**, measurable; short  
**mentio, -onis, f.**, mention  
**mentúri, dep. 4**, to lie  
**mentum, -i, n.**, chin; throat  
**merácus, -a, -um**, pure  
**mercári, dep. 4**, to buy  
**mercátúra, -ae, f.**, trade; **mercátúram**  
**fácere**, to engage in trade  
**mercátus, -us, m.**, traffic  
**mercenárius, -ii, m.**, hired servant; hireling  
**merces, -edis, f.**, reward, ransom; hire, pay, wages; **Virgo de Mercéde**, Our Lady of Ransom  
**Mercúrius, -ii, m.**, Mercury  
**meréri, dep. 2**, to be worthy, merit, deserve  
**méretrix, -icis, f.**, harlot  
**mérgere, mersi, mersus**, to sink  
**merídiánus, -a, -um**, noonday; of the south, southern  
**merídiés, -ei, m.**, midday, noon; south; **per merídiem**, at noon  
**meridionális, -e**, south  
**mérito, adv.**, deservedly  
**méritum, -i, n.**, merit  
**Merulánus, -a, -um**, Merulan  
**merum, -i, n.**, wine (unmixed with water)

**Messána, -ae, f.,** Messina  
**messis, -is, f.,** harvest  
**messor, -oris, m.,** reaper  
**meta, -ae, f.,** goal  
**metállum, -i, n.,** mine  
**metáphora, -ae, f.,** metaphor  
**métere, méssui, messus, to reap**  
**méthodus, -i, f.,** method  
**metúri, mensus sum, dep. 4, to measure**  
**metréta, -ae, f.,** a Greek liquid measure  
 containing about nine English gal-  
 lons  
**métricus, -a, -um, metrical**  
**metrópolis, -is, f.,** chief or capital city  
**metropolitánus, -a, -um, metropolitan**  
**metropolitánus, -i, m., metropolitan**  
**metropolítus, -i, m., metropolitan**  
**metrum, -i, n.,** meter, verse  
**metúere, -ui, -utus, to be afraid**  
**metus, -us, m.,** fear  
**Metýmna Campi, -ae, f.,** Medina del  
 Campo  
**meus, -a, -um, my, mine**  
**Mexicánus, -a, -um, Mexican**  
**mi, voc. of meus; fili mi, my son**  
**mica, -ae, f.,** crumb, morsel  
**micans, -antis, shining, radiant**  
**micáre, -ui, to shine**  
**Michaéas, -ae, m., Micheas**  
**migráre, to depart**  
**migrátio, -onis, f.,** departure  
**miles, -itis, m.,** soldier  
**mílitans, -antis, militant; as a noun,**  
 soldier  
**militáre, to serve as a soldier; to war**  
**mílítia, -ae, f.,** army; soldiers  
**mille, one thousand; pl., mília**  
**millésimus, -a, -um, thousandth**  
**milliárium, -ii, n.,** mile; milestone  
**míllies, a thousand times**  
**milvus, -i, m.,** stork  
**mináciter, adv.,** threateningly; by  
 threats  
**minae, -arum, f. pl.,** threats

**minax, -acis, threatening**  
**Míncius, -ii, m.,** Mincio  
**míngere, minxi, minctus, to urinate**  
**mínimus, -a, -um, smallest, least;**  
**mínimum, a very small thing**  
**miníster, -tri, m.,** minister; servant;  
 waiter; **primarius sacrórum —,**  
 chaplain general  
**ministérium, -ii, n.,** ministry  
**minístra, -ae, f.,** servant  
**ministráre, to serve, minister**  
**ministrátor, -oris, m.,** one who serves,  
 server  
**minítári, dep., to threaten**  
**minoráre, to decrease**  
**minor, minus, less, lesser; younger;**  
 least; **Fratres Minóres, Friars Minor**  
**minúere, -ui, -utus, to abate, diminish,**  
 make less  
**minus, adv.,** less; **si quo —, if not;**  
**paulo —, adv.,** almost  
**minúsculus, -a, -um, small**  
**minútum, -i, n.,** mite  
**mirábilis, -e, wonderful**  
**mirábiliter, wonderfully**  
**mirábilium, -ii, n.,** wonder  
**miráculum, -i, n.,** miracle  
**Miramolínus, -i, m.,** Miramolín  
**mirandus, -a, -um, extraordinary,**  
 strange  
**mirári, dep., to wonder; mira, behold**  
**mirificáre, to make wonderful, to**  
 show forth wonderfully  
**mirus, -a, -um, wonderful**  
**miscére, -cui, mixtus, to mix**  
**Mísénus, -ae, of Míseno**  
**miser, -a, -um, wretched**  
**miserári, dep., to have pity on**  
**miserátio, -onis, f.,** mercy  
**miserátor, -oris, merciful, compassion-**  
 ate; (*as a noun*) one who shows  
 mercy  
**miseréri, misértus sum, dep. 2, to have**  
 mercy on



- miséria**, -ae, *f.*, wretchedness; trouble  
**misericórdia**, -ae, *f.*, mercy, kindness  
**misericórditer**, mercifully  
**miséricors**, -ordis, merciful  
**missa**, -ae, *f.*, Mass  
**missale**, -is, *n.*, missal  
**míssio**, -onis, *f.*, mission  
**mistum** (mixtum), -i, *n.*, mixture  
**mitéscere**, to grow mild, subside  
**mitigáre**, to diminish, weaken, subdue,  
 mitigate  
**mitis**, -e, tender, mild  
**míttre**, misi, missus, to send; cast;  
 put, lay  
**mitra**, -ae, *f.*, bonnet; miter  
**mixtura**, -ae, *f.*, mixture  
**mixtus**, -a, -um, mingled  
**mna**, -ae, *f.*, a mina  
**Moabítidae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, women of  
 Moab  
**mobílitas**, -atis, *f.*, changeability, fickleness  
**moderári**, *dep.*, to govern, regulate  
**moderátor**, -oris, *m.*, moderator, director, guide, adviser; confessor  
**modéstia**, -ae, *f.*, modesty  
**módicum**, -i, *n.*, a little while  
**módicus**, -a, -um, little; **módicum**  
 quid, a little something  
**módius**, -ii, *m.*, bushel  
**modo**, *adv.*, now, even now, presently,  
 just  
**modulátio**, -onis, *f.*, singing  
**módulus**, -i, *m.*, melody, rhythm  
**modus**, -i, *m.*, way, manner, fashion;  
 measure; **supra modum**, above  
 measure  
**moecha**, -ae, *f.*, adulteress  
**moechári**, *dep.*, to commit adultery  
**moechus**, -i, *m.*, adulterer  
**moénia**, -ium, *n. pl.*, ramparts  
**moeror**, -oris, *m.*, grief, sorrow  
**moestítia**, -ae, *f.*, sorrow  
**moestitúdo**, -inís, *f.*, sadness  
**moestus**, -a, -um, afflicted, sorrowful  
**Mogrovéjus**, -a, -um, Mogrovejo  
**Mogúntia**, -ae, *f.*, Mainz  
**Moguntínus**, -a, -um, of Mainz  
**mola**, -ae, *f.*, jaw tooth, molar; —  
 asinária, millstone  
**moláris**, -is, *m.*, cheek tooth, molar  
**Moldáva**, -ae, *f.*, Moldau  
**molendínus**, -i, *n.*, mill  
**mólere**, -ui, -itus, to grind  
**moles**, -is, *f.*, mass, bulk  
**molestári**, *dep.*, to molest  
**moléstia**, -ae, *f.*, trouble; harm  
**moléstus**, -a, -um, grievous, trouble-  
 some  
**molímen**, -inís, *n.*, effort; working  
**Molíni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Moulins  
**molíri**, *dep. q.*, to plot; practice  
**molítio**, -onis, *f.*, demolition  
**mollíre**, to make smooth, soften  
**mollis**, -e, soft  
**mólliter**, gently  
**mollíties**, -ei, *f.*, softness  
**mollítus**, -a, -um, soft  
**momentáneus**, -a, -um, fleeting  
**moméntum**, -i, *n.*, movement, motion;  
 change; weight; importance; mo-  
 ment  
**mónacha**, -ae, *f.*, nun  
**mónachus**, -i, *m.*, monk  
**monastérium**, -ii, *n.*, monastery  
**monásticus**, -a, -um, monastic  
**monére**, to warn; teach  
**moníalís**, -is, *f.*, nun  
**moníle**, -is, *n.*, necklace; jewel  
**monítio**, -onis, *f.*, warning  
**mónitor**, -oris, *m.*, adviser  
**mónitum**, -i, *n.*, precept; admonition  
**mónitus**, -us, *m.*, warning  
**Monothelítæ**, -arum, *m. pl.*, Monothe-  
 lites  
**mons**, montis, *m.*, hill, mount, moun-  
 tain  
**Mons Major**, -tis, -is, *m.*, Montemor

- Mons Olivéti, -tis, *m.***, Mount of Olives  
**Mons Regális in Subalpínis, -tis, -is, *m.***  
 Mondovi  
**monstráre, to show; command**  
**montána, -orum, *n. pl.***, hill country  
**Montanístá, -ae, *m.***, Montanist  
**Montereyénsis, -e, of Monterey**  
**Montília, -ae, *f.***, Montilla  
**monuméntum, -i, *n.***, monument; sepulcher, grave  
**mora, -ae, *f.***, delay; hindrance  
**morális, -e, moral**  
**morári, *dep.***, to delay; abide  
**Morasthítés, -is, *m.***, Morasthite  
**Morávi, -orum, *m. pl.***, Moravians  
**mórbidus, -a, -um, diseased, depraved**  
**morbus, -i, *m.***, disease  
**mordax, -acis, stinging, piercing**  
**mordére, mórmordi, morsus, to bite; take hold upon**  
**mori, mórtuus sum, *dep. 3, (io)***, to die  
**morígerus, -a, -um, compliant, accommodating**  
**mors, mortis, *f.***, death  
**morsus, -us, *m.***, bite, eating  
**mortális, -e, mortal**  
**mortariolum, -i, *m.***, little mortar  
**mortícínium, -i, *n.***, corpse  
**mórtifer, -a, -um, deadly**  
**mortificáre, to mortify; kill**  
**mórtuus, -a, -um, dead; (as a noun) the dead**  
**morus, -i, *f.***, mulberry tree  
**mos, moris, *m.***, custom, manner; action  
**Mosáicus, -a, -um, Mosaic**  
**Moscóvia, -ae, *f.***, Moscow  
**motábilis, -e, moving**  
**mótió, -onis, *f.***, movement, motion  
**motus, -us, *m.***, motion, moving; emotion; tempest; tumult  
**movére, movi, motus, to move; affect, influence; quake**  
**movéri, motus sum, *dep. 2***, to move
- Móyses, -i, *m.***, Moses  
**muco, -onis, *m.***, sharp edge or point  
**muگیرe, to low**  
**mula, -ae, *f.***, mule  
**mulcés, mulsi, mulsus, to charm**  
**mulcta, -ae, *f.***, fine  
**mulgére, mulsi, mulctus, to milk (out); to pour out as milk**  
**muliebris, -e, feminine**  
**múlier, -eris, *f.***, woman  
**muliércula, -ae, *f.***, a disgraceful woman  
**mulsum, -i, *n.***, sweet wine  
**multifárium, *adv.***, at sundry times  
**multifórmis, -e, multiform, manifold**  
**multifórmiter, *adv.***, in divers ways  
**multiplex, -icis, manifold**  
**multiplicáre, to multiply**  
**multiplicátio, -onis, *f.***, multiplicity  
**multiplíciter, greatly; in many ways**  
**multisonus, -a, -um, many sounding, loud**  
**multitúdo, -inis, *f.***, multitude  
**multo, *adv.***, many  
**multum, *adv.***, much; long; very  
**multus, -a, -um, much, many; bountiful**  
**mulus, -i, *m.***, mule  
**mundánus, -a, -um, of the world**  
**mundáre, to cleanse**  
**mundítia, -ae, *f.***, cleanliness  
**mundus, -i, *m.***, world; ornament  
**mundus, -a, -um, clean, pure, clear**  
**muneráre, to bestow a gift upon**  
**munerári, *dep.***, to present  
**múnia, -ium, *n. pl.***, services, gifts  
**muníficens, -entis, munificent**  
**munímen, -inis, *n.***, protection  
**muníre, to defend, strengthen, preserve, fortify**  
**munítio, -onis, *f.***, fort  
**munitiúncula, -ae, *f.***, little fortress  
**munus, -eris, *n.***, gift, offering, bounty; office; bribe

munúsculum, -i, *n.*, little gift  
 murénula, -ae, *f.*, necklace  
 murmur, -uris, *n.*, murmuring  
 murmuráre, to murmur  
 murmurátio, -onis, *f.*, murmur  
 Múrtia, -ae, *f.*, Murcia  
 murus, -i, *m.*, wall  
 mus, m̄ris, *c.*, mouse  
 música, -ae, *f.*, music  
 música, -orum, *n. pl.*, music  
 músicus, -i, *m.*, musician  
 musívum, -i, *n.*, mosaic  
 mustum, -i, *n.*, new wine  
 mutábilitas, -atis, *f.*, change  
 mutáre, to change  
 mutátio, -onis, *f.*, change  
 mutatórium, -ii, *n.*, change  
 mutuári, *dep.*, to borrow  
 mútuo, *adv.*, mutually, to one another  
 mutus, -a, -um, dumb  
 mútuus, -a, -um, mutual  
 Myrénsis, -e, of Myra  
 myríca, -ae, *f.*, tamaric  
 myrrha, -ae, *f.*, myrrh  
 myrrháts, -a, -um, mingled with myrrh  
 myrrheus, -a, -um, of myrrh  
 myrtétum, -i, *n.*, a grove or thicket of  
 myrtle trees  
 mystérium, -ii, *n.*, mystery, secret  
 mýstice, *adv.*, mystically  
 mýsticus, -a, -um, of deep meaning,  
 mystical

## N

**N.** (nomen), name  
 Nabuthaéi, -orum, *m. pl.*, Nabuthians  
 nam, *conj.*, for  
 nancísci, nactus or nactus sum, *dep.*  
 3, to get, obtain  
 Narbonénsis, -e, of Narbonne  
 nardus, -i, *f.*, and nardum, -i, *n.*, spike-  
 nard; — spicátum, spikenard  
 nares, -ium, *f. pl.*, nostrils, nose

Narniénsis, -e, of Narni  
 narráre, to tell, relate  
 narrátor, -oris, *m.*, narrator  
 nasci, natus sum, *dep.* 3, to be born;  
 spring up  
 natális, -e, natal  
 natális, -is, *m.*, birthday  
 natalítium, -ii, *n.*, feast, birthday; **nata-**  
 lítia, *n. pl.*, birthday festival  
 natatória, -orum, *n. pl.*, pool  
 nátio, -onis, *f.*, nation; **natiónes**,  
 heathen  
 natívitas, -atis, *f.*, birth, nativity  
 natúra, -ae, *f.*, nature  
 naturáliter, *adv.*, according to nature  
 natus, -i, *m.*, son  
 natus, -us, *m.*, birth; **majóres natu**,  
 elders, ancients  
 naufrágium, -ii, *n.*, shipwreck  
 náufigragus, -a, -um, shipwrecked  
 naulum, -i, *n.*, fare  
 náusea, -ae, *f.*, nausea, squeamishness  
 nauseáre, to vomit  
 nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor, mariner  
 náuticus, -a, -um, of a ship, nautical  
 naváre, to do anything zealously  
 navícula, -ae, *f.*, boat  
 navigáre, to sail, be at sea  
 navígium, -ii, *n.*, ship  
 navis, -is, *f.*, ship  
 Naxus, -i, *f.*, Naxos  
 Náзара, -ae, *f.*, Nazareth  
 Nazaraéus, -i, *m.*, Nazarene, Nazarite  
 Nazarénus, -a, -um, of Nazareth, Naz-  
 arene  
 Nazarethánus, -a, -um, of Nazareth  
 Nazianzénus, -a, -um, of Nazianzus  
 ne, *adv.* and *conj.*, and not; neither,  
 nor; that not; lest  
 Neápolis, -is, *f.*, Naples  
 nébula, -ae, *f.*, cloud, mist  
 nec, neither; — non, and also, nor less  
 necáre, to kill, slay  
 necessário, *adv.*, necessarily

necessárius, -a, -um, needful  
 necesse, *adj.* and *n.*, necessary  
 necessitas, -atis, *f.*, necessity; distress  
 nectar, -aris, *n.*, nectar  
 néctere, néxui and nexi, *nexus*, to weave  
 nedum, *adv.*, to say nothing of, much less  
 nefárius, -a, -um, shameful  
 negáre, to deny  
 negátio, -onis, *f.*, denial  
 neglégere, -lexi, -lectus, to neglect  
 negligéntia, -ae, *f.*, negligence  
 negotiári, *dep.*, to trade  
 negotiátio, -onis, *f.*, traffic; merchandise  
 negotiátor, -oris, *m.*, merchant  
 negótium, -ii, *n.*, business; pestilence  
 nemo, -inis, *m.* and *f.*, no one, nobody  
 nemorénsis, -e, of a grove or wood  
 nempe, *adv.*, namely; truly  
 nemus, -oris, *n.*, wood, forest, grove  
 Neocaesárea, -ae, *f.*, Neocaesarea  
 Neocaesariénsis, -e, of Neocaesarea  
 neoménia, -ae, *f.*, new moon  
 neóphytus, -i, *m.*, novice, neophyte  
 Nepesínus, -a, -um, of Nepi  
 Nepomucénus, -a, -um, of Nepomuk  
 Nepómucum, -i, *n.*, Nepomuk  
 Nepotiánus, -i, *m.*, Nepotian  
 neptis, -is, *f.*, granddaughter  
 nepos, -otis, *m.* and *f.*, grandchild; nephew, niece, posterity  
 nequam, *indecl. adj.*, wicked, evil  
 nequándo, *conj.*, lest, lest at any time  
 nequáquam, *adv.*, no, not, by no means  
 neque, *adv.* and *conj.*, and not, neither, nor  
 néquior, -ius, more wicked  
 nequíre, -ivi and -ii, -tus, (eo), to be unable  
 nequíssimus, -i, *m.*, most wicked one  
 nequítia, -ae, *f.*, evil, malice

nerere, nevi, netus, to spin  
 Neritonénsis, -e, of Nardo  
 nervus, -i, *m.*, nerve, sinew  
 nescíre, not to know, not to take notice  
 Nestórius, -ii, *m.*, Nestor, Nestorius  
 neuter, -tra, -trum, neither  
 nex, necis, *f.*, violent death  
 nexus, -us, *m.*, bond  
 ní, *conj.*, if not, unless  
 Nicaénus, -a, -um, of Nicaea, Nicene  
 Nicoláus, -i, *m.*, Nicholas  
 Nicoláitae, -orum, *m. pl.*, Nicolaites  
 Nicomediénsis, -e, of Nicomedia  
 nidificáre, to build a nest  
 nidulus, -i, *m.*, little nest  
 nidus, -i, *m.*, nest  
 nígrita, -ae, *m.* and *f.*, negro  
 Nígrítæ, -arum, *m. pl.*, Negroes  
 nihil (nil), *n., indecl.*, nothing  
 nihilóminus, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless  
 níhilum, -i, *n.*, nothing  
 nimíetas, -atis, *f.*, excess, superfluity, redundancy  
 nímirum, *adv.*, certainly, truly  
 nímis, *adv.*, beyond measure, exceedingly; most diligently  
 nímius, -a, -um, excessive  
 Ninívita, -ae, *f.*, Ninive  
 Ninívitæ, -arum, *m. pl.*, Ninivites  
 Ninívíti, -orum, *m. pl.*, Ninivites  
 nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except, but  
 Nisibénus, -a, -um, of Nisibis  
 nisus, -us, *m.*, striving, strength  
 nitens, -entis, shining  
 niti, nisus or nixus sum, *dep. 3, to* strive, endeavor  
 nítidus, -a, -um, smooth  
 nítor, -oris, *m.*, brightness, splendor, shining light  
 nítrum, -i, *n.*, natural soda; niter  
 níveus, -a, -um, snowy white  
 nix, nivis, *f.*, snow  
 nóbilis, -e, noble

- nobilitáre**, to ennoble, make known  
 or illustrious, glorify  
**nocére**, to hurt  
**noctúrnum**, -a, -um, of the night, nocturnal  
**nodósus**, -a, -um, knotted  
**Nolánus**, -a, -um, of Nola  
**Noláscus**, -i, *m.*, Nolasco  
**nolle**, **nólui**, to be unwilling, refuse  
**nomen**, -inis, *n.*, name  
**Nomentánus**, -a, -um, of Nomentum  
**nomináre**, to name  
**nominátim**, *adv.*, by name  
**nominátus**, -a, -um, renowned  
**non**, *adv.*, not; no  
**nona**, -ae, *f.*, none  
**nonagenárius**, -a, -um, being ninety  
 years of age  
**nonagésimus**, -a, -um, ninetieth  
**nonagésimus quintus**, -a, -a, -um, -um,  
 ninety-fifth  
**nonagintánovem**, ninety-nine  
**nondum**, *adv.*, not yet  
**nongentésimus**, -a, -um, nine hundredth  
**Nonnátus**, -i, *m.*, Nonnatus (not born)  
**nonne**, *interrog. adv.*, introduces a  
 question to which an affirmative  
 answer is expected  
**nonnúllus**, -a, -um, some  
**nonnúmquam**, *adv.*, sometimes  
**nonus**, -a, -um, ninth  
**Norbértus**, -i, *m.*, Norbert  
**norma**, -ae, *f.*, rule, way of life  
**Normánna**, -ae, *f.*, Normandy  
**Northmánus**, -i, *m.*, Norman  
**nóscere**, **novi**, **notus**, to know (how)  
**nosocómium**, -ii, *n.*, hospital  
**nosse**, contraction of **novisse**, perfect  
 infinitive of **nóscere**  
**noster**, -tra, -trum, our, ours  
**nota**, -ae, *f.*, note, sign  
**notámen**, -inis, *n.*, sign, token  
**notáre**, to mark; denote; prepare  
**notárius**, -ii, *m.*, scribe  
**notítia**, -ae, *f.*, knowledge; news  
**notus**, -a, -um, known; **nota fácere**, to  
 show  
**notus**, -i, *m.*, friend, acquaintance  
**novácula**, -ae, *f.*, razor  
**Novatiánus**, -a, -um, Novatian  
**novélla**, -orum, *n. pl.*, young shoots  
**novéllus**, -a, -um, young, new  
**novem**, nine  
**novendiális**, -e, lasting nine days; nine  
 days' funeral rites  
**novíens**, nine times  
**novénnis**, at the age of nine  
**novíssime**, *adv.*, last of all  
**novíssimus**, -a, -um, latest, last; most  
 abject; **novíssima**, *n. pl.*, last state;  
**in novíssimo die**, at the last day  
**novíter**, *adv.*, newly  
**novítas**, -atis, *f.*, newness, freshness;  
 new thing, work, condition, or life  
**Novocómum**, -i, *n.*, Como  
**novus**, -a, -um, new  
**nox**, **noctis**, *f.*, night  
**noxa**, -ae, *f.*, crime, sin; harm, offense  
**noxialís**, -e, evil  
**nóxius**, -a, -um, harmful, hurtful; sin-  
 ful, guilty  
**núbere**, **nupsi**, **nuptus**, to marry  
**nubes**, -is, *f.*, cloud  
**núbila**, -orum, *n. pl.*, clouds  
**Nucéria Paganórum**, -ae, *f.*, Nocera  
 dei Pagani  
**núcleus**, -i, *m.*, kernel  
**nudáre**, to lay bare, uncover  
**núdipes**, -pedis, barefooted  
**núdítas**, -atis, *f.*, nakedness  
**nudiustértius**, *adv.*, day before yester-  
 day  
**nudus**, -a, -um, naked, bare  
**nugácitas**, -atis, *f.*, trifling, frivolity,  
 vanity  
**nullátenus**, *adv.*, not at all  
**núllibi**, *adv.*, nowhere, in no part

**nullus, -a, -um**, not any  
**num, interr. adv.**, used when a negative answer is expected  
**numélla, -ae, f.**, a kind of torture rack  
**numen, -inis, n.**, divine power  
**numeráre, to number**  
**numerósitas, -atis, f.**, number, numbers  
**númerus, -i, m.**, number  
**numísma, -atis, n.**, coin, medal  
**nummulárius, -ii, m.**, money changer  
**númmulus, -i, m.**, small coin; paltry sum  
**nummus, -i, m.**, coin  
**numquid, interrog. adv.**, used when a negative answer is expected  
**nun**, the fourteenth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to English *n*  
**nunc, adv.**, now  
**nuncupáre, to name, call**  
**nuncupátio, -onis, f.**, public offering or pronouncing of a vow  
**nuncupative, adv.**, in name, nominally  
**núndinae, -arum, f. pl.**, market day or place  
**nunquam (numquam), adv.**, never  
**núntia, -ae, f.**, herald  
**nuntiáre, to proclaim, announce, declare**  
**núntium, -ii, n.**, message, news  
**núntius, -ii, m.**, messenger, herald; nuncio  
**nuper, adv.**, recently, newly  
**núptiae, -arum, f. pl.**, marriage, marriage feast  
**nuptiális, -e**, wedding, nuptial  
**nuptus, -us, m.**, marriage, wedlock  
**nuptus, -i, m.**, married person, husband  
**nurus, -us, f.**, daughter-in-law  
 **nusquam, adv.**, nowhere; in nothing; on no occasion  
**nutans, -antis**, feeble, inconstant

**nutáre, to waver, fail; wander**  
**nutríre, to nourish, sustain**  
**nutrítius (nutrícius), -ii, m.**, foster father; guardian  
**nutrix, -icis, f.**, nurse  
**nutus, -us, m.**, nod; command; will  
**nux, nucis, f.**, nut  
**nyctícorax, -acis, m.**, a night raven  
**Nymphé, -es, f.**, Santa Ninfa  
**Nyssénus, -a, -um**, of Nyssa

## O

**ob, prep.**, for, on account of, in consideration of  
**obarmátus, -a, -um**, armed  
**obaudíre, to make or cause to be heard**  
**obcaecátio, -onis, f.**, blindness  
**obcaecátus, -a, -um**, blinded  
**obdormíre, to sleep, fall asleep**  
**obducere, -duxi, -ductus, to produce**  
**obductio, -onis, f.**, covering; cloudiness; doubt  
**obduráre, to harden**  
**obdurátio, -onis, f.**, stubbornness  
**obediéntia, -ae, f.**, obedience  
**obedíre, to obey**  
**obeditio, -onis, f.**, obedience  
**oberráre, to wander about**  
**obesse, -fui, to impede; be prejudicial to; injure**  
**obférre, -tuli, -latus, to put to**  
**obíre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to die**  
**óbitus, -us, m.**, death  
**objéctus, -us, m.**, obstacle  
**objícere, -jeci, -jectus, (io), to drive away; charge against, lay to the charge of**  
**objurgátio, -onis, f.**, injury  
**Oblátae, -arum, m. pl.**, Oblates  
**oblátio, -onis, f.**, oblation, offering  
**oblectaméntum, -i, n.**, pleasure, amusement, allurement  
**oblectátio, -onis, f.**, pleasure

- obligare**, to entangle  
**obligatio, -onis, f.**, binding, entangling  
**oblitteráre**, to blot out  
**oblívio, -onis, f.**, forgetfulness; oblivion  
**obliviósus, -a, -um**, forgetful  
**oblívisci, -litus sum, dep. 3**, to forget  
**oblóngus, -a, -um**, long  
**óbloqui, -locútus sum, dep. 3**, to revile  
**obmutéscere, -mútui**, to be dumb  
**obníxe, adv.**, earnestly  
**obnoxíus, -a, -um**, subject to  
**obnubiláre**, to darken  
**óbolus, -i, m.**, a coin worth about four cents  
**obrépere, -repsi, -reptus**, to crawl to; take by surprise  
**obrigéscere, -rígui**, to become stiff  
**obrízus, -a, -um**, finest (referring to gold)  
**obruére, -rui, -rutus**, to bury; drown; overwhelm  
**obscóenus, -a, -um**, foul  
**obscuráre**, to darken, obscure  
**obsúre, adv.**, obscurely  
**obsúrus, -a, -um**, dark; **in obsúrum**, into darkness  
**obsecráre**, to implore, beseech  
**obsecrátio, -onis, f.**, entreaty, supplication, prayer  
**obsecundáre**, to comply with  
**óbsequens, -entis**, dutiful  
**óbsequi, -secutus sum, dep. 3**, to obey  
**obséquium, -ii, n.**, homage, worship, service  
**obsérere, -sevi, -situs**, to sow  
**Obsérvans, -antis, m.**, Observant  
**observántia, -ae, f.**, observance; abstinence  
**observáre**, to observe; mark; watch  
**observátio, -onis, f.**, observance  
**obses, -idis, c.**, hostage  
**obsidére, -sedi, -sessus**, to beset, in-close  
**obsídió, -onis, f.**, siege  
**obsignáre**, to seal  
**obsistere, -stíti**, to resist  
**obsolétus, -a, -um**, worn out, cast off  
**obsónium, -ii, n.**, that which is eaten with bread; relish, sweetmeats  
**obstringere, -strinxi, -strictus**, to be indebted to  
**obstrúere, -struxi, -structes**, to close, stop up  
**obstrúsus, -a, -um**, covered, concealed  
**obstupefácare, -feci, -factus, (io)**, to astonish  
**obstupéscere, -stúpui and -stípui**, to be astonished; to be set on edge (of teeth)  
**obtemperáre**, to obey  
**obtenebrári, dep.**, to be obscured  
**obténtus, -us, m.**, pleading, prayer  
**obtestári, dep.**, to entreat, implore, supplicate; call to witness  
**obtinére, -tínui, -tentus**, to obtain; prevail  
**obtingere, -tigi**, to fall to the lot of  
**obtrectátio, -onis, f.**, detraction  
**obtúndere, -tudi, -tusus**, to make blunt, dull; weaken  
**obturáre**, to stop up, close  
**obumbráre**, to overshadow  
**obumbrátio, -onis, f.**, shadow; overshadowing  
**óbviam, adv.**, on the way  
**obviáre**, to meet, go forth to meet  
**óbvius, -a, -um**, in the way, meeting;  
**óbvia veníre**, to come to meet  
**obvólvere, -volvi, -volútus**, to wrap  
**occásio, -onis, f.**, occasion  
**occásus, -us, m.**, setting (of the sun)  
**occidens, -entis**, deathly  
**óccidens, -entis, m.**, the west; evening  
**occidentális, -e**, western  
**occidere, -cidi, -casus**, to set, go down (of the sun)  
**occidere, -cidi, -cisus**, to put to death

- occísio, -onis, f.**, slaughter  
**occísor, -oris, m.**, killer, murderer  
**occúbitus, -us, m.**, setting  
**occúlere, -cúlui, -cultus**, to conceal  
**occultáre**, to hide  
**occúlte, adv.**, privately  
**occúltum, -i, n.**, hidden thing; secret  
 or hidden sin  
**occúltus, -a, -um**, hidden  
**occumbere, -cúbui, -cúbitus**, to fall,  
 fall down  
**occupáre**, to occupy; reach unto; cum-  
 ber  
**occupátio, -onis, f.**, occupation  
**occurréns, -entis**, of the day, current  
**occurrere, -curri, -cursus**, to meet, go  
 to meet, come to; occur  
**occurrus, -us, m.**, meeting; course;  
 occurrence; **vádere in occúrsum**, to  
 go to meet  
**ócius, adv.**, quickly  
**ócrea, -ae, f.**, greave  
**octáva, -ae, f.**, octave  
**octávus, -a, -um**, eighth  
**octénnis**, at the age of eight  
**octingétesimus, -a, -um**, eight hun-  
 dredth  
**octo**, eight  
**octódecim**, eighteen  
**octogénarius, -ii, m.**, octogenarian  
**octogésimus quintus, -a, -a, -um, -um**,  
 eighty-fifth  
**octogínta**, eighty; four score  
**oculáris, -e**, ocular, eye  
**oculátus, -a, -um**, sharp-eyed; many-  
 eyed  
**óculus, -i, m.**, eye; **ex óculis eórum**,  
 from their sight  
**odíbilis, -e**, hateful  
**odísse, defect. verb.**, to hate  
**ódium, -ii, n.**, hatred  
**odor, -oris, m.**, smell, odor; savor  
**odoraméntum, -i, n.**, odor  
**odoráre**, to smell  
**odorári, dep.**, to smell  
**odorátus, -us, m.**, smell; smelling  
**oecuménicus, -a, -um**, ecumenical  
**offéndere, -fendi, -fensus**, to dash  
 against; stumble; offend  
**offendículum, -i, n.**, stumbling block  
**offénsio, -onis, f.**, offense  
**offérre, óbtuli, oblátus**, to offer  
**offertórium, -ii, n.**, offertory  
**offícium, -ii, n.**, favor, kindness; office;  
 duty; fulfillment  
**offúsus, -a, -um**, spread around, con-  
 cealing  
**ólea, -ae, f.**, olive tree  
**oleáster, -tri, m.**, wild olive tree  
**ólera, -orum, n. pl.**, herbs  
**óleum, -i, n.**, oil  
**olfácere, -feci, -factus, (io)**, to smell  
**olim, adv.**, formerly, once  
**olíva, -ae, f.**, olive tree  
**Olivétus, -i, m.**, Olivet  
**olla, -ae, f.**, pot; caldron; **ollas cár-**  
**niúm**, flesh pots  
**olus, -eris, n.**, herb, pot herb  
**omega, omega**, the last letter of the  
 Greek alphabet  
**omnímodus, -a, -um**, entire, complete  
**omnínó, adv.**, at all  
**omnipotens, -entis**, almighty, omnipo-  
 tent  
**omnipoténtia, -ae, f.**, might  
**omnis, -e**, all, every  
**omophórium (Greek)**, bishop's pal-  
 lium  
**ónager (ónagrus), -i, m.**, wild ass  
**onerátus, -a, -um**, burdened  
**ónerus, -a, -um**, burdensome  
**onus, -eris, n.**, burden  
**onustátus, -a, -um**, burdened, laden  
**onústus, -a, -um**, burdened, laden  
**operári, dep.**, to work; commit; trade  
**operárius, -ii, m.**, laborer  
**operátio, -onis, f.**, operation; work;  
 working; virtue



- operátor, -oris, m.,** worker  
**operatórius, -a, -um,** conducive to action, mightily working  
**operiméntum, -i, n.,** covering  
**operíre, -péruí, -pertus,** to cover; overwhelm  
**operósus, -a, -um,** hard, laborious  
**opertórium, -ii, n.,** cover, vesture  
**ópifex, -fícis, c.,** worker  
**opifícium, -ii, n.,** aid  
**opínio, -onis, f.,** rumor  
**opituláre (-ari),** to help  
**opitulátio, -onis, f.,** help, assistance  
**oportére, imperson. verb, 2,** to be proper, behoove; ought; must  
**oppétere, -ivi and -ii, -itus,** to meet, meet with, encounter  
**oppidánus, -i, m.,** townsman, citizen  
**oppídulum, -i, n.,** little town, village  
**óppidum, -i, n.,** town  
**oppignoráre, to pawn;** pledge; give  
**oppiláre, to close up**  
**opportúne, adv.,** conveniently; in season  
**opportúnitas, -atis, f.,** due time; want, need  
**opportúnus, -a, -um,** due  
**opprímere, -pressi, -pressus,** to oppress; lie upon; overlie; overwhelm  
**oppróbríum, -ii, n.,** reproach  
**ops, opis, f.,** help  
**optábilis, -e,** desirable, desired  
**optáre, to desire**  
**óptimas, -atis, m.,** chief, best or most important man, aristocrat  
**óptime, adv.,** very well  
**óptimus, -a, -um,** best, perfect  
**óptio, -onis, f.,** choice  
**opus, -eris, n.,** deed; work; wages; image; — **esse,** to need, be necessary; — **habére,** to have need  
**opúsculum, -i, n.,** little work  
**ora, -ac, f.,** coast; border  
**oráculum, -i, n.,** oracle, revelation  
**oráre, to pray, beseech**  
**orátio, -onis, f.,** prayer; discourse  
**oratórium, -ii, n.,** oratory  
**orátus, -us, m.,** entreaty  
**orbátus, -a, -um,** bereaved  
**orbis, -is, m.,** world, earth  
**orcus, -i, m.,** infernal regions  
**ordináre, to ordain; set in array or in order; set up**  
**ordinárium, -ii, n.,** ordinary  
**ordinátio, -onis, f.,** ordination; ordination  
**ordinátus, -a, -um,** orderly  
**ordíri, orsus sum, dep. 4,** to begin  
**ordo, -inis, m.,** order, rank  
**órganum, -i, n.,** organ  
**óriens, -entis, m.,** the orient; east; dawn  
**orientális, -e,** oriental, east  
**originális, -e,** original  
**origo, -inis, f.,** beginning, origin  
**Oríonas, -ae, m.,** Orion  
**Oríones, -um, m. pl.,** Orion  
**oríri, ortus sum, dep. 4,** to spring up, come forth, appear, rise  
**ornaméntum, -i, n.,** ornament  
**ornáre, to adorn, garnish**  
**ornátus, -us, m.,** adornment; furniture  
**órphanus, -i, m.,** orphan  
**orphanotrophíum, -ii, n.,** orphanage  
**orthodóxus, -a, -um,** orthodox  
**ortus, -us, m.,** rising (of the sun); the east  
**os, oris, n.,** mouth; edge  
**os, ossis, n.,** bone  
**Osca, -ac, f.,** Huesca  
**oscitáre, to gape**  
**osculári, dep.,** to kiss  
**ósulum, -i, n.,** kiss  
**Osea, -ac, f.,** Osee  
**osténdere, -tendi, -tensus or tentus,** to show, display, expose  
**osténsio, -onis, f.,** show, showing, display; evidence

ostiária, -ae, *f.*, portress  
 ostiárius, -ii, *m.*, porter  
 ostiátim, *adv.*, from door to door  
 Ostia Tiberína, -orum, *m. pl.*, Ostia  
 Ostiénsis, -e, of Ostia  
 óstium, -ii, *n.*, door, gate  
 Otho, -onis, *m.*, Otto  
 otiósus, -a, -um, idle  
 ótium, -ii, *n.*, sloth  
 ováre, to rejoice  
 Oveténsis, -e, of Oviedo  
 ovíle, -is, *n.*, fold, sheepfold  
 ovínus, -a, -um, of a sheep  
 ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep  
 ovum, -i, *n.*, egg  
 Oxoménsis, -e, of Osma

## P

pábulum, -i, *n.*, food  
 pacátrix, -icis, *f.*, peacemaker  
 pacátus, -a, -um, peaceful  
 pácifer, -a, -um, peace-bringing  
 pacificáre, to pacify, grant peace  
 pacífice, *adv.*, peaceably  
 pacíficum, -i, *n.*, peace offering  
 pacíficus, -a, -um, of peace, peaceful  
 pacísci, pactus sum, *dep. 3.*, to cove-  
 nant, make a bargain  
 pactum, -i, *n.*, covenant  
 Padus, -i, *m.*, Po River  
 paean, -anis, *n.*, paean, hymn  
 paedagógus, -i, *m.*, instructor  
 pagánus, -i, *m.*, heathen, pagan  
 página, -ae, *f.*, page  
 pagus, -i, *m.*, village  
 Palaestína, -ae, *f.*, Palestine  
 Palaestíni, -orum, *m. pl.*, Philistines  
 palaestra, -ae, *f.*, school, gymnasium  
 palam, *adv.*, openly  
 palátium, -ii, *n.*, palace  
 palátum, -i, *n.*, palate, taste  
 pálea, -ae, *f.*, straw  
 Paléntia, -ae, *f.*, Palencia

palla, -ae, *f.*, mantle; curtain  
 pallére, -ui, to grow pale, fade  
 palliáre, to soften, relieve  
 pállium, -ii, *n.*, cloth; garment;  
 mantle; pallium  
 pallor, -oris, *m.*, paleness, pallor  
 palma, -ae, *f.*, palm tree; palm of the  
 hand  
 palmes, -itis, *m.*, branch  
 palmus, -i, *m.*, span  
 palpáre, to handle, feel  
 pálpebra, -ae, *f.*, eyelid  
 palpitáre, to tremble; blink  
 palus, -i, *m.*, stake, post  
 Pampelonénsis, -e, of Pamplona  
 Pancrátius, -ii, *m.*, Pancras  
 pándere, pandi, pansus and passus, to  
 lay bare, tell, announce  
 pángere, panxi, panctus and pegi or  
 pépigi, pactus, to make; compose;  
 sing  
 panífica, -ae, *f.*, baker  
 panis, -is, *m.*, bread; loaf  
 Pannónii, -orum, *m. pl.*, Pannonians  
 pannus, -i, *m.*, cloth; pannis, in swad-  
 dling clothes  
 Panormitáni, -orum, *m. pl.*, people of  
 Palermo  
 Papa, -ae, *m.*, Pope  
 Paphus, -i, *f.*, Paphos  
 Papía, -ae, *f.*, Pavia  
 papilio, -onis, *m.*, tent  
 papílla, -ae, *f.*, nipple; breast  
 par, paris, equal, like  
 par, paris, *m., f., n.*, pair, couple  
 parábola, -ae, *f.*, parable; byword  
 Paráclitus, -i, *m.*, defender, comforter,  
 Paraclete, Holy Ghost  
 paradígma, -atis, *n.*, model, example  
 paradísus, -i, *m.*, paradise  
 paralytícus, -a, -um, paralyzed  
 paráre, to prepare, provide  
 Parascéve, -es, *f.*, day of preparation;  
 Parasceve; Good Friday

- parce**, *adv.*, moderately, sparingly  
**párcere**, **peperci**, **párcitus**, to spare;  
 forbear; keep  
**parcómónia**, -ae, *f.*, self-denial  
**párcitas**, -atis, *f.*, frugality; temper-  
 ance, sparing use  
**pardus**, -i, *m.*, leopard  
**parens**, -entis, *m.* and *f.*, parent  
**parére**, to appear; obey  
**párcere**, **péperi**, **partus**, (io), to bear,  
 bring forth, be delivered of a child  
**páries**, -etis, *m.*, wall  
**Parisiénsis**, -e, of Paris  
**Parísii**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Paris  
**páriter**, *adv.*, at the same time, to-  
 gether, with one accord  
**paróchia**, -ae, *f.*, parish  
**párochus**, -i, *m.*, parish priest; benefice  
**paroécia**, -ae, *f.*, parish  
**parópsis**, -idis, *f.*, dish  
**parricída**, -ae, *c.*, murderer, murderer  
 of one's own parent, parricide  
**partis**, *f.*, part, portion; **partes**,  
 quarters; **ex parte**, in part  
**Parthi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Parthians  
**párticeps**, -ipis, *m.* and *f.*, partaker;  
 fellow, friend  
**participátio**, -onis, *f.*, participation; a  
 being compact  
**partícula**, -ae, *f.*, part; particle  
**partim**, *adv.*, partly  
**partíri**, *dep. 4*, to divide, part  
**parturíre**, to travail  
**partus**, -us, *m.*, bringing forth, birth,  
 childbirth  
**parum**, *adv.*, little  
**parvipéndere**, -pépendi, -pensus, to  
 esteem lightly  
**párvitas**, -atis, *f.*, small quantity  
**párvulus**, -a, -um, little; (*as a noun*)  
 child  
**parvus**, -a, -um, little, small  
**páscere**, **pavi**, **pastus**, to feed, pasture;  
 nourish  
**Pascha**, -ae, *n.*, Pasch, Passover; Easter  
**paschális**, -e, paschal  
**Paschális**, -is, *m.*, Paschal  
**páscua**, -ae, *f.*, pasture  
**pascuális**, -e, of the pasture  
**páscuum**, -i, *n.*, pasture; **páscua**, *n. pl.*,  
 pasture, pastures  
**páscuus**, -a, -um, relating to a pasture,  
 grazing  
**passer**, -eris, *m.*, sparrow  
**passibilis**, -e, susceptible to pain  
**passim**, *adv.*, up and down, here and  
 there, far and wide  
**Passiniánum**, -i, *n.*, Passignano  
**pássio**, -onis, *f.*, passion, suffering,  
 martyrdom  
**passus**, -us, *m.*, step, pace  
**pastophórium**, -ii, *n.*, chamber adjoining  
 the temple  
**pastor**, -oris, *m.*, shepherd; pastor  
**pastoralis**, -e, of a shepherd, shep-  
 herd's; pastoral; watchful  
**pastus**, -us, *m.*, food, sustenance  
**Patáviium**, -ii, *n.*, Padua  
**paténa**, -ae, *f.*, paten  
**pater**, -tris, *m.*, father  
**patére**, -ui, to be open or extended  
**paterfamílias**, **patrisfamílias**, *m.*, good-  
 man of the house, householder,  
 master of the house  
**patérnitas**, -atis, *f.*, paternity  
**patérnus**, -a, -um, paternal  
**patéscere**, -ui, to lie open or extended  
**pati**, **passus sum**, *dep. 3* (io), to suf-  
 fer, to endure  
**patíbulum**, -i, *n.*, gibbet; yoke; ig-  
 nominy  
**pátiens**, -entis, patient, long-suffering  
**patiéntia**, -ae, *f.*, patience  
**Patrae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, Patras  
**paträre**, to perform, accomplish; com-  
 mit  
**pátria**, -ae, *f.*, country, fatherland;  
 home

- patriárcha, -ae, *m.*, patriarch  
 patriarchális, -e, patriarchal  
 Patrícus; see vicus Patríci  
 patrícus, -a, -um, patrician  
 Patrícus, -ii, *m.*, Patrick  
 pátrius, -a, -um, pertaining to a father, father's  
 patrócínium, -ii, *n.*, protection, patronage  
 patróna, -ae, *f.*, patroness, protectress  
 patrónus, -i, *m.*, defender, advocate, patron  
 patruélis, -is, *m.*, cousin  
 pátruus, -i, *m.*, father's brother, uncle  
 pátulus, -a, -um, open, extended  
 páucitas, -atis, *f.*, fewness  
 paucus, -a, -um, few, little  
 paulátim, *adv.*, little by little  
 paulísper, *adv.*, a little  
 paulo minus, *adv.*, almost  
 páululum, *adv.*, a very little  
 Paulus, -i, *m.*, Paul  
 pauper, -eris, poor; páuperes, *m. pl.*, the poor  
 paupérculus, -a, -um, poor  
 paupéries, -ei, *f.*, poverty  
 páupertas, -atis, *f.*, poverty, wretchedness  
 pausa, -ae, *f.*, pause  
 pavére, pavi, to fear  
 pávidus, -a, -um, fearful, terrified  
 paviméntum, -i, *n.*, floor; ground, dust  
 pavíre, to beat down  
 pavor, -oris, *m.*, fear, terror  
 pax, pacis, *f.*, peace; prosperity  
 paxíllus, -i, *m.*, pin  
 peccáre, to sin  
 peccátor, -oris, *m.*, sinner  
 peccátrix, -icis, sinful  
 peccátrix, -icis, *f.*, sinner  
 peccátum, -i, *n.*, sin  
 pecten, -inis, *m.*, comb  
 pectus, -oris, *n.*, breast  
 peculiáris, -e, peculiar  
 pecúlium, -ii, *n.*, property  
 pecúnia, -ae, *f.*, money  
 pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, sheep  
 pecus, -udis, *f.*, cattle (a single head)  
 pedáneus, -a, -um, pertaining to the foot; lignum pedáneum, altar step  
 pedes, -itis, *m.*, foot soldier, infantryman  
 Pedrósum, -i, *n.*, Pedroso  
 pejor, pejus, worse  
 Pelagiáni, -orum, *m. pl.*, Pelagians  
 pélagus, -i, *n.*, sea  
 Pelígni, -orum, *m. pl.*, Abruzzo Citeriore  
 péllere, pépuli, pulsus, to cast out  
 pellicánus, -i, *m.*, pelican  
 pellicere, -lexi, -lectus, (io), to seduce  
 pellicéus, -a, -um, of leather  
 pellicula, -ae, *f.*, little skin  
 pellis, -is, *f.*, skin, hide; tent cloth, tent  
 pelvis, -is, *f.*, basin  
 pendére, pépendi, to hang; depend  
 péndulus, -a, -um, hanging  
 pene, *adv.*, almost, well-nigh  
 pene, *prep.*, with; before  
 penetrábilis, -e, sharp, piercing  
 penetrália, -orum, *n. pl.*, inmost recesses; inner chambers, closets; inmost self, spirit  
 penetráre, to penetrate  
 pénitus, -a, -um, inward  
 pénitus, *adv.*, wholly  
 penna, -ae, *f.*, feather; wing  
 pennátus, -a, -um, feathered, winged  
 pensitáre, to weigh; pay  
 pentacotárchus, -i, *m.*, captain over fifty men  
 Pentecóste, -es, *f.*, Pentecost  
 per, through, by  
 pera, -ae, *f.*, bag, wallet  
 perágere, -egi, -actus, to finish, accomplish; attain to; celebrate  
 peragráre, to travel, wander or pass through; visit

- peramánter, *adv.*, very lovingly  
 perambuláre, to walk about  
 percéllere, -culi, -culus, to daunt, repel  
 percéptio, -onis, *f.*, partaking  
 percípere, -cepi, -ceptus, (io), to take, partake, receive; attain; seize; experience; give ear to  
 pércitus, -a, -um, aroused, driven  
 percoláre, -cólui, -cultus, to honor, reverence  
 percontári, *dep.*, to inquire  
 precrebréscere, -crébrui, to spread abroad, be well known  
 precréscere, -crevi, -cretus, to increase greatly  
 percúsus, -a, -um, struck, smitten  
 percúpidus, -a, -um, very desirous  
 percúrrere, -curri, and -cúcurri, -cursus, to run through; persevere to the end  
 percússio, -onis, *f.*, stroke, a beating, a striking  
 percussor, -onis, *m.*, striker; executioner, headsman  
 percútere, -cussi, -cussus, (io), to strike, strike down, smite; kill  
 pérdere, -didi, -ditus, to lose; destroy  
 perditio, -onis, *f.*, waste; perdition; ruin, destruction  
 pérdolens, -entis, sorrowing  
 perdúcere, -duxi, -ductus, to bring to, lead to or through  
 péregre, *adv.*, abroad, into a strange country  
 peregrínans, -antis, *m.*, traveler, pilgrim  
 peregrinátio, -onis, *f.*, travel, pilgrimage  
 peregrínus, -a, -um, strange  
 peregrínus, -i, *m.*, stranger  
 peréptor, -oris, *m.*, slayer, destroyer  
 perénnis, -e, eternal  
 perénnitas, -atis, *f.*, eternity  
 perfécte, *adv.*, perfectly  
 perféctio, -onis, *f.*, perfection  
 perféctus, -a, -um, perfect  
 perférre, -tuli, -latus, to bring, bear, carry through, carry up  
 perfícere, -feci, -fectus, (io), to finish; perform; make perfect, perfect; accomplish; render; win  
 perfídia, -ae, *f.*, faithlessness  
 perfídis, -a, -um, faithless  
 perfódere, -fodi, -fossus, (io), to dig through, break open  
 perforáre, to pierce  
 perfricatio, -onis, *f.*, rubbing  
 pérfrui, -fractus sum, *dep. 3.*, to enjoy  
 pérfuga, -ae, *m.*, deserter, fugitive  
 perfúctio, -onis, *f.*, performance  
 perfúndere, -fudi, -fusus, to pour forth or over; overwhelm  
 pérgerere, perréxi, perréctus, to go, go forward, continue  
 Pergis, -is, *f.*, Perga  
 perhibére, to report, bear witness  
 periclitári, *dep.*, to be in danger, be imperiled  
 periculósus, -a, -um, dangerous  
 periculum, -i, *n.*, danger, peril  
 perillústris, -e, shining  
 perímere, -emi, -emptus (-emptus), to slay, destroy  
 perínde, *adv.*, in a like manner  
 peripséma, -atis, *n.*, offscouring  
 períre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to fail, be lost, perish  
 perítia, -ae, *f.*, skill  
 peritúrus, -a, -um, perishable  
 perizóma, -atis, *n.*, apron  
 perjuráre, to swear falsely  
 perlínaria, -orum, *n. pl.*, lintels  
 perlínere, -livi and -levi, -litus, to besmear, anoint  
 perlúcidus, -a, -um, transparent  
 permanére, -mansi, -mansus, to remain, continue

- permíttere**, -misi, -missus, to suffer, permit  
**permíxtus**, -a, -um, mingled  
**permóvère**, -movi, -motus, to arouse, agitate  
**permúltus**, -a, -um, very much or many  
**permutáre**, to change completely  
**pernícies**, -ei, *f.*, disaster  
**pernoctáre**, to spend the night  
**perósus**, -a, -um, hating  
**pérperam**, *adv.*, perversely  
**perpes**, -etis, perpetual  
**perpésio**, -onis, *f.*, suffering, endurance  
**pérpeti**, -passus sum, *dep.* 3 (io), to suffer, endure, undergo  
**perpetráre**, to do  
**pérpetim**, *adv.*, continually  
**perpetuáre**, to make perpetual, continue  
**perpetúitas**, -atis, *f.*, perpetuity, eternity  
**perpétuo**, *adv.*, permanently  
**perpétuus**, -a, -um, perpetual, everlasting, unfailling  
**perplúres**, -ium, very many  
**perpúlcher**, -chra, -chrum, very beautiful  
**perquíre**, -sivi, -situs, to seek  
**Persa**, -ae, *m.*, Persian  
**perscíbère**, -scripsi, -scriptus, to write down  
**perscrutátió**, -onis, *f.*, scrutiny  
**persecútió**, -onis, *f.*, persecution  
**persecútor**, -oris, *m.*, persecutor  
**pérsequi**, -secutus sum, *dep.* 3, to persecute; pursue  
**perseveráre**, to continue  
**Persi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Persians  
**Persis**, -idis, *f.*, Persia  
**persistere**, to resist  
**persólvere**, -solvi, -solútus, to offer, render; discharge  
**persóna**, -ae, *f.*, person  
**personáre**, -sónui, -sónitus, to proclaim, shout; resound; sing; ring again  
**personátus**, -a, -um, masked, provided with a mask  
**perspícere**, -spexi, -spectus, (io), to have regard to; look into  
**perspicúitas**, -atis, *f.*, clearness  
**perspícuus**, -a, -um, evident  
**persuadére**, -suasi, -suasus, to persuade  
**persuasíbilis**, -e, persuasive  
**persuasíó**, -onis, *f.*, doctrine  
**perstríngere**, -strinxi, -strictus, to lay hold upon  
**pertaésus**, -a, -um, thoroughly wearied  
**pertentáre**, to put to the test  
**perterrefáctus**, -a, -um, exceedingly terrified  
**pertrérritus**, -a, -um, terrified  
**pertiméscere**, -timui, to fear greatly  
**pértinax**, -acis, obstinate  
**per tíngere**, -tínui, to pertain to  
**pertrágere**, to come to, extend to  
**pertráctare**, to busy oneself with; study; celebrate  
**pertransíre**, to go away; pierce; pass through  
**perturbátió**, -onis, *f.*, disturbance  
**per túsus**, -a, -um, with holes  
**Peruánus**, -a, -um, Peruvian  
**perúngere**, -unxi, -unctus, to anoint  
**perúrere**, -ussi, -ustus, to burn up, parch  
**perurgére**, -ursi, to urge forward  
**Perúsia**, -ae, *f.*, Perugia  
**perútilis**, -e, very useful  
**pervagáre**, to wander through  
**perveníre**, -veni, -ventus, to come to, attain  
**pervéntió**, -onis, *f.*, coming, arrival  
**pervénitor**, -oris, *m.*, one who comes or arrives  
**pervérse**, *adv.*, perversely

- pervérsitas, -atis, f.,** perverse inclination  
**pervértere, -verti, -versus,** to pervert  
**pervetústus, -a, -um,** very old  
**pervicácia, -ae, f.,** stubbornness  
**pervigil, -ilis,** ever watchful  
**pervigiláre,** to watch  
**pervigílium, -ii, n.,** watch; eve; vigil  
**pervíncere, -vici, -victus,** to overcome  
**pervius, -a, -um,** accessible  
**pervulgáre,** to make publicly known  
**pes, pedis, m.,** foot  
**pessimáre,** to oppress  
**péssimus, -a, -um,** worst; wicked, evil  
**péstifer, -a, -um,** pestilential  
**péstilens, -entis,** pestilential  
**pestiléntia, -ae, f.,** pestilence, plague  
**pétere, -ivi and -ii, -itus,** to ask, request, entreat, beseech  
**petítio, -onis, f.,** petition, request  
**petra, -ae, f.,** rock  
**Petra Pertúsa, -a, -ae, f.,** Pietra Pertusa  
**Petrus, -i, m.,** Peter  
**Petrus Canísius, -i, -ii, m.,** Peter Canisius  
**petulánte, adv.,** wantonly, boldly  
**phalánga, -ae, f.,** band  
**phaleráre,** to adorn (with medals)  
**phantásia, -ae, f.,** delusion  
**phantásma, -atis, n.,** apparition, phantom  
**pháretra, -ae, f.,** quiver  
**Pharisaeus, -i, m.,** Pharisee  
**phármacum, -i, n.,** remedy  
**phase, -es, f.,** phase; rite  
**Phase, indecl.,** Phase, Passover  
**Pherezaeus, -i, m.,** Pherezite  
**phiala, -ae, f.,** vial, phial  
**Philadélphii, -orum, m. pl.,** Philadelphians  
**Philippenses, -ium, m. pl.,** Philippians  
**Philippénsis, -e,** of Philippi  
**Philippinae, -arum, f. pl.,** Philippines  
**Philíppus, -i, m.,** Philip; Philippian  
**Philíppus Benítius, -i, -ii, m.,** Philip Benizi  
**Philíppus Nérius, -i, -ii, m.,** Philip Neri  
**Philisthaeus, -i, m.,** Philistine  
**Philisthíni, -orum, m. pl.,** Philistines  
**Philístium, Philistia**  
**Philogónius, -ii, m.,** Philogonius  
**philosophári, dep.,** to philosophize  
**philosóphia, -ae, f.,** philosophy  
**philosóphicus, -a, -um,** philosophical  
**philósophus, -i, m.,** philosopher  
**Phoeníce, -es and -is, f.,** Phoenicia  
**phrenéticus, -a, -um,** frantic  
**phthísicus, -a, -um,** consumptive  
**phur, Purim,** Jewish Feast of Lots that celebrates the deliverance of the Jews from the machinations of Aman  
**phylactérium, -ii, n.,** phylactery  
**piaculáris, -e,** expiatory, purifying  
**piáculum, -i, n.,** sin, crime  
**Picárdia, -ae, f.,** Picardy  
**Pictávi, -orum, m. pl.,** Poitiers  
**Pictaviénsis, -e,** of Poitiers  
**Picti, -orum, m. pl.,** Picts  
**pictor, -oris, m.,** painter  
**pictúra, -ae, f.,** picture  
**pie, adv.,** mercifully, piously  
**pientíssimus, -a, -um,** most dutiful  
**pietas, -atis, f.,** goodness, godliness; pity; loving kindness  
**piger, -gra, -grum,** lazy, slothful  
**pigére, impers. verb. 2,** to cause annoyance, weary, disgust  
**pignus, -oris and -eris, n.,** pledge  
**pigráre,** to be slothful  
**pigritári, dep.,** to be slow or slothful  
**Pilátus, -i, m.,** Pilate  
**pileátus, -a, -um,** wearing a felt cap  
**pilósus, -a, -um,** hairy  
**pincérna, -ae, m.,** cupbearer  
**pingere, pinxi, pictus,** to paint; adorn  
**pinguéo, -inis, f.,** fatness; richness

- pinguēscere**, to grow fat; grow fertile  
**pinguis**, -e, fat; strong; **pinguia**, *n. pl.*, fat meats  
**pinnāculum**, -i, *n.*, pinnacle  
**Pipinus**, -i, *m.*, Pepin  
**pirāta**, -ae, *m.*, pirate  
**Pisae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, Pisa  
**piscāri**, *dep.*, to fish  
**piscātor**, -oris, *m.*, fisherman  
**pisciculus**, -i, *m.*, little fish  
**piscīna**, -ae, *f.*, tank for bathing; pool, pond; fish market  
**piscis**, -is, *m.*, fish  
**Pisīs**, -e, of Pisa  
**pīsticus**, -a, -um, pure, genuine (of nard)  
**pīus**, -a, -um, pious, holy; just; pitying; merciful, tender, loving  
**pīx**, **pīcis**, *f.*, pitch  
**placābilis**, -e, appeased  
**placāre**, to appease  
**placātio**, -onis, *f.*, a soothing, appeasing, propitiating, propitiation; ransom  
**Placēntia**, -ae, *f.*, Piacenza  
**placēre**, -ui or **placātus sum**, to please; **placet**, *impers.*, it is pleasing  
**plācīde**, *adv.*, peacefully  
**plācidus**, -a, -um, favorable  
**Plācidus**, -i, *m.*, Placid  
**plācītus**, -a, -um, acceptable  
**plaga**, -ae, *f.*, blow, stripe, scourge, stroke; wound; plague  
**plaga**, -ae, *f.*, flat surface, tract of land, district, zone, plain, desert  
**plagāre**, to wound  
**plagātus**, -a, -um, sore, wounded  
**planāre**, to make plain  
**planctus**, -us, *m.*, mourning  
**plane**, *adv.*, surely  
**plāngere**, **planxi**, **planctus**, to bewail  
**planities**, -ei, *f.*, plain  
**planta**, -ae, *f.*, sole of the foot  
**plantāre**, to plant; set in place; create  
**plantārium**, -ii, *n.*, sole of the foot; foot  
**plantātio**, -onis, *f.*, plant; — **rosae**, rose plant  
**planum**, -i, *n.*, plain  
**planus**, -a, -um, plain, flat  
**plasma**, -atis, *n.*, anything formed; creation  
**plasmāre**, to form, fashion  
**plastes**, -is, *m.*, maker  
**plātānus**, -i, *f.*, plane tree  
**plātea**, -ae, *f.*, street  
**plāudere**, **plausi**, **plausus**, to strike, clap  
**plaustrum**, -i, *n.*, cart  
**plausus**, -us, *m.*, applause  
**plebējus**, -a, -um, of the people, plebeian  
**plebs**, -is, *f.*, people  
**plēctere**, to punish; **cāpite plecti**, to be beheaded  
**plēctere**, **plexi** and **plēxui**, **plexus**, to braid, plait  
**plēniter**, *adv.*, fully, completely  
**plenitūdo**, -inis, *f.*, fullness; fulfilling; full assembly  
**plēnius**, *adv.*, more fully  
**plenus**, -a, -um, full; plentiful  
**plorāre**, to bewail, lament, weep  
**plorātus**, -us, *m.*, lamentation  
**plūere**, **plui** or **pluvi**, to rain  
**plumbātum**, -i, *n.*, whip weighted with lead, plummet  
**plumbum**, -i, *n.*, lead  
**plurālis**, -e, plural  
**plurāliter**, *adv.*, in the plural  
**plūries**, *adv.*, frequently  
**plūrimus**, -a, -um, very many; very great  
**plus**, *adj.* and *adv.*, more; — **quam**, more than  
**plūsculus**, -a, -um, many  
**plūvia**, -ae, *f.*, rain  
**póculum**, -i, *n.*, goblet; drink



- Pódium, -ii, *n.***, Le Puy  
**poena, -ae, *f.***, pain  
**poénitens, -entis**, penitent  
**poeniténtia, -ae, *f.***, repentance; penance  
**poenentiárius, -ii, *m.***, penitentiary  
**poenítère (paenítère)**, to repent; **poénitet, *impers.***, one repents or is displeased  
**póesis, -is or -eos, *f.***, poetry  
**poëta, -ae, *m.***, poet  
**polítus, -a, -um**, polite, polished  
**pollère**, to be strong  
**pollicéri, *dep. 2.***, to promise  
**pollicitátio, -onis, *f.***, promise  
**pollúere, -ui, -utus**, to pollute, defile, profane  
**pollútio, -onis, *f.***, defilement  
**Polocénsis, -e**, of Polotsk  
**Polónia, -ae, *f.***, Poland  
**Polónus, -a, -um**, Polish  
**polus, -i, *m.***, sky, heaven  
**Polycárpus, -i, *m.***, Polycarp  
**Polychrónis, -is, *m.***, Polychron  
**polymítus, -a, -um**, of divers colors  
**pomárium, -ii, *n.***, orchard  
**pómifer, -a, -um**, fruit, fruit-bearing  
**pompa, -ae, *f.***, pomp  
**Pompéjus, -i, *m.***, Pompey  
**Pomposiánus, -a, -um**, of Pomposia  
**pomum, -i, *n.***, apple  
**pomus, -i, *f.***, fruit tree  
**ponderáre**, to weigh  
**ponderátor, -oris, *m.***, weigher  
**pondus, -eris, *n.***, load, weight, burden  
**pónere, pósui, pósito**, to put, set; lay down or aside; make  
**Póntia, -ae, *f.***, Ponza, Isola di Ponza  
**Pontiánis (de), de' Pontiani**  
**Pontiánus, -i, *m.***, Pontian  
**Pónticus, -a, -um**, Pontic; **mare Pónticum**, Black Sea  
**póntifex, -icis, *m.***, pontiff; bishop; high priest; — **máximus**, pope  
**pontificális, -e**, pontifical  
**pontificátus, -us, *m.***, pontificate, reign  
**pontificium, -ii, *n.***, pontifical power  
**pontíficus, -a, -um**, pontifical, papal  
**Pontiniacénsis, -e**, of Pontigni  
**Pontiniácum, -i, *n.***, Pontigni  
**Póntius Pilátus, -ii, -i, *m.***, Pontius Pilate  
**pontus, -i, *m.***, the deep, the sea  
**popína, -ae, *f.***, food, fare  
**populáres, -ium, *m. pl.***, the people  
**pópulus, -i, *m.***, people; **in pópulis**, among the nations  
**porcínus, -a, -um**, of swine  
**porcus, -i, *m.***, pig  
**porósus, -a, -um**, porous  
**Porphýrius, -ii, *m.***, Porphyry  
**porréctus, -a, -um**, stretched out  
**porrígere, -rexi, -rectus**, to stretch forth  
**porrigo, -inis, *f.***, dandruff; itch; lice  
**porro, *adv.***, but  
**porta, -ae, *f.***, gate; — **aquárum**, water gate  
**portáre**, to carry; uphold  
**Portéllus, -i, *m.***, Portello  
**porténdere, -tendi, -tentus**, to portend, presage  
**porténtum, -i, *n.***, wonder, portent  
**pórticus, -i, *m.***, porch  
**pórtio, -onis, *f.***, portion  
**pórtitor, -oris, *m.***, bearer, carrier  
**Portuénsis, -e**, of Porto  
**portus, -us, *m.***, port, harbor  
**póscere, póposci**, to ask, beseech  
**posse, pótui**, to be able, can  
**posséssio, -onis, *f.***, possession  
**posséssor, -ris, *m.***, possessor  
**possíbilis, -e**, possible  
**possíbilitas, -atis, *f.***, possibility; power  
**post, *prep.***, after  
**postcommúnio, -onis, *f.***, postcommunion  
**póstea, *adv.***, afterward, hereafter

- possidére, -sedi, -sessus**, to possess, get possession of  
**pósteri, -orum, m. pl.**, descendants, posterity  
**posterior, -ius**, later, posterior; **posteriora, n. pl.**, hinder parts  
**postérius, adv.**, afterward, later  
**posthabére**, to esteem less  
**postícum, -i, n.**, back door  
**postis, -is, m.**, door post, side post  
**postlimínium, -ii, n.**, a return home  
**póstmodum, adv.**, after, afterward  
**postpónere, -pósui, -pósitus**, to put after  
**postquam, conj.**, after, as soon as  
**postrémo, adv.**, lastly  
**postuláre**, to ask, pray for; require  
**postulátio, -onis, f.**, entreaty, prayer; hope  
**potábilis, -e**, fit to drink  
**potáre**, to drink, give to drink  
**potátio, -onis, f.**, drink; drinking  
**potens, -entis**, mighty, powerful  
**potentátus, -us, m.**, power, might  
**poténter, adv.**, powerfully  
**poténtia, -ae, f.**, power  
**potéstas, -atis, f.**, power, authority, jurisdiction  
**pótior, -ius**, better, greater, more excellent; preferable  
**potíri, dep. 4**, to get possession of, obtain  
**potíssimus, adv.**, chiefly, especially  
**pótius, adv.**, rather  
**potus, -us, m.**, drink  
**prae, prep.**, before; because of  
**praeámbulus, -a, -um**, going before  
**praebére**, to grant, offer, furnish, afford  
**praecedére, -cessi, -cessus**, to go before, precede  
**praecéllere**, to excel  
**praeceps, -ipitis**, headlong  
**praecéptor, -oris, m.**, master  
**praecéptum, -i, n.**, precept, command  
**praecessor, -oris, m.**, leader  
**praecidere, -cidi, -cismus**, to cut, cut down or off  
**praecinere, -cécini and -cínui, -centus**, to sing; sing or play before  
**praecingere, -cixi, -cinctus**, to gird  
**praecipere, -cepi, -ceptus, (io)**, to teach, instruct; command  
**praecipitáre**, to cast headlong  
**praecipitátio, -onis, f.**, ruin  
**praecipítium, -ii, n.**, precipice  
**praecipuus, -a, -um**, special  
**praecláre, adv.**, excellently, with distinction  
**praeclárus, -a, -um**, excellent, glorious; goodly; in **praecláris**, in goodly places  
**praeco, -onis, m.**, crier, herald  
**praecógnitus, -a, -um**, known beforehand  
**praecónium, -ii, n.**, praise; excellence  
**praecórdia, -orum, n. pl.**, hearts  
**praecurrere, -curri and -cucúrri, -cursus**, to run before; take precedence over  
**praecúrsor, -oris, m.**, one who runs before; precursor  
**praeda, -ae, f.**, spoils of war, booty; prey  
**praedári, dep.**, to plunder  
**praedátio, -onis, f.**, taking of spoils, robbery  
**praedecessor, -oris, m.**, predecessor  
**praedestináre**, to ordain  
**praedestinátio, -onis, f.**, predestination  
**praedestinátus, -a, -um**, predestinated  
**praedicábilis, -e**, worthy of being spoken of  
**praedicans, -antis, m.**, preacher  
**praedicáre**, to shout, proclaim; declare; preach  
**praedicátio, -onis, f.**, preaching; praise

- praedicátor, -oris, m.,** preacher  
**praedicere, -dixi, -dictus,** to say before; foretell  
**praedíctus, -a, -um,** aforesaid  
**praéditus, -a, -um,** endowed  
**praédium, -ii, n.,** farm, estate  
**praedocére, -dócui, -doctus,** to teach beforehand  
**praedúlcis, -e,** very sweet  
**praeféligere, -legi, -lectus,** to choose before, forechoose  
**praeminére, to excel,** be remarkable  
**praése, -fui,** to rule  
**praefátio, -onis, f.,** preface  
**praefátus, -a, -um,** aforesaid, above mentioned  
**praefécus, -i, m.,** prefect; overseer; governor  
**praéferox, -ocis,** very cruel  
**praefiguráre,** to prefigure  
**praefiníre,** to appoint  
**praefinítio, -onis, f.,** purpose  
**praefocáre,** to suffocate; drown  
**praegnans, -antis,** being with child  
**praegrándis, -e,** very great  
**praegraváre,** to weigh upon, oppress  
**praegustáre,** to taste beforehand  
**praecintonátio, -onis, f.,** intoning beforehand  
**praecíre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo),** to go before  
**praelátio, -onis, f.,** bearing forward, guidance; preferment; dignity  
**praeliáre,** to fight  
**praeliátor, -oris,** warring; (*as a noun*) warrior  
**praelibátio, -onis, f.,** oblation  
**praelium (proclium), -ii, n.,** battle; war  
**praelucére, -luxi,** to outshine, surpass  
**praelúdium, -ii, n.,** eve  
**praematúrus, -a, -um,** premature; eager  
**praemeditáre (-ari),** to meditate before, premeditate  
**praémium, -ii, n.,** gift, reward, prize  
**praemonstráre,** to mark out, point out, indicate  
**Praemonstraténsis, -e,** Premonstratensian  
**Praemonstrátus, -i, m.,** Prémontré  
**Praeneste, -is, n. and f.,** Palestrina  
**Praenestinus, -a, -um,** of Palestrina  
**praenóbilis, -e,** distinguished  
**praenoscere, -novi, -notus,** to know beforehand, foreknow  
**praenotáre,** to indicate, mark  
**praenuntiáre,** to show before  
**praenúntius, -ii, m.,** forerunner  
**praecupáre,** to come before; overtake; take by surprise  
**praecordinátus, -a, -um,** preordained  
**praeparáre,** to prepare  
**praeparátio, -onis, f.,** preparation  
**praepedíre,** to fetter, shackle, obstruct  
**praepínguis, -e,** very rich  
**praepónere, -pósui, -pósitus,** to prefer  
**praepositúra, -ae, f.,** archdeaconry  
**praepósitus, -i, m.,** overseer, head, governor; prelate; **Praepósitus Generalis,** general  
**praepósterus, -a, -um,** inverted, reversed  
**praepotens, -entis,** mighty  
**praepróperus, -a, -um,** overhasty  
**praepútium, -ii, n.,** prepuce, foreskin, uncircumcision  
**praerípere, -rípui, -reptus, (io),** to carry off  
**praerogátiva, -ae, f.,** privilege, prerogative  
**praesagíre,** to foretell  
**praeságus, -a, -um,** predicting  
**praesciéntia, -ae, f.,** foreknowledge  
**praescíre, -scivi, -scitus,** to foresee  
**praescius, -a, -um,** having a foreboding

- praeseférre** (*prae se ferre*), -tuli, -latus, to display; **praeseférénte**, bearing before himself, displaying  
**praesens**, -entis, present  
**praesentáre**, to present  
**praeséntia**, -ae, *f.*, presence  
**praesépe**, -is, *n.*, manger  
**praesépium**, -ii, *n.*, stall; manger  
**praesértim**, *adv.*, especially  
**praeses**, -idis, *m.* and *f.*, president; governor; abess  
**praesidére**, -sédi, to aid, protect  
**praesídium**, -ii, *n.*, defense  
**praesignáre**, to foreshadow, represent  
**praestábilis**, -e, remarkable, pre-eminent, powerful  
**praestans**, -antis, gracious  
**praestántia**, -ae, *f.*, superiority, excellence  
**praestáre**, -stiti, -stitus, to give, grant, bestow; accomplish  
**praestigiátor**, -oris, *m.*, juggler; deceiver  
**praesto**, *adv.*, here; ready  
**praestolári**, *dep.*, to wait for; perform  
**praestríngere**, -strinxí, -strictus, to bind up  
**praesul**, -is, *c.*, protector  
**praesúmere**, -sumpsi, -sumptus, to take before; presume  
**praeténdere**, -tendi, -tentus, to stretch out before, extend; present to, grant  
**praeter**, *prep.*, besides, except, but  
**praeterea**, *adv.*, besides, further, and  
**praetérgradi**, -gressus sum, *dep.* 3 (io), to go beyond, transgress; pass by  
**praeteríre**, -ivi and -itus, (eo), to pass by or away; transgress  
**praetérítus**, -a, -um, past  
**praetermíttere**, -misi, -missus, to neglect, omit  
**praetérvehi**, -vectus sum, *dep.* 3, to be carried past; sail past  
**praetor**, -oris, *m.*, praetor  
**praetórium**, -ii, *n.*, governor's hall; hall; palace  
**praetórius**, -a, -um, pretorian  
**praevalére**, to prevail  
**praevaticári**, *dep.*, to rebel, transgress; be guilty of collusion; prevaricate  
**praevaticatio**, -onis, *f.*, transgression; prevarication  
**praevaticátor**, -oris, *m.*, transgressor  
**praevéniens**, -entis, prevent, preceding  
**praevénire**, -veni, -ventus, to prevent, anticipate; guide; direct; look forward to; precede, go before  
**praevidére**, -vidi, -visus, to foresee  
**praevíus**, -a, -um, going before, preceding  
**Praga**, -ae, *f.*, Prague  
**Pragénsis**, -e, of Prague  
**prandére**, prandi, pransus, 2, to eat  
**prándium**, -ii, *n.*, dinner  
**pratium**, -i, *n.*, meadow  
**právitás**, -atis, *f.*, evil, wickedness, guilt  
**pravus**, -a, -um, crooked; perverse, evil  
**precári**, *dep.*, to pray, beseech  
**precátio**, -onis, *f.*, prayer  
**precátor**, -oris, *m.*, one who prays or entreats  
**precátus**, -us, *m.*, prayer, entreaty  
**predicátor**, -oris, *m.*, preacher  
**prémere**, pressi, pressus, to press, press upon; oppress  
**préndere**, prendi and préndidi, **prensus**, to catch  
**présbyter**, -i, *m.*, priest  
**presbyterátus**, -us, *m.*, priesthood  
**presentátio**, -onis, *f.*, presentation  
**pressáre**, to press; distress  
**pressúra**, -ae, *f.*, distress, anguish, oppression  
**pretiósus**, -a, -um, of great price, precious

- prex, precis, f.**, prayer; **preces, pl.**, prayer, prayers  
**prétium, -ii, n.**, price, money; ransom money  
**pridie, adv.**, on the day before  
**prima, -ae, m.**, primate  
**prima, -ae, f.**, prime  
**primaévus, -a, -um**, youthful  
**primátus, -us, m.**, chief place, primacy  
**primitiae, -arum, f. pl.**, first fruits  
**primitívus, -a, -um**, first, first-born  
**primitus, adv.**, first, for the first time  
**primogénitum, -i, n.**, first birthright  
**primogenitúra, -ae, f.**, primogeniture  
**primogénitus, -a, -um**, first-born  
**primórdium, -ii, n.**, the first beginning, origin  
**primum, adv.**, first, at first; in the first place  
**primus, -a, -um**, first; **in primis**, in the first place  
**primus, -i, m.**, chief man  
**princeps, -ipis, m.**, prince, chief, general, ruler; **príncipes sacerdotum**, chief priests  
**principális, -e**, perfect; free  
**principálitás, -atis, f.**, principality  
**principáliter, adv.**, in the first place, from the beginning  
**principári, dep.**, to begin  
**principátus, -us, m.**, principality; marquisate; rule  
**príncipium, -ii, n.**, beginning, source, foundation; sovereignty; principality  
**prinus, -i, f.**, holm tree  
**prior, -ius**, first, former, previous  
**Priscillianístae, -arum, m. pl.**, Priscillianists  
**priscus, -a, -um**, original, ancient  
**prístinus, -a, -um**, former  
**prius, adv.**, before  
**priúsqvam, conj.**, before  
**priváre, to deprive, withhold**  
**privátus, -a, -um**, private  
**privilegiátus, -a, -um**, privileged  
**privilegium, -ii, n.**, privilege  
**pro, prep.**, for; through; in behalf of; as a result of; instead of  
**probabílius, adv.**, more probably  
**probáre, to prove; approve**  
**probáticus, -a, -um**, sheep cleansing; probatic  
**probátio, -onis, f.**, proof, test, trial  
**probrum, -i, n.**, shame, disgrace, reproach, sin  
**probus, -a, -um**, happy  
**procédere, -cessi, -cessus, to come or go forth; proceed (from); — in diébus multis, to be far advanced in years**  
**procélla, -ae, f.**, tempest, storm  
**procer, -eris, m.**, noble, prince  
**procídere, -cidi, to fall down**  
**procíntus, -us, m.**, preparation to set forth (a state of being girded)  
**procréare, to beget**  
**procónsul, -is, m.**, proconsul  
**proconsuláris, -e**, proconsular  
**procul, adv.**, afar off  
**proculdúbio, adv.**, without doubt  
**procuráre, to govern, administer**  
**procurátor, -oris, m.**, steward  
**procus, -i, m.**, wooer, suitor  
**pródere, -didi, -ditus, to bring forth; become profitable; betray**  
**prodésse (prosum), prófui, to avail, profit, benefit, be advantageous**  
**prodígium, -ii, n.**, wonder  
**prodígus, -a, -um**, prodigal  
**prodíre, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to come out or forth**  
**próditor, -oris, m.**, traitor, betrayer  
**prodúcere, -duxi, -ductus, to shoot forth, produce; make grow**  
**proélium (praélium), -ii, n.**, battle; war  
**profanáre, to profane**

**profári, dep.**, to speak in behalf of  
**proféctio, -onis, f.**, journey; departure  
**profécto, adv.**, truly, really, certainly, doubtless  
**proféctus, -us, m.**, source  
**proférre, -tuli, -latus**, to bring out or forth; lay before, display  
**proféssio, -onis, f.**, profession  
**proféssor, -oris, m.**, professor  
**profícere, -feci, -fectus, (io)**, to avail; advance, increase, contribute to; go forth; prevail  
**profícuus, -a, -um**, profitable  
**profiscíci, -fectus sum, dep. 3**, to go, set out or forth  
**profitéri, -fessus sum, dep. 2**, to profess; be enrolled  
**profligáre**, to scatter; overthrow; abolish  
**proflúere, -fluxi, -fluxus**, to flow forth  
**proflúvium, -ií, n.**, flowing, flowing forth  
**prófugus, -a, -um**, fugitive  
**profúndum, -i, n.**, depth  
**profúndus, -a, -um**, deep  
**profúsió, -onis, f.**, pouring out, profusion  
**profutúrus, -a, -um**, profitable  
**progenerátor, -oris, m.**, progenitor, ancestor  
**progénies, -ei, f.**, progeny, offspring, generation; a **generatióne et progénie**, from generation to generation  
**prógredi, -gressus sum, dep. 3 (io)**, to go further  
**proh!, interj.**, oh! ah!  
**prohibére**, to restrain, forbid  
**proinde, adv.**, hence  
**projícere, -jeci, -jectus, (io)**, to cast away, down or upon  
**prolátio, -onis, f.**, pronouncement  
**proles, -is, f.**, offspring  
**prolíxe, adv.**, freely, abundantly  
**prolíxitas, -atis, f.**, fullness

**prolíxius, adv.**, the longer  
**prolongáre**, to lengthen, prolong  
**prolongátus, -a, -um**, long  
**próloqui, -locútus sum, dep. 3**, to speak out, declare  
**prolúdere, -lusi, -lusus**, to practice beforehand  
**prolúere, -ui, -utus**, to wash out  
**promanáre**, to emanate or derive from  
**prómere, prompsi, promptus**, to bring forth, utter  
**promerére (-éri)**, to merit, deserve; obtain  
**promicáre**, to shine forth  
**promíssió, -onis, f.**, promise  
**promíssum, -i, n.**, promise  
**promíttere, -misi, -missus**, to promise  
**promótor, -oris, m.**, encourager, promoter, champion  
**promótus, -a, -um**, promoted, raised  
**promptuárium, -ií, n.**, storehouse; pantry  
**promptus, -a, -um**, willing, ready  
**promptus, -us, m.**, visibility, in **promptu**, manifest  
**promulgáre**, to make known, publish  
**pronuntiáre**, to speak, declare, pronounce; show; threaten  
**pronus, -a, -um**, flat, prone; inclined, bent forward; on his side  
**Propagánda, -ae, f.**, abbr. for the phrase **de propagánda fide**  
**propagáre**, to spread  
**propagátio, -onis, f.**, spreading, propagation  
**propagátor, -oris, m.**, propagator  
**propágo, -inis, f.**, shoot, branch; generation  
**propaláre**, to make manifest  
**prope, adv.**, near, at hand  
**propémódum, adv.**, almost  
**propénsius, adv.**, mercifully; speedily  
**propénsus, -a, -um**, disposed to  
**properáre**, to hasten

- prophéta**, -ae, *m.*, prophet  
**prophetális**, -e, of a prophet, prophetic  
**prophetáre**, to prophesy  
**prophétes**, -is, *m.*, prophet  
**prophétia**, -ae, *f.*, prophecy  
**prophéticus**, -a, -um, prophetic  
**prophétissa**, -ae, *f.*, prophetess  
**propináre**, to offer a drink to  
**propinquáre**, to approach; attain  
**propinquitás**, -atis, *f.*, nearness; relationship  
**propínquus**, -a, -um, near of kin; near, approaching  
**própior**, -ius, nearer  
**propitiábilis**, -e, propitious  
**propitiáre**, (-ari), to be merciful or favorable  
**propitiátio**, -onis, *f.*, forgiveness, clemency, favor; propitiation  
**propitiatórium**, -ii, *n.*, propitiatory, mercy seat  
**propítius**, -a, -um, merciful, gracious, propitious  
**propónere**, -pósuí, -pósitus, to lay or set before  
**propositio**, -onis, *f.*, setting forth, proposition; text; riddle  
**propósitum**, -i, *n.*, plan, design, purpose  
**proprietas**, -atis, *f.*, peculiarity, distinction  
**próprium**, -ii, *n.*, proper  
**próprius**, -a, -um, one's own  
**propter**, *prep.*, for, because of, by reason of  
**proptérea**, *adv.*, therefore  
**propugnáculum**, -i, *n.*, rampart, bulwark  
**propugnátor**, -oris, *m.*, defender  
**propulsáre**, to repel  
**prorípere**, -rípui, -reptus, (io), to rush forth, escape  
**prorogáre**, to defer, put off  
**prorsus**, *adv.*, turned toward; wholly; at all  
**prosa**, -ae, *f.*, prose  
**prosélytus**, -i, *n.*, proselyte  
**prosequi**, -secútus sum, *dep.* 3, to further; honor, regard, hear; look down upon  
**prosilíre**, -ui, to spring, leap forth  
**prospéctor**, -oris, *m.*, provider, guardian  
**prosperári**, *dep.*, to prosper  
**prósperere**, *adv.*, prosperously  
**prospéritas**, -atis, *f.*, prosperity  
**prósper**, -a, -um, prosperous, well;  
**próspera**, *n. pl.*, prosperous things, prosperity; good tidings  
**prospícere**, -spexi, -spectus, (io), to look; foresee  
**prostérnere**, -stravi, -stratus, to strew or spread before; present; overthrow, prostrate, humble; (*reflexive*), to fall down, prostrate oneself  
**prostíbulum**, -i, stews, brothel  
**prostitúere**, -ui, -utus, to prostitute  
**prostitútio**, -onis, *f.*, fornication  
**prostrátus**, -a, -um, lying on the ground, humble, prostrate  
**Protásius**, -ii, *m.*, Protase  
**protéctio**, -onis, *f.*, protection  
**protéctor**, -oris, *m.*, protector  
**protégere**, -texti, -tectus, to cover; protect, help, defend  
**proténdere**, -tendi, -tentus and -tensus, to hold up  
**protérere**, -trivi, -tritus, to trample under foot  
**protérvus**, -a, -um, stubborn  
**prótinus**, *adv.*, constantly, immediately  
**protomártyr**, -is, *m.*, protomartyr  
**protoplástus**, -i, *m.*, the first man, Adam  
**protráhere**, -traxi, -tractus, to draw out, extend; remain

- prout, *conj.*, according as  
 provéctio, -onis, *f.*, advancement, progress  
 provéctus, -a, -um, advanced in age  
 provéhere, -vexi, -vectus, to lead on  
 proveníre, -veni, -ventus, to come for;  
 be granted  
 provéntus, -us, *m.*, issue, result; crop;  
 revenue  
 provérbium, -ii, *n.*, proverb  
 providéntia, -ae, *f.*, providence  
 providére, -vidi, -visus, to provide; set;  
 see, behold  
 província, -ae, *f.*, province  
 Província, -ae, *f.*, Provence  
 provísor, -oris, *m.*, provider  
 provocáre, to provoke  
 provolútus, -a, -um, lying prostrate  
 provólvere, -volvi, -volútus, to throw  
 oneself down  
 próximus, -a, -um, near, neighboring;  
 in próximo, near at hand  
 próximus, -i, *m.*, neighbor  
 prudens, -entis, wise  
 prudénter, *adv.*, wisely  
 prudéntia, -ae, *f.*, prudence, wisdom,  
 understanding  
 pruína, -ae, *f.*, hoar frost  
 pruna, -ae, *f.*, live coal  
 prúriens, -entis, itching  
 psállere, to sing, give praise  
 psalmísta, -ae, *m.*, psalmist  
 psalmódia, -ae, *f.*, singing of psalms,  
 psalmody  
 psalmus, -i, *m.*, psalm  
 psaltérium, -ii, *n.*, psalter; psaltery  
 pseudochristus, -i, *m.*, false Christ  
 pseudoprophéta, -ae, *m.*, false prophet  
 Ptolemaéus, -i, *m.*, Ptolemy  
 Ptoleménsis, -e, of Ptolemais; inhabitant  
 of Ptolemais  
 publicánus, -i, *m.*, publican  
 publicáre, to publish; make a public  
 example of  
 públice, *adv.*, openly; at public expense  
 públicus, -a, -um, public  
 pudére (usually impersonal), to be  
 ashamed  
 pudicítia, -ae, *f.*, purity  
 pudícus, -a, -um, chaste  
 pudor, -oris, *m.*, modesty, purity,  
 shame; maidenhood  
 puélla, -ae, *f.*, girl, maid, damsel  
 puéllus, -i, *m.*, boy, child  
 puer, -i, *m.*, boy, child; young man;  
 servant  
 puerílis, -e, childish  
 puerítia, -ae, *f.*, childhood, boyhood,  
 girlhood  
 puérpera, -ae, *f.*, child-bearer, mother  
 puérperus, -a, -um, child-bearing  
 pugilláris, -is, *m.*, writing tablet  
 pugíllus, -i, *m.*, handful  
 púgio, -onis, *f.*, dagger, sword  
 pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle  
 pugnáre, to fight, do battle  
 pugnátor, -oris, *m.*, fighter, warrior  
 pugnus, -i, *m.*, fist  
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, fair, beautiful  
 pulchritúdo, -inis, *f.*, beauty  
 pulluláre, to sprout  
 pullus, -i, *m.*, young of animals; colt;  
 chicken  
 pulmentárium, -ii, *n.*, anything to eat  
 pulméntum, -i, *n.*, savory meat; pot-  
 tage  
 pulsáre, to knock; beset  
 pulvínar, -aris, *n.*, pillow  
 pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust; ashes  
 púncio, -onis, *f.*, pricking  
 punctum, -i, *n.*, a very small space;  
 moment  
 púngere, púpugi, punctus, to pierce  
 Púnicus, -a, -um, Carthaginian, Punic  
 puníre, to punish  
 pupílla, -ae, *f.*, pupil of the eye  
 pupíllus, -i, *m.*, orphan  
 purgaméntum, -i, *n.*, refuse



**purgáre**, to purify, purge  
**purgátio**, -onis, *f.*, purgation, expiation, purification  
**purgatórium**, -ii, *n.*, purgatory  
**purgátus**, -a, -um, cleansed  
**purificáre**, to purify, cleanse  
**purificátio**, -onis, *f.*, purification  
**púritas**, -atis, *f.*, purity  
**púrpura**, -ae, *f.*, purple; **regis púrpura**, royal purple  
**purpurátus**, -a, -um, empurpled; clad in purple  
**purpúreus**, -a, -um, purple  
**purus**, -a, -um, pure, clean  
**pusillánimis**, -e, fainthearted; feeble-minded  
**pusillánimitas**, -atis, faintheartedness  
**pusillum**, -i, *n.*, a little  
**pusillus**, -a, -um, little  
**putáre**, to think; **puta**, for example, suppose  
**putátio**, -onis, *f.*, pruning  
**putátive**, *adv.*, supposedly  
**putátivus**, -a, -um, reputed  
**Puteolánus**, -a, -um, of Pozzuolo  
**Putéoli**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Pozzuolo  
**púteus**, -i, *m.*, pit, well  
**putrédo**, -inis, *f.*, rottenness  
**putrefáctus**, -a, -um, rotten  
**putrésce-re**, -ui, to become rotten  
**putris**, -e, rotten, mortifying  
**pytho**, -onis, *m.*, spirit of a diviner

## Q

**qua . . . qua**, *adv.*, partly . . . partly  
**quacúmque**, *adv.*, whatsoever  
**quadragenárius**, -a, -um, of forty days  
**quadragéni**, -ae, -a, forty each  
**quadragésima**, -ae, *f.*, Lent  
**quadragesimális**, -e, of forty days; Lenten  
**quadragínta**, forty  
**quadráre**, to fit exactly, correspond to

**Quadratiánus**, -a, -um, Quadratian  
**quadríga**, -ae, *f.*, chariot  
**quadríngenti**, -ae, -a, four hundred  
**quádrupes**, -edis, *m.* and *f.*, four-footed beast  
**quádruplum**, fourfold  
**quacrere**, -sivi or -sii, -situs, to seek; require; reason  
**quacsere**, -ivi and -ii, -itus, to beseech  
**quacsétió**, -onis, *f.*, question, inquiry  
**quacstor**, -oris, *m.*, quacstor, pardoner  
**quacstuósus**, -a, -um, profitable  
**quacstus**, -us, *m.*, gain  
**qualis**, -e, what manner? what sort? what kind?; as  
**quálitat**, -atis, *f.*, quality  
**quálitat**, *adv.*, how, in what manner; as, just as  
**quam**, *adv.*, than, rather than; how!  
**quámdu**, *conj.*, as long as, while; until; how long?  
**quamóbrem**, *adv.*, wherefore  
**quamplúrimi**, -ae, -a, as many as possible  
**quamvis**, *conj.*, although; *adv.*, even  
**quando**, *adv.*, when  
**quandóquidem**, *conj.*, since, because, seeing that  
**quantíllus**, -a, -um, how little  
**quantócius**, *adv.*, sooner, more quickly  
**quantum**, *adv.*, as much as  
**quantus**, -a, -um, what, how great, how much; **quanto . . . tanto**, the more . . . the more  
**quantúlibet**, -tálibet, -túlibet, however great  
**quaprópter**, *adv.*, wherefore  
**quare**, *adv.*, why  
**quartus**, -a, -um, fourth  
**quartus décimus**, -a, -a, -um, -um, fourteenth  
**Quarum**, -i, *n.*, Quero  
**quasi**, *adv.*, as if, like, as it were; about  
**quassátio**, -onis, *f.*, affliction, scourge

- quátenus, *adv.***, how far, in so far as; so that  
**quater, *adv.***, four times  
**quátère, quassi, quassus, (io)**, to shake  
**quatérnio, -onis, *f.***, quaternion; a body of four soldiers  
**quatrídúanus, -a, -um**, of four days  
**quatríduum, -i, *n.***, space of four days  
**quátuor**, four  
**quatuórdecim**, fourteen  
**-que, *conj., enclitic***, and  
**quéis = quibus**  
**quemádmódum, *adv.***, as, just as  
**quercus, -us, *f.***, oak  
**queréla, -ae, *f.***, complaint; blame  
**querimónia, -ae, *f.***, complaint  
**questus, -us, *m.***, complaint, lament  
**qui, quae, quod**, who, which, what  
**quia, *conj.***, for, because; that  
**quid, what? why? ut quid**, to what purpose  
**quidam, quaedam, quoddam** and *subst.* **quiddam**, a certain person or thing; some, some one, something  
**quidem, *adv.***, indeed  
**quidnam**, what then?  
**quies, -etis, *f.***, rest, quiet  
**quiéscens, -entis**, of rest or quiet  
**quiéscere, -evi, -etus**, to be still; cease  
**quiétus, -a, -um**, quiet, peaceful  
**quílibet, quaelíbet, quódlíbet** and *subst.* **quídlibet**, any, any one, anything whatsoever  
**quín, *conj.***, that not  
**quínárius, -a, -um**, five  
**quíndecim**, fifteen  
**quingentésimus, -a, -um**, five hundredth  
**quingénti, -ae, -a**, five hundred  
**quínimmo (quínimo), *adv.***, yea rather  
**quínquagenárius, -a, -um**, fifty in number  
**quínquagésima: domínica in —, Quínquagesima** Sunday  
**quínquagínta**, fifty  
**quínque**, five  
**quínquénnis**, at the age of five  
**quínquénnum, -ii, *n.***, a period of five years  
**quínquies**, five times  
**quintus, -a, -um**, fifth  
**quintusdécimus, -a, -a, -um, -um**, fifteenth  
**quippe, *conj.***, for, certainly  
**quíppiam (quídpiam)**, anyone (anything)  
**quíre (queo), -ivi and -ii, -itus**, to be able, can  
**quis, quid, *interrog. pron.***, who? what?  
**quis, quid, *indef. pron.***, anyone, anything  
**quisnam, quidnam**, who then? what then?  
**quíspiam, quaeípiam, quódpiam** and *subst.* **quídpiam** or **quíppiam**, any one, anything, some one, something  
**quisquam, quaequam, quidquam**, any person, anybody, any one, anything  
**quisque, quaeque, quidque** and *adj.* **quodque**, each, every, every one, everybody, everything  
**quisquis, quaequae, quidquid**, and *adj.* **quodquod**, any, each, whoever, whatever  
**quo, *adv.***, whither; so that  
**quoadúsque, *conj.***, until  
**quócírca, *adv.***, therefore, on that account  
**quocúmque, *adv.***, whithersoever, to whatever place  
**quod, that, which, what; because**  
**quodámmodo, *adv.***, in a certain way; as it were  
**quodcúmque**, whatsoever  
**quómodo, *adv.***, as, how?  
**quomodocúmque, *adv.***, in any way  
**quodam, *adv.***, formerly, once

quóniam, *conj.*, for, because, since;  
that  
quoque, *adv.*, also  
quot, how many; quotquot, however  
many  
quotánnis, *adv.*, yearly  
quotidiánus, -a, -um, daily  
quotidie, *adv.*, daily, every day  
quóties, *adv.*, how often  
quotiescúmque, *adv.*, as often as  
quóusque, *adv.*, how long?  
quum (cum), *conj.*, when, since, as  
often as

## R

rabbi, rabbi, master  
rábidus, -a, -um, mad  
rábies, -ei, *f.*, ravening  
raca, silly person  
racémus, -i, *m.*, cluster  
rádere, rasi, rasus, to scrape away  
radicáre, to strike root  
radicátus, -a, -um, rooted  
radícitus, *adv.*, by the roots  
rádius, -ii, *m.*, ray  
radix, -icis, *f.*, root; radices, *pl.*, base;  
in radícibus, at the foot  
ramus, -i, *m.*, branch, bough  
rana, -ae, *f.*, frog  
rapax, -acis, ravening  
rapax, -acis, *m.*, extortioner  
rápere, -ui, raptus, (io), to seize, catch,  
take by force, take or carry up; pluck  
rápiens, -entis, ravening  
rapína, -ae, *f.*, robbery  
raptor, -oris, *m.*, extortioner; robber  
raptus, -a, -um, to be caught or carried  
up; rapt  
rarus, -a, -um, strange  
Rástislaus, -i, *m.*, Rastislav  
ratis, -is, *f.*, raft, float  
rátio, -onis, *f.*, reckoning, retribution;  
account; rule, way; reasoning

rationábilis, -e, reasonable, rational;  
rationábília, *n. pl.*, truths  
rationális, -e, rational  
ratus, -a, -um, settled, ratified, valid  
ráucitas, -atis, *f.*, harshness  
raucus, -a, -um, hoarse  
Ravénnas, -atis, belonging to or an in-  
habitant of Ravenna  
Ravennaténsis, -e, of Ravenna  
Raymúndus, -i, *m.*, Raymund  
Raymúndus Nonnátus, -i, -i, *m.*, Ray-  
mund Nonnatus  
re-, *prefix* sometimes used for empha-  
sis; réipsa cum carne, with the very  
flesh itself  
reaedificáre, to rebuild  
reális, -e, real  
reamplécti, -plexus sum, *dep. 3.* to em-  
brace again  
reápse, *adv.*, indeed, in truth  
reátus, -us, *m.*, guilt, fault  
rebelláre, to rebel  
rebéllio, -onis, *f.*, rebellion  
rebéllis, -e, rebellious  
recalcitráre, to kick  
recapitulátio, -onis, *f.*, repetition  
Reccarédus, -i, *m.*, Recared  
recédere, -cessi, -cessus, to fall away,  
depart or stray from  
recens, -entis, recent, new  
recensére, to review, recall, celebrate  
receptáculum, -i, *n.*, vessel, receptacle  
receptíbilis, -e, acceptable  
recéptor, -oris, *m.*, receiver  
recípere, -cepi, -ceptus, (io), to receive,  
recover  
recitáre, to recite  
recitátio, -onis, *f.*, recitation  
reclináre, to lay  
recogitáre, to consider, reflect  
recognítio, -onis, *f.*, recognition, ex-  
amination  
recólere, -cólui, -cultus, to contem-  
plate, recollect

- reconciliáre**, to reconcile  
**reconciliátio**, -onis, *f.*, reconciliation  
**reconciliátor**, -oris, *m.*, intermediary  
**recóndere**, -didi, -ditus, to lay up  
**recordári**, *dep.*, to remember  
**recordátio**, -onis, *f.*, memory, remembrance; record  
**recreáre**, to refresh, treat  
**recte**, *adv.*, rightly, well  
**rectitúdo**, -inis, *f.*, rightness; righteousness  
**rector**, -oris, *m.*, ruler  
**rectus**, -a, -um, right, upright, righteous, straight  
**recubáre**, to recline  
**recúbitus**, -us, *m.*, seat  
**recúmbere**, -cúbui, to lean; recline, sit down; be at table  
**recuperáre**, to recover  
**recúrrere**, -curri, -cursus, to occur  
**recusáre**, to refuse  
**redamáre**, to return love for love  
**redargútio**, -onis, *f.*, retort  
**reddere**, -didi, -ditus, to restore, render, pay  
**reddítio**, -onis, *f.*, return, restoration  
**redémptio**, -onis, *f.*, redemption, deliverance  
**redémptor**, -oris, *m.*, redeemer  
**redígere**, -egi, -actus, to bring down  
**redímere**, -emi, -emptus, to redeem  
**redintegráre**, to raise up, restore  
**redíre**, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to return; pay  
**redítus**, -us, *m.*, return; revenue  
**redonáre**, to give back  
**reducere**, -duxi, -ductus, to bring back or again; draw back  
**redundáre**, to overflow  
**redux**, -ucis, returned  
**refécitio**, -onis, *f.*, refreshment; refectory  
**reféllere**, -felli, to refute, disprove  
**reférre**, -tuli, -latus, to yield; tell, refer  
**refértus**, -a, -um, crowded  
**refícere**, -feci, -fectus, (io), to refresh; mend, repair  
**refléxus**, -a, -um, crooked  
**refloréscere**, -flóruí, to flourish or bloom again  
**réfluus**, -a, -um, flowing back  
**refocilláre**, to relieve  
**reformáre**, to renew, reform  
**reformátio**, -onis, *f.*, reformation  
**reformidáre**, to dread  
**refovére**, -fovi, -fotus, to refresh, revive  
**refraenáre**, to restrain  
**refragári**, *dep.*, to oppose  
**refrenáre**, to bridle  
**refrigeráre**, to cool; refresh  
**refrigérium**, -ii, *n.*, refreshment, recreation  
**refrigéscere**, -frixí, to grow cold  
**réfuga**, -ae, *m.*, forsaker  
**refúgium**, -ii, *n.*, refuge  
**refulgére**, -fulsi, to shine brightly  
**refúndere**, -fudi, -fusus, to pour back, restore  
**regális**, -e, regal, royal  
**regenerátio**, -onis, *f.*, regeneration  
**regenerátor**, -oris, *m.*, regenerator  
**régere**, rexí, rectus, to govern  
**régimen**, -inis, *n.*, government, direction  
**regína**, -ae, *f.*, queen  
**regío**, -onis, *f.*, region, country  
**regíus**, -a, -um, of a king, royal  
**regnáre**, to reign  
**regnum**, -i, *n.*, kingdom  
**regredi**, -gressus sum, (io), to go back, return  
**régula**, -ae, *f.*, rule  
**reguláris**, -e, regular  
**régulus**, -i, *m.*, nobleman, ruler; basilisk  
**reinveníre**, -veni, -ventus, to find again

- reípse, -a, -um, the very (re- is for emphasis)
- relátus, -us, *m.*, narrative, recital
- relaxáre, to loose, forgive
- relegáre, to remove, banish
- relégeré, -legi, -lectus, to traverse again, collect
- religáre, to fasten, hang
- relígio, -onis, *f.*, religion, reverence; a religious order
- religióstitas, -atis, *f.*, religiousness
- religiósus, -a, -um, religious
- relinquere, -liqui, -lictus, to leave behind
- reliquiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, relics, remains; remnant
- reliquus, -a, -um, remaining; et reliqua, and so forth
- reluctári, *dep.*, to strive, contend or struggle against
- remanére, -mansi, -mansus, to be left, remain
- remeáre, to go back
- remédium, -ii, *n.*, remedy
- rememorári, *dep.*, to remember; be remembered
- remetíri, -mensus sum, *dep.* 4, to measure again
- remex, -igis, *m.*, rower
- remigáre, to row
- remínisci, *dep.* 3, to remember
- remíssio, -onis, *f.*, remission, absolution, forgiveness
- remíssus, -a, -um, negligent, slothful, remiss
- remíttere, -misi, -missus, to send back; remit; forgive
- remótus, -a, -um, far off
- removére, -movi, -motus, to remove, to take away
- remunerátio, -onis, *f.*, reward
- remunerátor, -oris, *m.*, rewarder
- renásci, -natus sum, *dep.* 3, to be re-generated
- renes, -um and -ium, *m. pl.*, kidneys, loins, reins
- renidére, to shine
- reníti, *dep.* 3, to oppose
- renováre, to renew, build anew
- renovátio, -onis, *f.*, renovation
- renúere, -ui, to refuse
- renuntiáre, to relate, bring word; appoint; renounce
- reosculári, *dep.*, to kiss again
- repágulum, -i, *n.*, barrier; restraint
- reparáre, to restore; anno reparátæ salútis, in the year of Redemption
- reparátio, -onis, *f.*, reparation; regeneration; healing
- reparátrix, -icis, *f.*, restorer
- repéllere, -puli, -pulsus, to cast off; overcome
- repéndere, -pendi, -pensus, to repay, return
- repentínus, -a, -um, sudden
- reperire, -peri, -pertus, to find, obtain
- repétere, -ivi and -ii, -itus, to exact of; repeat
- repénte, *adv.*, suddenly
- replére, -plevi, -pletus, to fill
- replésti = replevisti, *perfect tense* of replére
- replétus, -a, -um, filled
- repónere, -pósui, -pósitus, to lay
- reportáre, to bring back; receive, gain
- repósitus, -a, -um, laid up
- repraesentáre, to show, present; lead
- reprehénsio, -onis, *f.*, censure
- reprímere, -pressi, -pressus, to curb, repress
- reprobáre, to refuse, reject
- réprobus, -a, -um, good for nothing; reprehensible
- réprobus, -i, *m.*, castaway
- repromíssio, -onis, *f.*, promise
- repromíttere, -misi, -missus, to promise in return
- reptáre, to crawl, creep

- réptile, -is, n.**, creeping creature, reptile  
**repúdiúm, -ii, n.**, divorce  
**repugnáre, to disagree with; resist**  
**reputáre, to repute, esteem**  
**réquies, -etis and -ei, f.**, rest  
**requiescere, -evi, -etus, to rest, be at rest**  
**requiétio, -onis, f.**, rest  
**requirere, -sivi, -situs, to seek; require; care for**  
**réri, ratus sum, dep. 2, to think, esteem, suppose**  
**res, rei, f.**, thing; **quem ab rem, wherefore; res familiáris, inheritance**  
**rescéndere, -scidi, -scissus, to annul, repeal**  
**resciscere, -scivi and -scii, -scitus, to find out**  
**rescribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, to write back or again**  
**rescriptum, -i, n.**, copy of a writing  
**resecáre, to cut off; root out**  
**reseráre, to open; reveal, make clear**  
**reserváre, to save; preserve; reserve**  
**residére, -sedi, -sessus, to sit up; remain; reside**  
**resíduum, -i, n.**, remainder  
**resíduus, -a, -um, remaining; left over**  
**resína, -ae, f.**, balm  
**resipiscere, -sipui, -sipii, and -sipívi, to come to one's right mind, repent**  
**resistere, -stiti, to resist, withstand**  
**resolútio, -onis, f.**, dissolution  
**resolútus, -a, -um, careless**  
**resólvere, -solvi, -solútus, to loosen**  
**resonáre, to resound**  
**respéctio, -onis, f.**, esteem  
**respectivus, -a, -um, respective**  
**respéctus, -us, m.**, respect  
**respérgere, -spersi, -spersus, to sprinkle; scatter; shed; stain**  
**respícere, -spexi, -spectus, (io), to look; receive one's sight**  
**respiráre, to breathe; have life again; find relief**  
**resplendére, -ui, to shine, be bright, show forth**  
**respondére, -spondi, -sponsus, to answer, respond**  
**responsórium, -ii, n.**, responsory  
**respónsum, -i, n.**, answer, response  
**respública, reipúblicae, f.**, republic, commonwealth  
**respúere, -ui, to spit out; reject; despise**  
**restáre, to remain**  
**restauráre, to restore**  
**restinguere, -stinxi, -stinctus, to quench, extinguish**  
**restitúere, -ui, -utus, to set again; restore**  
**restitútio, -onis, f.**, restitution, restoration  
**restitutor, -oris, m.**, restorer  
**restrictio, -onis, f.**, restriction, restraint  
**resultáre, to resound, rebound**  
**resúrgerere, -surréxi, -surréctus, to rise again; awake**  
**resurréctio, -onis, f.**, rising up; resurrection  
**resuscitáre, to raise up**  
**retardáre, to stop, check**  
**rete, -is, n.**, net  
**retéxere, -téxui, -tectus, to weave again; repeat**  
**retiáculum, -i, n.**, net  
**reticére, -ui, to be silent (about)**  
**retinére, -tínui, -tentus, to keep, retain; remember; imitate**  
**retráhere, -traxi, -tractus, to restrain; withdraw**  
**retribúere, -ui, -utus, to render, repay; bring**  
**retribútio, -onis, f.**, reward, recompense, benefit, favor  
**retro, adv.**, behind; back

- retroáctus**, -a, -um, past  
**retrográdus**, -a, -um, going backward  
**retórsum**, *adv.*, back, backwards  
**retúndere**, -tudi, -tusus, to blunt  
**reus**, -i, *m.*, defendant, criminal, guilty  
 one  
**reveláre**, to reveal, disclose, make  
 known, show  
**revelátio**, -onis, *f.*, revelation  
**revéra**, *adv.*, indeed, truly  
**reveréntia**, -ae, *f.*, fear, reverence  
**reverénter**, *adv.*, reverently  
**reveréři**, *dep.* 2, to be ashamed  
**revérti**, -versus sum, *dep.* 3, to return;  
 depart  
**revincíre**, -vinxi, -vinctus, to bind, bind  
 fast  
**reviréscere**, -vírui, to become green  
 again  
**revívire**, -vixi, -victus, to revive  
**reviviscere**, -vixi, to come to life again,  
 live again, revive  
**revocáre**, to call back or away  
**rex**, regis, *m.*, king  
**Reyi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, the Rey family  
**Rhaeti**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Rhaetians  
**Rhaétia**, -ae, *f.*, Rhaetia, Tyrol  
**rhamnus**, -i, *m.*, bramble, thornbush  
**rheda**, -ae, *f.*, carriage with four  
 wheels; chariot  
**Rhegiénsis**, -e, of Reggio  
**Rheménsis**, -e, of Rheims  
**Rhemi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Rheims  
**rhetórica**, -ae, *f.*, rhetoric  
**rhetóricus**, -i, *m.*, rhetorician  
**rhomphaea**, -ae, *f.*, sword  
**rhythmus**, -i, *m.*, rhythm  
**rictus**, -us, *m.*, open mouth, expanded  
 jaws  
**ridére**, risi, risus, to laugh, laugh at  
**rigáre**, to water, sprinkle, wash  
**rigor**, -oris, *m.*, rigor, stiffness  
**ripa**, -ae, *f.*, bank  
**risus**, -us, *m.*, laughter  
**rite**, *adv.*, fitly, with suitable religious  
 ceremonies  
**ritus**, -us, *m.*, rite  
**rívulus**, -i, *m.*, brook, rivulet  
**rivus**, -i, *m.*, river, brook  
**rixa**, -ae, *f.*, quarrel  
**rixári**, *dep.*, to quarrel  
**Robértus**, -i, *m.*, Robert  
**roboráre**, to make strong, strengthen  
**roborátor**, -oris, *m.*, strengthener  
**robur**, -oris, *n.*, strength  
**robústus**, -a, -um, mighty  
**Roccha Porrena**, -ae, -ae, *f.*, Rocca  
 Porena  
**Rodardénsis**, -e, of Rodersdorf  
**Rodbódus**, -i, *m.*, Rodbod  
**Roffénsis**, -e, of Rochester  
**rogáre**, to beseech  
**rogátio**, -onis, *f.*, rogation  
**rogátus**, -us, *m.*, request  
**Rogérius**, -ii, *m.*, Roger  
**rogus**, -i, *m.*, funeral pile  
**Roma**, -ae, *f.*, Rome  
**Románus**, -a, -um, of Rome, Roman  
**Romuáldus**, -i, *m.*, Romuald  
**Romúleus**, -a, -um, of Romulus  
**roráre**, to cause dew to drop  
**ros**, roris, *m.*, dew  
**rosa**, -ae, *f.*, rose  
**Rosa**, -ae, *f.*, Rose  
**rosárium**, -ii, *n.*, rosary  
**róseus**, -a, -um, roseate  
**rostrum**, -i, *n.*, beak; prow  
**rota**, -ae, *f.*, wheel  
**ruber**, -bra, -brum, red  
**rubére**, to redden  
**rubéscere**, -ui, to become red  
**rúbeus**, -a, -um, red  
**rubicúndus**, -a, -um, ruddy  
**rubígo**, -inis, *f.*, rust; mildew  
**rubor**, -oris, *m.*, shame  
**rúbrica**, -ae, *f.*, rubric  
**rubus**, -i, *m.*, bush  
**rudis**, -e, ignorant, illiterate, rough

**rudus**, -a, -um, brutish  
**ruère**, rui, rutilus, to rush, hasten; fall down; fail, be ruined  
**rufus**, -a, -um, ruddy, red  
**ruga**, -ae, *f.*, wrinkle  
**rugire**, to roar  
**rugitus**, -us, *m.*, roaring  
**ruína**, -ae, *f.*, fall; invasion; breach; destruction  
**rumor**, -oris, *m.*, fame  
**rumpere**, rupi, ruptus, to break  
**rupes**, -is, *f.*, stony hill, sharp cliff, rock  
**ruptio**, -onis, *f.*, breaking open, an injuring  
**ruícola**, -ae, *c.*, peasant  
**rursum**, *adv.*, again, anew  
**rus**, ruris, *n.*, the country  
**Ruthéni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Ruthenians  
**rutiláre**, to glow

## S

**Sabaéus**, -a, -um, Sabaeen  
**Sábaoth** (Hebrew), armies, hosts  
**Sabáudia**, -ae, *f.*, Savoy  
**sabbatísmus**, -i, *m.*, a day of rest; keeping of the Sabbath  
**sábbatum**, -i, *n.*, Sabbath; Saturday; week; **sábbata**, *n. pl.*, Sabbath; **una sabbatórum** (**sábbati**), the first day of the week  
**sábulum**, -i, *n.*, sand  
**sácculus**, -i, *m.*, purse  
**saccus**, -i, *m.*, sackcloth  
**sacéllum**, -i, *n.*, chapel  
**sacer**, -cra, -crum, sacred  
**sacérδος**, -otis, *m.*, priest; **príncipes sacerdotum**, chief priests  
**sacerdotális**, -e, sacerdotal, priestly  
**sacerdotium**, -ii, *n.*, priestly function, priesthood  
**sacraméntális**, -e, sacramental  
**sacraméntum**, -i, *n.*, sacrament, sacramental grace

**sacráre**, to consecrate, hallow  
**sacrificáre**, to sacrifice, offer up  
**sacrificium**, -ii, *n.*, sacrifice  
**sacrosánctus**, -a, -um, most sacred  
**sacrum**, -i, *n.*, holy thing; grace  
**Sadducaéi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Sadducees  
**saeculum** = **saeculum**  
**saeculáris**, -e, worldly; **saeculária**, *n. pl.*, feast, celebration  
**saeculum**, -i, *n.*, time, period, age; world; in **saecula saeculorum**, world without end; a **saeculo**, from the beginning, from everlasting; a **saeculo et in saeculum**, from eternity to eternity  
**saepe**, *adv.*, often  
**saeviens**, -entis, fierce  
**saevire**, to rage  
**saevítia**, -ae, *f.*, fury, cruelty  
**saevus**, -a, -um, cruel  
**sagéna**, -ae, *f.*, net  
**sagináre**, to feed  
**saginátus**, -a, -um, fatted  
**sagítta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow  
**sagittáre**, to shoot with arrows  
**sagittárius**, -ii, *m.*, archer  
**Sahagúnium**, -i, *n.*, Sahagun  
**sal**, -is, *m.* and *n.*, salt  
**Salárius**, -a, -um, Salarian  
**Salernitánus**, -a, -um, of Salerno  
**Salérnum**, -i, *n.*, Salerno  
**Salésium**, -ii, *n.*, Sales  
**Salésius**, -a, -um, of Sales  
**Sálicus**, -a, -um, Salic  
**salínae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, salt pits  
**salire**, súli, saltus, to spring up, leap  
**salíva**, -ae, *f.*, spittle, saliva  
**salix**, -icis, *f.*, willow  
**Sallustíanus**, -a, -um, of Sallust  
**Salmántica**, -ae, *f.*, Salamanca  
**Salmanticénsis**, -e, of Salamanca  
**Sálonon**, -onis, *m.*, Solomon  
**salsúgo**, -inis, *f.*, saltness; salt desert  
**saltáre**, to dance



- saltatio**, -onis, *f.*, dancing, dance  
**saltátrix**, -icis, *f.*, dancing girl  
**saltem**, *adv.*, at least  
**saltus**, -us, *m.*, forest  
**salúbris**, -e, or **salúber**, -bris, -bre, strong; good, wholesome; useful  
**salúbritas**, -atis, *f.*, health  
**salúbriter**, *adv.*, wholesomely; profitably  
**salus**, -utis, *f.*, salvation, deliverance; health; greeting  
**salutáre**, to greet, salute  
**salutáre**, -is, *n.*, health; salvation  
**salutáris**, -e, wholesome, saving, salutary  
**salutáriter**, *adv.*, beneficially  
**salutatio**, -onis, *f.*, salutation  
**salútifer**, -a, -um, of salvation, saving  
**salváre**, to save  
**salvatio**, -onis, *f.*, salvation  
**salvátor**, -oris, *m.*, savior  
**salve!** (salvéte, salvéto), hail  
**salvére**, to be well  
**salvificáre**, to save  
**Sálvius**, -ii, *m.*, Salvi  
**salvus**, -a, -um, saved, safe; whole  
**Samaritánus**, -a, -um, Samaritan  
**Samaritánus**, -i, *m.*, Samaritan  
**sambúca**, -ae, *f.*, sackbut, a kind of musical instrument  
**samech**, the fifteenth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to English *s*  
**sanáre**, to heal  
**Sanciánus**, -i, *m.*, Sancian (a Chinese island)  
**sancíre**, **saxi**, **sanctus**, to make sacred; forbid  
**sancta**, -ae, *f.*, saint  
**Sancta Fides**, -ae, -ei, *f.*, Santa Fe  
**sanctificáre**, to sanctify, hallow  
**sanctificatio**, -onis, *f.*, holiness; sacred mystery; blessing; sanctuary  
**sanctificátor**, -oris, *m.*, sanctifier  
**sanctificium**, -ii, *n.*, shrine, sanctuary  
**sanctimónia**, -ae, *f.*, holiness  
**sanctimoniális**, -e, pious  
**sanctimoniális**, -is, *f.*, nun  
**sánctio**, -onis, *f.*, sanction, rule  
**sánctitas**, -atis, *f.*, sanctity  
**sanctitúdo**, -inis, *f.*, holiness  
**sanctuárium**, -ii, *n.*, sanctuary  
**sanctum**, -i, *n.*, holy place; sanctuary  
**sanctus**, -a, -um, holy, godly, saintly; **sancta sanctorum**, holy of holies  
**sanctus**, -i, *m.*, saint  
**Sanctus Facúndus**, -i, -i, *m.*, San Facundo  
**Sanctus Nicoláus de Portu**, -i, -i, *m.*, San Nicola del Porto  
**sanguíneus**, -a, -um, of blood  
**sanguis**, -inis, *m.*, blood  
**sánies**, -ei, *f.*, matter, pus  
**sánitas**, -atis, *f.*, health  
**sanus**, -a, -um, whole, healthy  
**sápere**, -ii, (io), to understand; be wise; **idípsum sápere**, to be of one mind  
**sápiens**, -entis, wise  
**sapiéntia**, -ae, *f.*, wisdom  
**sapor**, -oris, *m.*, taste  
**sapphírus**, -i, *f.*, sapphire  
**Saracéni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Saracens  
**sárcina**, -ae, *f.*, pack, burden  
**sarcíre**, **sarsi**, **sartus**, to repair, restore  
**sárculum**, -i, *n.*, hoe, spade  
**Sardicénsis**, -e, of Sardis  
**sárdinis**, -e: **lapis sárdinis**, sardine stone  
**sárdius**, -ii, *f.*, sard  
**Sardus**, -a, -um, Sardinian  
**sardónychus**, -a, -um, sardonyx  
**sárdonyx**, -nychis, *f.*, sardonyx  
**Sarépta** (Saréphta), Sarephta  
**sartágo**, -inis, *f.*, frying pan  
**sartatécta**, -orum, *n. pl.*, repairs  
**sartus**, -a, -um, repaired  
**Sásimi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, people of Sasima

- sat**, *adv.*, enough  
**satágere**, to be very busy; be in trouble  
**satagitáre**, to be very busy or diligent  
**satan**, *indecl.*, satan, adversary  
**Sátanas**, -ae, *m.*, Satan  
**satélles**, -itis, *c.*, guard; companion; servant; officer of justice  
**satiáre**, to nourish, satisfy, fill, sate, feed  
**satis**, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently; greatly, exceedingly  
**satisfácere**, -feci, -factus, (*io*), to satisfy  
**satisfáctio**, -onis, *f.*, satisfaction  
**sator**, -oris, *m.*, sower; source; begetter, father  
**sátrapa**, -ae, *m.*, noble, lord, satrap  
**saturáre**, to fill  
**saturátió**, -onis, *f.*, filling, satisfying  
**saturítas**, -atis, *f.*, satisfaction, satiety, abundance, in **saturitáte**, to the full  
**satus**, -i, *m.*, measure, sowing  
**sauciáre**, to wound  
**sáucius**, -a, -um, wounded  
**Saulus**, -i, *m.*, Saul  
**sáxeus**, -a, -um, stony  
**Saxónia**, -ae, *f.*, Saxony  
**saxum**, -i, *n.*, stone, rock  
**scabéllum**, -i, *n.*, small stool, footstool  
**scala**, -ae, *f.*, ladder  
**scalprum**, -i, *n.*, chisel  
**scandalizáre**, to scandalize  
**scándalum**, -i, *n.*, scandal; trap, stumbling block  
**scándere**, scandi, scansus, to climb, rise  
**scápulae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, shoulders; wings  
**scapuláris**, -e, scapular  
**scatére**, to gush, gush forth; swarm; abound  
**scaturíre**, to gush forth  
**scelerátus**, -a, -um, wicked  
**sceléstus**, -a, -um, wicked, shameless  
**scelus**, -eris, *n.*, sin, crime  
**scenofactórius**, -a, -um, tent making  
**Scenopégia**, -ae, *f.*, Feast of Tabernacles  
**scéptriger**, -a, -um, scepter bearing  
**sceptrum**, -i, *n.*, scepter  
**schema**, -atis, *n.*, form, scheme  
**schisma**, -atis, *n.*, schism  
**schismáticus**, -a, -um, schismatic  
**schinus**, -i, *f.*, mastic tree  
**schola**, -ae, *f.*, school  
**sciens**, -entis, expert  
**sciénter**, *adv.*, wisely  
**sciéntia**, -ae, *f.*, knowledge, science  
**scílicet**, *adv.*, actually  
**scíndere**, scidi, scissus, to rend, cut; — **médium**, to cut in two  
**scintílla**, -ae, *f.*, spark  
**scíre**, -ivi and -ii, -itus, to know, know how  
**sciscitári**, *dep.*, to inquire, inquire into  
**scissúra**, -ae, *f.*, rending, splitting; piece  
**scissus**, -a, -um, torn, rent, broken  
**scitum**, -i, *n.*, decree, statute  
**scopa**, -ae, *f.*, broom; **scopis mundátus**, swept  
**scópere**, to search thoroughly  
**scópulus**, -i, *m.*, rock, cliff  
**scória**, -ae, *f.*, dross  
**scórpíó**, -onis, *m.*, scorpion; whip loaded with metal  
**scortári**, *dep.*, to commit uncleanness  
**scortum**, -i, *n.*, uncleanness, immorality  
**Scoti**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Scots  
**Scótia**, -ae, *f.*, Scotland  
**scriba**, -ae, *m.*, scribe, scrivener, writer  
**scríbere**, scripsi, scriptus, to write  
**scríptio**, -onis, *f.*, writing  
**scriptor**, -oris, *m.*, writer  
**scriptum** -i, *n.*, writing, publication  
**scríptúra**, -ae, *f.*, Scripture; writing  
**scrutáre** (-ari), to search  
**scrutátió**, -onis, *f.*, discerning

- scrutátor, -oris, m.,** searcher  
**scrutínium, -ii, n.,** search  
**scúlpitile, -is, n.,** graven thing, idol  
**sculptura, -ae, f.,** graven work, grav-  
 ing  
**sculptus, -a, -um,** graven  
**scurrílitás, -atis, f.,** scurrility  
**scutáriu, -ii, m.,** shield-bearer  
**scútulum, -i, n.,** escutcheon  
**scutum, -i, n.,** shield  
**scyplus, -i, m.,** goblet, cup  
**Scýthia, -ae, f.,** Scythia, southern Rus-  
 sia  
**Scythópolis, -is, f.,** Beth-shean  
**se, third person of the reflexive pro-**  
**noun,** himself, herself, etc.  
**Sebastiánus, -i, m.,** Sebastian  
**secáre, sécui, sectus, to cut; — mé-**  
**dium, to cut in two; destroy, upset;**  
**terra non secta,** untilled earth  
**secédere, -cessi, -cessus, to retire**  
**secéssus, -us, m.,** privy; retreat  
**seclúdere, -clusi, -clusus, to exclude**  
**secretális, -e, hidden**  
**secretárium, -ii, n.,** place of retirement,  
 secret place, solitude; private chapel  
**secréto, adv.,** apart; silently  
**secrétum, -i, n.,** secret  
**secrétus, -a, -um,** secret, separate, apart  
**secta, -ae, f.,** sect  
**sectári, dep.,** to follow, pursue  
**sectátor, -oris, m.,** follower, pursuer  
**secundáre, to direct favorably**  
**secúndo, adv.,** a second time  
**secúndum, prep.,** according to  
**secundus, -a, -um,** next, second  
**secúris, -is, f.,** axe  
**secúritás, -atis, f.,** safety, security  
**secúrus, -a, -um,** secure; steadfast;  
 quiet  
**secus, prep.,** by, beside, along, near,  
 on, at  
**secus, adv.,** otherwise  
**sed, conj.,** but, yet  
**sedáre, to soothe, still, calm, appease,**  
 settle, assuage  
**sedére, sedi, sessus, to sit**  
**sedes, -is, f.,** place, seat; throne; habi-  
 tation; see  
**sedíle, -is, n.,** seat; station  
**sedítio, -onis, f.,** sedition  
**seditiósus, -a, -um,** seditious  
**seditiósus, -i, m.,** conspirator  
**sedúcere, -duxi, -ductus, to deceive,**  
 seduce  
**sedúctor, -oris, m.,** deceiver  
**sédule, adv.,** diligently  
**sedúlitás, -atis, f.,** watchfulness  
**sédulo, adv.,** industriously  
**sédulus, -a, -um,** diligent, earnest  
**Sedúni, -orum, m. pl.,** Seduni (Helve-  
 tian people near modern Sion in  
 Switzerland)  
**seges, -etis, f.,** harvest; corn  
**segméntum, -i, n.,** piece, shaving  
**segnis, -e, slow, sluggish**  
**segnities, -ei, f.,** slothfulness  
**segregáre, to separate**  
**Seguntínus, -a, -um,** of Sigüenza  
**sejúngere, -junxi, -junctus, to separate**  
 from  
**selígere, -legi, -lectus, to choose**  
**Selímus, -i, m.,** Solyman  
**sella, -ae, f.,** stool, chair  
**semel, adv.,** once  
**semen, -inis, n.,** seed; descendant  
**seméntis, -is, f.,** seed  
**seméstris, -e, of six months**  
**semetípsum, himself**  
**semiánimis, -e, half-dead**  
**semidúplex, -icis, semi-double**  
**semimórtuus, -a, -um, half-dead**  
**semináre, to sow**  
**seminárium, -ii, n.,** sowing; stock  
**seminátor, -oris, m.,** sower  
**sémita, -ae, f.,** path  
**sémitum, gen. pl.,** seed  
**semiústus, -a, -um, half-burnt**

- semivivus, -a, -um,** half-alive, half-dead  
**seмовére, -movi, -motus,** to separate; renew  
**semper, adv.,** ever, always  
**sempitérnus, -a, -um,** eternal, everlasting  
**Senánus, -i, m.,** the River Shannon  
**Senárius, -ii, m.,** Senario  
**senátor, -oris, m.,** senator  
**senatórius, -a, -um,** senatorial  
**senátus, -i or -us, m.,** senate; parliament; college  
**senécta, -ae, f.,** old age  
**senéctus, -utis, f.,** old age  
**Senénsis, -e,** of Siena  
**senére, to be old**  
**senéscere, -ui,** to grow old  
**senex, senis,** old; (*as a noun*) old man, ancient  
**senílis, -e,** aged  
**sénior, -oris, m.,** elder, ancient  
**sénium, -ii, n.,** old age  
**sensátus, -a, -um,** wise  
**sensus, -us, m.,** sense, feeling; understanding, perception, mind  
**senténtia, -ae, f.,** sentence  
**sentína, -ae, f.,** the hold of a ship or the bilge water in the hold  
**sentíre, sensi, sensus,** to feel, perceive, experience  
**seórsum, adv.,** apart, aside  
**separáre, to separate**  
**separátim, adv.,** apart, separately  
**separátio, -onis, f.,** separation  
**sepelíre, -ivi or -ii, sepúltus,** to bury  
**sepes, -is, f.,** hedge, fence  
**sepíre, sepsi, septus,** to guard; fence in  
**sepónere, -pósui, -pósitus,** to put apart or aside  
**septem, seven**  
**septemplíciter, adv.,** sevenfold  
**septenárius, -a, -um,** of the number seven, sevenfold  
**septénnis, at the age of seven**  
**septentrionális, -e,** north  
**sépties, adv.,** seven times  
**septifórmis, -e,** sevenfold  
**séptimus, -a, -um,** seventh  
**septuagenárius, -a, -um,** of seventy years of age  
**Septuagésima: domínica in —,** Septuagesima Sunday  
**septuágies, adv.,** seventy times  
**septuagínta, seventy**  
**Septuagínta, -ae, f.,** Septuagint  
**septuplum, adv.,** sevenfold  
**sepúlchrum (sepúlcrum), -i, n.,** sepulcher  
**sepultúra, -ae, f.,** burial; burying place  
**sequéla, -ae, m.,** follower  
**sequéntia, -ae, f.,** continuation  
**sequestráre, to separate**  
**sequi, secutus sum, dep. 3,** to follow  
**sequíor, -ius,** worse; lesser; *ad sequióris* sexus educationem, for the training of school teachers (lit., for the education of the lesser sex)  
**sera, -ae, f.,** bolt  
**seraph (Hebrew), pl. séráphim, seraph, seraphim**  
**seráphicus, -a, -um,** seraphic  
**sereníssimus, -a, -um,** most serene, sovereign  
**serénitas, -atis, f.,** clearness, fair weather  
**serénus, -a, -um,** serene, bright  
**sérere, sevi, satus,** to sow  
**séries (no gen. or dat.), f.,** succession  
**sério, adv.,** seriously  
**sérius, adv.,** more earnestly  
**sermo, -onis, m.,** word; saying; speech; discourse, sermon  
**sermocinári, dep.,** to talk, converse  
**sermocinátio, -onis, f.,** discussion  
**sero, adv.,** in the evening  
**serótinus, -a, -um,** late; lateward  
**springing**

- serpens, -entis**, creeping  
**serpens, -entis, m. and f.**, serpent  
**serpentinus, -a, -um**, serpentlike  
**serrans, -antis**, like a saw  
**serrátus, -a, -um**, saw-toothed; **Mons Serrátus**, Monserrat  
**serta, -ae, f.**, wreath, garland of flowers  
**serváre**, to keep, preserve; observe, watch  
**Servátor, -oris, m.**, Savior  
**Servi, -orum, m. pl.**, Servites  
**servílis, -e**, servile  
**servíre**, to serve; be obedient; be in bondage  
**servítium, -ii, n.**, service  
**servítus, -utis, f.**, servitude, serving, service, bondage, subjection; use  
**servulus, -i, m.**, young slave or servant, servant-lad  
**servus, -i, m.**, servant, bondman; slave  
**séssio, -onis, f.**, sitting down  
**sensor, -oris, m.**, rider  
**Sessoríanus, -a, -um**, Sessorian  
**seu, conj.**, or  
**Sevísium, -ii, n.**, Sevis  
**sex**, six  
**sexagésima: domínica in —, Sexagesima** Sunday  
**sexagínta**, sixty  
**sexcentésimus, -a, -um**, six hundredth  
**sexcénti, -ae, -a**, six hundred  
**séxdecim**, sixteen  
**sexennális, -e**, of six years  
**séxies, adv.**, six times  
**sexta, -ae, f.**, sext  
**Séxtias: Aquae Séxtiae, -arum, -arum, f. pl.**, Aix  
**sextus, -a, -um**, sixth  
**sextusdécimus, -a, -a, -um, -um**, sixteenth  
**sexus, -us, m.**, sex  
**si, conf.**, if  
**sibiláre**, to hiss  
**síbilus, -i, m.**, hissing  
**Sibýlla, -ae, f.**, Sibyl, a prophetess of Apollo  
**sic, adv.**, so, thus  
**sicárius, -ii, m.**, assassin  
**siccáre**, to dry up  
**siccítas, -atis, f.**, dryness, drought  
**siccum, -i, n.**, desert  
**siccus, -a, -um**, dry  
**sícera, -ae, f.**, a strong drink; cider  
**Síchima, -ae, f.**, Sichem  
**Síchimi, -orum, m. pl.**, people of Sichem  
**Sicília, -ae, f.**, Sicily  
**siclus, -i, m.**, sicle  
**sicubi, adv.**, if anywhere  
**Sículus, -a, -um**, Sicilian  
**sicut (sícuti), adv.**, as, like  
**sidéreum, -i, n.**, heavenly body, star; starry splendor  
**sidéreus, -a, -um**, starry  
**Sidóni, -orum, m. pl.**, Sidonians  
**Sidónia, -ae, f.**, Sidon  
**Sidónius, -a, -um**, of Sidon  
**sidus, -eris, n.**, star  
**sigillátim, adv.**, one by one  
**sigillátivus, -a, -um**, of a seal  
**sigillum, -i, n.**, seal  
**Sigmarínga, -ae, f.**, Sigmaringen  
**signáculum, -i, n.**, little seal; seal  
**signánter, adv.**, carefully; significantly  
**signáre**, to sign, seal; signify  
**signátor, -oris, m.**, witness  
**signifer, -i, m.**, standard bearer  
**significáre**, to signify  
**significátió, -onis, f.**, warning  
**signum, -i, n.**, sign, token; miracle; signet  
**siléntio, adv.**, secretly  
**siléntium, -ii, n.**, silence  
**silére**, to be silent  
**silex, -icis, m.**, rock, flint  
**síliqua, -ae, f.**, husk  
**silva, -ae, f.**, wood, forest, grove

**silvéster, -tris, -tre**, woodland  
**Silvéster, -tri, m.**, Sylvester  
**Silvestríni, -orum, m. pl.**, Sylvestrines  
**símila, -ae, f.**, fine flour  
**similáre**, to liken, compare  
**símilis, -e**, like, similar  
**simíliter, adv.**, in like manner, likewise  
**similitúdo, -inis, f.**, likeness, similitude; parable  
**simoníacús, -a, -um**, pertaining to simony, simoniacal, of the Simonians  
**simplex, -icis**, simple, single, pure  
**simplicítas, -atis, f.**, simplicity  
**simplicíter, adv.**, simply  
**simplificáre**, to simplify  
**simul, adv.**, together, at the same time; withal  
**simulácrum, -i, n.**, idol  
**simulátio, -onis, f.**, dissimulation; pretense, false show  
**simulátor, -oris, m.**, hypocrite  
**sin, conj.**, but if  
**Sina, Sinai**  
**Sinae, -arum, f. pl.**, China  
**sinápis, -is, f.**, mustard, mustard seed  
**sincére, adv.**, sincerely  
**sincérus, -a, -um**, sincere  
**sindon, -onis, f.**, linen cloth  
**sine, prep.**, without  
**sínere, sivi, situs**, to suffer, permit, let alone; place  
**singillátim, adv.**, singly, one by one  
**singuláris, -e**, unique, remarkable, excellent; single, hand to hand; solitary  
**singuláritas, -atis, f.**, oneness  
**singuláriter, adv.**, singularly; alone  
**singulátim, adv.**, one by one  
**síngulus, -a, -um**, each (one), every (one); per síngulos dies, every day; per síngula, particularly  
**siníster, -tra, -trum**, left; left hand  
**sinus, -us, m.**, bosom, breast

**Sipontíni, -orum, m. pl.**, the people of Maria di Siponto  
**síquidem, conj.**, indeed; for  
**sístere, stiti or steti, status**, to stand; to be, become  
**sistrum, -i, n.**, cornet  
**sítárcium, -ii, n.**, vessel  
**sítiens, -entis**, thirsty  
**sítüre**, to thirst  
**sitis, -is, f.**, thirst; drought  
**sive, conj.**, or; sive . . . sive; either . . . or; whether . . . or  
**Slavi, -orum, m. pl.**, Slavs  
**Slávicus, -a, -um**, Slavic  
**Slavónicus, -a, -um**, Slavonic  
**smarágdina, -ae, f.**, emerald  
**smarágdus, -i, m. and f.**, emerald  
**smegma, -atis, n.**, washing ball  
**Smyrnaçi, -orum, m. pl.**, Smyrnians  
**Smyrnaeus, -a, -um**, of Smyrna  
**sóboles, -is, f.**, offspring  
**sóbrie, adv.**, soberly  
**sobrietas, -atis, f.**, sobriety  
**sóbrius, -a, -um**, sober  
**socer, -i, m.**, father-in-law  
**sociáre**, to share in; combine  
**sócietas, -atis, f.**, society, fellowship, union  
**sócius, -a, -um**, together, allied  
**sócius, -ii, m.**, companion, ally  
**socórdia, -ae, f.**, indolence  
**socrus, -us, f.**, mother-in-law  
**sodális, -is, m.**, associate; companion, comrade  
**sodalítium, -ii, n.**, guild  
**Sódoma, -ae, f.**, Sodom  
**Sódomi, -orum, m. pl.**, people of Sodom  
**Sodomíta, -ae, m. and f.**, Sodomite  
**sol, -is, m.**, sun  
**solári, dep.**, to console  
**soláris, -e**, of the sun, solar  
**solárium, -ii, n.**, top of a house  
**solátium, -ii, n.**, solace, comfort

- solémne, -is, *n.*, solemnity, solemn festival
- solémnis, -e, solemn
- solémnitas, -atis, *f.*, solemnity
- solémniter, *adv.*, solemnly
- Solentíni, -orum, *m. pl.*, country of the Solentini, Calabria
- solére, sólitus sum, *semidep. 2*, to be wont, be accustomed
- solers, -ertis, adroit, skillful, watchful
- solérter, *adv.*, skillfully, adroitly, cleverly
- soliculo: — monte, Monte Solicolo
- solidáre, to strengthen; found; establish; comfort
- solíditas, -atis, *f.*, steadfastness; solidity
- sólidus, -a, -um, solid, massy
- solitárius, -a, -um, solitary, lonely
- solitárius, -ii, *m.*, solitary; contemplative
- solitúdo, -inis, *f.*, solitude, wilderness, desert
- sólium, -ii, *n.*, throne; flue (of a bathing tub)
- sollicitúdo, -inis, *f.*, care, carefulness, solicitude
- sólicitus, -a, -um, solicitous
- solúmmodo, *adv.*, only
- solus, -a, -um, only, alone
- solútio, -onis, *f.*, loosening; dissolution; freedom
- sólvere, solvi, solútus, to loose, set free; undo; fulfill; break, destroy; pay back, pay a debt
- Sólymae, -arum, *f. pl.*, Jerusalem
- Sólymus, -a, -um, belonging to Jerusalem or the Jews
- Somáscha, -ae, *f.*, Somasca
- somniáre, to dream
- somniátor, -oris, *m.*, dreamer
- sómnium, -ii, *n.*, dream
- somnoléntia, -ae, *f.*, drowsiness
- somnoléntus, -a, -um, sleepy, drowsy
- somnus, -i, *m.*, sleep
- sonáre, to sound, roar, make a tumult; mean
- sónitus, -us, *m.*, sound, noise, crash
- sonórus, -a, -um, loud
- sons, -ontis, guilty
- sonus, -i, *m.*, sound, noise
- sopor, -oris, *m.*, sleep
- soporáre, to put to sleep
- soporari, *dep.*, to go to sleep
- Sorácte, -is, *n.*, Soracte, now Monte di San Silvestro
- Sorbónicus, -a, -um, of the Sorbonne
- sordére, to be filthy
- sordes, -is, *f.*, dirt, filth, defilement
- soror, -is, *f.*, sister
- sors, sortis, *f.*, lot; part; **mittere sortem**, to cast lots
- sortiári, *dep.*, to cast lots
- sortíri, *dep.*, to obtain
- sortítio, -onis, *f.*, lot
- sospes, -itis, safe
- Sostenéus de Sostenéis, -i, *m.*, Sosteneo de' Sostenei
- spado, -onis, *m.*, eunuch
- spárgere, sparsi, sparsus, to fling, strew
- sparsim, *adv.*, here and there, scattered
- Spartiáni, -orum, *m. pl.*, Spartans
- Spartiátes, -ae, *m.*, Spartan
- spathárius, -ii, *m.*, sword-bearer
- spatiósus, -a, -um, great, widespread
- spátium, -ii, *n.*, space, extent
- spátula, -ae, *f.*, branch
- speciális, -e, special, individual, one's own
- speciátim, *adv.*, especially
- spécies, -ei, *f.*, loveliness, beauty; appearance; kind
- spécimen, -inis, *n.*, mark, sign
- speciósus, -a, -um, beautiful, fair
- spectáculum, -i, *n.*, gazing-stock, spectacle, sight
- spectáre, to behold

- spectátrix, -icis, f.**, spectator  
**speculátor, -oris, m.**, watchman; eye-witness, observer  
**spéculum, -i, m.**, glass, mirror  
**specus, -us, m., f., n.**, hollow of a rock, cave  
**spelúnca, -ae, f.**, den, cave  
**spéráre, to hope, trust**  
**spérnere, sprevi, spretus, to disdain, scorn, despise**  
**spes, -ei, f.**, hope  
**spica, -ae, f.**, ear (of grain)  
**spiculátor, -oris, m.**, executioner  
**spículum, -i, n.**, dart, arrow; ray  
**spina, -ae, f.**, thorn  
**spinétum, -i, n.**, thorn bush  
**spíneus, -a, -um, of thorns**  
**spiráculum, -i, n.**, breath  
**spiráre, to breathe**  
**spiritális, -e, spiritual**  
**spirituális, -e, spiritual; spirituália, n. pl., spirits**  
**spirituáliter, adv., spiritually**  
**spíritus, -us, m.**, spirit, ghost; breath; wind  
**splendéscere, -ui, to shine**  
**spléndide, adv., sumptuously**  
**splendor, -oris, m.**, brightness, splendor  
**spólia, -orum, n. pl., spoils**  
**spondére, spópondi, sponsus, to promise solemnly**  
**spóngia, -ae, f.**, sponge  
**spons, sponsis, f.**, will, free will  
**sponsa, -ae, f.**, bride  
**sponsor, -oris, m.**, sponsor; surety  
**sponsus, -i, m.**, bridegroom, spouse  
**spontánee, adv., freely, willingly**  
**sponte, adv., voluntarily**  
**sporta, -ae, f.**, basket  
**spórtula, -ae, f.**, basket  
**spuma, -ae, f.**, foam  
**spumáre, to foam, foam at the mouth**  
**spurcítia, -ae, f.**, filthiness  
**spúrius, -a, -um, baseborn**  
**sputum, -i, n.**, spittle  
**squálidus, -a, -um, rough, bad looking**  
**squalor, -oris, m.**, roughness, neglect  
**squama, -ae, f.**, scale  
**squamátus, -a, -um, with scales**  
**Squillácum, -i, n.**, Squillace  
**stabilíre, to establish**  
**stábilis, -e, steadfast**  
**stábilitas, -atis, f.**, firm foundation  
**stabulárius, -ii, m.**, innkeeper, host  
**stábulum, -i, n.**, inn  
**stacte, -es, f.**, oil of myrrh, myrrh  
**stádium, -ii, n.**, race course; race; fur-long  
**stagnum, -i, n.**, pool; lake  
**stannum, -i, n.**, tin  
**stare, steti, status, to stand, stand still**  
**statéra, -ae, f.**, balance, scales  
**Statiéli, -orum, m. pl., people of Liguria**  
**statim, adv., immediately, presently**  
**státio, -onis, f.**, station; garrison; anchorage  
**státua, -ae, f.**, statue  
**statuárius, -ii, m.**, sculptor  
**statuére, -ui, -utus, to set, place, station; charge against**  
**statúra, -ae, f.**, stature, form  
**status, -us, m.**, state; position  
**statútus, -a, -um, appointed**  
**stella, -ae, f.**, star  
**stellátus, -a, -um, starry**  
**stéllifer, -a, -um, starry**  
**Stéphanus, -i, m.**, Stephen  
**stercus, -coris, n.**, dung; dunghill  
**stérilis, -e, barren, unfruitful**  
**sterílitas, -atis, f.**, barrenness  
**stérnere, stravi, stratus, to spread; furnish; saddle**  
**sterquilínium, -ii, n.**, dunghill  
**stértere, to snore**  
**stíbium, -ii, n.**, antimony, stibic stone



- stigma**, -atis, *n.*, stigma (*pl.*, stigmata)  
**stillā**, -ae, *f.*, drop  
**stillāre**, to drop, drip  
**stīllīcīdium**, -ii, *n.*, raindrop  
**stūmulus**, -i, *m.*, sting, goad  
**stipāre**, to surround, compass about  
**stipēndium**, -ii, *n.*, recompense; **stipēn-**  
**dia**, *n. pl.*, wages  
**stipes**, -itis, *m.*, stem, trunk of a tree  
**stīpula**, -ae, *f.*, stubble, straw  
**stīrps**, -pis, *f.*, stock  
**stīva**, -ae, *f.*, plow handle  
**stola**, -ae, *f.*, robe  
**stōmachus**, -i, *m.*, stomach  
**storax**, -acis, *f.*, storax  
**strages**, -is, *f.*, slaughter, massacre  
**stragulātus**, -a, -um, made of tapestry  
**stramen**, -inis, *n.*, straw, litter  
**stramētum**, -i, *n.*, straw  
**strangulāre**, to strangle  
**stratum**, -i, *n.*, bed  
**Stremōtium**, -ii, *n.*, Estremoz  
**strēnue**, *adv.*, resolutely  
**strēnuus**, -a, -um, vigorous; steadfast  
**strēpitus**, -us, *m.*, din  
**stricte**, *adv.*, severely  
**strictim**, *adv.*, briefly  
**strictus**, -a, -um, tight, close; strict,  
 severe  
**strīdēre**, strīdi, to gnash  
**Strīdo**, -onis, *f.*, Sdrigni  
**strīdor**, -oris, *m.*, gnashing  
**Strīgoniēnsis**, -e, of Gran  
**strīngere**, strīnxi, strīctus, to hold tight  
**strophā**, -ae, *f.*, strophe  
**strōphium**, -ii, *n.*, girdle  
**structor**, -oris, *m.*, builder  
**structūra**, -ae, *f.*, building  
**strues**, -is, *f.*, pile  
**strūthio**, -onis, *m.*, ostrich  
**studēre**, to strive, be zealous; study  
**stūdium**, -ii, *n.*, doing, striving; prac-  
 tice, deed  
**stultilōquium**, -ii, *n.*, foolish talking  
**stultītia**, -ae, *f.*, foolishness  
**stultus**, -a, -um, foolish; **stulta**, *n. pl.*,  
 foolish things  
**stupefāctus**, -a, -um, amazed  
**stupēre**, to be amazed, be struck, be  
 astonished  
**stupor**, -oris, *m.*, astonishment  
**stuppa**, -ae, *f.*, tow  
**stuprum**, -i, *n.*, ravishing, violation,  
 lewdness  
**stylus**, -i, *m.*, pen  
**suadēre**, suasi, suasus, to exhort  
**Suāna**, -ae, *f.*, Soana or Ravacum  
**suasor**, -oris, *m.*, adviser  
**suasus**, -us, *m.*, persuasion  
**suavidicus**, -a, -um, soft, sweet  
**suavis**, -e, sweet, kind, good  
**suāvitas**, -atis, *f.*, sweetness, goodness  
**suāviter**, *adv.*, sweetly  
**sub**, *prep.*, under  
**subarrhāre**, to give earnest money,  
 pledge  
**subaudīre**, to hear, heed  
**subcinerīcius**: panis —, hearth cake  
**sūbdere**, -didi, -ditus, to subject  
**subdiāconus**, -i, *m.*, subdeacon  
**sūbditus**, -i, *m.*, subject, servant; lay-  
 man  
**sūbdiu**, *adv.*, in the open air  
**sūbdolus**, -a, -um, deceitful  
**subēsse**, -fui, to be under  
**subīnde**, *adv.*, immediately  
**subīndicāre**, to point out, indicate  
**subīnfēre**, -īntuli, -īllātus, to say, add  
**subīntelligere**, -lexi, -lectus, to under-  
 stand  
**subīntrāre**, to enter into  
**subīntroīre**, -īvi and -īi, -ītus, (eo), to  
 enter stealthily  
**subīre**, -īvi and -īi, -ītus, (eo), to go up  
**subītātio**, -ōnis, *f.*, suddenness  
**sūbito**, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly  
**subjacēre**, to lie under, be subject to  
**subjēctio**, -ōnis, *f.*, yielding; subjection

- subjícere, -jeci, -jectus, (io),** to set, place or put under; subdue, subject  
**subjugális, -e,** used to the yoke  
**subjúgáre,** to subject  
**subjúngere, -junxi, -junctus,** to say again, add, add to; unite to  
**Sublácum, -i, n.,** Subiaco  
**subleváre,** to lift up; exalt  
**sublimáre,** to exalt  
**sublímis, -e,** lofty, sublime; on high;  
**sublímia, n. pl.,** lofty things  
**sublímítas, -atis, f.,** height; high station; excellency  
**submégere, -mersi, -mersus,** to sink, be drowned  
**subministráre,** to minister  
**subministrátio, -onis, f.,** ministration; aid; supply  
**submovére, -movi, -motus,** to move or put away from  
**súbñiger, -gra, -grum,** somewhat black  
**subobscúrus, -a, -um,** somewhat dark or obscure  
**subornáre,** to instigate secretly  
**subrépere, -repsi, -reptus,** to creep in  
**subréptio, -onis, f.,** deceit  
**subridére, -risi, -risus,** to smile  
**subrúbeus, -a, -um,** somewhat reddish  
**subsannáre,** to mock, deride, have in derision  
**subsannátio, -onis, f.,** scorn, derision  
**subsedére, -sedi, -sessus,** to rest against or under  
**súbsequi, -secútus sum, dep. 3,** to follow after  
**subsidiárus, -a, -um,** subsidiary  
**subsídium, -ii, n.,** help, aid  
**subsístere, -stiti,** to stand; withstand  
**substántia, -ae, f.,** nature, substance; sure standing  
**substantiáliter, adv.,** in substance, substantially  
**substantíve, adv.,** in substance, actually  
**substérnere, -stravi, -stratus,** to strew; spread out  
**subter, adv.** and *prep.*, under, beneath  
**subterfúgere, -fugi, (io),** to evade, shun; spare  
**subterfúgium, -ii, n.,** subterfuge, deceit  
**subtétexere, -tétxui, -textus,** to subjoin, add  
**subtus, adv.** and *prep.*, under  
**suburbánum, -i, n.,** suburb  
**subvéhere, -vexi, -vectus,** to bring up from below  
**subveníre, -veni, -ventus,** to come in, upon or up to; relieve, assist  
**subvérsio, -onis, f.,** ruin, destruction  
**subvérsor, -oris, m.,** destroyer  
**subvérttere, -verti, -versus,** to pervert; upset, overthrow; destroy  
**succéndere, -cendi, -census,** to heat; kindle; burn  
**succéssor, -oris, m.,** successor  
**succéssus, -us, m.,** succession, successive change  
**succídere, -cidi, -cisis,** to cut off or down  
**succínnum, -i, n.,** amber  
**succlamáre,** to cry again  
**succrésccere, -crevi, -cretus,** to grow, increase  
**succúrrere, -curri, -cursus,** to succor, aid  
**succúrsus, -us, m.,** help  
**succus, -i, m.,** juice, sap  
**sudárium, -ii, n.,** napkin  
**Suécia, -ae, f.,** Sweden  
**Suévia, -ae, f.,** Swabia  
**sufferéntia, -ae, f.,** patience  
**sufférre, -feci, -fectus, (io),** to be enough, be sufficient  
**sufficiéter, adv.,** enough, sufficiently  
**sufficiéntia, -ae, f.,** sufficiency, contentment

- suffocáre**, to choke, strangle, throttle  
**suffódere**, -fodi, -fossus, (io), to dig up  
**suffrágans**, -antis, favorable, helping  
**suffragári**, *dep.*, to approve; aid  
**suffragátio**, -onis, *f.*, prayer  
**suffrágium**, -ii, *n.*, suffrage, vote, support  
**suffulcáre**, -fulsi, -fultus, to support, support beneath  
**súgere**, suxi, suctus, to suck  
**suggérere**, -gessi, -gestus, to bring to mind; add  
**sulcus**, -i, *m.*, furrow  
**sulphur**, -uris, *n.*, brimstone  
**Sulpitiánus**, -a, -um, of St. Sulpice  
**sum** (esse), I am  
**súmere**, sumpsi, sumptus, to take, receive, obtain  
**summa**: in —, on the whole  
**summátim**, *adv.*, briefly, in short  
**summe**, *adv.*, highly, greatly  
**súmmítas**, -atis, *f.*, top  
**summíttere** (submittere), -misi, -missus, to let down  
**sumópere**, *adv.*, highly, exceedingly; ardently  
**summum**, -i, *n.*, top, summit; end; brim  
**summus**, -a, -um, highest, chief; **summae manus**, extremities of the hands  
**sumptus**, -us, *m.*, cost, charges  
**Sunamítis**, -idis, *m.* and *f.*, Sunamite  
**supéllex**, -léctilis, *f.*, furniture  
**super**, *prep.*, on, upon; above, over; toward; concerning  
**superabundánte**, *adv.*, more abundantly  
**superadúltus**, -a, -um, grown up  
**superaedificáre**, to build up  
**superáre**, to overcome; be left over, remain  
**supérbia**, -ae, *f.*, pride  
**superbíre**, to be proud  
**superbus**, -a, -um, proud  
**supercádere**, -cécidi, to fall upon or over  
**supercaeléstis**, -e, more than heavenly  
**supercertári**, *dep.*, to contend  
**supercílium**, -ii, *n.*, brow; arrogance  
**superéfluens**, -entis, overflowing  
**superefflúere**, -fluxi, to run over, overflow  
**superémínens**, -entis, surpassing, unsurpassable  
**supereminére**, to excel  
**supererogáre**, to spend over and above  
**superése**, -fui, to remain over and above  
**superexténdere**, -tendi, -tensus and -tentus, to stretch over, cover  
**superexaltáre**, to exalt greatly  
**superextóllere**, to exalt above  
**superférre**, -tuli, -latus, to carry over; excel  
**superfícies**, -ei, *f.*, surface, face  
**superflúitas**, -atis, *f.*, excess, superfluity  
**supérfluus**, -a, -um, superfluous  
**supergaudére**, to rejoice over  
**supergloriósus**, -a, -um, exceedingly glorious  
**supérgredi**, -gressus sum, *dep. 3*, to go over; surpass; overreach  
**superimpéndere**, -pendi, -pensus, to spend  
**superimplére**, -plevi, -pletus, to fill to overflowing  
**superindúere**, -ui, -utus, to put on over  
**superíor**, -íus, upper  
**superíus**, *adv.*, higher  
**superlaudabilis**, -e, exceedingly to be praised  
**superliminária**, *n. pl.*, upper door posts  
**superlucráre**, to gain more or over and above  
**supérnus**, -a, -um, heavenly, celestial; above  
**superplénus**, -a, -um, brimful

- superpónere, -pósui, -pósitus, to lay over**  
**superscriptio, -onis, f., superscription**  
**supersemináre, to oversow**  
**supersperáre, to hope or trust in greatly**  
**superstitiósus, -a, -um, superstitious**  
**súperus, -a, -um, higher, upper; supreme; divine**  
**súperus, -i, m., divine being, angel**  
**supervacáneus, -a, -um, superfluous**  
**supervacúe, adv., without cause**  
**superveníre, to come in or upon, overtake**  
**superventúrus, -a, -um, coming, approaching**  
**supervestíre, to put clothes upon, clothe**  
**supínus, -a, -um, lying upon the back**  
**suppeditáre, to give abundantly**  
**suppétere, -ivi and -ii, -itus, to be present, be in store**  
**supplantáre, to supplant; overthrow**  
**supplantátio, -onis, f., treachery**  
**supplémentum, -i, n., supply, reinforcement**  
**supplére, -plevi, -pletus, to supply; use**  
**supplex, -icis, suppliant, low**  
**supplicáre, to beseech humbly**  
**supplicátio, -onis, f., supplication, prayer**  
**supplíciter, adv., suppliantly, humbly**  
**supplícium, -ii, n., punishment**  
**suppónere, -póssui, -pósitus, to hold or put under**  
**supportáre, to bear, bear with**  
**supra, prep., over, above, upon**  
**supradíctus, -a, -um, aforesaid**  
**suprémus, -a, -um, last**  
**supputáre, to count, compute**  
**súrculus, -i, m., branch**  
**surdus, -a, -um, deaf; surdi, pl., the deaf**  
**súrgere, surréxi, surréctus, to rise up, arise**
- surríperere, -rípui, -reptus, (io), to steal away; happen to; take by stealth**  
**surrógáre, to grant**  
**sursum, adv., upward, above; — corda, lift up the hearts**  
**suscéptio, -onis, f., receiving; protection**  
**suscéptor, -oris, receptive**  
**suscéptor, -oris, m., taker up, receiver; protector**  
**suscípere, -cepi, -ceptus, (io), to receive; undertake; uphold**  
**suscitáre, to raise up, raise to life, awake**  
**suspéndere, -pendi, -pensus, to hang up**  
**suspénsio, -onis, f., suspension**  
**suspiciári, dep., to suspect; dread**  
**suspícere, -spexi, -spectus, (io), to look up**  
**suspício, -onis, f., suspicion**  
**suspíráre, to sigh, long for**  
**suspírium, -ii, n., sigh; desire**  
**sustentáculum, -i, n., prop, support**  
**sustentáre, to maintain, support**  
**sustentátio, -onis, f., deferring, delay; forbearance**  
**sustentátor, -oris, m., supporter**  
**sustinéntia, -ae, f., enduring**  
**sustinére, -tínui, -tentus, to sustain, endure, undergo; stand, wait for, wait upon; abide; rely**  
**sustóllere, to lift up**  
**susurráre, to murmur, whisper**  
**susúrrus, -i, m., whisperer**  
**Sutrínus, -a, -um, of Sutri**  
**suus, -a, -um, his, her, hers, it, its, their, theirs**  
**Swéýnus, -i, m., Sweyn**  
**Sybillínus, -a, -um, Sibylline**  
**sycómorus, -i, f., sycamore tree**  
**sycophánta, -ae, m., sycophant, flatterer**  
**Sylla (Sulla), -ae, m., Sulla**

**sýllaba**, -ae, *f.*, syllable  
**sýmbolum**, -i, *n.*, symbol; creed  
**symphónia**, -ae, *f.*, music, symphony  
**Symphoriánus**, -i, *m.*, Symphorian  
**synagóga**, -ae, *f.*, synagogue, congregation, assembly  
**Synicénsis**, -e, of Synica  
**synódicus**, -a, -um, synodal  
**sýnodus**, -i, *f.*, synod, council  
**Syracúsae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, Syracuse  
**Syracusánus**, -a, -um, of Syracuse  
**Syri**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Syrians  
**Syrophoenissus**, -a, -um, Syrophoenician  
**syrtis**, -is, *f.*, sandbank  
**Syrus**, -a, -um, Syrian  
**systema**, -atis, *n.*, system

## T

**tabernáculum**, -i, *n.*, tabernacle; dwelling; tent  
**tabescere**, -ui, to melt; languish, pine away  
**tábidus**, -a, -um, decaying, melting  
**tábula**, -ae, *f.*, writing-tablet  
**tabulátum**, -i, *n.*, board  
**tacére**, to be silent, hold one's peace  
**tacitúrñitas**, -atis, *f.*, silence  
**tácitus**, -a, -um, silent  
**tactus**, -us, *m.*, touch; blemish  
**taeda**, -ae, *f.*, torch  
**taedere**, **taéduit**, *impers.* 2, to be heavy; be disgusted  
**taédium**, -ii, *n.*, weariness, heaviness, care  
**taláris**, -e, reaching to the ankles;  
**túnica** —, outside coat  
**taléntum**, -i, *n.*, talent (a sum of money, about \$1,000)  
**tálio**, -onis, *f.*, retaliation  
**talis**, -e, such  
**táliter**, *adv.*, thus, so  
**talus**, -i, *m.*, ankle  
**tam**, *adv.*, so, to such a degree  
**támdiu**, *adv.*, so long  
**tamen**, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless  
**tamétsi**, *conj.*, although  
**tamquam** (tanquam), *adv.*, like, as, just as, as it were  
**Tanchélmus**, -i, *m.*, Tanchelm  
**tángere**, **tétigi**, **tactus**, to touch  
**tantisper**, *adv.*, meanwhile  
**tantúmmodo**, *adv.*, only  
**tantus**, -a, -um, such, so much, so great, of such size; only; **tanto** . . . quanto, so much . . . as  
**Taráscum**, -i, *n.*, Tarascon  
**Tarbiénsis**, -e, of Tarbes  
**tardáre**, to delay, tarry  
**tárditas**, -atis, *f.*, slowness  
**tardus**, -a, -um, slow  
**Tarpéjus**, -a, -um, Tarpeian  
**Tarracína**, -ae, *f.*, Terracina  
**Tarraconénsis**, -e, of Tarragona  
**Tarsénsis**, -e, of Tarsus  
**tártarus**, -i, *m.*, hell  
**Tarvisínus**, -a, -um, of Treviso  
**Tarvisium**, -ii, *n.*, Treviso  
**Taurínas**: **Aquae Taurínae**, -arum, -arum, *f. pl.*, Acquapendente  
**Taurunénsis**, -e, of Belgrade  
**taurus**, -i, *m.*, bull, bullock, ox; beef  
**tectum**, -i, *n.*, roof, house top  
**tégere**, **texi**, **tectus**, to cover  
**tegmen**, -inis, *n.*, shelter  
**tégula**, -ae, *f.*, tile  
**tegmentum**, -i, *n.*, covering; shadow  
**teípsum**, thyself  
**tela**, -ae, *f.*, web; warp (of cloth)  
**teloneárius**, -ii, *m.*, tax collector  
**telum**, -i, *n.*, dart  
**tellus**, -uris, *f.*, earth  
**teméritis**, -atis, *f.*, rashness  
**temetípsum**, thyself; **propter** —, for thy own sake  
**temperamentum**, -i, *n.*, tempered mortar

- temperáre**, to be temperate; learn to avoid; mingle; govern  
**temperatúra**, -ae, *f.*, tempering  
**temperíus**, -ei, *f.*, tempering; refreshment  
**tempéstatas**, -atis, *f.*, storm  
**templum**, -i, *n.*, temple, church  
**temporalís**, -e, temporal, earthly  
**temporalíter**, *adv.*, temporally; in time  
**temporáneus**, -a, -um, early, timely  
**tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time; season; **quanto témpore**, as long as; **ad tempus**, for a while; **quátuor témporum**, of Ember week  
**temuléntus**, -a, -um, drunk  
**tenax**, -acis, niggardly; firm, steadfast  
**téndere**, **tétendi**, **tentus** or **tensus**, to stretch, extend; direct one's course; conform one's life  
**tendícula**, -ae, *f.*, snare  
**ténebrae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, darkness  
**tenebrícósus**, -a, -um, dark  
**tenebrósus**, -a, -um, dark  
**tener**, -a, -um, tender  
**tenére**, -ui, **tentus**, to hold, have, possess, keep  
**tenerítudo**, -inis, *f.*, tenderness  
**tenor**, -oris, *m.*, course  
**tentaméntum**, -i, *n.*, trial  
**tentáre**, to tempt; prove  
**tentátio**, -onis, *f.*, temptation  
**tentátor**, -oris, *m.*, tempter  
**tentórium**, -ii, *n.*, tent; hanging, drape  
**tenuáre**, to lessen, diminish  
**ténuis**, -e, small, little, weak  
**tepefactus**, -a, -um, warm  
**Tepejacénsis**, -e, of Tepeyac  
**tepscere**, -ui, to become tepid or lukewarm  
**ter**, *adv.*, thrice  
**tercénties**, *adv.*, three hundred times  
**terebínthus**, -i, *f.*, terebinth or turpentine tree; Terebinth  
**terere**, **trivi**, **tritus**, to rub away; smooth; bruise, afflict  
**Terésia**, -ae, *f.*, Theresa  
**tergere**, **tersi**, **tersus**, to wipe  
**tergum**, -i, *n.*, back  
**términus**, -i, *m.*, end; border, boundary; quarter  
**terni**, -ae, -a, three, three apiece  
**terra**, -ae, *f.*, earth, ground, land; dust  
**terraemótus**, -us, *m.*, earthquake  
**terrénus**, -a, -um, earthly; **terréna**, *n. pl.*, earthly things  
**terrére**, to frighten, affright, terrify  
**terréster**, -tris, -tre, earthly; on earth  
**térreus**, -a, -um, earthly  
**terribilis**, -e, terrible, fearful  
**terribilíter**, *adv.*, fearfully  
**terrigena**, -ae, *c.*, earthborn  
**terror**, -oris, *m.*, terror  
**tértia**, -ae, *f.*, terce  
**tértio**, *adv.*, a third time  
**tértius**, -a, -um, third  
**tertiusdécimus**, -a, -a, -um, -um, thirteenth  
**téssera**, -ae, *f.*, token, distinguishing mark  
**testa**, -ae, *f.*, clay; potsherd  
**testáceus**, -a, -um, of brick or tile  
**testaméntum**, -i, *n.*, testament, covenant  
**testári**, *dep.*, to testify, bear witness  
**testátor**, -oris, *m.*, one that makes a will, testator  
**testificáre**, to witness  
**testificári**, *dep.*, to testify; charge  
**testificátio**, -onis, *f.*, witness, testimony  
**testimónium**, -ii, *n.*, witness, evidence  
**testis**, -is, *m.*, a witness  
**téstula**, -ae, *f.*, potsherd  
**teter**, -tra, -trum, foul, filthy, hideous  
**teth**, the ninth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to English **t**  
**tetrárcha**, -ae, *m.*, tetrarch  
**texens**, -entis, *m.*, weaver

- téxere, -ui, textus, to weave**  
**textrínus, -a, -um, weaving**  
**textus, -us, m., context**  
**Thaborítí, -orum, m. pl., Thaborites**  
**thálamus, -i, m., bedroom, bridal chamber**  
**Tharsaéas, -ae, m., Tharseas**  
**Tharsis, Tartessus**  
**thaumatúrgus, -i, m., wonderworker**  
**Theatínus, -a, -um, of Chieti**  
**theátrum, -i, n., theater; show**  
**Thebaéí, -orum, m. pl., Thebans**  
**Thébaís, -idis, f., Thebes**  
**theca, -ae, f., case, covering, sheath**  
**Thecuítis, -is, of Thecua**  
**thema, -atis, n., theme**  
**Theobáldus, -i, m., Theobald**  
**Theodóricus, -i, m., Theodoric**  
**Theodórus, -i, Theodore**  
**theológia, -ae, f., theology**  
**theológicus, -a, -um, theological**  
**theológus, -i, m., theologian**  
**Theopaschítac, -arum, m. pl., Theopaschites**  
**Therésia, -ae, f., Theresa**  
**thesaurizáre, to heap as a treasure, lay up treasure**  
**thesáurus, -i, m., treasure; treasury, storehouse**  
**Thésbites, -is, m., Thesbite**  
**Thessalonicénses, -ium, m. pl., Thessalonians**  
**Theutónicus, -a, -um, German**  
**Thienaéus, -a, -um, of Tiené**  
**thorax, -acis, m., breast plate**  
**Thrácia, -ae, f., Thrace**  
**Thrácius, -a, -um, Thracian**  
**thrónus, -i, m., throne**  
**thorus (torus), -i, m., bed, marriage couch**  
**thuríbulum, -i, n., censor**  
**thus, thuris, n., frankincense**  
**thyínus, -a, -um, of the thyine tree**  
**tiára, -ae, f., cap, tiara**  
**Tiberínus, -a, -um, of the Tiber**  
**Tíberis, -is, m., the Tiber River**  
**tíbia, -ae, f., shinbone; leg; pipe, flute**  
**tíbicen, -inis, m., piper, minstrel**  
**Tibilitánus, -a, -um, of Tibilis**  
**Tiburtínus, -a, -um, Tiburtine; of Tivoli**  
**Ticínus, -i, n., Ticino; Pavia**  
**tignum, -i, n., beam**  
**tigris, -is, m., tiger**  
**timére, to fear, be afraid**  
**timídus, -a, -um, fearful**  
**timor, -oris, m., fear, terror**  
**timorátus, -a, -um, devout**  
**Timótheus, -i, m., Timotheus, Timothy**  
**tinctúra, -ae, f., dye, dyeing**  
**tínea, -ae, f., moth**  
**tíngere, tinxí, tinctus, to dye**  
**tinníre, to tinkle**  
**Tirconaíllia, -ae, f., Tirconail**  
**tirocínium, -ii, n., noviceship, novitiate; apprenticeship**  
**titio, -onis, m., firebrand**  
**titubáre, to stagger; waver**  
**tituláris, -e, titular**  
**títulus, -i, m., title; inscription; pledge**  
**Tolentínus, -i, n., Tolentino**  
**tolerábilis, -e, bearable, light**  
**toleráre, to bear**  
**Toletánus, -a, -um, of Toledo**  
**tóllere, sústuli, sublátus, to lift up; take away; hold in suspense**  
**Tolósa, -ae, f., Toulouse**  
**Tolosánus, -a, -um, of Toulouse**  
**Tolosátes, -ium, m. pl., people of Toulouse**  
**tomus, -i, m., volume**  
**tonáre, -ui, to resound; thunder**  
**tondens, -entis, m., shearer**  
**tondére, tótondi, tonsus, to shear**  
**tonítuum, -i, n., thunder**  
**tonsúra, -ae, f., tonsure**  
**topázion (topázus), -i, n., topaz**

tórcular, -aris, *n.*, wine or oil press  
 torméntum, -i, *n.*, torment; engine;  
 — bélicum, gun, blunderbuss (lit.,  
 war engine)  
 torpére, to be torpid, listless or slug-  
 gish  
 torpor, -oris, *m.*, dullness, torpor  
 torquére, torsi, tortus, to twist; tor-  
 ment  
 torquis, -is, *m.* and *f.*, collar, chain  
 torrens, -entis, *m.*, torrent, brook,  
 stream  
 torrére, -ui, tostus, to burn, roast,  
 parch  
 torta, -ae, *f.*, roll  
 tortor, -oris, *m.*, tormenter, torturer  
 torus, -i, *m.*, bed, marriage couch  
 tot, *adv.*, so many  
 totáliter, *adv.*, wholly  
 tótidem, just as many, so many  
 totus, -a, -um, all, the whole; per to-  
 tum, throughout  
 trábea, -ae, *f.*, robe  
 trabs, -is, *f.*, beam  
 tractábilis, -e, that can be handled,  
 manageable  
 tractáre, to treat; behave toward; cele-  
 brate  
 tractátus, -us, *m.*, tract, treatise  
 trádere, -didi, -ditus, to deliver up;  
 betray  
 tradítio, -onis, *f.*, surrender; tradition  
 tráditor, -oris, *m.*, betrayer, traitor  
 tradúcere, -duxi, -ductus, to lead; ex-  
 pose publicly  
 tradux, -ucis, *m.*, transmission; tradi-  
 tion  
 tragoédia, -ae, *f.*, tragic scene  
 tráhere, traxi, tractus, to draw, drag;  
 contract; catch  
 Trajánus, -i, *m.*, Trajan  
 Trallénses, -ium, *m. pl.*, Trallians  
 trames, -itis, *m.*, crossroad, cour:ce,  
 road, path

tranquilláre, to pacify, to make calm  
 or still  
 tranquillitas, -atis, *f.*, calm, tranquil-  
 lity  
 tranquillius, *adv.*, peacefully  
 tranquillus, -a, -um, tranquil  
 trans, *prep.*, over, across, beyond, on  
 the other side of  
 transcénsus, -us, *m.*, passage  
 transférre, -tuli, -latus, to move, re-  
 move; transform; translate  
 transfigere, -fixi, -fixus, to pierce  
 transfiguráre, to transfigure  
 transfigurátio, -onis, *f.*, transfiguration  
 transfixio, -onis, *f.*, piercing  
 transformátivus, -a, -um, transforming  
 transfóssus, -a, -um, pierced  
 transfretáre, to pass over; cross the sea  
 tránsgredi, -gressus sum, *dep. 3 (io)*,  
 to transgress; pass over  
 transgréssor, -oris, *m.*, transgressor  
 transigere, -egi, -actus, to get along  
 transilíre, -ui, -ivi, and -ii, to leap or  
 skip over  
 tránsire, -ivi and -ii, -itus, (eo), to pass  
 through, go over or across to; pass  
 by or away; depart hence  
 transitórius, -a, -um, passing, transitory  
 tránsitus, -us, *m.*, a passing over or by;  
 passage; brink  
 translátio, -onis, *f.*, transferring; trans-  
 lation  
 transmeáre, to go or come across  
 transmigráre, to flee  
 transmigrátio, -onis, *f.*, carrying away;  
 transmigration  
 transmittere, -misi, -missus, to send  
 transmutáre, to change, turn  
 transmutátio, -onis, *f.*, change  
 transplantáre, to plant  
 transvádere, to ford, pass over  
 transvéhere, -vexi, -vectus, to carry  
 over, convey  
 transverberáre, to pierce, transfix



- transvérsim**, *adv.*, across; obliquely  
**transvérttere**, -verti, -versus, to over-  
 turn  
**Trebnicénsis**, -e, of Trebnitz  
**trecénti**, -ae, -a, three hundred  
**trédécim**, thirteen  
**tremefáctus**, -a, -um, terrified  
**treméndus**, -a, -um, tremendous, aw-  
 ful  
**trémere**, -ui, to tremble  
**tremor**, -oris, *m.*, fear, trembling  
**trepidáre**, to be busy; swarm about;  
 be afraid; tremble  
**tres**, three  
**Tréveri**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Treves (Trier)  
**Trias**, -adis, *f.*, Trinity  
**tribúere**, -ui, -utus, to give, grant  
**tribulans**, -antis, *m.*, oppressor  
**tribuláre**, to afflict  
**tribulári**, *dep.*, to be in trouble  
**tribulátio**, -onis, *f.*, tribulation, trouble  
**tribulus**, -i, *m.*, thorn, brier, thistle  
**tribúnal**, -is, *n.*, place of judgment  
**tribúnus**, -i, *m.*, tribune; captain over  
 a thousand men  
**tribus**, -us, *m.*, tribe  
**tribútum**, -i, *n.*, tribute  
**trícári**, *dep.*, to trifle  
**trícésimus**, -a, -um, thirtieth  
**triclínium**, -ii, *n.*, parlor; bedcham-  
 ber; stewardship, charge of the table  
**tridens**, -entis, having three teeth or  
 prongs  
**Tridentínus**, -a, -um, of Trent  
**triduánus**, -a, -um, of three days  
**tríduo**, *adv.*, three days  
**tríduum**, -i, *n.*, a space of three days  
**triennális**, -e, three years  
**triénnium**, -ii, *n.*, space of three years  
**trigésimus**, -a, -um, thirtieth  
**trigínta**, thirty  
**tríni**, -ae, -a, three each; thrice  
**Trínitas**, -atis, *f.* Trinity  
**trínus**, -a, -um, three, trine, triune
- triplex**, -icis, threefold  
**triplicáre**, to triple  
**tripudiáre**, to dance  
**trirémis**, -is, *f.*, galley  
**tristári**, *dep.*, to be sad  
**tristéga**, -ae, *f.*, sewer  
**tristis**, -e, sad, sorrowful, cast down  
**tristítia**, -ae, *f.*, sorrow  
**tritíceus**, -a, -um, wheaten  
**tríticum**, -i, *n.*, wheat  
**tritúra**, -ae, *f.*, threshing  
**trituráre**, to thresh  
**triumpháre**, to triumph  
**triumphátor**, -oris, *m.*, conqueror  
**tríumphus**, -i, *m.*, triumph  
**Troas**, -adis, *m.*, Troas  
**trophaeúm**, -i, *n.*, trophy; monument  
 of victory; triumph  
**trucidáre**, to cut to pieces, slay  
**trúdere**, trusi, trusus, to push, thrust  
**truncus**, -i, *m.*, trunk, stump  
**truncus**, -a, -um, maimed, mutilated  
**trux**, -cis, savage, rough, grim  
**Tryphónis**, -is, *m.*, Tryphon  
**tu**, thou  
**tuba**, -ae, *f.*, trumpet  
**Tuder**, -ertis, *f.*, Todi  
**tuéri**, túitus and tutus sum, *dep. 2*, to  
 protect, uphold, defend  
**tugúrium**, -ii, *n.*, peasant's hut; lodge  
**tuítio**, -onis, *f.*, protection, defense  
**tum**, *adv.*, then, at that time; tum  
 . . . tum, at one time. . . at an-  
 other time; now . . . now  
**tumére**, to swell, be swollen; be puffed  
 up  
**tumetípse**, you yourself  
**túmídu**, -a, -um, puffed up  
**túmor**, -oris, *m.*, tumor, swelling;  
 pride, bombast  
**tumuláre**, to bury  
**tumultuáre** (-ari), to make a tumult  
**tumultuárie**, *adv.*, suddenly, in a dis-  
 orderly manner

tumúltus, -us, *m.*, tumult  
 túmulus, -i, *m.*, grave  
 tunc, *adv.*, then; ex tunc, from olden times  
 Tuniátus Mons, -i, -tis, *m.*, Montagnate  
 túnica, -ae, *f.*, coat; shirt  
 túnsio, -onis, *f.*, striking, beating  
 turba, -ae, *f.*, crowd, multitude  
 turbáre, to trouble, disturb  
 turbátio, -onis, *f.*, fear  
 turben, -inis, *n.*, whirlwind  
 túrbidus, -a, -um, confused, disordered  
 turbo, -inis, *m.*, gale, whirlwind  
 Turcae, -arum, *m. pl.*, Turks  
 turma, -ae, *f.*, squadron, troop  
 Turonénsis, -e, of Tours  
 Túroni, -orum, *m. pl.*, Tours; Plessis-les-Tours  
 turpis, -e, filthy, foul; shameful  
 turpitúdo, -inis, *f.*, obscenity; disgrace  
 turris, -is, *f.*, tower  
 Turris Formosa, -is, -ae, *f.*, Torre Hermosa  
 turtur, -uris, *m.*, turtle dove  
 tutaméntum, -i, *n.*, safety  
 tutáre, to defend  
 tutéla, -ae, *f.*, safety, guard, protection  
 tutor, -oris, *m.*, tutor  
 tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine  
 tympanístria, -ae, *f.*, accompaniment of a timbrel; a female drummer  
 týmpanum, -i, *n.*, drum, timbrel  
 týpice, *adv.*, prefiguratively  
 týpicus, -i, *m.*, figure, emblem  
 týpicus, -a, -um, typical  
 týpus, -i, *m.*, type, figure  
 tyránnis, -idis, *f.*, tyrannical act or command; tyranny  
 tyránnus, -i, *m.*, ruler, tyrant  
 Týrii, -orum, *m. pl.*, Tyrians  
 tyrocínium, -ii, *n.*, novitiate, apprenticeship  
 Tyrrhénus, -a, -um, Etruscan  
 Týrus, -i, *f.*, Tyre

## U

uber, -eris, *n.*, breast, pap  
 uber, -eris, fruitful, rich  
 úbertas, -atis, *f.*, fullness, fruitfulness, abundance  
 úbertim, *adv.*, abundantly  
 ubi, *adv.*, where, when  
 úbinam, *adv.*, where  
 ubíque, *adv.*, everywhere, in all places  
 udus, -a, -um, moist; tearful  
 Ugúccio Ugucciónum, -onis, *m.*, Uguccio de' Uguccioni  
 ulcerátus, -a, -um, covered with sores  
 ulcisci, ultus sum, *dep. 3.*, to avenge  
 ulcus, -eris, *n.*, boil, sore, ulcer  
 ullus, -a, -um, any  
 ulna, -ae, *f.*, arm  
 últimus, -a, -um, farthest, last  
 últio, -onis, *f.*, revenge, vengeance  
 ultor, -oris, *m.*, avenger  
 ultra, *adv.*, further, beyond; any more  
 Ultrajecténsis, -e, of Utrecht  
 Ultrajéctum, -i, *n.*, Utrecht  
 ultro, *adv.*, spontaneously, of itself  
 ululátus, -us, *m.*, wailing  
 Ulýssipo, -onis, *f.*, Lisbon  
 Umber, -bra, -brum, Umbrian  
 Umber, -bri, *m.*, the Humber River  
 umbilicus, -i, *m.*, navel  
 umbra, -ae, *f.*, shadow, shade  
 umbráculum, -i, *n.*, shade, bower, covert  
 umbrósus, -a, -um, shady; Umbrósa Valles, -ae, -is, *f.*, Vallombrosa  
 umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time  
 unánimis, -e, of one mind  
 unánimíter, *adv.*, with one accord  
 unánimus, -a, -um, unanimous, of one mind, with one voice  
 úncia, -ae, *f.*, ounce  
 únctio, -onis, *f.*, unction, anointing  
 unda, -ae, *f.*, wave; water, moisture; stream

- unde**, *adv.*, wherefore, thence, where-upon; whence  
**undequáquam**, *adv.*, from everywhere  
**úndecim**, eleven  
**undécimus**, -a, -um, eleventh  
**úndique**, *adv.*, on all sides, on every side  
**úngere**, unxi, unctus, to anoint  
**unguentária**, -ae, *f.*, maker of unguents, confectionery  
**unguentum**, -i, *n.*, ointment  
**unguis**, -is, *m.*, nail, claw  
**úngula**, -ae, *f.*, hoof; claw, talon; onyx  
**única**, -ae, *f.*, only one, darling  
**unicórnis**, -is, *m.*, unicorn  
**únicus**, -a, -um, only, alone, lonely  
**unígena**, -ae, *m.*, only-begotten  
**unigénitus**, -a, -um, only-begotten  
**únio**, -onis, *f.*, union  
**uníre**, to unite  
**únitas**, -atis, *f.*, unity  
**universális**, -e, universal  
**univérsitas**, -atis, *f.*, wholeness, completeness; the whole world, the universe; university; company  
**univérsum**, -i, *n.*, the whole world, the universe  
**univérsus**, -a, -um, all, entire  
**unquam**, *adv.*, ever, at any time  
**unus**, -a, -um, one; in **unum**, as one, together, in unity; **unus post unum**, one by one; **una cum**, together with  
**unusquisque**, every one  
**urbánitas**, -atis, *f.*, good breeding  
**Urbánus**, -i, *m.*, Urban  
**Urbínas**, -atis, of Urbino  
**urbs**, urbis, *f.*, city, town  
**Urbs**, -bis, *f.*, Rome  
**úrceus**, -i, *m.*, earthenware jug, pitcher, vessel  
**úrere**, ussi, ustus, to burn; (in the passive voice) to be on fire  
**urgére**, ursi, to press hard, be urgent; to shut  
**Uritánum**, -i, *n.*, Oria  
**urna**, -ae, *f.*, pot  
**Ursiánus**, -a, -um, Ursian  
**ursus**, -i, *m.*, bear  
**úrtica**, -ae, *f.*, nettle  
**usitáre**, to use  
**usque**, *adv.*, as far as, over to, all the way; — **ad**, even until  
**usquequáque**, *adv.*, everywhere; utterly  
**úsquequo**, *adv.*, how long? wherefore?  
**ustuláre**, to singe, burn  
**usúra**, -ae, *f.*, usury; interest  
**usurpáre**, to make use of; assert one's right to; usurp  
**usus**, -us, *m.*, use  
**ut** (*uti*), *conj.*, that, in order that; as; after, when; — **quid**, to what purpose? why?  
**utcúmque**, *adv.*, however; after a sort  
**utensília**, -orum, *n. pl.*, utensils, furnishings  
**uter**, -tris, *m.*, wine-skin  
**uterínus**, -a, -um, of the same mother  
**utéorque**, -tra, -trum, each of two, both  
**úterus**, -i, *m.*, and **úterum**, -i, *n.*, womb  
**útilis**, -e, profitable  
**útilitas**, -atis, *f.*, benefit, profit  
**útiliter**, *adv.*, usefully  
**útinam**, *adv.*, would that! oh that!  
**útique**, *adv.*, indeed, doubtless  
**útpote**, *adv.*, inasmuch as, since  
**utrínque**, *adv.*, on both sides, in both cases  
**utrobíque**, *adv.*, in both places, on both sides; both . . . and  
**utrum**, *adv.*, whether  
**uva**, -ae, *f.*, grape, a bunch of grapes  
**Uváda**, -ae, *f.*, Ovada  
**uxor**, -oris, *f.*, wife

## V

**vacans**, -antis, empty, vacant  
**vacáre**, to desist, leave off  
**vacca**, -ae, *f.*, cow; — **foeta**, milch cow  
**vacilláre**, to doubt  
**vacúitas**, -atis, *f.*, vanity  
**vácuus**, -a, -um, empty, void; **in vacuum**, in vain  
**vádere**, to go  
**vae!** *interj.*, woe!  
**vafer**, -fra, -frum, crafty, sly  
**vagína**, -ae, *f.*, scabbard, sheath  
**vagíre**, to whimper, cry  
**vagus**, -a, -um, wandering, harborless  
**vagus**, -i, *m.*, wanderer, vagrant, tramp  
**vah!** (*interj.* of contempt), oh! ah!  
 bah!  
**valde**, *adv.*, greatly, exceedingly  
**valénte**, *adv.*, strongly; with a strong voice  
**Valéntia**, -ae, *f.*, Valencia  
**Valentínus**, -a, -um, of Valencia  
**Valentínus**, -i, *m.*, Valentine  
**valére**, to be well or strong; have strength; be able; be worthy  
**Valeríanus**, -i, *m.*, Valerian  
**Valésii**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Valois  
**Valésius**, -a, -um, of Valois; Felix—, -icis, -ii, *m.*, Felix de Valois  
**valetudinárium**, -ii, *n.*, hospital  
**valetúdo**, -inis, *f.*, health, strength  
**válide**, *adv.*, strongly, powerfully  
**válidus**, -a, -um, mighty  
**valláre**, to enclose, make a hedge about; fortify; besiege  
**vallis** (-es), -is, *f.*, valley, vale  
**Vallisolétum**, -i, *n.*, Valladolid  
**vallum**, -i, *n.*, trench  
**valvae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, doors  
**Vándali**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Vandals  
**Vándalus**, -i, *m.*, the Vistula River  
**vanc**, *adv.*, vainly, in vain  
**vaniloquium**, -ii, *n.*, vain babbling

**vaniloquus**, -i, *m.*, vain talker  
**vánitas**, -atis, *f.*, vanity, vain thing  
**vanus**, -a, -um, vain; **vana**, *n. pl.*, vain things  
**vapor**, -oris, *m.*, vapor  
**vaporáre**, to perfume  
**vapuláre**, to cry out; be beaten  
**Varáilus**, -i, *m.*, Varallo  
**várie**, *adv.*, variously, in various ways  
**várietas**, -atis, *f.*, variety, changing thing  
**várius**, -a, -um, various, varied, divers  
**vas**, **vasis** (*pl.*, **vasa**, -orum), *n.*, vessel; **vasa psalmi**, harps  
**vásculum**, -i, *n.*, small vessel  
**Vastanénsis**, -e, of Vadstena  
**vastáre**, to spoil, lay waste  
**vastátor**, -oris, *m.*, destroyer  
**vástitas**, -atis, *f.*, waste, desolation  
**vastus**, -a, -um, vast  
**vates**, -is, *m.*, prophet, seer  
**Vaticánus**, -i, *m.*, Vatican  
**vaticináre**, to prophesy  
**vaticínium**, -ii, *n.*, prophecy, revelation  
**vau**, the sixth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to English *w*  
*-ve*, *enclitic*, or  
**vecórdia**, -ae, *f.*, foolishness, folly  
**vectátio**, -onis, *f.*, carrying  
**vectígál**, -alis, *n.*, revenue, custom; rent  
**vectis**, -is, *m.*, bar, bolt, stave  
**vector**, -oris, *m.*, sailor, passenger  
**vegetáre**, to stir up, quicken, nourish  
**vegetátio**, -onis, *f.*, new life  
**végetus**, -a, -um, strong, vigorous  
**véhemens**, -entis, mighty, violent  
**veheménte**, *adv.*, greatly, exceedingly  
**vehículum**, -i, *n.*, conveyance; chariot  
**Veitúrium**, -ii, *n.*, Voltaggio  
**vel**, *conj.*, or  
**velámen**, -inis, *n.*, veil, cloak  
**velaméntum**, -i, *n.*, veil; shelter

**veláre**, to cover; blindfold  
**Veláunus**, -a, -um, of Velay  
**Veldkírchium**, -ii, *n.*, Feldkirch  
**Velitérnus**, -a, -um, Velletri  
**velle** (*volo*), *volui*, to desire, wish, will;  
 like, be pleased, delight in; choose;  
 mean  
**véllere**, *velli* or *vulsi*, *vulsus*, to pluck  
**vellus**, -eris, *n.*, fleece  
**velóciter**, *adv.*, swiftly, speedily  
**velox**, -ocis, swift  
**velum**, *i*, *n.*, veil; sail  
**velut**, *adv.*, like, as  
**vena**, -ae, *f.*, vein  
**venális**, -e, for sale  
**venans**, -antis, *m.*, fowler, hunter  
**venátio**, -onis, *f.*, hunting; venison  
**venátor**, -oris, *m.*, hunter  
**venátus**, -us, *m.*, hunting  
**véndere**, -didi, -ditus, to sell  
**vénditio**, -onis, *f.*, selling  
**venefícium**, -ii, *n.*, witchcraft  
**venéficus**, -i, *m.*, sorcerer, wizard  
**venenátus**, -a, -um, poisonous, veno-  
 mous, envenomed  
**venenósus**, -a, -um, venomous  
**venénium**, -i, *n.*, poison  
**venerábilis**, -e, venerable  
**venerándus**, -a, -um, venerable  
**veneráre** (-ari), to hold in honor,  
 venerate, worship  
**venerátio**, -onis, *f.*, honor  
**Venétia**, -ae, *f.*, Vannes  
**Venétiae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, Venice  
**Vénetus**, -a, -um, Venetian  
**vénia**, -ae, *f.*, pardon  
**veniábilis**, -e, pardonable  
**veníre**, *veni*, *ventus*, to come  
**veníre**, -ivi (-ii), -ítus, to be sold  
**venter**, -tris, *m.*, womb; belly; bowels  
**ventiláre**, to toss, scatter; winnow  
**ventitáre**, to come often  
**ventúrus**, -a, -um, to come, coming  
**ventus**, -i, *m.*, wind

**venúmdare**, -dedi, -datus, to sell  
**Venus**, -eris, *f.*, Venus  
**venústas**, -atis, *f.*, beauty  
**vepres**, -is, *m.*, briar, briar bush  
**ver**, -is, *n.*, spring  
**veráciter**, *adv.*, truly, truthfully  
**verax**, -acis, true, truthful; (*as a*  
*noun*) a true speaker  
**Veránus**, -a, -um, of Verus, Veranian  
**verber**, -eris, *n.*, blow, lash, stripe;  
 lashing, scourging  
**verberáre**, to beat  
**verberátio**, -onis, *f.*, chastisement  
**verbósus**, -a, -um, verbose, wordy  
**verbum**, -i, *n.*, word  
**Vercéllae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, Vercelli  
**Vercellénsis**, -e, of Vercelli  
**Verdúnum**, -i, *n.*, Verdun  
**vere**, *adv.*, in truth, truly, indeed  
**verecúndia**, -ae, *f.*, shame; modesty  
**veréi**, *dep. 2*, to fear; reverence  
**vérgere**, *versi*, to bend  
**véritas**, -atis, *f.*, truth, fidelity  
**vermiculátus**, -a, -um, inlaid  
**vermicúlus**, -i, *m.*, crimson  
**vermis**, -is, *m.*, worm  
**vernáculus**, -i, *m.*, domestic, servant  
 born in one's house, homeborn  
 slave  
**vernans**, -antis, springlike  
**vernus**, -a, -um, of the springtime,  
 spring  
**vero**, *adv.*, but, in truth  
**Veronénsis**, -e, of Verona  
**vérrere**, versus sum, *semidep. 3*, to  
 sweep  
**versáre**, to turn, change  
**versátilis**, -e, revolving  
**versátus**, -a, -um, versed  
**versícúlus**, -i, *m.*, little verse  
**versus**, -us, *m.*, verse  
**versútia**, -ae, *f.*, craftiness, subtlety  
**vérttere**, *verti*, versus, to turn; use;  
 construe as; put to flight; **verténte**

**anno**, at the return of the year  
**vertex**, -icis, *m.*, top; top or crown of the head  
**verúmtamen**, *adv.*, but, nevertheless; surely  
**verus**, -a, -um, true  
**vesánia**, -ae, *f.*, madness, wild rage  
**vesánus**, -a, -um, furious, insane  
**vesci**, *dep.* 3, to eat  
**Vespasiánus**, -i, *m.*, Vespasian  
**vesper**, -eri and -eris, *m.*, evening  
**véspera**, -ae, *f.*, evening  
**vésperae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, vespers  
**vesperáscere**, to become evening  
**vespertínus**, -a, -um, evening  
**vester**, -tra, -trum, your, yours  
**vestíbulum**, -i, *n.*, porch, court  
**vestígium**, -ii, *n.*, footstep; foot  
**vestiméntum**, -i, *n.*, garment, robe; raiment  
**Vestíni**, -orum, *m. pl.*, the Abruzzi  
**vestíre**, to clothe; put on  
**vestis**, -is, *f.*, garment; clothing, vesture  
**vestítus**, -us, *m.*, providing of clothing; vesture  
**veteránus**, -a, -um, veteran  
**veteráscere**, to grow old; vanish  
**veternósus**, -a, -um, dull, lethargic  
**vetáre**, to forbid  
**vétitus**, -a, -um, forbidden  
**vetus**, -eris, old; original  
**vetústas**, -atis, *f.*, old age, old man, old life; antiquity; former ways  
**vetústus**, -a, -um, old  
**vexáre**, to trouble, oppress, afflict  
**vexátio**, -onis, *f.*, annoyance; ill-treatment  
**vexíllum**, -i, *n.*, standard, banner  
**via**, -ae, *f.*, way, highway  
**viáre**, to travel  
**viárius**, -a, -um, wayfarer  
**viáticum**, -i, *n.*, viaticum  
**viátor**, -oris, *m.*, wayfarer, traveler  
**Vibiána**, -ae, *f.*, Bibiana

**vibráre**, to brandish  
**vicárium**, -ii, *n.*, vicariate; office or jurisdiction of a vicar  
**vicárius**, -ii, *m.*, vicar  
**vicéni**, -ae, -a, twenty  
**vicénnis**, at the age of twenty  
**Vicéntia**, -ae, *f.*, Vicenza  
**vicínus**, -a, -um, neighboring, nearby  
**vicinus**, -i, *m.*, neighbor  
**vicis** (*gen.; no nom.*), change, alteration; time, instance; course; return; **vices**, *pl.*, punishment; **in or ad vicem**, instead of  
**vicíssim**, *adv.*, in return; in turn, by turns  
**vicissitúdo**, -inis, *f.*, alteration  
**victima**, -ae, *f.*, victim  
**vicitáre**, to live upon  
**victor**, -oris, *m.*, victor, conqueror  
**victória**, -ae, *f.*, victory  
**victrix**, -icis, victorious, conquering  
**victrix**, -icis, *f.*, conqueror  
**victus**, -us, *m.*, food, feeding; life, way of living  
**vicus**, -i, *m.*, town; district; street, lane, way; **vicus Patrici**, a district of Rome  
**vidélicet**, *adv.*, namely, to wit  
**viden** = **vidésne?** seest thou?  
**videns**, -entis, *m.*, seer  
**vidére**, **vidi**, **visus**, to see, behold  
**vidéri**, **visus sum**, to seem  
**vídua**, -ae, *f.*, widow  
**viduáre**, to deprive of  
**vidúitas**, -atis, *f.*, widowhood  
**Viennénsis**, -e, of Vienne  
**vigére**, to live, flourish; be raised to power  
**vigésimus**, -a, -um, twentieth  
**vigil**, -ilis, watchful  
**vigilánter**, *adv.*, vigilantly  
**vigiláre**, to watch, be awake; resort  
**vigília**, -ae, *f.*, watch, watching; **vigil**  
**vigínti**, twenty

- viginti**quatuor, twenty-four  
**viginti**quinque, twenty-five  
**vigor**, -oris, *m.*, strength, vigor, force  
**vilēscere**, to become valueless  
**vilis**, -e, vile, cheap  
**vilitas**, -atis, *f.*, baseness  
**villa**, -ae, *f.*, village; farm, country place, country  
**Villācum**, -i, *n.*, Villach  
**illicāre**, to be or serve as a steward  
**illicātio**, -onis, *f.*, stewardship  
**illicus**, -i, *m.*, steward  
**Vilnēnis**, -e, of Vilna (or Wilno)  
**inārius**, -a, -um, wine, of wine  
**Vincēntius**, -ii, *m.*, Vincent  
**vincere**, vici, victus, to overcome, conquer  
**vincula** = **vīncula**, bonds, chains  
**inctus**, -i, *m.*, prisoner, captive  
**vinculum**, -i, *n.*, bond; string; chain; in **vīnculis**, in prison  
**vindēmia**, -ae, *f.*, vintage, wine  
**vindemiāre**, to gather grapes, pluck  
**vindemiātor**, -oris, *m.*, grape gatherer  
**vindex**, -icis, *c.*, avenger  
**vindicāre**, to avenge; claim  
**vindicta**, -ae, *f.*, revenge, vengeance; punishment  
**vīnea**, -ae, *f.*, vineyard; vine  
**vīnitor**, -oris, *m.*, vinedresser  
**vinolēntus**, -a, -um, given to wine drinking  
**Vintoniēnsis**, -e, of Winchester  
**vinum**, -i, *n.*, wine  
**violāre**, to ravish; defile  
**violātor**, -oris, *m.*, violater, profaner  
**vīpera**, -ae, *f.*, viper  
**vir**, -i, *m.*, man, husband  
**virāgo**, -inis, *f.*, heroine  
**virens**, -entis, green  
**virēscere**, to grow green  
**virētum**, -i, *n.*, greensward, glade  
**virga**, -ae, *f.*, rod, scepter  
**Virgiliānus**, -a, -um, Vergiliano  
**virginālis**, -e, of a virgin, virginal  
**virgīneus**, -a, -um, virginal  
**virgīnitas**, -atis, *f.*, virginity  
**virgo**, -inis, *f.*, virgin, maiden; **Mons Virginis**, Monte Vergine  
**virgūltum**, -i, *n.*, slip for planting; tender plant; plant; shrub, thicket  
**viridis**, -e, green  
**viriliter**, *adv.*, manfully  
**virītim**, *adv.*, individually  
**viror**, -oris, *m.*, verdure; freshness  
**virtuōse**, *adv.*, virtuously  
**virtus**, -utis, *f.*, virtue, excellence; power, strength; host  
**vis**, vis, *f.*, force, violence  
**viscera**, -orum, *n. pl.*, bowels, innermost parts  
**visere**, visi, visus, to behold  
**visibilis**, -e, outward, visible  
**visibiliter**, *adv.*, outwardly, visibly  
**Visigóthi**, -orum, *m. pl.*, Visigoths  
**visio**, -onis, *f.*, vision  
**visitāre**, to visit; survey  
**visitātio**, -onis, *f.*, visiting, visitation  
**Visogrādum**, -i, *n.*, Wisgrade  
**visum**, -i, *n.*, dream  
**visus**, -us, *m.*, vision, sight  
**vita**, -ae, *f.*, life  
**vitālis**, -e, life-giving, of life  
**vitāre**, to avoid; withstand  
**Vitēpscum**, -i, *n.*, Vitebsk  
**Vitērbium**, -ii, *n.*, Viterbo  
**vitiātor**, -oris, *m.*, corrupter  
**vitiōse**, *adv.*, viciously  
**vitis**, -is, *f.*, vine  
**vītium**, -ii, *n.*, fault, sin, vice  
**vītream**, -a, -um, of glass  
**vitrum**, -i, *n.*, glass  
**vitta**, -ae, *f.*, ribbon, band, lace  
**vītula**, -ae, *f.*, heifer  
**vītulus**, -i, *m.*, calf, bullock, bull  
**vituperāre**, to blame  
**vituperātio**, -onis, *f.*, slander, defamation

Vivariénsis, **-e**, of Vivarais  
 vivax, **-acis**, long-lived, vigorous  
 vivere, vixi, victus, to live  
 vívidus, **-a, -um**, living, healthy  
 vivificans, **-antis**, life-giving  
 vivificáre, to bring to life, quicken  
 vivicátio, **-onis, f.**, a new life  
 vivificátrix, **-icis, f.**, quickener, vivifier  
 vivus, **-a, -um**, living, alive  
 vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty  
 Vladimíria, **-ae, f.**, Włodzimierz  
 vobiscum, with you  
 vobismetípsis, *dat. pl.*; *see* tumetipse  
 vocábulum, **-i, n.**, name  
 vocáre, to call  
 vocátio, **-onis, f.**, calling, vocation, a  
 summons  
 vociferátio, **-onis, f.**, loud shouting,  
 jubilation  
 voláre, to fly  
 Volatéræe, **-arum, f. pl.**, Volterra  
 volátile, **-is, n.**, fowl, winged fowl  
 volátus, **-us, m.**, flight  
 volens, **-entis**, willing  
 Volhínia, **-ae, f.**, Wolyń  
 volitáre, to fly about  
 volo (velle), I wish or will  
 volúcris, **-is, f.**, bird, fowl  
 volúmen, **-inis, n.**, volume, book  
 voluntáric, *adv.*, voluntarily, of one's  
 own will  
 voluntárium, **-ii, n.**, free-will offering  
 voluntárius, **-a, -um**, voluntary  
 volúntas, **-atis, f.** will  
 volúptas, **-atis, f.**, pleasure, delight  
 Volusiánus, **-a, -um**, Volusian  
 volutáre (ari), to roll about, wallow  
 vólvere, volvi, volútus, to meditate  
 vomer, **-eris, m.**, plowshare  
 vorágo, **-inis, f.**, breach  
 voráre, to eat, devour  
 vosmetípsos, *acc.*; *see* tumetipse  
 votívus, **-a, -um**, votive

votum, **-i, n.**, vow; prayer, desire  
 vovére, vovi, votus, to vow, promise  
 solemnly  
 vox, vocis, **f.**, voice; sound; voce  
 magna, with a loud voice  
 Vratislaviénsis, **-e**, of Wrauslaw  
 vulgáre, to publish  
 vulgáris, **-e**, plain, common, coarse  
 vulgo, *adv.*, commonly  
 vulgus, **-i, n.** people, multitude  
 vulneráre, to wound  
 vulnus, **-eris, n.**, wound  
 vulpes, **-is, f.**, fox  
 vultus, **-us, m.**, countenance, face  
 vulva, **-ae, f.**, womb

## W

Wándali, **-orum, m. pl.**, Vandals  
 Willélmus, **-i, m.**, William  
 Willibrórdus, **-i, m.**, Willibrord  
 Winfríduš, **-i, m.**, Winfred  
 Wiremuthénsis, **-e**, of Wearmouth  
 Wolphárdus, **-i, m.**, Wolphard

## X

Xamphána, **-ae, f.**, Champagne  
 Xavérius, **-ii, m.**, Xavier  
 xenodóchium, **-ii, n.**, hospital  
 Xystus, **-i, m.**, Sixtus

## Y

Ypsilon, Greek letter *y*

## Z

zábulus, **-i, m.**, devil  
 zain, the seventh letter of the Hebrew  
 alphabet, corresponding to English  
 z  
 Zatócium, **-ii, n.**, Zatec



<b>Zebedaéus, -i, m.,</b> Zebedee	<b>zelus, -i, m.,</b> zeal
<b>zeláre,</b> to be jealous, envy	<b>Ziphaéi, -orum, m. pl.,</b> Ziphites
<b>zelári, dep.,</b> to be zealous for	<b>zizánia, -orum, n. pl.,</b> cockle
<b>zelátor, -oris, m.,</b> zealot, enthusiast	<b>zona, -ae, f.,</b> girdle

## INDEX

- A (ab)*, 56, 140, 151  
 Ablative absolute, 120, 150  
 Ablative case, 2, 3: prepositions governing, 55; uses of, 150  
 Accompaniment, how expressed, 150  
 Accusative case, 2, 3: prepositions governing, 55; of subject in indirect discourse, 130; uses of, 164  
 Active periphrastic, 48  
 Active voice, 17, 33, 81: deponent verbs, 98; semideponents, 98  
*Ad*, 55, 149, 164: gerundive with, 64  
 Adjectives: comparison of, 149, 150; declension of, 2, 7, 12; demonstrative, 75; different forms of, 7; of first declension, 3; indefinite, 108; position of, 3; of second declension, 7; of special declension, 139; of third declension, 12  
 Adverbs, comparison of, 149, 150  
 Agent: with the passive periphrastic, 140; with the passive voice, 151  
 Agreement: of adjectives, 1, 3, 7, 12; of participles, 47  
*Aio*, 163  
*Aliquis* and *aliqui*, 108  
*Alius*, 140  
*Alter*, 140  
*An*, 162  
*Ante*, 55, 140, 164  
*Apud*, 55, 164  
 Articles, 3  
  
*Bene*, comparison of, 150  
  
*Capere*, 90  
 Cardinal numerals, 175  
*Causa*, gerundive with, 64  
 Causal clause with *cum*, 82  
 Cause, how expressed, 151  
*Circum*, 55, 140, 164  
  
*Coepisse*, 163  
 Comparative of adjectives and adverbs, 149; ablative with, 151; degree of difference, 151; irregular, 149, 150  
 Compounds of *capere*, *facere*, *jacere*, 90  
*Con-*, compounded with verbs, 140  
 Concessive clause with *cum*, 82  
 Conditional clauses of doubt and contrary to fact, 82  
*Contra*, 55, 164  
*Coram*, 56  
*Cum*: accompaniment with, 150; as conjunction, 82; to express manner, 151; governing ablative, 56, 152; with pronouns, 24  
  
 Dative case, 2, 3: uses of, 140  
*De*, 56, 151, 152  
*Decere*, impersonal verb, 139  
 Declension, 1: of adjectives, 12; fifth, 47; first, 2; fourth, 40; irregular, 139; second, 6; third, 11  
 Defective verbs, 163  
 Degree of difference, how expressed, 151  
 Demonstratives, pronouns and adjectives, 75  
 Deponent verbs, 98: governing the ablative case, 152  
 Description, how expressed, 151  
 Direct object, 2, 3, 164  
 Double questions, 162  
 Duration of time, how expressed, 164  
  
*E (ex)*, 151, 56  
 Emphatic pronouns, 75: verb forms, 18  
*Esse*: future of, 41; future imperative of, 34; future participle of, 48; imperatives of, 34; imperfect of, 34, 81; perfect indicative of, 55; possession with, 140, present of, 8, 63

- Esto*, 34  
*Estote*, 34  
*Etiā*, 163  
*Ex*, 56, 151, 152  
 Extent of space, how expressed, 164
- Facere*, 90  
 Feminine gender, 2, 3, 12, 47  
*Ferre*, present indicative of, 108  
*Fieri*, irregular tenses of, 120  
*Frui*, governing ablative, 152  
*Fungi*, governing ablative, 152  
 Future: of *esse*, *posse*, *ire*, 41; infinitive, 130; participles, 47, 48; of the regular conjugations, 40  
 Future perfect, 55: of defective verbs, 163
- Gender, 2, 47  
 Genitive case, 3  
 Gerundive, 48: with *ad* to express purpose, 64; with *causa*, 64
- Hic*, 75
- Ille*, 75  
 Imperative: of *esse* and *ire*, 34; with *nolle*, 150; of the regular conjugations, 33  
 Imperfect: of *esse*, *posse*, *ire*, 34; of *fieri*, 120; of regular conjugations, 33, 81  
 Impersonal verbs, 139  
*In*: with the accusative or ablative, 56; to express place, 151; verbs compounded with, 140  
 Indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 108  
 Indirect discourse, 130: *quod* and *quia*, 131; subjunctive in, 130  
 Indirect object, 3, 140  
 Indirect question, 82  
 Infinitive: to express purpose, 65; in indirect discourse, 130; subject of, 164  
 Instrument, how expressed, 151  
 Intensive pronoun, 75  
*Inter*, 55, 140, 164  
 Interrogative adjective, 107  
 Interrogative pronoun, 107  
*Intra*, 55  
 Intransitive verbs, 140
- Ipse*, 75  
*Ire*: future, 41; imperatives of, 34; imperfect of, 34, 81; participles of, 48; perfect of, 55; present of, 25, 63  
 Irregular comparisons, 149, 150  
 Irregular declensions, 175  
 Irregular verbs, 188-92  
*Iste*, 75
- Jacere*, 90
- Licere*, impersonal verb, 139
- Magnopere*, comparison of, 150  
*Male*, comparison of, 150  
 Manner, how expressed, 151  
 Masculine gender, 67, 40  
 Means, how expressed, 151  
*Memnisse*, 163  
*Multum*, comparison of, 150
- Ne*, use of, 64  
 -*ne*, enclitic, 162  
 Negative adverbs, 162, 64  
*Neuter*, 140  
 Neuter gender, 2, 6, 7, 11  
*Nolle*: in expressions of command, 150; present indicative of, 150  
 Nominative case, 2  
*Nonne*, 162  
 Nouns: declension of, 1; irregular declension of, 175; regular declensions, 2, 3, 7, 11, 40, 47  
*Nullus*, 140  
*Num*, *numquid*, 162  
 Numerals, cardinal and ordinal, 175, 176
- Ob*, 55  
 Object pronouns, direct and indirect, 23, 24, 140  
*Odisse*, 163  
 Ordinal numerals, 175, 176
- Participles, 47, 48: agreement of, 47; declension of, 47  
*Parum*, comparison of, 150

- Passive periphrastic, 48: agent with, 140  
 Passive voice: agent with, 151; deponents, 98; of *facere*, 120; of regular and irregular verbs, 177-192; semideponents, 98  
 Past participles, 47: irregular, 55  
*Per*, 55, 164  
 Perfect tense, 54: defective verbs, 163; of *esse*, *posse*, *ire*, 55; irregular forms of, 55; of the regular conjugations, 54  
 Periphrastic: active and passive, 48; agent with passive, 140  
 Place where, how expressed, 151  
 Pluperfect tense, 55: of defective verbs, 163  
 Position of adjectives, 3  
*Posse*: future of, 41; imperfect of, 34, 81; perfect of, 55; present of, 8, 63; present participle of, 48  
 Possession, 3: with *esse*, 140  
*Post*, 55, 140  
*Potiri*, governing ablative, 152  
*Prae*, 56, 140, 152  
 Prepositions: *cum* with pronouns, 24; governing the accusative and ablative, 55, 56; use and omission of, 151  
 Present indicative: of *esse* and *posse*, 8; of *ferre*, 108; of *fieri*, 120; of *ire*, 25; of the regular conjugations, 17, 18; of *velle* and *nolle*, 150  
*Pro*, 56, 140, 152  
 Progressive verb forms, 18  
 Pronouns: demonstrative, 75; indefinite, 108; intensive or emphatic, 75; interrogative, 107; personal, subject, object, reflexive, 8, 23; relative, 107  
*Propter*, 55  
 Purpose: dative of, 140; *ne* introducing clauses of, 64; ways of expressing, 64, 65  
 Quality, how expressed, 151  
*Quam*, omission of, 151  
 Question: direct, 162; indirect, 82  
*Qui*, 107  
*Quid*, 107  
*Quidam*, 108  
*Quis*, 107  
*Quisque*, 108  
*Quod* or *quia* clause, substitute for indirect discourse, 131  
 Reflexive pronouns, 24  
 Relative pronouns, 107  
 Result, subjunctive in clauses of, 81  
*Secundum*, 55  
 Semideponents, 98  
 Separation, how expressed, 152  
*Si* in conditional clauses, 82  
*Sine*, 56, 152  
*Solus*, 140  
 Space, expression of extent of, 164  
 Specification, how expressed, 152  
*Sub*: with accusative and ablative, 56; compounded with verbs, 140  
 Subject pronouns, 8, 23, 24  
 Subjunctive: in clauses in indirect discourse, 130; to express purpose, 64; formation of pluperfect, 55; imperfect of *esse*, *posse*, *ire*, 81; imperfect of regular conjugations, 81; present of *esse*, *posse*, *ire*, 63; present of regular conjugations, 63; uses of, 63, 81  
*Super*: with accusative and ablative, 56; compounded with verbs, 140  
*Supra*, 56  
 Time: with ablative, 152; duration of, 164  
 Time clause with *cum*, 82  
*Totus*, 140  
*Trans*, 56, 164  
*Ullus*, 140  
*Unus*, 140  
*Ut* (*uti*): introducing purpose clauses, 64; introducing result clauses, 81  
*Uter*, 140  
*Uti*, governing ablative, 152  
*Ut non*, introducing negative clauses of result, 81  
*Utrum*, 162  
*Velle*, present indicative of, 150

- Verbs: complete conjugations of regular and irregular, 177-92; compounded with prepositions, 140; defective, 163; deponents, 98; *esse*, *posse*, *ire*, 8, 25, 34, 41, 48; *ferre*, 108; *fieri*, 120; future tense of, 40, 47; imperfect of, 33, 81; impersonal, 139; intransitive, 140; in *-io*, 90; irregular, 8, 188-92; participles, Verbs (*continued*)  
47; perfect indicative of, 54, 55; present tense of, 8, 16, 17; progressive and emphatic forms of, 18; regular, 177-88; semideponents, 98; *velle* and *nolle*, 150  
*Vesci*, governing ablative, 152
- Word order, 8

# **Second Latin**

**Grammar Vocabularies, and Exercises  
in Preparation for the Reading of  
Philosophy, Theology and Canon Law**

**Cora Carroll Scanlon, A.M.**

**Charles L. Scanlon, A.M.**

# Second Latin

THIS SECOND-YEAR Latin course supposes the previous study of *Latin Grammar*, by the same authors.

It is intended for students who can devote only two years to the study of Latin and who must be prepared to read intelligently Latin textbooks of philosophy, theology, and canon law. Therefore the vocabularies, word studies, exercises, and connected pas-

sages have been selected with this practical purpose in mind.

The first half of the book is based on philosophical texts; the second half is drawn from works of theology and from the Code of Canon Law. At the end of the volume is a vocabulary of 3,000 words, which may serve the purpose of a concise dictionary.

# TAN

**\$38.50**

1401021.  
SECOND LATIN



0 000000 013271

# *SECOND LATIN*

BY

CORA CARROLL SCANLON, A.M.

AND

CHARLES L. SCANLON

TAN BOOKS AND PUBLISHERS, INC.  
Rockford, Illinois 61105



## PREFACE

This second-year Latin course supposes the previous study of our *Latin Grammar*. It is intended for students who can devote only two years to the study of Latin and who must be prepared to read intelligently Latin textbooks of philosophy, theology, and canon law. Therefore the vocabularies, word studies, exercises, and connected passages have been selected with this practical purpose in mind. The first half of the book is based on philosophical texts; the second half is drawn from works of theology and from the Code of Canon Law. At the end of the volume is a vocabulary of 3,000 words, which may serve the purpose of a concise dictionary.

THE AUTHORS

*Printed with Ecclesiastical Approval*

Copyright © 1976 by TAN Books and Publishers, Inc.

Originally published in 1948 by B. Herder Book Co.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 48-748

ISBN: 0-89555-003-2

Fourth Printing

PRINTED AND BOUND IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

## CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
I. Passive Voice . . . . .	1
II. Adverbs . . . . .	4
III. Gerund . . . . .	8
IV. Conjunctions . . . . .	12
V. Conjunctions . . . . .	16
VI. The Infinitive . . . . .	21
VII. Compounds of <b>quis</b> and <b>qui</b> . . . . .	25
VIII. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	29
IX. <b>Quia, quod, quoniam</b> . . . . .	34
X. Verbs Governing Other than the Accusative . . . . .	37
XI. Subjunctive . . . . .	41
XII. Subjunctive in Causal Clauses . . . . .	46
XIII. Other Uses of the Subjunctive . . . . .	52
XIV. Some Prepositions . . . . .	56
XV. Other Uses of the Subjunctive . . . . .	61
XVI. Reflexive Pronouns; Some Prepositions . . . . .	66
XVII. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	72
XVIII. <b>Quin, idem, met</b> . . . . .	77
XIX. <b>Ut</b> Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	82
XX. <b>Dum, donec, quoad</b> . . . . .	87
XXI. Concessive Clauses . . . . .	92

## CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
XXII. Locative Case; Adverbs of Time . . . . .	100
XXIII. Antequam, priusquam . . . . .	109
XXIV. Alius, alter . . . . .	117
XXV. Numerals . . . . .	125
XXVI. Enclitics . . . . .	133
XXVII. Some Prepositions . . . . .	142
XXVIII. Some Prepositions . . . . .	150
XXIX. Some Prepositions . . . . .	157
XXX. Some Prepositions . . . . .	165
XXXI. Some Prepositions . . . . .	173
XXXII. Vocative Case . . . . .	179
XXXIII. Prohibition . . . . .	186
XXXIV. Relative Clause of Characteristic . . . . .	192
XXXV. Verbs Taking the Subjunctive . . . . .	197
XXXVI. Verbs of Wishing . . . . .	203
XXXVII. Verbs of Determining; Verbs of Caution . . . . .	209
XXXVIII. Verbs of Permitting and Commanding . . . . .	215
XXXIX. Verbs of Emotion . . . . .	220
XL. Clause after a Comparative . . . . .	226
Vocabulary . . . . .	233

## LESSON I

### Vocabulary

*abrogare, to revoke, to abrogate, to annul*

*aptus, fit, suited to, correct*

*congruus, proper, suitable*

*corporeus, bodily, corporeal*

*dicitur, it is called, it is said to be*

*distincte, clearly, plainly, distinctly*

*exhibere (2), to show, to exhibit*

*exprimere, -pressi, -pressus, to show, to express, to represent*

*hujusmodi, of this kind*

*mere, merely*

*mosaicus, Mosaic, pertaining to Moses*

*nota, f., mark, feature*

*perfectio, f., perfection, correctness*

*privativus, deprived of, lacking*

*probare, to prove, to test, to examine*

*prout, according as*

*pugnare, to fight*

*roborare, to strengthen*

*solere (2), to be accustomed*

*subjectum, n., subject, proposition*

*vivens, living*

### WORD STUDY

1. **Realis, realiter, realitas** refer to the existence of something existing independent of the action of the created mind. Thus a dot is an **ens reale, realiter existens**. But a point is not an **ens reale**.

2. **Substantia** is an **ens reale** that is suited to exist by itself (e.g., an

apple). **Substantia** is contrasted with **accidens**. An **accidens** (plur., **accidentia**) inheres in a **substantia** (e.g., redness, roundness).

3. **Carentia, privatio. Carentia**, the generic term, means the absence of some quality. **Privatio** (adj., **privativus**) is an absence of a quality from a being that is **aptum** to have that quality. Thus a man's blindness is a **privatio**.

4. **Subjectum, objectum. Subjectum** is that in which something exists. Thus the intellect is the **subjectum** of ideas; a man is the **subjectum** of health. **Objectum** is that toward which something is directed. Thus color is the **objectum** of the power of sight.

#### GRAMMAR

The passive voice is used for the most part as in English.

a) The agent, if expressed, is placed in the ablative case preceded by the preposition **a** or **ab**. **Evangelia a discipulis scribebantur. The Gospels were written by disciples.**

b) Many verbs may be used in the passive with impersonal force.

**Dicitur. It is said to be, it is called.**

**Agendum est. The matter to be treated is.**

#### EXERCISES

Translate into English: 1. **Substantia non deletur.** 2. **Evangelium a sacerdote praedicatur.** 3. **Mundus non amatur ab inimicis suis.** 4. **Ideae distinctae in duas partes dividuntur.** 5. **Animae immortalitas ex ejus spiritualitate probatur.** 6. **Dei existentia ex existentia mundi probatur.** 7. **Corpus exercitio congruo roboratur.** 8. **Lex mosaica a Christo abrogata est.** 9. **Veritas in actu exercito cognoscitur.** 10. **Multas dies pugnatur.** 11. **Cogitationes impiae repelli possunt.** 12. **Portae civitatis apertae sunt.** 13. **Gratae actae erant.** 14. **Principium pacis factum erit.** 15. **Domus a virgine mundatur.** 16. **Panes pauperibus dabuntur.** 17. **Deprecationes a filiis oblatae sunt.** 18. **Virgo in caelis coronatur.** 19. **Filia a matre sua docebitur.** 20. **Discipuli Domini verbis conturbabantur.** 21. **Agnus a servo abductus est.** 22. **Vultus suus**

aversus est. 23. Famuli moniti erant. 24. In civitate illa litigabatur. 25. Poenae non evadentur. 26. Rex a plebe salutatus est. 27. Indulgentia inimicis tribuetur. 28. Praemia servis bonis data erant. 29. Militiae ad civitatem diriguntur. 30. Idea illa dici solet negativa. 31. Sancti ab omnibus hominibus admirati sunt. 32. Verbum a discipulis discutitur. 33. Trinitas a nobis non comprehendi potest. 34. Os suum non apertum est. 35. Calamitates a Deo permittuntur. 36. Antistes a papa audietur. 37. Murus bene munitus erat. 38. Puer in ecclesia relinquebatur. 39. Homines mali ejecti sunt. 40. Terra a Deo facta est. 41. Tutamentum eis mandatum est. 42. Viri a famula vocantur. 43. Ignis a pueris non visus est. 44. Caritas Dei ab omnibus implorabatur. 45. Pes hominis fractus erat. 46. Civitas a rege condetur. 47. Medicina sanamur. 48. Dicta ejus audi solent. 49. Aqua non potabitur. 50. Animae nostrae ab angelis eripientur. 51. Ab apostolis aestimabatur. 52. Sonus tubae a filiis timetur. 53. Vota a matribus facta erunt. 54. Potestas vestra perdita est. 55. In illa die pax concelebrabitur.

## READING

1. Idea positiva est ea, quae aliquam realitatem exhibet, ut idea vitae. Idea negativa est ea, quae exhibet carentiam realitatis, ut idea nihili, mortis, tenebrarum. Prout exhibet carentiam perfectionis in subjecto apto, vel non apto, dici solet privativa, vel mere negativa.

2. Idea distincta dividitur in completam et incompletam. Idea completa est ea, quae omnes notas essentielles distincte exhibet; si non omnes huiusmodi notas exprimit, dicitur incompleta. Completa est idea quae hominem exhibet ut substantiam corpoream, viventem, sensitivam, rationalem.

## LESSON II

### Vocabulary

**alienus, -a, -um, of another, another's**

**attingere, -tigi, -tactus, to arrive at, to attain**

**circa, about, in respect to**

**cognitio, f., knowledge, idea**

**colligere, -legi, -lectus, to assemble, to collect**

**debere (2), to owe, ought, must**

**detegere, -texi, -tectus, to uncover, to detect**

**diligenter, carefully**

**iterum, again**

**nam, for**

**naturaliter, naturally**

**operam dare, to work hard at, to devote oneself to**

**ops, opis, f., power, support; ope, with the help**

**patere (2), to be visible, to be obvious**

**porro, next**

**primo (adv.), first**

**processus, -us, m., course, process**

**ratio, f., account, reason**

**rationium, n., reasoning**

**redigere, -egi, -actus, to make, to reduce**

**reflectere, -flexi, -flexus, to reflect**

**regula, f., rule**

**seipsum, himself; sibiipsi, to himself**

**systema, -atis, n., system**

**vitium, n., defect**

**vulgo, commonly, generally**

## WORD STUDY

**r. Ratio.** The first meaning of this word is account or reckoning, a business transaction: for example, **rationem ducere**, to compute; **rationes subducere**, to close accounts. From this there develops a figurative meaning, such as **rationem habere**, to make a calculation (of any kind, not merely financial). From this is derived other similar meanings, such as plan, mode, method of procedure, nature, kind. The word then comes to be applied to that faculty of the mind which calculates and plans, namely, the reason. From this it is applied to certain properties of the reason, such as reasonableness, order, method. From being applied to the reason itself, it is used to indicate some product of the reason, such as theory, doctrine, system, or the operation itself of the reason, namely, an adducing of proof or reasoning.

## GRAMMAR

**Adverbs.**

a) Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **e** to the stem: **clarus, clare; distinctus, distincte; merus, mere.**

b) Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding **iter** to the stem (stems in **-nt** lose the **-it**): **fortis, fortiter; prudens, prudenter; naturalis, naturaliter.**

c) The ablative singular neuter or feminine of adjectives, pronouns, and nouns may be used adverbially: **falso, falsely; recta, straightway; vulgo, commonly; crebro, frequently.**

d) The words of a phrase or short sentence have sometimes united to form an adverb: **postmodo, presently; videlicet, to wit; nihilominus, nevertheless; scilicet** (usually abbreviated to **scil.**), *that is to say.*

e) A common adverbial ending in Latin is **-tim**: **partim, partly; statim, on the spot; saltim** (or **saltem**), *at least*; **separatim, separately; generatim, in general; divisim, separately, individually; vicissim, in turn; singillatim, singly; gradatim, step by step, gradually, by degrees.**



## EXERCISES

Translate into English: 1. Haec iterum, ratione objecti, dividitur in Metaphysicam generalem et specialem. 2. Homines generatim agunt, prout cogitant. 3. Sic cognosco Petrum, non modo ut est homo, sed etiam, ut est animal, substantia. 4. Ita ideae sunt imagines rerum. 5. Jam imagines, et ergo ideae, considerari possunt: (a) ratione originis; (b) ratione objecti quod exprimunt; (c) ratione perfectionis repraesentationis; (d) ratione inter se relationum. 6. Adhuc non coenaverunt. 7. Amodo omnes pueros hic colligent. 8. Hodie illam rem amplius considerabo. 9. Cognoscunt bene omnes notas objecti. 10. Nobis benigne multas res tribuere solet. 11. Deprecationes meas clementer audivit. 12. Competenter diligenterque omnem scientiam ad regulas redegerunt. 13. Etiam ope regularum scientia logicae filiis docebitur. 14. Homines iniqui foras ejecti sunt. 15. Fortiter pugnatur in illa natione. 16. Hic remanere possunt. 17. Igitur homo substantia corporea, vivens, sensitiva, rationalis dicitur. 18. Ideo idea negativa est ea quae carentiam realitatis exhibet. 19. Illic stabat auxilium implorans. 20. Pueri item cum matribus in ecclesiam introibunt. 21. Iterum dicam, id quod jam dixi. 22. Nimis de legibus discutitur. 23. Sine exercitio congruo corpus numquam roborari potest. 24. Sic probari non solet. 25. De carentia perfectionis in illa re non agendum est. 26. Subjectum nunc probatum est. 27. Olim leges ratiocinii non comprehendebantur. 28. Exercitus Romam pridie intravit. 29. In hoc subjecto duae ideae pariter expressae sunt. 30. Quando lex mosaica abrogabatur? 31. Quare haec idea privativa dicitur? 32. Idea quoque negativa dicitur. 33. Quondam domus in illa regione sine tectis erant. 34. Corpora sua exercitio roborare quotidie solent. 35. Non recte exhibent notas realitatis. 36. Homo sicut apostolus dixit. 37. Duas ideas simul expressit. 38. Primo, sibiipsi subjectum probat; porro, omnibus hominibus id probabit. 39. Realitatem facile et sine errore probare possunt. 40. Igitur veritas non vulgo patet. 41. Quare vitia ratiocinii ejus detegere non possumus? 42. His processibus naturaliter veritatem attingimus. 43. Tamen regulas illius systematis non clare percipimus.

44. Homo, huic scientiae operam dans, vitia ratiocinii sui observat. 45. Conclusiones tam remotae erant, ut vulgo non paterent. 46. Gloria virtutem tamquam umbra sequitur. 47. Comprehendemus tunc processus ratiocinii nostri. 48. Discipuli Christi ubique aliis rationem reddere de fide sua debent. 49. Unde non opus est id aliis probare. 50. Si admittuntur ideae universales, debent quoque admitti res aliquo modo universales. 51. Nunc experientia habetur ope observationis et experimenti. 52. Cognitio nostra est essentialiter relativa. 53. Studium logicae mentem gradatim roborat. 54. Homo partim spiritus, partim corpus est. 55. Prout huic subjecto operam damus, id intelligemus.

## READING

1. Nam qui huic scientiae (logicae) operam dat, primo, in suam mentem et ejus operationes reflectens, diligenter observat modum, quo naturaliter veritatem attingit; deinde ex hac observatione colligit, et in systema redigit, regulas, quas in suis circa veritatem operationibus sequi debet.

2. Porro, ope ejusdem regularum systematis, cognitiones jam habitas clarius et distinctius percipit; conclusiones remotiores, quae vulgo non patent, ex eis deducit; alienorum vitia argumentorum detegit; ac sibiipsi, et si opus est, aliis rationem reddere potest de sui ratiocinii processibus.

## LESSON III

### Vocabulary

actus, m., *act*

communiter, *commonly*

conserere, -serui, -sertus, *to connect*

definire, *to define*

facultas, f., *faculty*

hinc, *hence*

intellectus, m., *intellect*

necessario, *necessarily*

non modo, *not only*

notio, f., *notion*

notitia, f., *knowledge, acquaintance*

res, f., *thing*

scil. (abbrev. for scilicet), *that is to say, namely*

sensibilis, *perceptible, apprehensible, sensible*

seu, *or*

significare, *to mean, to signify*

simplex, *simple*

sonare, *to sound, to indicate*

terminus, m., *term*

tractare, *to treat*

ullus, -a, -um, *any*

verum etiam, *but also*

### WORD STUDY

1. **Essentia**: that by which a thing is what it is; the intrinsic nature of a thing. Thus the **essentia** of man consists in his being a rational animal; the **essentia** of a triangle consists in its being a three-sided plane figure. Further details do not belong to the **essentia**.

2. **Facultas:** used here in the sense of power or ability.

3. **Sensibilis:** perceptible to the mind through the senses of sight, hearing, touch, and the like. Capable of being apprehended by the bodily senses.

### GRAMMAR

Gerund and gerundive participle. These verb parts are formed similarly, that is, by adding **-nd-** plus the inflectional endings to the basic root. For example:

capiendus, -a, -um	capiendi, -ae, -a
capiendi, -ae, -i	capiendorum, -arum, -orum
capiendo, -ae, -o	capiendis, -is, -is
capiendum, -am, -um	capiendos, -as, -a
capiendo, -a, -o	capiendis, -is, -is

a) The gerund is used in the singular only, and only in the oblique cases (i.e., all cases except the nominative and the vocative).

b) The gerund combines the functions of both the verb and the noun. For example: *ars scribendi, the art of writing*. *Potestas res cognoscendi, the power of recognizing things*.

c) The gerund is always active in meaning and in grammatical relationship.

d) The gerundive participle is used in all cases and both numbers.

e) The gerundive participle is used as an adjective or with some form of **esse** as a predicate verb with the idea of must or ought. This last construction is sometimes called the Second Periphrastic.

f) The gerundive participle is always passive in meaning and in grammatical relationship. The agent, when expressed, is put in the dative case.

Examples:

As adjective: **Magna et conservanda civitas, a great city worthy of preservation.**

Second Periphrastic: **Hinc cum iisdem tractanda sunt.** *Hence they must be treated with the same.* **Quaedam res aggregandae erant.** *Certain things had to be added.*

## EXERCISES

Translate into English: 1. Quaedam res cognoscendae sunt. 2. Haec facultas possidenda est. 3. Homo facultatem possidet cognitiones proprias manifestandi. 4. Hic terminus definiendus est. 5. Ille actus cum aliis non confundendus est. 6. Essentia alicujus rei menti repraesentanda est. 7. Ideae simpliciter exprimendae erunt. 8. Hoc nomen simplex accipiendum erat. 9. Panis manducandus erat. 10. Inimici nostri repellendi erunt. 11. Calices pueris ostendendi erant. 12. Ars scribendi docenda est. 13. Spes amicos suos liberandi corda replevit. 14. Leges iisdem hominibus observandae erunt. 15. Initium ecclesiam decorandi factum est. 16. Laetitia Deum cognoscendi non potest exprimi. 17. Lucas non videndae sunt. 18. Domus mundanda erat. 19. Peccatum reservatum commissum est et non absolvendum. 20. Modus vivendi est optimus. 21. Manifestat timorem suum clamando. 22. Perdidit discipulos auxilium inimicis ducendo. 23. Placendae militiae causa in illo loco remansit. 24. Regnat viros malos ejiciendo. 25. Videndi exercitus gratia in monte alto stabit. 26. Ostia aperienda erant. 27. Mortuus est ad alios salvandos. 28. Respiciendi ignis causa ingressae sumus ad civitatem. 29. Multa faciendo virtutem ostendunt. 30. Agendum est. 31. Te vocabo ad canendum hymnum. 32. Pueri introeunt ad aquam aspergendam. 33. Sapientiam non habeo in rebus meis gerendis. 34. Modis malis relinquendis vitam meliorem possumus consequi. 35. Os sancti reddendum erit. 36. Eadem ei non petenda sunt. 37. Coenandum est. 38. Non videmus utilitatem ad invicem litigandi. 39. Pueri matresque liberandi sunt. 40. Oves ab haedis sequestrandae sunt. 41. Porta mihi aperienda est. 42. Faciendum erat. 43. Multa tabernacula aedificanda erunt. 44. Vivitis non ad mandata danda sed ad accipienda. 45. Hic famulus in illo tumultu sepeliendus erat. 46. Hi homines dolosi quoque timendi sunt. 47. Venerunt ad pacem poscendam. 48. Possidendae terrae causa rex malus pauperes

de domibus eorum ejecit. 49. Ulciscendi domini gratia servus inimicos ejus quaesivit. 50. Rex virginibus lacrimosis non affligendus est.

## READING

1. Sed homo non modo habet potestatem res cognoscendi, **verum** etiam facultatem possidet cognitiones proprias aliis hominibus manifestandi. Haec manifestatio fit per quaedam signa sensibilia, scil., terminum, propositionem, argumentationem, quae, pro nostra praesenti conditione, cum mentis operationibus necessario conserta sunt, et hinc cum iisdem tractanda.

2. Apprehensio, ut ipsum nomen sonat, significat aliquid capere, percipere, tenere, quibus verbis, communiter exprimitur cognitio seu notitia, quam mens accipit de rebus. Hinc simplex apprehensio definitur: actus, quo intellectus sibi repraesentat essentiam alicujus rei, sine ulla de ipsa re affirmatione vel negatione.

## LESSON IV

### Vocabulary

**complexio**, f., *combination*

**duplex**, *double*

**e.g. (exempli gratia)**, *for example*

**ens**, n., *being*

**expers**, *devoid of, without*

**formalis**, *formal, essential*

**i.e. (id est)**, *that is*

**immaterialis**, *immaterial*

**imprimere**, -pressi, -pressus, *to impress*

**materialis**, *material*

**objectum**, n., *object*

**omnino**, *altogether, entirely*

**organismus**, m., *organism*

**Plato**, m., *Plato* (Greek philosopher, 427-347 B.C.)

**praecisive**, *precisely*

**praeterquam**, *beyond, besides*

**sensitivus**, *perceptive by the senses*

**seu . . . vel**, *whether . . . or*

**spectare**, *to look at*

**tantum**, *only*

**uterlibet**, *whichever of the two*

**v.g. (verbi gratia)**, *for example*

### WORD STUDY

**i. Ens** (plur. **entia**). Strictly speaking, this most general of all terms cannot be defined. But we can say that it means **id quod est**. Whatever

is, is an **ens**. Existence is not requisite for something to be an **ens**. Whatever can be the object of thought is an **ens**. Thus a mile-high tree is an **ens** (possible); but a square circle is not an **ens**.

2. **Formalis**. An object of thought or study may be twofold: as the thing is in itself and as it is from a special point of view. As the former it is the **objectum materiale**; as the latter it is the **objectum formale**. The **objectum materiale** of chemistry is matter; the **objectum formale** is likewise matter, but considered as consisting of ultimate elements and their mutual relations.

## GRAMMAR

1. **Ut** followed by the indicative may be translated by the adverbial conjunctions *as, when, while, as soon as, since*.

## 2. Some conjunctions.

a) Often the same conjunction is repeated in two coordinate clauses.

et . . . et	}	<i>both . . . and</i>
-que . . . -que		
aut . . . aut	}	<i>either . . . or</i>
vel . . . vel		
sive . . . sive	}	<i>whether . . . or</i>
seu . . . seu		
neque . . . neque		<i>neither . . . nor</i>

b) Many adverbs are similarly used in pairs as conjunctions.

nunc . . . nunc	}	<i>now . . . now</i>
tum . . . tum		
jam . . . jam		
modo . . . modo		
ut . . . sic (ita)	}	<i>as . . . so (as)</i>
tam . . . quam		
cum . . . tum	}	<i>not only . . . but also</i>
non modo . . . vero (sed) etiam		
seu . . . vel		



## EXERCISES

Translate into English: 1. Apprehensio, ut ipsum nomen sonat, significat aliquid percipere. 2. Plato ut sapiens. 3. Matresque puerique passi sunt. 4. Et inimicos timebant et despiciebant eos. 5. Aut caritas aut virtus nobis placet. 6. Vel gaudeant vel affligantur. 7. Sive bibat sive manducet gratias agere decet. 8. Seu famuli seu famulae aderunt in domo domini. 9. Neque regem vidimus neque audivimus eum. 10. Nunc clamabant, nunc obsecrabant. 11. Tum nomina filiorum suorum vocant, tum vultus suos avertunt. 12. Homo jam pius jam impius est. 13. Modo corde fratres modo ad invicem dolosi sunt. 14. Ut pater sic filius. 15. Ut mater docet, ita agit filia. 16. Agnus non tam magnus est quam ovis. 17. Cum mirabiliter factum est, tum nimis dignum est. 18. Non modo iudex verum etiam rex ipse reum ex regno migrare jusserunt. 19. Seu est nota vel notarum complexio. 20. Ut portam aperueram, citaram audire poteram. 21. Ut famulae concelebrabant, aliquis donum matris meae fregit. 22. Non eas vidi, ut id dixerunt. 23. Et vinum benedixit, et bibit eum. 24. Aut nobis medelam dabit aut moriemur. 25. Vel virgo vel filius patrem suum consolabitur. 26. Sive valde contriti erant sive in malis suis laetabantur, non scio. 27. Neque homines neque gentes leges justitiae observaverunt. 28. Seu Maria in ecclesia erat seu ad domum jam ierat, non dicere poterant. 29. Nunc leones agnos capiebant, nunc isti evadebant. 30. Tum aedificant, tum delent. 31. Ut sacerdos ducit, sic omnes discipuli sui consequentur. 32. Ille vir praeclarus tam fortis quam fidelis est. 33. Sancti jam vincula jam certamina patiebantur. 34. Cum latro est hic vir, tum regionis reus pessimus. 35. Utrumlibet habere potes: seu calicem de argento vel fontem aquae sanctae. 36. Modo sapientiam exhibeo, modo delicta copiosa facio. 37. Non modo de die in diem in via commorati sunt, verum etiam omnes panes et carnes manducaverunt. 38. Deus tam bonus quam clemens est. 39. Neque defunctorum neque vivorum obliviscentur. 40. Non memini sive apud benefactorem suum apparuit sive in tenebris occultus remanebat. 41. Nunc credebat, nunc dicebat se ignorare. 42. Ut alios aestimat, ita cogitat alios eum aestimare.

43. Ut ex civitate egressi sunt, non mihi scripserunt. 44. Semper nobis epistolam mittit, ut advenit. 45. Seu Agnes vel Andreas oves custodit. 46. Seu bonus seu malus est, nemo diligit eum. 47. Habitatio, ut ipsum nomen sonat, significat locum habitandi. 48. Martyres innocentes erant ut angeli. 49. Non modo vox ejus suavis erat, verum etiam vultus valde benignus erat. 50. Aut nubes aut montes erant.

## READING

1. Actus facultatis sensitivae exhibet tantum sensibiles corporum qualitates (i.e., eas quae in organismum se imprimere valent), at actus intellectus, praeterquam quod attingit ad res qualitativis sensibilibus omnino expertes (e.g., Deum, animam), res materiales sub rationibus praecisive immaterialibus substantiae, entis, etc., cognoscit.

2. Objectum ideae seu id quod idea repraesentat, est duplex, materiale et formale: Materiale est res spectata ut est in se, scil., cum omnibus suis notis, e.g., Plato; formale est eadem res, prout a mente apprehenditur, v.g., Plato ut sapiens; seu est nota vel notarum complexio, quae hic et nunc repraesentatur, e.g., sapientia vel virtus Platonis.

## LESSON V

### Vocabulary

**alter**, *the other*

**contemplatio**, f., *contemplation*

**diversitas**, f., *difference*

**dividere**, -visi, -visus, *to divide*

**excitare**, *to excite, to arouse*

**exsurgere** (3), *to arise*

**extra**, *outside of*

**factitius**, *artificial*

**inquirere**, -quisivi, -quisitus, *to seek*

**intuitivus**, *intuitive*

**nominare**, *to call, to name, to nominate*

**operatio**, f., *action*

**ordinare**, *to arrange, to ordain*

**oriri**, ortus, *to rise*

**partitio**, f., *division*

**philosophia**, f., *philosophy*

**posterior**, *the latter*

**practicus**, *practical*

**praesentia**, f., *presence*

**praxis**, m., *practice, exercise*

**prior**, *the former*

**realis**, *real*

**reflexus**, *reflex*

**respectus**, m., *respect*

**scopus**, m., *aim, object*

**sistere**, stiti, status, *to stand*

**sol**, m., *sun*

speculativus, *speculative*  
 supremus, *ultimate, highest*  
 vero, *but, whereas*

## WORD STUDY

1. **Factitius.** An idea is said to be **factitius** when it is the result of several ideas being combined by the mind to form a new idea of which the mind has had no previous knowledge.

2. **Reflexus.** A reflex idea is one whose object is **within** the mind, such as the idea of one's own happiness.

## GRAMMAR

1. **Present participle.** Used only in the active voice, the present participle has the force of both a verb and an adjective. As adjective it shows agreement; as a verb it may take an object. **Objectum extra cognoscentem est.** *The object is outside the person recognizing it.*

2. **Conjunctions** that require special notice.

a) **et** (and) simply connects words or clauses. **Ideae dividuntur in intuitivas et factitias.** *Ideas are divided into intuitive and factitious.*

b) **-que** (and) combines more closely into a connected whole. **-que** is added as an enclitic to the word connected. **Aqua ignique deleta sunt.** *They have been destroyed by fire and water* (combined).

c) **Atque, ac** (and) lays more emphasis on the added word. It may be translated *and so, and yet, and besides, and then.* **Omnia bona atque mala.** *Everything good and everything bad besides.*

d) **Sed, verum, vero** (but), the last two being more emphatic. These words are used to introduce something in opposition to what precedes.

e) **At** introduces a new point in an argument and is more emphatic than **sed**.

f) **At enim** introduces a supposed objection which is presently to be refuted.

g) **Autem** marks a mere transition and is best translated *however* or *now*.

h) **Quod si** (but if, and if) continues a line of reasoning.

i) **Aut, vel** (or). The usual difference is that **aut** excludes the alternative, whereas **vel** gives a choice between two alternatives. This distinction is not always observed.

**Philosophia aut speculativa aut practica est.** *Philosophy is either speculative or practical.*

**Bibat vel manducat.** *Let him eat or drink* (whichever he wishes).

j) **Nam, namque** (for) introduce a reason for some statement already expressed.

k) **Enim** (for) introduces a statement of lesser importance, somewhat parenthetically.

l) **Etenim** has the force of *for, you see; for, you know*.

m) **Ergo** (therefore) is used of things as formally proved.

n) **Igitur** (therefore, accordingly) is weaker than **ergo**. It is used to mark a transition from one idea to another.

o) **Itaque** (therefore, accordingly, and so) is less formal than **ergo**.

p) **Autem, enim, vero** never stand first in their clause, but are always preceded by some other word or words.

#### EXERCISES

1. Verba nuntiantis audivimus. 2. Munera accipientes gratias agimus. 3. Quaerenti mihi nihil dixerunt. 4. Rex eos intendit intercedentes pro filiis eorum. 5. Adveniens suaviter discipulis suis locutus est. 6. Non dominum inveniētes servi egressi sunt. 7. Contagionem litigantium evadere decet. 8. Illud laudans episcopus iterum eadem promisit. 9. Patriae suae decorem nimis diligens vir ille migrare nolebat. 10. Lazarum ex tumulo venientem videbant. 11. Deus cle-

menter iudicat et propitius indulget. 12. Nix rosque formae aquae sunt. 13. Mater iusta atque misericors erat. 14. Rex multa bona possidebat, sed nihil pauperibus dabat. 15. Haec non magna sunt, verum valde bona. 16. Culpa maxima est at non nova. 17. Benedictiones accipiunt, non gratias vero agunt. 18. At enim dicis eos regem non eligere; veritas non est. 19. Praemia muneraque huius mundi despiciebat. 20. Terminum autem non cognoscebat, et itaque ei nihil significabat. 21. Quod si nox obscura est, pater vester cadet. 22. Homines omnes mortales sunt; Joannes homo est, ergo Joannes mortalis est. 23. Promisit et igitur nobiscum cooperabit. 24. Non ei credimus, etenim numquam veritatem dicit. 25. Curae custodiaeque filiorum operam dabant. 26. Caelum et terra plena gloria ejus sunt. 27. Dicta ac cogitationes benigna esse possunt. 28. Bonus erat et igitur caelestia nec terrena optabat. 29. Quod si certas notas exhibet, id cognoscere poterimus. 30. Lex mosaica ac leges gentium a Christo abrogatae sunt. 31. In monte latentem latronem non invenit. 32. Patriarcha advenit pauperibus multa offerens. 33. Eis pietatem exhibebat mandata sua observantibus. 34. Corpora sanantes et animas salvantes ibant apostoli de civitate in civitatem. 35. Oculos elevans in caelum sacerdos hostiam in manus suas accipit. 36. Vinum in calicem infundentem eum spectabamus. 37. Res certae atque incertae nos contristabant. 38. Cum laetitia canens, servus gregem suum ad lacum adduxit. 39. Virginem fratrem suum foventem laudant. 40. Praecepta regis venerantibus munera praestabit. 41. Prior enim respicit solam rei cognitionem. 42. Posterior vero eas veritates respicit quae ad praxim ordinantur. 43. Ergo in omni iudicio tres illae veritates necessario conseruntur. 44. Falsum non idem est ac verum. 45. Haec autem sententia semper est in tempore praesenti respectu loquentis.

## READING

1. Philosophia, dum supremas rerum causas inquit, aut sistit in contemplatione veritatis, aut veritatem ad operationem seu praxim ordinat; hinc duplex exurgit philosophiae partitio, quarum prima

speculativa, altera practica, pro scopi diversitate, nominatur. Prior enim respicit solam rei cognitionem; posterior vero eas veritates, quae ad praxim ordinantur.

2. Secundum modum, quo in mente oriuntur, ideae dividuntur in intuitivas et factitias. Idea intuitiva est ea, quae excitatur in mente a reali praesentia rei cognitae. Duplex est: (a) directa, i.e., idea intuitiva, cujus objectum est extra cognoscentem, v.g., idea solis; (b) reflexa, i.e., idea cujus objectum est intra cognoscentem, v.g., idea meae laetitiae, cogitationis, etc.

## LESSON VI

### Vocabulary

actus, m., *act, actuality*

componere, -posui, -positus, *to compose*

consideratio, f., *consideration*

corporalis, *corporeal, bodily, material*

habitudo, f., *habitual association, close relationship*

pertinere (2), -tinui, -tentus, *to pertain, to be the business (of)*

potentia, f., *power, possibility, capacity*

productio, f., *production, creation*

secundo (adv.), *secondly*

spiritualis, *spiritual*

tertio (adv.), *thirdly*

theologus, m., *theologian*

tres, tria, *three*

unio, f., *union*

versare, *to turn, to treat, to deliberate*

### WORD STUDY

1. **Ex parte.** This phrase is used in the sense of *upon* or *from one side only, from the standpoint of*. Thus we may consider education **ex parte magistri** or **ex parte discipuli**; psychology studies man **ex parte animae**, biology considers man **ex parte corporis**.

2. **Virtus** means not only *virtue* in the sense of a moral habit, but also *active quality or power, capacity or power adequate to the production of a given effect, energy, strength, efficacy*.

3. **Potentia, actus.** Philosophically these terms refer to possible existence and real existence. What is **in potentia** is possible but has not come into existence. What exists is **in actu**.



Since God is everything that it is possible for Him to be, there is no *potentia* in Him. He is *actus purus*.

## GRAMMAR

The infinitive may be used variously.

a) With *est* and similar verbs, as the subject or in apposition with the subject or as predicate nominative.

**Orare bonum est.** *It is good to pray.*

**Id, v.g., gratias agere, actus amoris est.** *This, namely, to give thanks, is an act of love.*

**Illud erat inimicis caritatem exhibere.** *That was showing charity to the enemy.*

b) As the apparent subject of impersonal verbs.

**Naturam hominis considerare pertinet ad theologum.** *To consider the nature of man pertains to the theologian.*

c) After many verbs if their subject is also the subject of the infinitive.

**Rebus practicis operam dare solent.** *They are accustomed to devote themselves to practical things.*

d) With the subject in the accusative case after verbs of knowing, thinking, telling, and the like (indirect discourse).

**Scio theologum terminum illum definivisse.** *I know that the theologian has defined that term.*

e) To express purpose. **Nobis manducare dedit.** *He gave us something to eat.*

## EXERCISES

1. Omnino practicum est supremas rerum causas inquirere. 2. Sistere in contemplatione veritatis congruum est. 3. Haec intellectus facultas, rei essentiam apprehendere, non ratiocinii processus est. 4. Id erit praeterquam regulas diligenter colligere. 5. Sanctus esse significat vitiis expertem. 6. Leges malas abrogare debent. 7. Hinc prior philo-

sophia speculativa communiter nominari solebat. 8. Postquam carentiam praxis exhibuerant, eos docere volebamus. 9. Oblivisci non possum certas res quas expressit. 10. Circa perfectionis Dei notiones tractare opus est. 11. In systema regulas redigere optabat. 12. Subjecta mentis materialia vel immaterialia esse possunt. 13. Primo perturbationes intra gentes excitare constituerunt. 14. Scopos processus aut simplex aut duplex esse solet. 15. Ait subjectum in partes duodecim se divisisse. 16. Dicit ideas novas exurgituras esse. 17. Cogitabant se alteram facultatem intellectus detegere. 18. Vulgo dicebant autem solem ex aqua oriri. 19. Scient enim nos venisse. 20. Sperant se resuscitados iri in novissimo die. 21. Promittunt se processuros esse ad contemplationem rerum realium. 22. Confessus sum me notam illam organismi non comprehendisse. 23. Dicunt se solem spectare cum oculis suis apertis. 24. Dixit hoc delictum item inultum futurum esse. 25. Dixerunt se venisse ad testimonium perhibendum. 26. Sciebant Deum benedictiones supra orbem ut rorem sparsisse. 27. Dicitur servos ingemiscere ob malos domini actus. 28. Dixit vero systema non practicum esse. 29. Spero contemplationem rerum harum eas impressuram esse in mentem vestram. 30. Vidit praesentiam suam iram eorum excitare. 31. Venturus est mundum judicare. 32. Id facere praecisive comparati sunt. 33. Juravit tantum jussu regis se tradidisse discipulos. 34. Martyres per flammam transire debebant. 35. Memini eam semper lassam esse. 36. Deus solem in caelum ponere voluit, ad terram illuminandam. 37. Ibunt tabernaculum spectare. 38. Argentum auferre non ausi sunt. 39. Timeo calicem frangere propter fragilitatem ejus. 40. Pugnare debent ad seipsos roborandos. 41. Theologus existentiam Dei probare potest. 42. Cognitio, ut nomen suum sonat, significat cognoscere. 43. Materialia ex immaterialibus dividere opus est. 44. Dixit se in caelum ascensurum esse. 45. Operationes mentis considerare opera philosophiae est.

## READING

1. Post considerationem creaturae spiritualis et corporalis considerandum est de homine, qui ex spirituali et corporali substantia

componitur: et primo de natura ipsius hominis; secundo de ejus productione. Naturam autem hominis considerare pertinet ad theologum ex parte animae, non autem ex parte corporis, nisi secundum habitudinem quam habet corpus ad animam; et ideo prima consideratio circa animam versabitur.

2. Tria inveniuntur in substantiis spiritualibus, scilicet essentia, virtus et operatio: primo considerabimus ea quae pertinent ad essentiam animae; secundo ea quae pertinent ad virtutem, sive potentias ejus; tertio ea quae pertinent ad operationem ejus. Circa primum occurrit duplex consideratio: quarum prima est de ipsa anima secundum se, secunda de unione ejus ad corpus.

## LESSON VII

### Vocabulary

**adjungere, -junxi, -junctus, to add, to attach**

**calefacere, -feci, -factus, to heat**

**calidus, hot**

**calor, m., heat**

**errare, to err**

**incorporeus, incorporeal**

**intellectualis, intellectual**

**natura, f., nature**

**non solum, not only**

**opinari (dep.), to think**

**phantasia, f., image, representation**

**subsistere, -stiti, -stitus, to subsist, to abide**

**tandem, at length, finally**

### WORD STUDY

**1. Incorporeus:** not having a material body or form; not consisting of matter.

**2. Phantasia, fantasy:** act or function of forming images or representations whether in direct perception or in memory, or by derivation through sensation.

**3. Subsistere:** to have existence or to continue to exist; to appear as the essential corollary of the existence of something else.

### GRAMMAR

Compounds of **quis** and **qui**.

a) The suffix **-cumque** added to the relative gives it an indefinite **sense**. The compound form is declined like the simple relative:

**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, *whoever, whatever*; **cujuscumque**, etc.

The suffix **-cumque** may be added to some other words with the same effect: **qualiscumque**, *of whatever sort*; **quandocumque**, *when-ever*; **ubicumque**, *wherever*; **quantuscumque**, *however great*.

b) In **quisquis**, *whoever*, both parts are declined.

c) **Quidam**, *a certain one*, and **quivis, quilibet**, *any you please*, are used as both pronouns and adjectives. The forms are:

m.	f.	n.
quidam	quaedam	quiddam or quoddam
quivis	quaevis	quidvis or quodvis
quilibet	quaelibet	quidlibet or quodlibet

**Quidam** changes *m* to *n* before *d*: acc. sing., **quendam** (m.), **quandam** (f.); gen. plur., **quorundam** (m., n.), **quarundam** (f.).

d) **Quispiam**, *some, any*, is both pronoun and adjective.

Pronoun: **quispiam** (m., f.), **quidpiam** (n.).

Adjective: **quispiam** (m.), **quaepiam** (f.), **quodpiam** (n.).

e) **Quisquam**, *any at all*, is used as both pronoun and adjective in the masculine and feminine forms; in the neuter (**quidquam**, sometimes **quicquam**) it is a pronoun only. This relative has no plural.

f) **Aliquis**, pronoun, *some one*, and **aliqui**, adjective, *some*, are declined like **quis** and **qui** except that the feminine of the nominative singular is **aliqua**.

g) **Quisque**, *every one*, **quique**, *every*: **-que** added to the interrogatives **quis** or **qui** gives a universal sense.

Pronoun: **quisque** (m., f.), **quidque** (n.).

Adjective: **quique** (m.), **quaeque** (f.), **quodque** (n.).

h) **Unusquisque**, *every single one*. In this compound both parts are declined: genitive, **uniuscujusque**.

## EXERCISES

1. Quicumque introivit cineres non vidit. 2. Quodcumque id est, non cognosco. 3. Praemia dedit cuicui venit. 4. Quidam servus apparuit tubam sonans. 5. Quodlibet signaculum gerere potes. 6. Timebant propter quorundam vitas. 7. Potentiae quaequam patebant, aliae non comprehendebantur. 8. Da nobis quemquam panem. 9. Eis locuti sumus de aliquibus objecti notis. 10. In rei contemplatione aliquod tempus sistebat. 11. Aliqua locum habitationis inquirit. 12. Quisque de somno surrexit. 13. Quodque objectum essentiam habet. 14. In hoc libro quidam mentis processus nominantur. 15. Aliquod in nos imprimet cujuscumque docuit. 16. Substantia qualiscumque principium ac finem habet. 17. Ingrediens in domum dixit: "Salve!" cuicumque ibi invenit. 18. Quendam vidimus ejicientem spiritus malos. 19. Versabitur circa quasdam animae potentias. 20. Quaequam diversitates sunt inter philosophiam practicam et speculativam. 21. Quidquam ei placebit. 22. Divisi erant circa aliquos unionis scopos. 23. Apparebat sol intra aliquas nubes mirabiles. 24. Adducite ad altare quemvis haedum. 25. Pueri matris uniuscujusque in servitutem ducti sunt. 26. Quare in quibusdam malitiis glorificaris? 27. Fortes, quantaecumque sunt gentes, tandem delentur. 28. Ubicumque oves erant eas inveniebant. 29. Quomodo possumus unicuique credere? 30. Cane pro nobis verba cujuslibet hymni. 31. Quandocumque pater olim iram suam manifestabat, filii ei dona offerebant. 32. Primo domum calefacient, secundo aliquos panes cum vino manducabunt, tertio dormient. 33. Naturam quorumpiam organismorum non comprehendimus. 34. Quisquam hujusmodi actus ad philosophiam practicam pertinet. 35. Quodque systema de regulis compositum est. 36. Mens potentiam habet quarundam phantasiarum formandarum. 37. Non solum quospiam latrones in monte viderunt, verum etiam aliquos leones maximos. 38. Praeterquam quaedam notarum complexio naturaliter patet. 39. Primo, homo suos actus proprios considerat, porro causas eorum inquirit. 40. Ubicumque sistimus, calidum est. 41. Opinatur quoddam ratiocinium ves-

trum non rectum esse. 42. Speramus quamque venturam esse. 43. Accepit quemquem miserunt. 44. Exprime quasvis notiones. 45. Ope quarundam rerum huiusmodi in totum mundum leges novas imponemus.

## READING

1. Dicitur quod anima humana non est aliquid subsistens. Sed contra est quod Augustinus dicit: "Quisquis videt mentis naturam et esse substantiam, et non esse corpoream, videt eos qui opinantur eam esse corpoream ob hoc errare, quod adjungunt ei ea sine quibus nullam possunt cogitare naturam," scilicet corporum phantasias. Natura ergo mentis humanae non solum est incorporea, sed etiam est substantia, scilicet aliquid subsistens. Respondeo dicendum (dicit Doctor Angelicus) quod necesse est dicere id quod est principium intellectualis operationis quod dicimus animam hominis, esse quoddam principium incorporeum et subsistens.

2. Ipsum igitur intellectuale principium quod dicitur mens, vel intellectus, habet operationem per se, cui non communicat corpus. Nihil autem potest per se operari nisi quod per se subsistit; non enim est operari nisi entis in actu. Unde eo modo aliquid operatur quo est; propter quod non dicimus quod calor calefacit, sed calidum. Relinquitur igitur animam humanam, quae dicitur intellectus, vel mens esse aliquid incorporeum et subsistens.

## LESSON VIII

### Vocabulary

accidens, m., *accident*

aliter, *otherwise*

alius, *other, another*

animal, n., *animal*

attribuere, -ui, -utus, *to attribute*

brutus, *brute, irrational*

completus, *complete*

dupliciter, *doubly, in a double sense*

excludere, -clusi, -clusus, *to exclude*

forma, f., *form*

genus, n., *class, kind*

imperfectio, f., *imperfection*

inhaerentia, f., *inherent quality*

intelligere, -lexi, -lectus, *to perceive, to understand*

materia, f., *matter*

obstaculum, n., *hindrance*

opinio, f., *opinion*

palpare, *to feel* (by touch)

praemittere, -misi, -missus, *to set forth as a premise*

proprie, *properly*

sententia, f., *opinion*

species, f., *kind, species*

substantia, f., *substance*

vetus, *old*

### WORD STUDY

**i. Substantia, accidens.** A **substantia** is that which exists in itself. An **accidens** is a quality or attribute of some other thing. Thus an



apple is a **substantia**, but redness and sweetness are **accidentia** existing in the apple.

2. **Materia, forma.** Every material thing is constituted of **materia prima** and **forma**. The **forma** is a determining element of any reality. All bodily things have in common **materia prima**. Each thing's **forma** is what makes it distinct from every other thing. **Forma substantialis** makes a thing a **substantia** of a precise essential nature. **Materia prima** is that which all material things have in common. It never actually exists except as being "informed" by a **forma substantialis**.

#### GRAMMAR

##### Deponent verbs.

a) A deponent verb is one which is passive in form but active or reflexive in meaning. The active forms have disappeared except the participles, which exist in both voices:

*sequens, following*

*secuturus, about to follow*

*secutus, having followed*

*sequendus, to be followed*

b) Most deponents belong to the first conjugation, and these are all regular.

c) The following common deponents are irregular:

*confiteor, confiteri, confessus, to confess*

*experior, experiri, expertus, to try*

*fruor, frui, fructus, to enjoy*

*fungor, fungi, functus, to fulfill*

*egredior, egredi, egressus, to walk, to depart*

*irascor, irasci, iratus, to be angry*

*labor, labi, lapsus, to fall*

*loquor, loqui, locutus, to speak*

*metior, metiri, mensus, to measure*

*morior, mori (moriri), mortuus (moriturus), to die*

*nanciscor, nancisci, nactus (nactus), to find, to get*

*nascor, nasci, natus, to be born*

nitor, niti, nisus (nixus), *to strive*  
 obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus, *to forget*  
 ordior, ordiri, orsus, *to begin*  
 paciscor, pacisci, pactus, *to bargain*  
 patior, pati, passus, *to suffer*  
 proficiscor, proficisci, profectus, *to set out*  
 queror, queri, questus, *to complain*  
 revertor, reverti, reversus, *to return*  
 sequor, sequi, secutus, *to follow*  
 tueor, tueri, tuitus (tutus), *to defend*  
 ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus, *to avenge*  
 utor, uti, usus, *to use, to employ*  
 reminiscor, reminisci (no supine), *to call to mind*  
 vescor, vesci (no supine), *to feed upon*

d) Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor, and their compounds take their direct object in the ablative case.

e) A few verbs having no perfect stem appear, in the perfect tenses, only in the passive forms. Such verbs are called semi-deponents.

audeo, audere, ausus, *dare*  
 confido, confidere, confisus, *trust*  
 gaudeo, gaudere, gavisus, *rejoice*  
 soleo, solere, solitus, *be accustomed*

## EXERCISES

1. Intelligere est moveri. 2. Quipiam multa certamina passi sunt.  
 3. Tandem proficiscentur. 4. Queritur diem nimis calidum esse. 5. Sua  
 ratiocinia non proprie tuiti sunt. 6. Si his regulis uteris non errabis.  
 7. Reminiscor hodie me in altari pridie id reliquisse. 8. Injusta gen-  
 tium ultus est. 9. Delicta sua confiteri nolebat. 10. Libris naturae  
 intellectualis perfruebatur. 11. Agni non pane vescuntur. 12. Quan-  
 documque veniebam jam reversi erant. 13. Solet oblivisci ea quae ei  
 dicimus. 14. Aliqui nova ordiuntur, alii veteribus operam dant. 15. Sci-  
 mus animam cum corpore subsistere. 16. Exprimate ideas vestras cum  
 claritate, aliter eas intelligere non poterimus. 17. Proprie loquendo

calor non calefacit. 18. Magis proprie dicitur id calidum esse. 19. Quisque videt per oculum et palpat per manum. 20. Nos secuti sunt non solum per viam, verum etiam in domus nostras. 21. Nixi erant in ratiociniis suis non errare. 22. Ad incorporea phantasias corporeorum adjunxit. 23. Invicem paciscentur ad laborem faciendum. 24. Homo caelestia terrenis non metiri potest. 25. Judex ob rei verba horrenda iratus est. 26. Lapsae sumus et promissionibus nostris fungi non possumus. 27. Experior sed non bene procedo. 28. Sequentes eum in montem obscurum intravimus. 29. Sancti precibus suis fruuntur. 30. In tenebris remanentes eos per ostiam ecclesiae egredientes videbamus. 31. Quidam dixit se philosophia non uti; irasci posse volebat sine obstaculis. 32. In laetitiis aliorum sociando miseras nostras obliviscimur. 33. In illa terra aqua non erat, et igitur omnia bruta animalia mortua sunt. 34. Profecti erant non solum ad gentes succurrendas, sed etiam causarum certaminis inter eas inquirendarum causa. 35. Ite et vos sequar. 36. Civitatem cum fortitudine tuebantur, sed tandem in manus militiae lapsa est. 37. Quare non reminiscimini regulas quas theologus in praeclarum librum suum collegit? 38. Benedictio ejus ut tutamentum contra mala tribuenda est. 39. Quantos panes nactus est Petrus? 40. Agnus Dei qui tollis peccata mundi, miserere nobis.

## READING

1. Ad primum ergo dicendum, quod *hoc aliquid* potest accipi dupliciter: uno modo pro quocumque subsistente, alio modo pro subsistente completo in natura alicujus speciei. Primo modo excludit inhaerentiam accidentis et formae materialis. Secundo modo excludit etiam imperfectionem partis. Anima humana pars speciei humanae est, et igitur potest dici *hoc aliquid* primo modo, quasi subsistens, sed non secundo modo; sic enim compositum ex anima et corpore dicitur *hoc aliquid*. Ad secundum dicendum, quod verba illa Aristoteles dicit non secundum propriam sententiam, sed secundum opinionem illorum qui dicebant quod intelligere est moveri, ut patet ex iis quae ibi praemittit.

2. Operationes partium attribuuntur toti per partes; dicimus enim

quod homo videt per oculum et palpat per manum, aliter quam calidum calefacit per calorem, quia calor nullo modo calefacit proprie loquendo. Potest igitur dici quod anima intelligit sicut oculus videt; sed magis proprie dicitur hominem per animam intelligere. Ad tertium sic proceditur. Videtur animas brutorum animalium subsistere. Homo enim convenit in genere cum aliis animalibus. Sed anima hominis est aliquid subsistens, ut ostensum est. Ergo et animae aliorum animalium sunt subsistentes.

## LESSON IX

### Vocabulary

**accidere, -cidi** (no supine), *to happen, to take place*

**antiquus**, *ancient*

**color, m.**, *color*

**convenire, -veni, -ventus**, *to agree, to be appropriate*

**distinctio, f.**, *distinction*

**distinguere, -stinxi, -stinctus**, *to distinguish*

**exercere, -ui, -itus**, *to exercise, to operate*

**falsus**, *false*

**felicitas, f.**, *happiness, bliss*

**ignorantia, f.**, *ignorance, lack of knowledge*

**immutatio, f.**, *change*

**intellectus, m.**, *intellect*

**manifeste**, *manifestly*

**organum, n.**, *organ*

**participare**, *to participate, to share in*

**philosophus, m.**, *philosopher*

**praeterea**, *besides, moreover*

**pupilla, f.**, *pupil (of the eye)*

**quandoque**, *at one time or other, whenever*

**quodammodo**, *in a certain manner, in a measure*

**quodcumque**, *whatever*

**sensus, m.**, *sense, feeling*

**subjicere, -jeci, -jectus**, *to subject*

**transmutare**, *to transform, to change*

**uterque**, *both*

## WORD STUDY

**Sensus** is here used in the meaning of sensation or feeling as opposed to intellect.

## GRAMMAR

**Quia, quod, quoniam** in indirect discourse. Verbs of saying, thinking, believing, and the like are frequently followed by a clause in the indicative introduced by the conjunction **quia, quod,** or **quoniam** instead of the infinitive with subject in the accusative case.

## EXERCISES

1. Cogitabant quod immutatio non acciderat.
2. Cognosco quia antiqui philosophi illud credebant.
3. Dixit quod colorem pupillae non distinguere poterat.
4. Sperabamus quia ignorantiam suam non manifestaverant.
5. Oblitus sum quod venturus est.
6. Nuntiabit quia iudicis ratiocinium manifeste falsum est.
7. Docent quia anima subsistens est.
8. Credimus quod homo convenit in genere cum aliis animalibus.
9. Dicis quia materia manifeste substantia est.
10. Intellexit quod materia scientiae subjicitur.
11. Ignorat quod distinctio est inter sensum et intellectum.
12. Juravit quia utrumque non viderat.
13. Antiquus philosophus habebat quod animae brutorum animalium subsistentes erant.
14. Promisimus ei quia obstacula non futura sunt.
15. Respondi quia accidentia non inhaerentia sunt.
16. Testimonium perhibet quod verba sua falsa sunt.
17. Recordarisne quod versatum est circa naturam phantasiarum?
18. Videbant quod veteres erant.
19. Audiveruntne quia nomen speciei obliti sumus?
20. Sciebatis quia objecta formam et substantiam habent.
21. Dicit quod sententias antiquorum philosophorum exclusit.
22. Credimus quia in homine unio animae et corporis est.
23. Sensit quia haec non necessario divisa erant.
24. Memento quod idea distincta dividitur in completam et incompletam.
25. Cognoscimus quod tota substantia carentiam perfectionis exhibet.
26. Scito autem quia quodque objectum est ens.
27. Nuntiat quod regem coronaverunt apud magnam turbam clamantem.

tem. 28. Docebant quod spes virtus christiana erat. 29. Opinabatur quia theologus non erraverat. 30. Dicit ei quia ignorantia felicitas est. 31. Cogitavit quod sol ortus erat. 32. Dicit quod pueri nullum timorem sentiunt. 33. Ostendunt quod ratiocinium suum falsum est. 34. Jurabimus quia testimonium ejus non justum erat. 35. Videtur quod theologus terminum bene definivit. 36. Confessi estis quia omnes actus vestros in illo die non reminisci potestis. 37. Dicit quod omnes scopos suos attingit. 38. Dixi quia mater mea jam vetus est. 39. Primo dixit quia regulas colligere debemus, porro eas in systema redigere. 40. Credebant quod notiones eorum universi completae erant.

## READING

1. Antiqui philosophi nullam distinctionem ponebant inter sensum et intellectum; et utrumque corporeo principio attribuebant, ut dictum est. Plato autem distinxit inter intellectum et sensum; utrumque tamen attribuit principio incorporeo, ponens quod sicut intelligere, ita et sentire convenit animae secundum seipsam; et ex hoc sequebatur quod etiam animae brutorum animalium sunt subsistentes. Sed Aristoteles posuit quod solum intelligere inter opera animae sine organo corporeo exercetur. Sentire vero et consequentes operationes animae sensitivae manifeste accidunt cum aliqua corporis immutatione; sicut in videndo immutatur pupilla per speciem coloris; et idem apparet in aliis.

2. Omnia quaecumque sunt in actu, participant primum actum, qui Deus est; per cujus participationem omnia sunt et bona et entia et viventia. Ergo quaecumque sunt in potentia, participant primam potentiam. Sed prima potentia est materia prima. Anima humana est quodammodo in potentia, et apparet ex hoc quod homo quandoque est intelligens in potentia; videtur igitur quod anima humana participat materiam primam tanquam partem sui. Praeterea, in quocumque inveniuntur proprietates materiae, ibi invenitur materia. Sed in anima inveniuntur proprietates materiae, quae sunt subjici et transmutari; subjicitur enim scientiae et virtuti, et mutatur de ignorantia ad scientiam, vel de vitio ad virtutem. Ergo in anima est materia.

## LESSON X

### Vocabulary

**absolute**, *absolutely, fully, completely*

**absolutus**, *absolute, complete*

**carere** (2), *to lack, to be devoid of*

**communis**, *common*

**compositio**, f., *composition*

**individualis**, *individual*

**individuatio**, f., *individuation*

**infinitus**, *infinite*

**inquantum**, *inasmuch as*

**intellectivus**, *intellective, intelligent, rational*

**lapis**, m., *stone*

**manifestus**, *manifest*

**probare**, *to prove*

**putare**, *to consider, to suppose, to imagine*

**quidem**, *indeed*

**singulare**, *singly, separately, one by one*

**specialiter**, *specially*

### WORD STUDY

**1. Individuatio.** The development of the individual from the universal or the determination of the individual in the general. The principle of individuation is variously held to be matter, form, and particularity of the subject in time and space; personal or individual existence.

**2. Intellectivus.** As applied to knowledge the term means that knowledge which is obtained by the intellectual processes of abstraction and comparison independent of the senses.



## GRAMMAR

Verbs governing other than the accusative.

a) Verbs taking their object in the genitive:

1. Verbs of remembering or forgetting may take either the genitive or the accusative of the object. Such verbs are: **meminisse, recordari, reminisci, oblivisci.**

2. Verbs denoting pity may take the genitive: **Miserere mei.** Have pity on me.

b) Verbs taking their object in the dative:

1. Verbs meaning to favor, help, please, persuade, believe, and the like take the dative. Such verbs are: **parcere, to spare, subvenire, to assist, placere, to please, servire, to serve, confiteri, to praise, credere, to believe, indulgere, to forgive, miserere, to have pity on.**

2. Verbs compounded with **satis, bene, and male** govern the dative. For example, **satisfacere, benefacere, benedicere, maledicere.**

3. Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super** admit the object in the dative. Such verbs are **inhaerere, to adhere to, convenire, to agree, to be suitable, indulgere, to pardon, confiteri, to praise, subvenire, to assist.**

4. The dative is used with **esse** to denote possession. **Ei tuba est. He has a trumpet.**

c) Verbs taking their object in the ablative:

1. Verbs denoting plenty or want require the ablative: **carere, to lack, egere, to want, to feel the need of, opus esse, to need, usus esse, to be necessary.**

2. Certain verbs of use or enjoyment take the object in the ablative: **frui, to enjoy, fungi, to perform, potiri, to get possession of, uti, to use, vesci, to feed on.**

## EXERCISES

1. Memini caloris illius diei. 2. Regularum oblita est. 3. Miserere mei, Domine. 4. Agnus Dei qui tollis peccata mundi, miserere nobis.

5. Peccatis indulisit et peccatoribus pepercit. 6. Nobis subveniet. 7. Matri tuae placebit hic actus. 8. Civitate vix potiti erant. 9. Vitulum in monte inveniētes, eo vescuntur. 10. Vota sacerdotum episcopo placebant. 11. Voluntati Dei serviverunt. 12. Vocis patriarchae reminiscitur. 13. Vultus filiorum eorum eis placent. 14. Omnes gentes visceribus brutorum animalium vescuntur. 15. Vir practicus est, et igitur tantum visibilibus fruitur. 16. Deus vanis non benedicit. 17. Verbis ejus non credo, quod veritate carent. 18. Ob actus suos fortitudinis regis venia fruetur. 19. Confitebantur ei cum hymnis vespertinis. 20. Usque ad finem mundi ei servient. 21. Ultio viris malis semper placet. 22. Gentibus non unitas est. 23. Pauperes utique rebus multis egent. 24. Tanti mortui sunt; ideo tumulis caremus ad eos sepeliendos. 25. Eum supplicavimus, et tunc nobis misertus est. 26. Terra tremebat, sed exercitus in illo die tremendo subvenit nobis. 27. Non tradidit, sed pepercit tribus ex eis. 28. In trigesimo die montibus potiti sunt qui lacum circumdabant. 29. Testem tertium sustulerunt, quod iudici non satisfaciebat. 30. Throni terreni cadunt, si populo non benefaciunt. 31. Si solum temporalibus aut materialibus inhaerent, debebuntur. 32. Tecti domi reminiscebantur, quod novum erat. 33. Argentum optabat, sed tentatio tamen non potiebatur eo. 34. Ei qui oculis carent, in tenebris ingrediuntur. 35. Eis quae sumpserunt uti non possunt. 36. Debitoribus parci et debitis indulget. 37. Aeribus suavibus patriae suae perfruuntur. 38. Stricte functus sum omnibus quae mihi iussa sunt. 39. In mundo afflicto spe usus est. 40. Aqua opus est ad altare aspergendum.

## READING

1. Illa quae non habent materiam, non habent causam sui esse. Sed anima habet causam sui esse, quia creatur a Deo. Ergo anima habet materiam. Praeterea, quod non habet materiam, sed est forma tantum, est actus purus et infinitus. Hoc autem solius Dei est. Ergo anima habet materiam. Sed contra est quod Augustinus probat, quod anima non est facta nec ex materia corporali, nec ex materia spirituali. Respondetur quod anima non habet materiam, et hoc potest con-

siderari dupliciter. Primo quidem **ex** ratione animae in communi. Aut est forma secundum se totam, aut secundum aliquam partem sui. Secundo, specialiter ex ratione humanae animae, in quantum est intellectiva.

2. Manifestum est enim quod omne quod recipitur in aliquo, recipitur in eo per modum recipientis. Sic autem cognoscitur unumquodque, sicut forma ejus est in cognoscente. Anima autem intellectiva cognoscit rem aliquam in sua natura absoluta, puta lapidem, in quantum est lapis absolute. Est igitur forma lapidis absolute secundum propriam rationem formalem in anima intellectiva. Anima igitur intellectiva est forma absoluta, non autem aliquid compositum **ex** materia et forma. Si enim anima intellectiva est composita ex materia et forma, formae rerum recipientur in ea ut individuales; et sic non potest cognoscere nisi singulare, sicut accidit in potentiis sensitivis quae recipiunt formas rerum in organo corporali. Materia enim est principium individuationis formarum. Relinquitur ergo quod anima intellectiva et omnis intellectualis substantia cognoscens formas absolute, caret compositione formae et materiae.

## LESSON XI

### Vocabulary

**actualitas**, f., *reality, existence*

**aptitudo**, f., *aptitude, ability*

**atvero**, *however*

**complecti**, -plexus (dep. 3), *to embrace*

**concludere**, -clusi, -clusus, *to conclude*

**corruptibilis**, *corruptible*

**exemplum**, n., *example*

**existentia**, f., *existence*

**existere**, -stiti, -stitus, *to exist*

**extensio**, f., *extension, extent*

**generatio**, f., *generation, reproduction*

**grammatice**, *grammatically*

**ibidem**, *in the same place*

**importare**, *to convey*

**indoles**, f., *nature*

**instar**, n. (indecl.), *likeness, equivalent*; **ad instar** (followed by genitive), *like to*

**interitus**, m., *destruction, annihilation*

**jumentum**, n., *beast (of burden)*

**legere**, legi, lectus, *to read*

**nomen**, n., *noun, name*

**participium**, n., *participle*

**possibilis**, *possible*

**praescindere**, -scidi, -scissus, *to prescind*

**se habet**, *is regarded*

**similis**, *similar*

**similiter**, *similarly*

*spirare, to breathe*

*talis, such; talis . . . qualis, such . . . as*

*tamquam, as if*

*vertibilis, convertible, liable to be turned back*

### WORD STUDY

1. **Actualitas:** actual or real existence of a thing so far as this is endowed with form.

2. **Corruptibilis:** in its widest sense of general deterioration. An object is corrupt when it has lost its original soundness or integrity.

3. **Praescindere:** *to cut off; to abstract or separate from.*

### GRAMMAR

#### 1. The Subjunctive Mood.

a) Clauses of result take the subjunctive introduced by **ut** (negative, **ut non**).

**Talis est participii indoles, ut accipi possit ut nomen.** *Such is the nature of a participle that it can be taken as a noun.*

b) **Sive (seu), whether,** may be used to introduce a conditional clause. If a fact is stated, the indicative is used. The subjunctive is required when a supposition or possibility is implied.

**Sive ducit sive sequitur, solet opiniones suas exprimere.** *Whether he leads or whether he follows, he is accustomed to express his opinions.*

**Nomina expriment aptitudinem alicujus rei ad existendum, sive illa res actu existat sive non.** *Nouns express the aptitude of something to exist, whether that thing exists in reality or not.*

c) Conditional clauses of comparison take the subjunctive. They may be introduced by **tanquam (tamquam), tamquam si, quasi, ac si, ut si, velut si,** all meaning *as if*, and by **quam si, than if.** The tense is usually present or perfect. **Post hoc erimus, tanquam non fuerimus.** *After this we shall be as if we had not been.*

d) The hortatory subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an exhortation or a command. The negative is **ne**.

**Exemplum sit participium intelligens.** *Let the participle intelligens be an example. (Take, for example, the participle intelligens.)*

**Ne eant in tertio die.** *Let them not go on the third day.*

e) After verbs of saying, thinking, perceiving, and the like, the infinitive with subject accusative is often replaced by a **quod** or **quia** clause carrying its verb in the subjunctive. **Videtur quod anima humana sit corruptibilis.** *It seems that the human soul may be subject to corruption.*

2. **The dative of purpose.** The dative is used to denote purpose or end, often with another dative of the person or thing affected. **Magno usui nostris fuit.** *It was of great use to our men.* **Exemplo sit.** *Let it be for an example.*

## EXERCISES

1. **Talis est hominis natura, ut tentationi non semper resistat.**
2. **Tantae civitates deletae erant, ut non aedificari iterum possent.**
3. **Scimus hominem moriturum esse sive malus sive bonus sit.** 4. **Sive ei loquerentur sive eum in pace relinquerent, non movebat.** 5. **Eum supplicabit tanquam non multa jam poposcerit.** 6. **Sustinebant novas calamitates suas tanquam si non multa mala passi essent.** 7. **Verba tam superflua videbantur, ut nihil dicerent.** 8. **Sursum corda, velut si credatis quia vita bona sit.** 9. **Suscipiant labores suos ut si illi non acres sint.** 10. **Animal quodque spirat sive homo sive jumentum sit.** 11. **Videtur quod verba ejus notionem non importent quam putat.** 12. **Probat quod lapides in cineres igne vertibiles sint.** 13. **Ne sedeamus ibidem per totum diem.** 14. **Cunctos modos possibles inquirebat, ut tandem scopum suum consequeretur.** 15. **Exemplo nobis sit jumentum fidele ac patiens.** 16. **De passione magis sciebant, quam si multos libros legissent.** 17. **De illis rebus loquitur, quasi similes sint.** 18. **Signo sint haec mirabilia.** 19. **Sermones ejus promissioni nobis sint.** 20. **Sicut dixit, fecit, i.e., quod venturus iterum esset.** 21. **Nubes evaserant, ut**

caelum nunc serenum esset. 22. Eis serviebat ac si servitutem diligeret. 23. Sciamus sequentiam materiae. 24. Videtur quod scientia et sapientia non eadem sint. 25. Tanta scelera commisit, ut non securus in illa civitate sit. 26. Manifestum est quia sanguis ex lapide non exprimi possit. 27. Sperant quod salus eorum propinqua sit. 28. Tam suppliciter rogaverunt, ut orationes suae concederentur. 29. Caelum rubebat, ut sciremus quod inimici civitatem accendissent. 30. Faciem avertit, velut si in reatu esset. 31. Ne recordentur id quod reliquerunt. 32. Nobis refrigerio requies erat. 33. Videbatur quod reliquias non reddidissent. 34. Nesciebant utrum genitrix ejus in illa civitate resideret sive non. 35. Nos respiciebat, ac si placitus esset.

## READING

1. Ens grammaticae sumptum est participium praesens verbi *esse*, sub quo respectu exprimit aliquid actu existens. Participium enim praesens, qua participium, exprimit actualitatem illius formae, quam verbum importat. Atvero, talis est participii indoles, ut accipi possit ut nomen, et sic acceptum praescindit ab actuali existentia rei significatae; nomina enim significant sine tempore, et exprimunt aptitudinem alcujus rei ad existendum, sive illa res actu existat sive non. Exemplo si participium *intelligens*, quod, ut participium, exprimit actualem intelligentiae usum, ut nomen, exprimit hominem aptum ad intelligendum sive actu intelligat sive non. Ens ut participium et ens ut nomen non eadem sunt atque ens actuale et ens possibile. Ens ut participium idem valet atque ens actuale; sed ens ut nomen complectitur in sua extensione tum actuale tum possibile, et respectu illorum se habet ad instar generis.

2. Videtur quod anima humana sit corruptibilis. Quorum enim est simile principium et similis processus, videtur esse similis finis. Sed simile est principium generationis hominum et jumentorum, quia de terra facta sunt; similis est etiam vitae processus in utrisque, quia "similiter spirant omnia, et nihil habet homo jumento amplius," ut dicitur Eccles., III, 19. Ergo ut ibidem concluditur, unus est interitus hominis et jumentorum, et aequa utrisque conditio. Sed anima bru-

torum animalium est corruptibilis. Ergo et anima humana est corruptibilis. Praeterea, omne quod est de nihilo, vertibile est in nihilum; quia finis debet respondere principio. Sed sicut dicitur Sapient., II, 2, "Ex nihilo nati sumus," quod verum est non solum quantum ad corpus, sed etiam quantum ad animam. Ergo, ut ibidem concluditur, post hoc erimus, tanquam non fuerimus, etiam secundum animam.



## LESSON XII

### Vocabulary

adaequatus, *adequate*

beatitudo, f., *happiness, blessedness*

complere, -plevi, -pletus, *to complete, to fulfill*

conceptus, m., *concept*

conjunctio, f., *union, whole*

constitutivus, *constituent*

contrarium, n., *opposite*

dicere, dixi, dictus, *to say, to mean*

differre, distuli, dilatus, *to differ*

divisibilis, *divisible, separate*

elementum, n., *element*

essendo, essendi, *in, of being*: the gerund of *esse* used in Vulgar Latin

expresse, *expressly*

extra, *outside of*

heri, *yesterday*

immediatus, *immediate, direct*

inclinatio, f., *tendency, inclination*

naturalis, *natural*

nequire, nequivi, *not to be able, cannot*

nobilis, *noble*

nonnihil, *not nothing* (that is, *something*)

ordo, m., *order*

pluralitas, f., *plurality*

postmodum, *afterwards*

proinde, *hence, therefore*

quare, *wherefore*

quatenus, *in so far as*

quidditas, f., *essence, "whatness"*  
 resolvere, -solvi, -solutus, *to separate*  
 specificus, *specific, relating to a species*  
 ultimus, *last, ultimate*  
 unicus, *single*  
 unitus, *united, joined*

## WORD STUDY

1. **Quidditas:** *essence*; that whereby a thing is what it is; that which answers the question "Quid est?" "*What is the thing?*"
2. **Differentia ultima:** a term applied to man's rationality; man's intellect which is the ultimate distinction between him and the beasts.
3. **Aliud quid,** *another thing; something else.*

## GRAMMAR

## 1. Subjunctive in causal clauses.

a) **Quod** and **quia** take the indicative when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker, but require the subjunctive when the reason is given on the authority of another.

**Id non possum manducare quod calidum est.** *I cannot eat this because it is hot.*

**Sua mater tristis est quia non redierit.** *His mother is sad because he did not return.*

b) A relative clause expressing cause requires the subjunctive. **Participes poenarum nostrarum videntur qui perturbati sint.** *They seem to share our sufferings because they are troubled.*

c) A causal clause introduced by **cum** takes the subjunctive. **Corpus autem, cum sit extra essentiam animae, non videtur ad ejus speciem pertinere.** *But the body, since it is outside of the soul, does not seem to belong to its species.*

## 2. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs.

- a) The comparative of adjectives is regularly formed by adding

-ior (neuter -ius), the superlative by adding -issimus(-a, -um), to the stem of the positive.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
clarus ( <i>clear</i> )	clarior	clarissimus
nobilis ( <i>noble</i> )	nobilior	nobilissimus
simplex ( <i>simple</i> )	simplicior	simplicissimus

b) Adjectives ending in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative.

acer ( <i>keen</i> )	acrior	acerrimus
miser ( <i>wretched</i> )	miserior	miserrimus

c) Six adjectives ending in -lis form the superlative by adding -limus to the stem. These are: *facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, similar; dissimilis, dissimilar; gracilis, graceful; humilis, humble.*

facilis ( <i>easy</i> )	facilior	facillimus
-------------------------	----------	------------

d) Adjectives compared irregularly are:

bonus ( <i>good</i> )	melior	optimus
malus ( <i>bad</i> )	pejor	pessimus
magnus ( <i>great</i> )	major	maximus
parvus ( <i>small</i> )	minor	minimus
multus ( <i>much</i> )	plus	plurimus
multi ( <i>many</i> )	plures	plurimi
nequam ( <i>wicked</i> )	nequior	nequissimus
frugi (indecl.)	frugalior	frugalissimus
vetus ( <i>old</i> )	vetustior	veterrimus
exterus ( <i>outward</i> )	exterior	extremus (extimus)
inferus ( <i>below</i> )	inferior ( <i>lower</i> )	infirmus (imus)
posterus	posterior	postremus (postumus)
following	latter	last
superus	superior	supremus (summus)
above	higher	highest
juvenis ( <i>young</i> )	junior	minimus natu
senex ( <i>old</i> )	senior	maximus natu

e) The comparative degree of the adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective. The superlative is formed by changing the ending *-us* of the superlative of the adjective to *e*.

clare ( <i>clearly</i> )	clarius	clarissime
nobiliter ( <i>nobly</i> )	nobilius	nobilissime
acriter ( <i>keenly</i> )	acrius	acerrime
facile ( <i>easily</i> )	facilius	facillime

f) The following adverbs are irregular or defective at least in **one** form.

bene ( <i>well</i> )	melius	optime
male ( <i>badly</i> )	pejus	pessime
diu ( <i>long</i> )	diutius	diutissime
saepe ( <i>often</i> )	saepius	saepissime
satis ( <i>enough</i> )	satius ( <i>preferable</i> )	
secus ( <i>otherwise</i> )	setius ( <i>worse</i> )	
multum ( <i>multo</i> )	plus ( <i>magis</i> )	plurime ( <i>maxime</i> )
<i>much</i>	<i>more</i>	<i>most</i>
parum	minus	minime
<i>little</i>	<i>less</i>	<i>least</i>
nuper		nuperrime
<i>recently</i>		<i>most recently</i>

g) Some comparative and superlative adjectives have no positive, but are derived from prepositions or adverbs.

intra	interior	intimus
<i>within</i>	<i>inner</i>	<i>inmost</i>
prae	prior	primus
<i>before</i>	<i>former</i>	<i>first</i>
prope	propior	proximus
<i>near</i>	<i>nearer</i>	<i>next</i>
ultra	ulterior	ultimus
<i>beyond</i>	<i>farther</i>	<i>farthest, last</i>

h) *Than* after a comparative is expressed by **quam**. Especially if the second member of a comparison contains no verb, **quam** may be omitted and the noun or pronoun placed in the ablative case.

## EXERCISES

1. Ecclesia propior quam domus est. 2. Cogitationes intimas non exprimere poterat. 3. Anima manifeste ex materia non est. 4. Legit melius quam loquitur. 5. Sententiae utraeque falsissimae sunt. 6. Lapidem non videt, cum non ibidem sit. 7. Cum tam manifesti sint, existentiam eorum probare non opus est. 8. Potesne inter angelum et animam praecisive distinguere? Nequeo. 9. Non poterant invenire eum, quod nomen ejus non scirent. 10. Beatissimos putamus eos qui sapientiam attigerint. 11. Hodie calidius est quam heri. 12. Atvero, scopus ejus nobilior est quam actus. 13. Hae distinctiones inter hominem et animalia bruta communiore sunt quam putas. 14. Cum verba ejus non naturam idearum propriarum importarent, non comprehendebant eum. 15. Cum manibus palpemus, hae mentem adjuvant facilius notiones rerum formare. 16. Se habet id exemplum melius esse quam illud. 17. Nobis pluribus gratiis opus est ad virtutes illas exercendas. 18. Angeli humiliores hominibus sunt. 19. Leges non sciebant, quod antiquissimae essent. 20. Cum indoles animae non corruptibilis sit, debet esse immaterialis. 21. Credis quod homo sapientior quam jumentum sit? Naturalissime! 22. Cum theologus opinatus sit hoc verum esse, opinionem ejus accipiemus. 23. Angeli graciliores quam homines sunt. 24. Postmodum sciebant eum nobilissimum inter eos esse. 25. Homo conjunctio omnium virtutum nobiliorum et omnium vitiatorum pessimorum est. 26. Joannes melior fratre est, quare melius quam frater agit. 27. Pater fortior quam filius est cum senior sit. 28. Amor pietatis naturalior ad hominem est quam inclinatio ad malum. 29. Judex magnus et praeclarus est qui multa praemia acciperit. 30. Sanctus bonus est; angelus melior est; Deus optimus est. 31. Plurimum habeo; quis minimum habet? 32. Peccator semper miserior est quam pauper. 33. Nomen *quidditas* essentiam rei exprimit, cum quaestioni, "quid est?" respondeat. 34. Multae ex Romae ecclesiis ve-

terrims sistent adhuc. 35. Cum caelum clarius hodie sit, montes melius videre possumus.

## READING

1. Ens, quatenus definiri potest, est a) per ordinem ad existentiam; quidquid existit vel existere potest, vel quidquid habet aliquam realitatem; b) per ordinem ad cognitionem: quidquid per se intelligi potest. Conceptui formali entis respondet unus conceptus objectivus, adaequatus et immediatus, qui expresse non dicit substantiam neque accidens, neque Deum neque creaturam; sed haec omnia per modum unius, scil., quatenus sunt inter se aliquo modo similia, et conveniunt in essendo. Quare idea entis sicut est omnium communissima ita etiam est omnium simplicissima, et proinde ens proprie definiri nequit; rem enim definire est eam in sua elementa constitutiva resolvere, notio autem entis unicum elementum simplicissimum (aliquam realitatem) exprimit. Ens, res, aliquid, non re, sed ratione distinguuntur. Res nomen habet a quidditate rata et certa, ens vero ab actu essendi. Aliquid sumptum pro nonnihil non differt ab ente vel re.

2. Videtur quod anima et angelus sint unius speciei. Unumquodque enim ordinatur ad proprium finem per naturam suae speciei, per quam habet inclinationem ad finem. Sed idem est finis animae et angeli, scilicet beatitudo aeterna. Ergo sunt unius speciei. Praeterea, ultima differentia specifica est nobilissima, quia complet rationem speciei. Sed nihil est nobilius in angelo et anima quam esse intellectuale. Ergo conveniunt anima et angelus in ultima differentia specifica; ergo sunt unius speciei. Praeterea, anima ab angelo differre non videtur nisi per hoc quod est corpori unita. Corpus autem, cum sit extra essentiam animae, non videtur ad ejus speciem pertinere. Ergo anima et angelus sunt unius speciei. Sed contra, quorum sunt diversae operationes naturales, ipsa differunt specie. Sed animae et angeli sunt diversae operationes naturales: quia, ut dicit Dionysius, mentes angelicae simplices, et beatos intellectus habent, non de visibilibus congregantes divinam cognitionem; cujus contrarium postmodum de anima dicit. **Anima igitur et angelus non sunt unius speciei.**

## LESSON XIII

### Vocabulary

**abstractio**, f., *detachment, removal, abstraction*

**actu** (abl. of **actus**), *actually, in reality*

**actualis**, *actual*

**additio**, f., *addition*

**alioquin**, *otherwise*

**cognoscitivus**, *cognizant, aware*

**comprehensio**, f., *comprehensiveness*

**determinare**, *to determine*

**determinatus**, *definite, determined*

**dumtaxat**, *only*

**exclusio**, f., *exclusion*

**illimitatus**, *unlimited*

**includere**, -clusi, -clusus, *to include*

**mediante**, *by means of*

**multiplicare**, *to multiply*

**multiplicatio**, f., *multiplication*

**ne . . . quidem**, *not even*

**octo**, *eight*

**praecisio**, f., *preciseness, precision, definiteness*

**proportio**, f., *proportion*

**qualis**, *what kind*

**quum** (**cum**), *since* (takes subj.)

**repugnare**, *to be inconsistent or incompatible; to deny, to disagree*

**requirere**, -sivi, -situs, *to require*

**revera**, *indeed, truly*

**separatus**, *separate*

**simplicitas**, f., *simplicity*

**talis, such; qua tale, as such**

**ubi, where, when**

**unire, to unite**

**utrum, whether**

### WORD STUDY

1. **Cognoscitivus:** having the power of knowing, intellectually aware; from the verb **cognoscere**, to know.

2. **Intellectivum principium:** intellect, intelligence, mind; the mental principle.

3. **In genere:** generically speaking, as applied to a particular genus, kind, or class; generally.

4. **In potentia:** having the possibility of actual existence. **In actu:** having real existence. Thus an infant has the power of speech **in potentia**; an adult has it **in actu**.

### GRAMMAR

1. **Quum**, a form of **cum**, introduces a causal clause in which the subjunctive is required. **Ens infinitum, quum in se actu complectatur omnes perfectiones, ne cogitatione quidem, ullam potest accipere additionem.** *Infinite being, since it actually embraces all perfections in itself, cannot admit of any addition even in thought.*

2. The subjunctive is required in an indirect question. **Dixit nobis quid fecisset.** *He told us what he had done.* **Circa hoc quaeritur utrum intellectivum principium uniatur corpori ut forma.** *Concerning this the question is asked whether the intellect is united to the body as form.*

3. In a contrary to fact condition expressing present time, the imperfect subjunctive is required in both clauses. **Si intellectus uniretur corpori ut forma, non esset omnium cognoscitivus.** *If the intellect were united to the body as form, it would not be cognizant of all things.*

### EXERCISES

1. **Quum nihil significet non aliquid, nonnihil dicit aliquid.** 2. **Quum tempore careremus, indolem elementi non inquirebamus.** 3. **Animalia**



bruta differunt specialiter hominibus, quum mentem rationalem non habeant. 4. Quum pupilla oculi multum sensitiva sit, opus est custodire eam. 5. Quum tanti in nostris diebus sint qui non in Conceptionem Immaculatam credunt, debemus hanc doctrinam de tectis predicare. 6. Dicere nequeo quid putet de mundorum pluralitate. 7. Poscit utrum terra a sole calefiat. 8. Volebat quaerere quare pauperes in habitaculis miserimis habitarent. 9. Non cognoscunt ubi pridie fuerit. 10. Puer ignorabat quando mater sua profecta esset. 11. Si leges bene cognosceret, recte iudicaret. 12. Si nox calidior esset, militia in terra dormiret. 13. Si hoc verum esset, in flammis projiceretur. 14. Gratissimi essemus, si non ad invicem semper litigarent. 15. Si manus vestras jungeretis, melius oraretis. 16. Putabant eos in domo, quum lucem effulgentem per ostium viderent. 17. In montibus occultae remanebant, quum inimicos valde timerent. 18. Quum beatius sit dare quam accipere; saepius debemus dare. 19. Quum duodecim apostoli essent, ibant ad duodecim terras separatas. 20. Quum praxis perfectionem faciat, convenit operam dare ad attingendos scopos nostros. 21. Sciebasne quae praemia ei donata essent? 22. Nescio quomodo ecclesia aedificanda sit. 23. Non nobis dixit quem postmodum vidisset. 24. Quaerebat quomodo ignis extinguendus esset. 25. Cognoscent quare ad has doctrinas adhaeserimus. 26. Si conceptus clarior esset, comprehendere eum. 27. Si lucem haberemus, nomina iudicum legere possemus. 28. Si exercitus extra muros staret, civitatem facilius salvaret. 29. Si vultus suos erigerent, signum in caelis viderent. 30. Si obstaculum huiusmodi mere esset, ea timorem talem non exhiberet.

## READING

1. Non est confundenda notio entis in genere cum notione Entis infiniti (i.e., Dei). Utraque notio aliquid illimitatum exprimit; sed ens in genere illud exprimit secundum extensionem et imperfectionem, ens infinitum secundum comprehensionem et perfectionem. Et revera, notio entis in genere se extendit ad omnia sive actualia sive possibilis, sed in sua comprehensione unam dumtaxat notam, scil., aliquam realitatem, includit; notio entis infiniti in se comprehendit omnes

perfectiones, et proinde minimam extensionem habet, quum plura hujusmodi entia repugnent. Utraque notio summam simplicitatem exprimit; sed simplicitas entis in genere est negativa, orta ex abstractione ab omni perfectione determinata; simplicitas entis infiniti est positiva. Utraque notio exprimit realitatem cum exclusione additionis; sed realitas expressa per ens in genere ita se habet per mentis praecisionem, nec potest in rerum natura sine additionibus existere; ens infinitum, quum in se actu complectatur omnes perfectiones, ne cogitatione quidem, ullam potest accipere additionem.

2. Deinde considerandum est de unione animae ad corpus, et circa hoc quaeruntur octo: 1° utrum intellectivum principium uniatur corpori ut forma; 2° utrum intellectivum principium numero multiplicetur secundum multiplicationem corporum, vel sit unus intellectus omnium hominum; 3° utrum in corpore, cujus forma est principium intellectivum, sit aliqua alia anima; 4° utrum sit in eo aliqua alia forma substantialis; 5° quale debeat esse corpus cujus intellectivum principium est forma; 6° utrum tali corpori uniatur mediante aliquo alio corpore; 7° utrum mediante aliquo accidente; 8° utrum anima sit tota in qualibet parte corporis. Ad primum sic proceditur. Videtur quod intellectivum principium non uniatur corpori ut forma. Dicitur enim quod intellectus est separatus, et quod nullius corporis est actus. Non ergo unitur corpori ut forma. Praeterea, omnis forma determinatur secundum naturam materiae cujus est forma; alioquin non requireretur proportio inter materiam et formam. Si ergo intellectus uniretur corpori ut forma, cum omne corpus habeat determinatam naturam, sequeretur quod intellectus haberet determinatam naturam, et sic non esset omnium cognoscitivus, ut ex superioribus patet; quod est contra rationem intellectus. Non ergo intellectus unitur corpori ut forma.

## LESSON XIV

### Vocabulary

- actio**, f., *action*  
**agens**, m., *doer, actor, agent*  
**alteruter**, *one or the other*  
**appetitus**, m., *appetite*  
**attribuere**, -ui, -utus, *to attribute*  
**calectio**, f., *heat, heating*  
**carpentarius**, m., *carpenter*  
**competere**, -ivi, -itus, *to fit, to belong to*  
**conversus**, *converse*; e **converso**, *conversely, on the contrary*  
**discriminare**, *to distinguish*  
**disserere**, -serui, -sertus, *to discourse*  
**effectus**, m., *effect*  
**instrumentum**, n., *instrument*  
**investigare**, *to investigate*  
**juxta**, *according to*  
**logice**, *logically*  
**metaphysica**, f., *metaphysics*  
**motor**, m., *mover, motor impulse*  
**motus**, m., *movement, motion*  
**multipliciter**, *in many ways*  
**ontologia**, f., *ontology*  
**oppositum**, n., *opposite*  
**philosophus**, m., *philosopher*  
**plenius**, *more fully*  
**potius**, *rather*  
**praesupponere**, -posui, -positus, *to presuppose*  
**praeter**, *beyond, besides, in addition to, outside of*

serra, *f.*, *saw*  
 specialis, *special*  
 vanus, *false*

## WORD STUDY

1. **Ontologia:** the branch of knowledge that investigates the nature, essential properties, and relations of being (**ens**) as such.
2. **Metaphysica:** that division of philosophy which includes ontology, or the science of being, and epistemology, or the theory of knowledge; in a narrower sense, ontology alone.
3. **Appetitus:** any inherent or habitual desire for some personal gratification, either of the body or of the mind.

## GRAMMAR

1. A so-called **less vivid condition** requires the present subjunctive in both clauses. *More vivid* conditions take the indicative in both clauses. A *more vivid* condition implies less uncertainty than a *less vivid*.

More vivid: *Si aderit, bene erit. If he will be present, it will be well.*

Less vivid: *Si adsit, bene sit. If he should be present, it would be well.*

## 2. Some prepositions.

a) **A, ab.** Their general meaning is *from, off from, away from*. They govern the ablative case. They may also mean *by* when introducing the agent after a verb in the passive voice. **Ab** must be used before words beginning with a vowel sound; **a** or **ab** may be used before consonants.

*A Roma profectus est. He set out from Rome.*

*Octo res inclusae sunt ab eis. Eight things have been included by them.*

b) **E, ex.** Their general meaning is *from the midst of, out of*. **Ex** must be used before vowel sounds. Either **e** or **ex** may be used before consonants. They govern the ablative.

**Ex montibus egressi sunt.** *They came out of the mountains.*

**E pluribus unum.** *Out of many, one.*

**Duo ex hominibus illis carpentarii erant.** *Two of those men were carpenters.*

c) **Per:** *through* in the widest sense. It governs the accusative.

**Per civitates eunt.** *They go through the city.*

**Per diem.** *Throughout the day.*

**Per homines nobiles.** *Through the instrumentality of noble men.*

**Per se.** *In and of itself (through itself).*

d) **Praeter:** used with the literal meaning of *along by, in front of*, and with the figurative meaning of *beyond, besides, in addition to*. It governs the accusative.

**Praeter vultos nostros.** *Before our faces.*

**Praeter aedificium.** *In front of the building.*

**Praeter realitatem.** *Beyond reality.*

e) **Propter:** used in the literal meaning of *near or next to*, and with the figurative meaning of *on account of, because of*. It governs the accusative.

**Propter me sedent.** *They sit near me.*

**Propter diem calorem dormiebant.** *Because of the heat of the day they slept.*

3. **Ordinal numbers.** The ablative of the ordinals is used as an adverb and is abbreviated by using a figure followed by a small **o**: **3<sup>o</sup>**; **primo, 1<sup>o</sup>**; **secundo, 2<sup>o</sup>**

#### EXERCISES

1. Per tales actus nobis probavit qualis est simplicitas sua. 2. Inclusimus dumtaxat tres ex regulis praeter communes. 3. Per diem et per noctem plenius investigabant qualis esset gentium voluntas. 4. Si effectum calefactioni attribuamus, causa clara sit. 5. Si logice de metaphisica disseret, nobis docebit multas ex veritatibus quas volumus cognoscere. 6. Si rex leges bonas abroget, gens patiatur. 7. Si alteruter

carpentarius opus suum bene faciat, serra non fracta sit. 8. Actio ex agente, motus ex motore oritur. 9. Mens hominis praeter realitatem attingere potest. 10. Si individuum hoc juxta merita ejus judicemus, poenas accipiat potius quam munera. 11. Quum octo colores diversi inclusi sint, effectus multipliciter repugnat. 12. Si non logice discriminabit inter malum et bonum, philosophus nunquam erit. 13. Queritur utrum ontologia scientia sit, quae de ente tractat. 14. Subjectum investigabimus logicae juxta regulas. 15. 1<sup>o</sup>, leges intelligemus; 2<sup>o</sup>, gentibus docebimus eas; 3<sup>o</sup>, observabimus eas. 16. Si carpentarius domum forte aedificet, non cadat. 17. Si per civitatem illam incedamus, philosophum verum inveniamus. 18. Solebant adjuvari a gentium fortiorum militiis. 19. Si plures ex notis ejus exhibeantur, objectum clare distinguatur. 20. Propter caloris effectus multi ex viris mortui sunt. 21. Domus sacerdotis praeter ecclesiam stat. 22. Si homines per multos dies misericordiam Dei rogent, ipse calamitates eorum avertat. 23. Servos in lacum ejiciebant praeter regis oculos. 24. Tres e pueris elegit ad auferendas epistolas in terram inimicam. 25. Per opera bona virginum fidelium, pueri custoditi sunt et curati veteres. 26. Si refrigerium aliquod nobis des, in via procedamus. 27. Si operatio ex talibus causis oriatur, naturam ejus determinare simplex sit. 28. Si nos spectent, lapides ad eos mittamus. 29. Si panis nimis calidus sit, non eum manducetis. 30. Si unum ex his jumentis accipiat, non ei opus sit Romam incedere.

## READING

1. Ontologia juxta vim vocis idem sonat ac sermo de ente; juxta rem ipsam definitur: scientia, quae tractat de ente, prout est omnibus commune. Dicitur 1<sup>o</sup>. scientia, quia est systema veritatum, quae ex principiis certis logice deducuntur. Dicitur 2<sup>o</sup>. quae tractat de ente, quia ontologia non tale vel tale ens considerat, sed omne ens, et sic discriminatur a Metaphysica Speciali, quae de mundo, de homine, et de Deo disserit. Dicitur 3<sup>o</sup>. prout est omnibus commune; est enim ontologiae proprietates entis ejusque suprema genera investigare. Unde ontologia a S. Thoma definitur: scientia quae considerat ens

et ea quae consequuntur ens. Quare ejus objectum materiale sunt omnia entia realia; objectum formale sunt rationes omnibus rebus communes. Porro, hae rationes possunt esse communes, aut quatenus eadem rationes omnibus entis generibus competunt (ut verum et bonum, etc.), aut quatenus alterutra ex oppositis (v.g., substantia vel accidens, causa vel effectus) cuique entis generi convenit. Quare plenius definitur ontologia: scientia de ente ejusque proprietatibus ac supremis partitionibus.

2. Quidam autem dicere voluerunt quod intellectus unitur corpori ut motor, et sic ex intellectu et corpore fit unum, ut actio intellectus toti attribui possit. Sed hoc est multipliciter vanum. Primo quidem quia intellectus non movet corpus nisi per appetitum, cujus motus praesupponit operationem intellectus. Non ergo quia movetur Socrates ab intellectu, ideo intelligit; sed potius e converso quia intelligit, ideo ab intellectu movetur Socrates. Secundo, quia cum Socrates sit quoddam individuum in natura, cujus essentia est una, composita ex materia et forma, si intellectus non sit forma ejus, sequitur quod sit praeter essentiam ejus; et sic intellectus comparabitur ad totum Socratem sicut motor ad motum. Intelligere autem est actio quiescens in agente, non autem transiens in alterum, sicut calefactio. Non ergo intelligere potest attribui Socrati propter hoc quod est motus ab intellectu. Tertio, quia actio motoris nunquam attribuitur moto nisi sicut instrumento, sicut actio carpentarii serrae. Si igitur intelligere attribuitur Socrati, quia est actio motoris ejus, sequitur quod attribuat ei sicut instrumento: quod est contra Philosophum I *De anima*, text. 12, qui vult quod intelligere non sit per instrumentum corporeum.

## LESSON XV

### Vocabulary

absens, *absent*

affirmare, *to affirm*

affirmatio, *f., affirmation*

aliquando, *formerly*

amabilis, *lovable*

causare, *to cause*

circulus, *m., circle*

dominare, *to dominate*

efformare, *to form, to shape*

elementaris, *elementary*

excedere, -cessi, -cessus, *to exceed, to excel*

explicare, *to explain*

facile, *easily*

immergere, -mersi, -mersus, *to immerse, to merge*

magis, *more*

metallum, *n., metal*

minus, *less*

mixtus, *mingled, mixed*

negare, *to deny*

nobilitas, *f., nobility*

prius, *previously*

quadratus, *squared*

qualitas, *f., quality*

quanto sanior . . . tanto fortior, *the healthier . . . the stronger*

relativus, *relative*

remotus, *remote*

sortire, *to select*



terminare, *to limit*

transcendere, -scendi, -scensus, *to transcend*

vegetabilis, *vegetable*

### WORD STUDY

1. **Anima sensibilis:** conscious existence, that is, life as it manifests itself in the animal world (men and beasts).

2. **Anima vegetabilis:** vegetable life, that is, life as it manifests itself in the plant world as distinct from men and beasts.

3. **Qualitas elementaris:** the simplest rudiment or characteristic of a thing.

### GRAMMAR

#### I. The subjunctive mood.

a) **Cum**, *when*, regularly requires the indicative when the tense of the verb is present, future, or future perfect. If the verb of the **cum** clause is in the past tense, the indicative is used when the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are absolutely identical. If the temporal clause describes the circumstances that accompanied the action of the main verb, then the subjunctive is used.

**Cum** is negat, affirmamus. *When he denies, we affirm*

**Cum** cadebat nix, sol lucebat. *When (at the time that) the snow was falling, the sun was shining.*

**Cum** metallum spectavissem, vidi quod argentum esset. *When I had looked at the metal, I saw that it was silver.*

b) A relative clause with a negative antecedent regularly takes the subjunctive. **Nullam notam habet quae mentem determinet et terminet.** *It has no feature that may determine and limit the mind.*

c) The subjunctive may be used in one clause of a condition. If one verb implies that a condition has already been fulfilled and the other implies a probability of fulfillment, the former is put in the indicative, the latter in the subjunctive. **Si aliquando nihil fuit in rebus,**

**nunc nihil esset.** *If formerly there has been a lack of existence in things, there would be a lack of existence now.*

**2. Compounds of ipse.** This demonstrative is often combined with forms of the reflexive pronoun and thus replaces the usual reflexives.

**Meipsum vidi in aqua.** *I saw myself in the water.*

**Nihilum per seipsum cognosci nequit.** *Non-existence cannot be known by and through itself.*

**3. Ille, iste.** These demonstratives are frequently used to express the idea of "the former" and "the latter." **Illud dicitur nihilum relativum, istud nihilum absolutum.** *The former is called relative non-existence, the latter absolute non-existence.*

## EXERCISES

1. Cum metallum videbis, cognosces non argentum esse. 2. Cum vitia dominaverint, nobilitatem attigerint. 3. Cum id negavit, non credidimus ei. 4. Cum magis elementaria essent, ea facilius intelleximus. 5. Quanto magis seipsum in propriam existentiam suam immergit, tanto minus diligitur a ceteris. 6. Cum locum sortivisset propinquum lacui et juxta notiones suas, erexit ibi lapidibus domum parvam, ubi solus cum jumento suo habitabat. 7. Absentes in terris remotis semper delectabantur cum epistolas a familiis suis accepissent. 8. Quanto spes remotior erat, tanto magis seipsum despiciebat. 9. Si tantum perdidit, non vellet iterum probare. 10. Si utrosque ex fratribus suis excessit actionis nobilitate, conveniret quod rex fieret. 11. Possibile est putare quod sit post vitam hanc vel alia existentia vel nihilum: illa notioni justitiae nostrae satisfacit, ista nobis repugnat. 12. Invenimus duo verba quae similia sonant: os (oris) atque ossis; illud pars vultus est, istud carnem sustinet. 13. Neminem vidit qui ei auxilio esset. 14. Animal brutum cognosco nullum quod fortius sit quam illum jumentum. 15. Poposcistine utrum omnia praeparata essent cum sacerdos veniret? 16. Nullam causam quidem determinare poterat, quae explicaret poenas quas sentire solebat. 17. Seipsos muniebant cum muris ex lapidibus atque terra factis. 18. Qualitates bonas ex-

ercendo in personam amabilem seipsam mutaverat. 19. Potesne teipsum justificare eo quod facturus es? 20. Ideae dividuntur in intuitivas et factitias secundum modum quo in mente oriuntur: illae excitantur in mente a reali praesentia rei cognitae, istae in mente efformantur conjungendo plures ideas intuitivas. 21. Idea aut positiva aut negativa est: illa aliquam realitatem, ista carentiam realitatis exhibet. 22. Philosophia duas partitiones habet, quarum prima speculativa, altera practica nominatur: illa etiam Metaphysica dicitur, ista in Logicam et Ethicam dividitur. 23. Cum civitatem condidissent, per multos dies atque noctes concelebrabant. 24. Cum turbis loquebatur, lucebat sol. 25. Cum pueros et servos omnes liberavisset, matres patresque venerunt ad agendas ei gratias. 26. Si aliquando juravit, non nunc abesset. 27. Si alii exercitui seipsos junxerunt, hodie fortiores essent. 28. Obstaculum nullum est quod praeveniat ne illa gens dolosa opes magnas capiat nostrae patriae dilectae. 29. Neminem cognoscebat quem docere posset ad spargendas doctrinas novas. 30. Cum dies calidae sunt, veteres in umbra ecclesiae sedent.

#### READING

1. Quum intellectus se habeat ad opposita, ex notione entis jam data facile colligitur notio sui oppositi, seu nihili, quod difinitur: Carentia entis. Jam sicut ens sumitur ad significandum aliquid actu existens, vel aliquid aptum ad existendum, ita nihilum accipi potest pro carentia actualis existentiae, quo sensu alter mundus est nihilum; vel pro carentia possibilis existentiae, ut cum dicimus circulum quadratum esse nihilum. Illud dicitur nihilum relativum seu nihilum existentiae, istud nihilum absolutum seu nihilum essentiae. Nihilum per seipsum cognosci nequit, quum nullam notam habeat quae mentem determinet et terminet; cognoscitur vero per suum oppositum, quatenus mens prius fertur in ens, cujus realitatem deinde negando, notionem nihili sibi efformat. Unde notio nihili non est falsa, quia per eam mens non cognoscit id, quod non est, sed cognoscit ens modo speciali, i.e., ut absens vel remotum. Afirmatio nihili universalis repugnat;

nam qui ita affirmat dicit se esse et proinde aliquid semper fuisse, si aliquando nihil fuit in rebus, nunc nihil esset.

2. Natura uniuscujusque rei ex ejus operatione ostenditur. Propria autem operatio hominis, in quantum est homo, est intelligere: per hanc enim omnia alia animalia transcendit. Unde Aristoteles in lib. X Ethic., cap. vii, in hac operatione, sicut in propria hominis, ultimam felicitatem constituit. Oportet ergo quod homo secundum illud speciem sortiatur quod est hujus operationis principium. Sortitur autem unumquodque speciem per propriam formam. Relinquitur ergo quod intellectivum principium sit propria hominis forma. Sed considerandum est, quod quanto forma est nobilior, tanto magis dominatur materiae corporali et minus ei immergitur, et magis sua operatione vel virtute excedit eam; unde videmus quod forma mixti corporis habet aliquam operationem, quae non causatur ex qualitatibus elementaribus. Et quanto magis proceditur in nobilitate formarum, tanto magis invenitur virtus formae materiam elementarem excedere, sicut anima vegetabilis plus quam forma metalli, et anima sensibilis plus quam anima vegetabilis. Anima autem humana est ultima in nobilitate formarum. Unde intantum sua virtute excedit materiam corporalem, quod habet aliquam operationem et virtutem in qua nullo modo communicat materia corporalis, et haec virtus dicitur intellectus.

## LESSON XVI

### Vocabulary

**accidentalis, accidental**

**amare, to love**

**bonitas, f., goodness**

**caput, n., head; chapter**

**coarctare, to confine**

**consistere, -stiti, -stitus, to consist**

**deprehendere, -prehendi, -prehensus, to find**

**divisio, f., division**

**elucescere, to shine forth, to stand out clearly**

**figura, f., shape**

**indivisibilis, indivisible**

**indivisio, f., oneness**

**indivisus, undivided**

**intendere, -tendi, -tentus, to stretch out, to extend, to intend**

**jamvero, indeed**

**late, broadly, widely**

**opponere, -posui, -positus, to oppose**

**praedictus, aforementioned**

**quantitas, f., quantity**

**quoties, as often as, whenever**

**referre, -tuli, -latus, to relate, to refer**

**remittere, -misi, -missus, to slacken, to relax**

**respectus, m., respect, consideration**

**substantialis, substantial**

**transcendentalis, transcendental**

**triplex, threefold, triple**

## WORD STUDY

1. **Indivisio:** oneness; the state of being a unit that cannot be divided.
2. **Transcendentalis:** relating to a reality beyond the senses, and underlying the objects of experience.
3. **Forma substantialis:** that internal constitution which makes an existing thing to be what it is.
4. **Forma accidentalis:** not of the essence or substance of a thing.

## GRAMMAR

1. **Reflexive pronouns.** These are the same as the object pronouns except in the third person, where the following forms are used: **sui** (gen.), *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*; **sibi** (dat.), *to himself, etc.*; **se** (acc. and abl.), *himself, etc.*, and *by or with himself, etc.*

**Se amant.** *They love themselves. They love each other.*

**Mihi loquor.** *I talk to myself.*

a) The preposition **cum** is added to these forms as an enclitic: **me-cum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.** **Primum matri, deinde patri servit, et tunc secum concludit.** *First he serves the mother, next the father, and then he concludes with himself.*

b) Of the possessive pronouns, **meus, tuus, suus, etc.**, **suus** is used only as a reflexive referring to the subject. When *his, her, its, their* refer to someone other than the subject, then **ejus** or **eorum** is used instead of **suus**.

**Patrem suum vocant.** *They call their (own) father.*

**Matrem ejus vidit heri.** *He saw his (not his own, someone else's) mother yesterday.*

c) The reciprocals, *one another or each other*, are expressed by the reflexive pronoun or by **inter se** or **alter . . . alterum**.

**Opposita juxta se posita magis elucescunt.** *Opposites placed next to each other stand out more clearly.*

**Inter se fovebant.** *They cherished each other.*

**Altera alteram expectabit.** *They will wait for each other.*

## 2. Some prepositions.

a) **Ad** always governs the accusative and is used in the sense of *to, towards, at, near, till*.

**Remanebat hic ad nonam horam.** *He remained here until three o'clock.*

**Ad civitatem eo.** *I go to the city.*

b) **Contra** governs the accusative and has the general meaning of *opposite or against*.

**Contra haec est id quod philosophus dicit.** *Against this is what the philosopher says.*

**Contra montem expectabat exercitus.** *The army waited opposite the hill.*

c) **De** governs the ablative and may mean *from, down from, of, concerning, about, out of*.

**De caelo demissus est.** *He was sent down from heaven.*

**De illa re nihil cognoscimus.** *We know nothing about that matter.*

**Unus de turba venit ad loquendum ei.** *One of the crowd came to speak to him.*

d) **In** may govern the accusative or the ablative; with the former it means *into, for, till, toward*. Some idea of motion toward a goal is conveyed. With the ablative this preposition is used in the general sense of *in, on, among*.

**In Jerusalem introivit.** *He entered Jerusalem.*

**In lucem ignem spectabant.** *They watched the fire until daybreak.*

**Cognoscimus quod maculae in sole apparent.** *We know that spots appear on the sun.*

**In famulis nostris puer salvus est.** *The child is safe among our servants.*

e) **Juxta** as a preposition governs the accusative and may be used literally (*near, next to, close by*) or figuratively (*together with, connected with, in accordance with*).

**Turbæ juxta muros stabant.** *The crowds were standing close to the walls.*

**Regis juxta mandata discipuli ex civitate ejiciebantur.** *In accordance with the king's commands, the disciples were driven from the city.*

f) **Secundum** governs the accusative and may be used in the literal sense of *just behind, following*, or in the figurative sense of *according to*.

**Ite secundum eum.** *Go behind him.*

**Secundum Lucam Christus in Bethlehem natus est.** *According to Luke, Christ was born in Bethlehem.*

g) **Sub** governs the accusative when there is an idea of motion, otherwise it takes the ablative. It usually has the sense of *under* or *up under*.

**Sub montem venerunt.** *They came up under the hill.*

**Ossa sancti sub altari sunt.** *The bones of a saint are under the altar.*

## EXERCISES

1. Se coarctaverunt in modis multis. 2. Colores diversi elucescunt quando juxta se positi sunt. 3. Quoties se videbant, litigabant inter se. 4. Exercitus gentium multarum se exercebant certaminis in artibus et tunc late se opponebant. 5. Vita homini amarissima fieri potest, si veritatem ac bonitatem non aestimat. 6. Operam dabant ad horam sextam et tum requiescebant. 7. Id quod alter alteri dicebat contra ratiocinia philosophi erat. 8. Quanto magis loquebantur contra eum, tanto magis discipuli ejus diligebant eum. 9. Misit apostolos suos in terras remotas, sed multi ex eis secundum prophetarum verba ejiciebantur ab inimicis ejus. 10. Volumus nobiscum omnia auferre, de quibus in epistola vestra tractabatis. 11. Ubi invenisti librum meum de metaphysica? In sede jamvero in qua reliquisti eum. 12. Ab obstaculis inhaerentibus in natura nostra semper coarctamur. 13. Ecclesia domusque juxta se stabunt. 14. Dixit sibi: Ubi et quando potero investigare elementa in lapide illo occulta? 15. Nolite negare quod hos viros bonos in vinculis videbatis, et tamen eis nullum adjutorium



offerebatis. 16. Pater sub montem gregem suum maximum ducebat ad eum de calore solis defendendum. 17. Servio mihi quaecumque Deo servio. 18. Si te regi adjungas, non solum particeps felicitatis ejus fias, sed etiam in calamitatibus ejus patiaris. 19. Quum ille putaverit indolem conceptus simplicem esse, iste nihil dixit contra sententiam illam. 20. Cum extra muros essent, revera misericordiae judicium suorum obliviscebantur. 21. Praemia inter se dederunt. Quare fecerunt illud? Non scio. 22. Alteri alteros adjuvabant cum monerentur inimicos lapides immensos contra muros civitatis missuros esse. 23. Cum loquendum esse se audiret, non cognoscebat vocem propriam. 24. Creditistis vobis? Non semper. 25. Cum aqua benedicta aspersit se.

## READING

1. Transcendentales entis proprietates sunt attributa, quae enti, prout est ens, conveniunt. Hae proprietates re non distinguuntur ab ente, sed sunt diversi respectus, sub quibus ens considerari potest. Hinc tam late patent quam ipsum ens; et sicut istud, nulli generi rerum coarctantur, sed omnia genera transcendunt. Jamvero, ens sub triplici respectu considerari potest: 1°. prout in seipso est, et sic consideratum se manifestat ut unum; 2°. prout refertur ad intellectum, a quo concipitur, et sic dicitur verum; 3°. prout refertur ad voluntatem vel ad appetitum sensitivum, sub quo respectu vocatur bonum. Tres igitur sunt proprietates entis: unitas, veritas, bonitas. Quoniam vero opposita (ut aiunt) juxta se posita magis elucescunt, in hoc capite sermo erit, non solum de tribus praedictis proprietatibus, sed etiam de notionibus, quae eis opponuntur. Ens dicitur unum, quatenus est in se indivisum, et proinde unitas est carentia divisionis in ente. Quoties enim deprehendimus aliquid divisum esse in ens et ens, unum esse negamus; et quoties deprehendimus aliquid non esse divisum, propter hanc indivisionem id unum nominamus.

2. Deinde considerandum est de his quae pertinent ad potentias animae. Ad primum sic proceditur. 1. Videtur quod ipsa essentia animae sit ejus potentia. Dicit enim Augustinus quod mens, notitia, et amor sunt substantialiter in anima, et quod memoria, intelligentia

**et voluntas sunt una vita, una mens et una essentia. 2.** Praeterea, anima est nobilior quam materia prima. Sed materia prima est sua potentia. Ergo multo magis anima. 3. Praeterea, forma substantialis est simplicior quam accidentalis: cujus signum est quod forma substantialis non intenditur vel remittitur, sed in indivisibili consistit; forma autem accidentalis est ipsa sua virtus. Ergo multo magis forma substantialis, quae est anima. 4. Praeterea, potentia sensitiva est qua sentimus, et potentia intellectiva qua intelligimus. Sed id quo primo sentimus et intelligimus, est anima, secundum Philosophum. Ergo anima est sua potentia. 5. Praeterea, quod non est de essentia rei, est accidens. Si ergo potentia animae est praeter essentiam ejus, sequitur quod sit accidens, quod est contra Augustinum qui dicit quod praedicta non sunt in anima sicut in subjecto, ut color aut figura in corpore, aut ulla alia qualitas aut quantitas; quidquid enim tale est non excedit subjectum in quo est. Mens autem potest etiam alia amare et cognoscere. 6. Praeterea, forma simplex subjectum esse non potest. Anima autem est forma simplex, cum non sit composita ex materia et forma, ut supra dictum est. Non ergo potentia animae potest esse in ipsa sicut in subjecto. 7. Praeterea, accidens non est principium substantialis differentiae. Sed sensibile et rationale sunt substantiales differentiae, et sumuntur a sensu et ratione, quae sunt potentiae animae. Ergo potentiae animae non sunt accidentia, et ita videtur quod potentia animae sit ejus essentia.

## LESSON XVII

### Vocabulary

abjicere, -jeci, -jectus, *to degrade, to debase*

coextendere, -tendi, -tensus or -tentus, *to have the same extension*

constare, -stiti, -status, *to consist, to stand firm*

constat, *it is certain*

continuus, *continuous, constant*

entitativus, *of the nature of an entity or real thing*

forsitan, *perhaps*

integrans, *integrating, making up a whole*

licet, from licere 2 (impers. verb), *it is permitted, allowable; although*

multiplex, *manifold*

mutuo, *mutually*

nimirum, *certainly, indisputably*

oportet, from oportere 2 (impers. verb), *it is necessary, proper, reasonable*

parvulus, *small; (as a noun) little one, child*

quantum ad, *so far as concerns*

quidam, *a certain one*

quodlibet, *any whatever*

saepe, *often*

specificus, *specific; pertaining to a species*

strepitus, m., *noise*

subesse, -fui, *to be under, to underlie*

ulterior, *further, later*

vere, *really, truly*

### WORD STUDY

1. **Simpliciter:** in a simple manner or state; considered in or by itself; without additional qualification.

2. **Secundum quid:** according to something; in some one respect only.

3. **Potentia:** quality of possessing inherent strength or power; power or energy more or less free to act.

## GRAMMAR

**Impersonal verbs.**

a) Many verbs appear only in the third person singular, infinitive, and gerund, having as a subject the impersonal *it*. Still other verbs may be used impersonally in the passive.

*constat, it is plain, evident*

*accidit, it happens*

*placet, it pleases*

*decet, it is becoming, proper*

*necesse est, it is needful*

*refert, it concerns*

*relinquitur, it remains*

*licet, it is allowed*

*libet, it pleases*

*videtur, it seems*

*oportet, it is fitting, ought*

*interest, it concerns*

*restat, it remains*

b) These verbs are regularly followed by a **quod** or **quia** clause with the subjunctive (sometimes the indicative).

## EXERCISES

1. Quaeritur utrum anima independenter a corpore existere possit.
2. Non licet, nimirum, quod quidam opiniones diversas habeant de definitione vera realitatis.
3. Oportet forsitan quod consideremus naturam multiplicem hujus organismi.
4. Decet quod mutuo se ament cum alteri tantum alteros adjuvaverint.
5. Quantum ad caput secundum constat consideratione unitatis specierum, i.e. de unitatis notione et divisione quaeritur.
6. Necesse est quod deprehendat id quod notis quibuslibet subest.
7. Opera nulla complevit quae ipse non sortiret, cum ei placeret quod independenter ab aliis iudicium suum exerceret.
8. Videtur quod affirmatio talis bonitatem et veritatem abjiciat.
9. Relinquitur quod scopos ultiores detegatis qui sententiis ejus expressis subsunt.
10. Vere oportet quia carpentarius

usum instrumentorum multorum intelligat, specialiter, serrae. 11. Videtur quod substantia et accidentia coextendant. 12. Si oporteret quod istud faceret, non rem magis investigaremus. 13. Si deceret quod homines istos in domum nostram acciperemus, nimirum, non eis indulgentiam nostram negaremus. 14. Nobis placebat quod in familia nostra adesses, cum nos ipsos coadunaremus ad spem novam infundendam in socios nostros. 15. Ei placebit quod patri veteri ejus honores collaturi sint. 16. Dicit id constare quod non aequalitatem consecuti sint quam diligenter quaesiverint. 17. Accidit saepe quod iudices clementiam tribuant eis qui non mereantur. 18. Si sonum serrae non audimus, per totam noctem dormiemus bene. 19. Restat nunc quod mihi enarres omnia quae feceritis ad adventum regis celebrandum. 20. Libetne tibi quia pueri ecclesiam mundare velint ac decorare ante baptismum fratris tui? 21. Cum negarent quod inimicos consolati essent et bona eorum custodivissent, non jam nobis referebat. 22. Necesse est quod sacerdotes episcopum suum multis modis sustineant. 23. Videtur quod quanto magis sacerdos episcopum suum aestimat, tanto magis gentes illum diligit. 24. Oportebat quia panem et vinum hoc modo divideret: unam ex partibus pro veteribus, aliam pro parvulis, et partem tertiam pro pauperibus. 25. Necesse est quod bene dormiamus per hanc noctem; ergo ne fiant nec soni tubarum nec operatio serrarum nec voces hymnos canentes nec alii strepitus horrendi quilibet. 26. Accidit quod tam altus esset ut tectum attingere posset.

## READING

1. Unitas est triplicis generis: unitas simplicitatis et compositionis; unitas per se et per accidens; unitas rationis et unitas realis. Unitas simplicitatis est unitas rei, quae nec dividitur nec dividi potest. Talis est unitas Dei, animae, actus affirmationis, etc. Unitas compositionis est unitas rei, quae constat partibus actu indivisis, sed tamen divisibilibus. Unitas per se est illa, quae competit enti vere indiviso, licet forsitan constet partibus, seu, est unitas entis, quod est simpliciter unum

et non multa; cujusmodi est unitas angeli, vel etiam hominis licet partibus constantis. Unitas per accidens est illa, quae competit enti, quod revera est multiplex, sed unum secundum quid. Unum per se dicenda sunt illa composita, quorum partes in eodem genere unione entitativa se mutuo complent, nimirum, a) in genere substantiae, compositio corporum ex materia prima et forma substantiali, et ex partibus integrantibus; b) in generibus accidentium, compositio partium integrantium quantitatis continuae et accidentium, quae quantitati coextenduntur. Unitas rationis est, quae rebus convenit ex mentis consideratione, ut unitas specifica inter homines. Unitas realis, est quae convenit rebus independenter a mentis consideratione, ut unitas Petri.

2. Respondet Philosophus dicendum, quod impossibile est dicere quod essentia animae sit ejus potentia, licet hoc quidam posuerint; et hoc dupliciter ostenditur quantum ad praesens. Primo, quia cum potentia et actus dividant ens et quodlibet genus entis, oportet quod ad idem genus referatur potentia et actus; et ideo, si actus non est in genere substantiae, potentia quae dicitur ad illum actum, non potest esse in genere substantiae. Operatio autem animae non est in genere substantiae, sed in solo Deo operatio est ejus substantia; unde Dei potentia, quae est operationis principium, est ipsa Dei essentia; quod non potest esse verum neque in anima, neque in aliqua creatura, ut supra etiam de angelo dictum est. Secundo, hoc etiam impossibile apparet in anima. Nam anima secundum suam essentiam est actus. Si ergo ipsa essentia animae esset immediatum operationis principium, semper habens animam, actu haberet opera vitae, sicut semper habens animam actu est vivum. Non enim, inquantum est forma, est actus ordinatus ad ulteriorem actum, sed est ultimus terminus generationis. Unde quod sit in potentia adhuc ad alium actum, hoc non competit ei secundum suam essentiam, inquantum est forma, sed secundum suam potentiam; et sic ipsa anima, secundum quod subest suae potentiae, dicitur actus primus, ordinatus ad actum secundum. Invenitur autem habens animam non semper esse in actu

operum vitae. Unde etiam in definitione animae dicitur, quod est actus corporis potentia vitam habentis, quae tamen potentia non abjicit animam. Relinquitur ergo quod essentia animae non est ejus potentia; nihil enim est in potentia secundum actum, in quantum est actus.

## LESSON XVIII

### Vocabulary

**aequalitas**, f., *equality, sameness*

**affinis**, *allied, related*

**albus**, *white*

**appetere**, -ivi or -ii, -itus, *to long for, to desire*

**appetitivus**, *having appetite or desire for*

**convenientia**, f., *agreement, fitness, propriety*

**diversificare**, *to make different, to diversify*

**dubitare**, *to doubt*

**extrinsecus**, *outward, external*

**fere**, *almost*

**gustus**, m., *taste*

**identicus**, *identical*

**identitas**, f., *identity*

**impedire**, *to prevent*

**logicus**, *logical*

**maxime**, *chiefly, to the greatest extent*

**niger**, *black*

**non . . . nisi**, *only*

**obliquum**, n., *that which is indirect; in obliquo, indirectly*

**penes**, *with, within*

**plane**, *plainly, clearly*

**plures**, *more, several*

**princeps**, m., *prince*

**prohibere** 2, *to prohibit*

**quidquid**, *whatever*

**quin**, *except that, unless*

**realiter**, *really, outside the mind*



recte, *correctly, properly*

rectum, n., *that which is right, straight, or direct*; in recto, *directly*

removere 2, -movi, -motus, *to remove*

sapiens, *wise, discerning*

semel, *once*

sibimetipsi, *to itself (himself, herself)*

similiter, *similarly*

similitudo, f., *resemblance*

visivus, *visual*

visus, m., *sight*

#### WORD STUDY

1. **Affirmabilitas:** the state of being capable of affirmation; that which can be declared to be true.

2. **Formaliter:** with respect to or according to form; essentially; strictly speaking.

#### GRAMMAR

1. **Quin** with the meaning of *but that, except that, unless, that not, that*, after negative verbs of hindering, prohibiting, doubting, or similar ideas, requires the subjunctive.

**Unum nequit affirmari in recto de altero, quin sint idem.** *One thing cannot be affirmed directly concerning another, except that they be the same thing.*

**Non dubitabat quin ei crederemus.** *He did not doubt that we believed him.*

**Id non praeveniebat quin semetipsos excusarent.** *That did not prevent them from excusing themselves.*

2. **Ablative absolute.** This construction consists in a noun or pronoun in the ablative case with an accompanying word or words (usually a past participle) in the same case. It is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence in which it occurs and may be used to replace a temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional clause. **Remota**

**causa, removetur effectus.** *If the cause be removed, the effect is removed.*

3. **Idem**, *same*, is composed of the demonstrative pronoun **is** plus the indeclinable suffix **-dem**. It is declined as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	masc.	fem.	neu.	masc.	fem.	neu.
n.	idem	eadem	idem	idem(ei-, ii-)	eadem	eadem
g.	eiusdem	—	—	eorundem	earundem	eorundem
d.	eidem	—	—	eisdem(is-, iis-)	—	—
acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eosdem	easdem	eadem
ab.	eodem	eadem	eodem	eisdem(is-, iis-)	—	—

**Idem** plus **atque** translates the English *same as, same . . . as*, or it may be followed by the dative.

**Puer eandem vim habet atque pater ejus.** *The boy has the same strength as his father.*

**Quidquid unum est, idem est sibimetipsi.** *Whatever is one, is the same as itself (is similar to itself).*

4. **Met:** This pronominal particle is inserted frequently between the intensive and the reflexive pronoun for added emphasis.

#### EXERCISES

1. Id non praevenit quin credat quod nigrum sit album. 2. Quomodo appetebamus easdem opes quibus principes fruuntur! 3. Capitibus cum pluribus additionibus diversificatis, non tam clara erant quam prius. 4. Res quae sibimetipsi identica est, est res ipsa. 5. Carentia omnium detecta, auxilium a gentibus aliis requirebant. 6. Vinum amarum erat, sed omnino non impediabamur quin id biberemus. 7. Non dubitabant quin systema multa vitia haberet. 8. Opinariisne quod prohibeat quin ego opinionem meam adjungam ad sententias aptas philosophi veteris? 9. Notitiis iisdem in eodem die acceptis, omnes semetipsos uniebant ad exsurgendum contra inimicos. 10. Nullum animal cogitat, quin potentiam ratiocinii habeat. 11. Habitatione bene

calecta, parvuli ad horam nonam dormiebant. 12. Patet quod leges non impedire possint, quin regem spectemus. 13. Vosmetipsos a multis benedictionibus exclusistis in eis repugnando qui amant vos. 14. Regulis simplicibus probatis, oportebat tunc minus elementares includere. 15. Intellectus praeclarus non impedit quin homines inter se oderint. 16. Vero non dubitamus quin idem sit qui fratrem nostrum in illa nocte horrenda salvabat. 17. Actibus ejus judicatis secundum leges patriae, inquirebatur utrum alii non essent qui rei generis ejusdem deprehensi essent. 18. Diligenter fere duas horas ideas eorum consideravi, prout expressas in libris eorum, et non detego scopos eosdem atque tu. 19. Speciebus unitatis nominatis, spero quod vos non erretis de divisionibus ontologiae disserendo. 20. Non dubitat quin latrones removerint quodquod esse antiquum putarent. 21. Senex factus, princeps usum visus ac auditus perdebat. 22. Cum soni suaves auribus placeant atque colores clari oculis, has res easdem praeparemus eis. 23. Cum pauperibus dederis omnia quae eis necessaria sint, tunc da tibi metipsi id quod restat. 24. Duae res non identicae sunt quin similitudinem exactam in partibus omnibus habeant. 25. Actibus iisdem prohibitis fere in omnibus terris, facile erat regulas constituere quae universaliter aestimarentur.

#### READING

1. Notioni unitatis valde affinis est notio identitatis; nam quidquid unum est, idem est sibi metipsi. Quare identitas definitur: Convenientia rei cum seipso; vel: affirmabilitas in recto unius de altero. Dicitur in recto, quia unum nequit affirmari in recto de altero, quin sint idem; fieri autem potest, ut unum de altero affirmetur in obliquo, quae tamen sunt plane distincta. Sic, sapientia affirmatur in obliquo de homine, et similiter humanitas de Verbo divino, cum dicis: homo est sapiens, Verbum est homo, sed sapientia ab homine, et humanitas a Verbo realiter distinguuntur. Unde identitas fundatur in reali entis unitate, formaliter autem constituitur, quatenus eadem res semel et iterum concipitur, et secum collata, sibi identica invenitur. Duplex est: realis et logica seu rationis. Prior convenit rebus independenter

a mentis consideratione, ut identitas inter S. Petrum et Principem Apostolorum. Altera est ea, quae provenit a mentis consideratione, ut identitas inter Petrum et Paulum secundum naturam specificam. Haec minus recte dicitur identitas, revera non est nisi similitudo, i.e., convenientia plurium in aliqua forma. Triplex est: identitas seu similitudo secundum essentiam, ut in exemplo dato; identitas secundum qualitatem, i.e., similitudo proprie dicta; identitas secundum quantitatem, i.e., aequalitas.

2. Videtur quod potentiae non distinguantur per actus et objecta. Nihil enim determinatur ad speciem per illud quod posterius, vel extrinsecum est. Actus autem est posterior potentia; objectum autem extrinsecum. Ergo per ea potentiae non distinguuntur secundum speciem. Praeterea, contraria sunt quae maxime differunt. Si igitur potentiae distinguerentur penes objecta, sequeretur quod contrariorum non esset eadem potentia; quod patet esse falsum fere in omnibus; nam potentia visiva eadem est albi et nigri, et gustus idem est dulcis et amari. Praeterea, remota causa, removetur effectus. Si igitur potentiarum differentia esset ex differentia objectorum, idem objectum non pertineret ad diversas potentias; quod patet esse falsum; nam idem est quod potentia cognoscitiva cognoscit et appetitiva appetit. Praeterea, id quod per se est causa alicujus, in omnibus causat illud. Sed quaedam objecta diversa, quae pertinent ad diversas potentias, pertinent etiam ad aliquam unam potentiam; sicut sonus et color pertinent ad visum et auditum, quae sunt diversae potentiae; et tamen pertinent ad unam potentiam sensus communis. Non ergo potentiae distinguuntur secundum differentiam objectorum. Sed contra, posteriora distinguuntur secundum priora. Sed Philosophus dicit quod priores potentiis actus et operationes secundum rationem sunt; et adhuc his priora sunt opposita, sive objecta. Ergo potentiae distinguuntur secundum actus et objecta. Respondeo, dicendum quod potentia, secundum illud quod est potentia, ordinatur ad actum. Unde oportet rationem potentiae accipi ex actu ad quem ordinatur; et per consequens oportet quod ratio potentiae diversificetur, ut diversificatur ratio actus.

## LESSON XIX

### Vocabulary

adaequare, *to be equal to, to be adequate*  
artifex, m., *artificer, maker, author*  
atqui, *however, but, nevertheless*  
attamen, *nevertheless*  
attribuere, -ui, -utus, *to bestow, to grant*  
centrum, n., *center*  
conformis, *conformable, in conformity with*  
congruere, -grui, *to fit, to conform to*  
conjunctus, *connected, united with*  
contrarietas, f., *opposite*  
differe, distuli, dilatus, *to differ*  
duo, *two*  
exemplar, n., *pattern, model, original*  
fundamentaliter, *basically, essentially*  
frigidus, *cold*  
haurire (4), hausi, haustus, *to draw out, to take*  
humidus, *wet*  
immutare, *to change, to alter*  
inconvenienter, *improperly*  
instituere, -stitui, -stitutus, *to institute, to establish*  
magnitudo, f., *size*  
medium, n., *means, middle*  
passivus, *passive*  
pauci, *few*  
perfecte, *perfectly*  
praenoscerere, -novi, -notus, *to know beforehand*  
primario, *primarily*

quinque, *five*

relate, *in relation to*

reponere, -posui, -positus, *to set, to place*

satis, *enough*

siccus, *dry*

summe, *in the highest degree*

tactus, m., *touch*

tamquam, *just as, as it were*

tum . . . tum, *both . . . and*

utpote, *as being, inasmuch as*

#### WORD STUDY

1. **Immutativum:** change, alteration, modification
2. **Sensibilia communia:** sense faculties, sensations, or perceptions common to all beings.

#### GRAMMAR

1. **Ut** clauses of purpose. A purpose clause introduced by **ut** (negative **ne**) regularly requires the subjunctive. **Natura instituit diversitatem in organis, ut congruerent diversitati potentiarum.** *Nature has established a difference in organs in order that they might fit a diversity of powers.*

2. Review **ut** with the indicative in Lesson IV.
3. Review **ut** clauses of result in Lesson XI.

#### EXERCISES

1. **Natura homini attribuit quinque sensus, ut cognoscat mundum qui ei circumstat.**
2. **Hauriam duo ut numerus meus tuo adaequetur.**
3. **Ea diligenter elegimus ut differrent, et nunc invenimus quod essentialiter eadem sunt.**
4. **Ut habeas exemplar ad modum vivendi, tum contempla vitas sanctorum tum conforma temetipsum factis eorum.**
5. **Ierunt ad terras remotas ut humidum ac frigidum patriae propriae evaderent, attamen non beati erant.**
6. **Ut perfecte praenoscat quod volumus facere, ei epistolam mittamus quae spes nostras enarret.**

7. Ne artifex decorem exteriorum domus immutet, monebitur ut lapides diligentissime reponat. 8. Ut visus summe sensitivus est, oculi custodiri debent. 9. Ut regio haec tam sicca est, animalia bruta ob carentiam aquae moriuntur. 10. Ex lacu aquam hauserunt ut aliud quid haberent quam vinum ad bibendum. 11. Alter ab altero tantum differebat, ut non ejusdem speciei eos putarem. 12. Gustus utpote tactus affinis isti videtur, atqui non idem sunt. 13. Ne coarctemur praeter id quod nobis salutare sit, nosmetipsos opponamus viribus dolosis quae ubique contra nos exsurgunt. 14. Jumenta circulos metalli circum pedes habent, ut domini ea facile cognoscant. 15. Videbatur quod seipsum a fratribus suis removisset, ut magis independenter forsitan ageret. 16. Princeps apostolorum Roma sedem suam instituebat, ut civitas illa semper centrum ecclesiae universalis esset. 17. Se mutuo adjuvabant ne unusquisque solus atque abjectus moriretur. 18. Mundus tam incongruus est ad hominem sustinendum, ut plurimi rebus carere debeant quibus opus est, ut pauci satis habeant. 19. Ideo oportet quod gentes Deum rogent, ut eis panem quotidianum det. 20. Qualitates phantasiae plenius investigabo, ut iterum affirmem quod semel dixi. 21. Pater tum puerum laudabat tum ei praemia dabat, ne strepitum cum serra faceret nec lapides contra ostium mitteret. 22. Quoties voluimus quantitas et qualitas adaequarentur! 23. Patet quod organum auditus esse debet, ut potentia auditus fiat actus. 24. Cum sacerdos vetus philosophiam diligat, semetipsum in libros immergit, ut omnia principia apta ad homines cognoscat. 25. Ut viri nigri operam dabant in terris calidis, viri albi opes magnas in montibus frigidis quaerebant.

#### READING

Veritas transcendentalis seu ontologica est ipsa rei entitas, prout ordinem habet ad intellectum. Notio veritatis transcendentalis duo importat, scil., a) ipsam rei entitatem, et sic sumitur fundamentaliter; b) ordinem conformitatis hujus entitatis ad intellectum; in quo ordine consistit veritas transcendentalis formaliter considerata. Intellectus vero, cui res, ut verae dicantur, conformari debent, est proprie et

primario intellectus divinus, et proinde veritas ontologica primario reponenda est in ordine rerum ad divinas ideas. Attamen, quum intellectus creatus sit quaedam imitatio intellectus divini, cui, ut vere cognoscat, in cognoscendo debet esse conformis, dicendum est res secundario veras esse relate ad ideas nostras, quae earum naturam exprimunt. Res dicuntur primario verae relate ad intellectum, cui essentialiter sunt conformes; atqui res omnes essentialiter conformantur ad intellectum divinum. Et quidem, omne ens est vel naturale, vel artificiale, vel divinum. Jam, 1<sup>o</sup>. ens naturale est necessario conforme intellectui divino tamquam suae causae exemplari; Deus enim, utpote sapientissimus, nihil creat vel creare potest nisi juxta ideam exemplarem in suo intellectu existentem. 2<sup>o</sup>. Ens artificiale est necessario conforme intellectui divino, tum quia artifex elementa sui exemplaris haurit ex rebus, quae intellectui divino perfecte adaequant, tum quia Deus omnia opera hominis praenoscit. 3<sup>o</sup>. Denique ens divinum (i.e., divina essentia) est summe et necessario conforme intellectui divino, utpote cum illo identicum.

2. Videtur quod inconvenienter distinguantur quinque sensus exteriores. Sensus enim est cognoscitivus accidentium. Sunt autem multa genera accidentium. Cum ergo potentiae distinguantur per objecta, videtur quod sensus multiplicentur secundum numerum qui est in generibus accidentium. Praeterea, magnitudo et figura et alia, quae dicuntur sensibilia communia, non sunt sensibilia per accidens. Cum ergo plus differant magnitudo et figura a colore, quam sonus; videtur quod multo magis debeat esse alia potentia sensitiva cognoscitiva magnitudinis aut figurae, quam coloris et soni. Praeterea, unus sensus est unius contrarietatis, sicut visus albi et nigri. Sed tactus est cognoscitivus plurium contrarietatum, scilicet calidi et frigidi, humidi et sicci, et hujusmodi. Ergo non est sensus unus, sed plures; ergo plures sensus sunt quam quinque. Praeterea, species non dividitur contra genus. Sed gustus est tactus quidam. Ergo non debet poni alter sensus praeter tactum. Sed contra est quod Philosophus dicit, quod non est alter sensus praeter quinque. Respondeo dicendum, quod rationem distinctionis et numeri sensuum exteriorum quidam accipere voluerunt ex



parte organorum, in quibus aliquod elementorum dominatur, vel aqua vel aer vel aliquid hujusmodi; quidam autem ex parte medii, quod est vel conjunctum vel extrinsecum, et hoc vel aer, vel aqua, vel aliquid hujusmodi; quidam autem ex diversa natura sensibilibum qualitatuum, secundum quod est qualitas simplicis corporis vel sequens complexionem. Sed nihil istorum conveniens est. Non enim potentiae sunt propter organa, sed organa propter potentias; unde non propter hoc sunt diversae potentiae, quia sunt diversa organa, et ideo natura instituit diversitatem in organis, ut congruerent diversitati potentiarum. Et similiter diversa media diversis sensibus attribuit, secundum quod erat conveniens ad actus potentiarum. Naturas autem sensibilibum qualitatuum cognoscere non est sensus, sed intellectus. Accipienda est ergo ratio numeri et distinctionis exteriorum sensuum, secundum illud quod proprie et per se ad sensum pertinet. Est autem sensus quaedam potentia passiva, quae nata est immutari ab exteriori sensibili. Exterius ergo immutativum est quod per se a sensu percipitur, et secundum cujus diversitatem sensitivae potentiae distinguuntur.

## LESSON XX

### Vocabulary

absque, *without, except*

amicus, m., *friend*

ars, f., *art, skill*

aurichalcum, n., *brass*

aurum, n., *gold*

coloratus, *colored*

commotio, f., *stirring, movement, agitation*

deficere, -feci, -fectus, *to fail, to forsake, to depart from*

deviare, *to deviate, to depart from*

diametro: e —, *diametrically*

difformitas, f., *lack of conformity, disagreement*

discedere, -cessi, -cessus, *to depart from, to swerve from, to leave*

elucere (2), -luxi, *to shine forth, to be apparent*

extrinsece, *extrinsically, externally*

humectare (umectare), *to moisten*

humiditas, f., *moisture*

intrinsece, *intrinsically, inwardly*

maxime, *especially, in the highest degree*

mendacium, n., *lie*

motus, m., *motion, movement*

olfactus, m., *sense of smell*

pactum, n., *agreement*

percussio, f., *striking, percussion*

pertingere, *to reach, to extend*

post (adv.), *afterwards, later*

praescriptus, *prescribed, commanded*

rhetorica, f., *rhetoric*

sapor, m., *savor, flavor*

spirare, *to breathe, to exhale*

subdere, -didi, -ditus, *to place under, to subject*

tangere, tetigi, tactus, *to touch*

transmutatio, f., *change, alteration*

ut quum, *as when*

vendere, *to sell*

virtuosus, *virtuous, of virtue*

### WORD STUDY

1. **Transmutatio:** change from one nature, form, or substance into another; transformation; conversion of one thing into another.

2. **Intrinsece:** in its nature; within the thing itself; essential.

3. **Extrinsece:** not contained in or belonging to a body; externally; unessentially; pertaining to what is outside of the thing itself.

4. **Motus localis:** activity localized in the brain centers corresponding to the several senses of sight, hearing, touch, etc.

5. **Rhetorica:** the art of expressive speech or discourse, especially the art of literary composition.

### GRAMMAR

1. **Dum** and **quoad**, *until*, take the present or imperfect subjunctive in clauses implying intention or expectancy.

**Expectamus, dum veniat.** *We are waiting until he comes.*

**Exercitus exercebatur, quoad fortis esset.** *The army was trained until it was strong.*

2. **Donec** and **quoad**, *until*, require the perfect indicative to express an actual fact in the past. **Expectavit, donec respondi.** *He waited until I answered.*

3. **Dum**, **donec**, and **quoad**, *as long as*, take the indicative. **Legebant, quoad poterant.** *They read as long as they could.*

4. **Dum**, meaning *while*, frequently takes the present indicative to denote action in the past. **Dum eis gratias agit, alia praemia ad eum**

**ducta sunt.** *While he was thanking them, other rewards were brought to him.*

5. **Dum, modo, dummodo, tantum ut**, introducing a proviso clause, take the subjunctive. (The negative used with these conjunctions is **ne**.)

**Panem habeat, dum ne nimis manducet.** *Let him have the bread, provided that he does not eat too much.*

**Munera consequentur, tantum ut ea mereantur.** *They will win the rewards, provided that they deserve them.*

6. **Ut** (negative **ne**) is sometimes used to introduce a proviso clause, usually with **ita** in the main clause. **Media probata sunt, sed ita ut omnibus plana fierent.** *The means were approved, but only on condition that they should be made plain to all.*

7. **Ut** is sometimes used before another conjunction for more emphasis. **Ut quid vanitatem diligitis?** *Why do you love vanity?*

## EXERCISES

1. **Metalla spectabunt, quoad aurum ab aurichalco distinguere possint.** 2. **Volebat in domo remanere, dum amici ejus discederent.** 3. **De propositione disseruerunt, donec falsitatem ejus probaverunt.** 4. **Dum artifex amicos multos habebat, objecta argenti et auri vendere poterat, quae cum tanta arte faciebat.** 5. **Cum nox calida esset, ros cadebat, quoad totam terram humectavit.** 6. **Ut quid ab veritate devias, ut eloquentia tua magis eluceat?** 7. **Dum veteres poenas suas enarrant, matres specialiter eorum miserebantur et consolabantur eos.** 8. **Philosophi antiqui magnam operam dabant, dum aurichalcum in aurum transmutarent.** 9. **De principiis quibuscumque disserere possunt, dummodo ne a certis regulis specificis logicae deficient.** 10. **Donec aliqua humiditas in terra existit, vita vegetabilis non omnino moritur.** 11. **Tantum ne absque auxilio sint diutius quam duos dies, non eis opus erit civitatem tradere.** 12. **Ut quid nobis malitiam intentionis vestrae negatis?** 13. **Quoad parvuli erant in centro magni strepitus et multae commotionis, laetabantur.** 14. **Princeps aurum accepit, sed**

ita ut eo uteretur ad ecclesiam in nomine Sanctae Agathae aedificandam. 15. Vixit in felicitate, dum falsitatem amicorum suorum ignorat. 16. Dum in habitatione remanebamus, odores non ad olfactum nostrum pertingebant. 17. Dum res non palpamus, sensum tactus non exercere possumus. 18. Ut quid librum novum tetigisti, dum manus tuae non mundae sunt? 19. Jamvero, ei epistolas hujusmodi scribam, dum mihi plenius respondeat. 20. Dixit se pactum factum cum amico suo tenturum esse, dum iste moriretur. 21. Modo ne odorem illum in recto spires, non sufficit causare capitis dolorem. 22. Ut quid christiani psalmos non canent, ut solem orientem salutent? 23. Homo rationi suae sensus suos subdere potest, dummodo voluntate utatur quae ei a Deo data est. 24. Principe virtuoso et praeclaro electo, gentes expectabant, dum leges bonae constituerentur. 25. Donec nobis se opponunt mendaciis dolosis, intensionem eorum vere non sciemus.

#### READING

1. Falsitas e diametro opponitur veritati. Sicut igitur veritas ontologica est conformitas rei cum intellectu, ita falsitas ontologica est difformitas, et quidem positiva, rei ab intellectu. Res esse aliquo modo falsas elucet ex communi modo loquendi; dicimus enim falsos amicos, falsos deos, etc. Sed quum omne ens sit verum, in quantum est ens, nulla res dici potest falsa, nisi in quantum est non-ens; et ideo dum veritas competit rebus per se et intrinsece, falsitas eis attribuitur solum per accidens et extrinsece. Hoc magis elucebit ex triplici modo, quo falsitas de rebus dici solet. 1°. Falsum dicitur aliquid, quatenus aptum est nobis apparere id, quod non est; quo pacto aurichalcum dicitur falsum aurum. 2°. Falsum dicitur aliquid, quatenus est objectum falsi iudicii, ut quum Jupiter dicitur falsus deus, quia iudicium, Jupiter est Deus, est falsum. 3°. Falsum dicitur aliquid, quatenus deficit a regulis artis vel moralitatis, sicut falsa dicitur eloquentia, si discedit a rhetoricae praeceptis, et in ordine morali, falsus dicitur actus, qui deviat a regulis a Deo praescriptis. Hinc peccata falsitates et mendacium dicuntur in Scripturis secundum illud psalmi: Ut quid diligitis vanitatem et quaeritis mendacium? sicut per oppositum,

operatio virtuosa veritas vitae nominatur, in quantum subditur ordini divini intellectus; sicut dicitur: Qui facit veritatem venit ad lucem.

2. Duplex est immutatio: Una naturalis et alia spiritualis. Naturalis quidem, secundum quod forma immutantis recipitur in immutato secundum esse naturale, sicut calor in calefacto; spiritualis autem, secundum quod forma immutantis recipitur in immutato secundum esse spirituale, ut forma coloris in pupilla, quae non fit per hoc colorata. Ad operationem autem sensus requiritur immutatio spiritualis, per quam intentio formae sensibilis fiat in organo sensus, alioquin, si sola immutatio naturalis sufficeret ad sentiendum, omnia corpora naturalia sentirent, dum alterantur. Sed in quibusdam sensibus invenitur immutatio spiritualis tantum, sicut in visu; in quibusdam autem cum immutatione spirituali etiam naturalis, vel ex parte objecti tantum, vel etiam ex parte organi. Ex parte autem objecti invenitur transmutatio naturalis secundum locum quidem in sono, qui est objectum auditus; nam sonus ex percussione causatur, et aeris commotione: secundum alterationem vero in odore, qui est objectum olfactus; oportet enim per calidum alterari aliquo modo corpus, ad hoc quod spiret odorem. Ex parte autem organi est immutatio naturalis in tactu et gustu; nam et manus tangens calida calefit, et lingua humectatur per humiditatem saporum. Organum vero olfactus aut auditus nulla naturali immutatione immutatur in sentiendo, nisi per accidens. Visus autem, qui est absque immutatione naturali organi et objecti, est maxime spiritualis et perfectior inter omnes sensus et communior, et post hunc auditus, et deinde olfactus, qui habent immutationem naturalem ex parte objecti. Motus autem localis est perfectior et naturaliter prior quam motus alterationis. Tactus autem et gustus sunt maxime naturales, de quorum distinctione post dicetur. Et inde est quod alii tres sensus non fiunt per medium conjunctum, ne aliqua naturalis transmutatio pertingat ad organum, ut accidit in his duobus sensibus.

## LESSON XXI

### Vocabulary

**addere, -didi, -ditus, to add**

**adhibere (2), to apply, to employ, to use**

**adnexus (annexus), connected**

**augere (2), auxi, auctus, to increase**

**beneficium, n., benefice**

**canon, f., canon; ecclesiastical rule or edict**

**capax, capable**

**comedere, -edi, -esus, to eat**

**comestio, f., eating**

**condonare, to condone, to pardon**

**construere, -uxi, -uctus, to construct**

**consuetudo, f., custom**

**conventio, f., agreement**

**declarare, to make clear, to show, to demonstrate**

**dubius, doubtful**

**eleemosyna, f., alms**

**emere (3), emi, emptus, to buy**

**emptio, f., buying**

**etsi, although**

**ex. gr. (e.g.), abbr. for exempli gratia, for example**

**exponere, -posui, -positus, to expound, to set forth, to explain**

**ex parte, in part, from the viewpoint of**

**ex toto, wholly**

**fraus, f., fraud, deceit**

**fructus, m., fruit, profit, benefit**

**fundamentum, n., foundation**

**fuse, at length, in much detail**

- horologium, n., *clock*  
 imprimis, *first of all, chiefly*  
 indicare, *to indicate*  
 inscius, *not knowing, unaware . .*  
 inservire (4), -servivi, -servitus, *to serve*  
 iterare, *to repeat*  
 jus, n., *law, right*  
 lucrum, n., *profit, money*  
 ministrare, *to administer, to wait upon, to serve*  
 mixtus, *mixed*  
 nec . . . nec, *neither . . . nor*  
 niti (dep. 3), nisus (nixus), *to endeavor*  
 obstare, -stiti, -status, *to hinder, to prevent, to be in the way*  
 operans, m., *worker, agent*  
 opportune, *fittingly*  
 paucis, *in a few words*  
 periculum, n., *danger*  
 permutatio, f., *exchange*  
 praecipuus, *special, extraordinary*  
 pretium, n., *price*  
 prohibere (2), *to prohibit, to forbid*  
 provisus, m., *provision, precaution*  
 recognoscere, -cognovi, -cognitus, *to recognize*  
 recolere, -colui, -cultus, *to survey, to sum up*  
 rejicere, -jeci, -jectus, *to reject, to abandon*  
 satisfacere (io), -feci, -factus, *to satisfy*  
 simoniacus, *simoniacal*  
 statuere, statui, statutus, *to decide, to ordain, to appoint*  
 studiosus, *zealous, eager, assiduous*  
 sublevare, *to support, to assist*  
 tacitus, *tacit, assumed*  
 tendere, tetendi, tentus (tensus), *to tend, to strive, to bend one's course*  
 titulus, m., *title*  
 totidem, *just so many*



venditio, f., *selling*

vetare, vetui, vetitus, *to forbid*

victus, m., *a living, nourishment*

voluptas, f., *pleasure*

### WORD STUDY

1. **Causa motiva:** a cause which includes an incentive or an inducement to action; an efficient or moving cause; the actual effort involved in achieving an end.

2. **Principium:** beginning; hence the foundation of a thing; from this comes the idea of elements or basic principle.

3. **Rationalis:** having reason or understanding; of or pertaining to the reason or reasoning processes; based upon, derived from, concerned with, or characterized by reason, as rational insight, rational nature, rational faculty, rational conduct.

### GRAMMAR

#### Concessive clauses.

1. **Cum, although,** requires the subjunctive. **Cum propositionem iteraret, non audiebamus eam.** *Although he repeated the proposition, we did not hear it.*

2. **Quamvis, ut, although, even if,** take the subjunctive. **Quamvis horologium spectaret, horae non meminerat.** *Although he looked at the clock, he did not remember the time.*

**Ut neminem alium rogasset, non satisfacti fuissent.** *Even if he had besought no one else, they would not have been satisfied.*

3. **Licet, although,** takes the present or perfect subjunctive. **Licet conventio prudens sit, non nobis omnino satisfacit.** *Although the agreement is a wise one, it does not altogether satisfy us.*

4. **Etsi, etiam si, even if,** follow the general construction of **si** clauses. **Etsi pretium magnum est, non id vetabimus.** *Although the price is great, we shall not forbid it.*

**Etiam si eum sublevent, semetipsum salvare non niteretur.** *Even if they should aid him, he would make no effort to save himself.*

5. **Quamquam, although,** requires the indicative. **Quamquam periculum parziale tantum erat, statim judicem alium statuit.** *Though the danger was only partial, he immediately appointed another judge.*

6. **Tametsi, even if,** usually takes the indicative. **Tametsi obstant, scopos suos attingent.** *Even if many things stand in the way, they will achieve their aims.*

## EXERCISES

1. Cum pretia serrarum augeat, jus non prohibebit quin vendat eas. 2. Quamvis circumstantiae magis propitiabiles fuissent, pater meus lucrum non adhibuisset ad domum novam construendam. 3. Ut causas scire numquam possimus, quae miseriis pauperum subsint, spem perdere non debemus, sed sperare ut paucum, quod uni damus, in aliquo modo, multiplicetur ad plurium beneficium. 4. Licet comedamus ad vitae conservationem, Deus non nobis voluptatem in comestione vetat. 5. Etsi periculum praecipuum sit, non nitatur ut id evadat. 6. Etiam si princeps jus diligenter administraret, aliqui essent qui obstarent quin ageretur. 7. Quamquam nos operibus nostris non sublevavit tam studiose quam speraveramus, attamen omnes actus ejus subsequentes firmi ac propitiabiles fuerunt. 8. Cum et prudentiam et provisum in permutatione sua observavissent, fraus ex parte sociorum tandem declarabatur. 9. Quamvis provisiones emptionis atque venditionis fuse exposuerit, non dubium est quin multi non eum intellexerint. 10. Ut dominis suis restitutionem lucri facerent, opera alia poenitentiae ex eis requirebantur. 11. Licet prudentia et bonitas virtutes praeclarae virgini sint, ista debet etiam actibus positivis amoris caritatisque fungi. 12. Etsi error magnus ac haereticus erit, non rejicient eum. 13. Etiam si nec eleemosynas nec munera episcopo suo praestent, non deficientur in curis et poenis suis. 14. Quamquam omnia media rationalia recoiuit ut motivum lucri maximi ex toto deleret, a certis principiis fundamentalibus non deviaabit. 15. Cum Deo suo profunda

reverentia interna inserviat, mundus hujus devotionis forsitan inscius est. 16. Tametsi opus carpentarii non est ad horologia facienda, atqui saepe volui ut omnes viri docerentur ad res plures bene agendas. 17. Quamvis filii consuetudines patrum rejecissent, futuri erant creatores capaces legum novarum quae conditiones societatis meliores facerent, in qua vivebant. 18. Ut pro victu suo dependeat de illo contractu, fraudem adnexam ad eum administrandum non condonavit. 19. Cum nimis comedere poena propria sit, quanto magis comedimus, tanto major poena est nostra. 20. Etiam si lucra annua pauca sint, nobis domos construere velint.

## READING

1. Cum theologia moralis hominem doceat viam, qua ad finem suum pervenire possit, imprimis de fine hominis ultimo agit, tum ut cognoscat finem, in quem suis actibus tendere debet, tum ut fundamentum et supremum principium theologiae moralis pateat; a fine enim omnia dependent atque reguntur. Attamen de fine ultimo ita agendum est, ut ea quae in philosophia morali fuse exponuntur, hoc loco paucis recolantur, deinde addantur ea, quae theologiae morali propria sunt. Omne agens rationale propter finem agit. Finis est id, propter quod aliquid fit, seu est id, in quod aliquis tendit. Finis multipliciter distinguitur; sufficiat hic finem operis et finem operantis declarasse.

Finis operis est illud bonum, in quod res vel actio natura sua tendit: horologium ad indicandum tempus, eleemosyna ad sublevandum pauperem. Finis operantis est illud bonum, quod agens per actionem suam intendit seu obtinere nititur, eleemosyna ad satisfaciendum pro peccatis. Finis operantis est causa, quae operantem ad agendum movet. Finis operantis potest esse idem ac finis operis et potest a fine operis esse diversus. Si artifex domum construit, finis operis seu domus est, ut ad inhabitandum inserviat; finis operantis potest esse idem, ut habitacula construat, sed potest etiam esse alius: ut lucrum faciat, ut victum sibi comparet. Si haec ad Deum et res ab eo creatas referimus et de fine creatoris (operantis) nec non de fine creationis (operis)

quaerimus, patet imprimis sermonem esse non posse de causa motiva creationis, cum Deus nullo bono, nec externo nec interno, ad agendum moveri possit, sed solum de ratione, ob quam Deus voluerit, ut existant creaturae. Deinde certum est, etiam Deum ad extra agentem aliquod bonum intendere, quod per opera sua seu per creaturas obtinere nititur. Differunt invicem finis et motivum actionis. Motivum enim est illud bonum, quod agentem ad actionem movet; finis dicitur tum illud bonum, ad quod obtinendum actio natura sua ordinata est, tum illud bonum, quod agens sua actione obtinere intendit. Hoc bonum agentem ad actionem ponendam movet. Ideo solum finis hoc altero sensu est motivum actionis, non item finis priore sensu acceptus, nisi agens illo bono ad actionem ponendam moveatur. Sic finis (internus) comestionis est conservatio vitae. In eo, qui comedit propter voluptatem, voluptas est motivum comestionis; in eo, qui comedit ad vitam conservandam, finis simul est motivum comestionis.

2.

## Can. 726

Res de quibus in hoc libro agitur quaeque totidem media sunt ad Ecclesiae finem consequendum, aliae sunt spirituales, aliae temporales, aliae mixtae.

## Can. 727

Studiosa voluntas emendi vel vendendi pro pretio temporali rem intrinsece spiritualem, ex. gr., Sacramenta, ecclesiasticam iurisdictionem, consecrationem, indulgentias, etc., vel rem temporalem rei spirituali adnexam ita ut res temporalis sine spirituali nullo modo esse possit, ex. gr., beneficium ecclesiasticum, etc., aut res spiritualis sit obiectum, etsi parziale, contractus, ex. gr., consecratio in calicis consecrati venditione, est simonia iuris divini.

Dare vero res temporales spirituali adnexas pro temporalibus spirituali adnexis, vel res spirituales pro spiritualibus, vel etiam temporales pro temporalibus, si id ob periculum irreverentiae erga res spirituales ab Ecclesia prohibeatur, est simonia iuris ecclesiastici.

## Can. 728

Cum de simonia agitur, emptio-venditio, permutatio, etc., late accipiendae sunt pro qualibet conventionem, licet ad effectum non deducta, etiam tacita, in qua scilicet animus simoniacus expresse non manifestetur, sed ex circumstantiis colligatur.

## Can. 729

Firmis poenis in simoniacos iure statutis, contractus ipse simoniacus et, si simonia committatur circa beneficia, officia, dignitates, subsequens provisio omni vi caret, licet simonia a tertia persona commissa fuerit, etiam inscio proviso, dummodo hoc non fiat in fraudem eiusdem provisi aut eo contradicente. Quare:

1°. Ante quamlibet iudicis sententiam res simoniace data et accepta, si restitutionis sit capax nec obstat reverentia rei spirituali debita, restitui debet, et beneficium, officium, dignitas dimitti.

2°. Simoniace provisos non facit fructus suos; quod si eos bona fide perceperit, prudentiae iudicis vel Ordinarii permittitur fructus perceptos ex toto vel ex parte eidem condonare.

## Can. 730

Non habetur simonia, cum temporale datur non pro re spirituali, sed eius occasione ex iusto titulo a sacris canonibus vel a legitima consuetudine recognito; item cum datur res temporalis pro re temporalis, quae tanquam subiectum habeat adnexum aliquid spirituale, ex. gr., calix consecratus, dummodo pretium non augeatur propter adnexam rem spiritualem.

## Can. 731

Cum omnia Sacramenta Novae Legis, a Christo Domino Nostro instituta, sint praecipua sanctificationis et salutis media, summa in iis opportune riteque administrandis ac suscipiendis diligentia et reverentia adhibenda est.

Vetitum est Sacramenta Ecclesiae ministrare haereticis aut schis-

maticis, etiam bona fide errantibus eaque petentibus, nisi prius, erroribus reiectis, Ecclesiae reconciliati fuerint.

Can. 732

Sacramenta baptismi, confirmationis et ordinis, quae characterem imprimunt, iterari nequeunt.

Si vero prudens dubium existat num revera vel num valide collata fuerint, sub conditione iterum conferantur.

## LESSON XXII

### Vocabulary

**ablutio**, f., *ablution, washing*  
**accedere**, -cessi, -cessus, *to accede, to approve*  
**adjicere**, -jeci, -jectus, *to add*  
**appellare**, *to call*  
**assequi** (dep.), **assecutus**, *to obtain*  
**asservare**, *to preserve, to guard, to protect*  
**casus**, m., *case*  
**chirurgus**, m., *surgeon*  
**clavis**, f., *key*  
**clericus**, m., *cleric, clerk*  
**coena**, f., *supper*  
**collatio**, f., *conferring*  
**comitari** (dep.), *to attend, to accompany*  
**commode**, *conveniently*  
**complures**, *several*  
**concurrere**, -curri, -cursus, *to concur, to agree*  
**conficere**, -feci, -fectus, *to effect, to produce*  
**consentaneus**, *suited, proper*  
**continere** (2), -tinui, -tentus, *to contain*  
**copia**, f., *quantity, amount, supply*  
**cras**, *tomorrow*  
**debitus**, *due*  
**decens**, *suitable, proper*  
**deferre**, -tuli, -latus, *to submit, to bring, to bear*  
**destinare**, *to destine*  
**diaconus**, m., *deacon*  
**ediscere**, -didici, *to learn*

elicere, -licui, -licitus, *to elicit, to call forth*  
 et ejusmodi, *and the like*  
 exigere, -egi, -actus, *to demand, to require*  
 femina, f., *woman*  
 feria, f., *day of the week; — quinta (V), Thursday*  
 habitus, m., *habit*  
 incola, m. and f., *inhabitant, resident*  
 indigere (2), -igui, *to need*  
 inesse, -fui, *to be in or engaged in*  
 infusus, *instilled*  
 instruere, -struxi, -structus, *to instruct*  
 insuper, *besides, in addition*  
 isque, *and that, too; and that indeed*  
 janua, f., *entrance, door, gate*  
 laicus, m., *layman*  
 licentia, f., *permission*  
 medicus, m., *physician*  
 mora, f., *delay*  
 mox, *afterwards, at a later period*  
 nondum, *not yet*  
 noscere, novi, notus, *to know*  
 obstetrix, f., *midwife*  
 oleum, n., *oil*  
 oliva, f., *olive, olive tree*  
 ordinarius, m., *ordinary, bishop*  
 ornare, *to adorn*  
 parochus, m., *parish priest*  
 paroecia, f., *parish*  
 peculiaris, *special*  
 peregrinus, m., *stranger*  
 perficere, -feci, -fectus, *to perfect*  
 periculum, n., *danger*  
 potissimum, *chiefly, above all*  
 praeferre, -tuli, -latus, *to prefer*



praesertim, *particularly*  
 praesto, *present*  
 probe, *properly*  
 proles, f., *offspring, child*  
 proportionatus, *related*  
 pudor, m., *propriety, modesty*  
 quasi, *in a certain sense or degree, quasi*  
 retinere (2), -tinui, -tentus, *to keep*  
 ritus, m., *rite*  
 saltem, *at least*  
 secus, *otherwise*  
 servare, *to observe, to save*  
 statutum, n., *statute, law*  
 subdiaconus, m., *subdeacon*  
 suppeditare, *to furnish, to supply*  
 tutus, *safe*  
 urgere (2), ursi, *to impel, to be urgent*

### Idioms

1. ab hac parte, *on this side*
2. ad tempus, *at the time, on time*
3. ad hunc modum, *in this way*
4. quem ad modum, *how, as*
5. ad hoc, *besides, for this purpose*
6. ad diem, *on the day*
7. salvo praescripto, *except as directed*

### GRAMMAR

I. Days of the week. The days are designated as follows:

dominica, *Sunday*

feria secunda, *Monday*

feria tertia, *Tuesday*

feria quarta, *Wednesday*

feria quinta, *Thursday*

feria sexta, *Friday*

sabbatum, *Saturday*

## 2. Locative case.

a) This case was used to indicate the place where a thing was located, but has come to be replaced by the ablative, usually with **in**, except in the names of towns, small islands, and a few other words.

<b>Romae</b> , at Rome	<b>militiae</b> , in military service
<b>Philippis</b> , at Philippi	<b>humi</b> , on the ground
<b>Athenis</b> , at Athens	<b>domi</b> , at home
<b>Rhodi</b> , at Rhodes	<b>foris</b> , out of doors
<b>Cypri</b> , at Cyprus	<b>ruri</b> , in the country
<b>Capreis</b> , at Capri	<b>terra marique</b> , by land and sea
<b>belli</b> , at war	

A few adverbs of time are locative.

<b>heri</b> , yesterday	<b>vesperi</b> , in the evening
-------------------------	---------------------------------

b) In the singular of the first and second declensions the locative has the same form as the genitive. This includes **domi**, which has forms in both second and fourth declensions. In the plural and in the third declension the locative has the same form as the dative or ablative.

c) From the fifth declension have come a few adverbs and expressions of time ending in **e**.

<b>hodie</b> , today	<b>die quarto</b> , the fourth day
<b>perendie</b> , day after tomorrow	<b>pridie</b> , the day before
<b>mane</b> , in the morning	

3. Future perfect tense. This tense is much commoner in Latin than in English.

a) The future perfect denotes action as completed in the future. **Ut statuta servaveritis, ita pace fruemini.** *As you keep the laws, so will you enjoy peace.*

**Perendie noverit quid fecerint.** *By the day after tomorrow he will know what they have done.*

b) The future perfect is represented in the subjunctive by the perfect or pluperfect.

**Probat si media consentanea adhibita sint, eos jura sua civilia saltem retenturos.** *He proves that if proper means are employed, they will at least keep their civil rights.*

#### EXERCISES

1. Dominica proxima Romae duodecim dies commorati erimus. 2. Ad hunc modum Lucia viderit Athenis omnia templa vetera praeclaraque. 3. Constat, si necessitas urserit, ut tum medicus tum chirurgus ritos aptos ediscant. 4. Mox praetulerint prolem ad parochum paroeciae propriae adducere. Nondum noverit januas vesperi non apertas esse. 6. Dico, si multi peregrini terra marique venerint, ipsi humi dormire necesse futurum. 7. Velimus ruri habitare, si domum Capreis habeamus. 8. Probabant, si gentes dolosi non fuissent, non bella futura. 9. Heri feria quinta fuit, hodie feria sexta est, cras erit sabbatum. 10. Venimus ad tempus ut videremus quem ad modum subdiaconus baptismum administraret. 11. Complures ex clericis militiae Philippis fuerant. 12. Diaconus oleum in ecclesia retinuerit pro usu posteriore. 13. Sciunt, si copiam debitam assecutus sis, non te totam tibimetipsi reservaturum esse. 14. Pudor meritorius potissimum eas tutas servaverit de periculis territorii illius. 15. Viri et feminae operam dederint ad oleum ex olivis exprimendum. 16. Ab hac parte medici negaverint ut bellum mala indolis novae adduxerit. 17. Mane foris clavem quaeram, quoniam januam non aperire possum sine ea. 18. Etiam si feria secunda nobis suppeditaverit omnia quibus indigeamus, non omnino tuti erimus. 19. Non secus casum Ordinario ad diem praescriptum detulerit. 20. Si nulli adulti praesto erunt, labor noster ministrum appellando vero cassus fuerit.

#### READING

1. Ut homo finem, ad quem destinatus est, assequi possit, Deus illum aptis mediis atque potentiis instructum voluit, quae quidem duplicis generis sunt, media naturalia et supernaturalia, et tum natu-

ralia tum supernaturalia sunt alia externa, alia interna. Media naturalia externa sunt: a) res creatae praeter hominem existentes, quae ei vitae necessaria suppeditant; b) diversae societatum formae, familia et societas civilis. Media naturalia interna, quibus anima instruitur, sunt potissimum intellectus et voluntas, quibus summum bonum suum cognoscere et amare potest. Media supernaturalia externa, quae Christus Dominus in hunc finem instituit, sunt ecclesia, sacrificium, sacramenta et ejusmodi. Media supernaturalia interna, quibus anima instruitur, ut ad finem supernaturalem tendere possit, sunt: a) gratia sanctificans, quae animae substantiae inhaeret hominemque elevat ad naturam et vitam supernaturalem fini supernaturali, ad quem destinatus est, proportionatam; b) habitus infusi, qui animae potentiis, intellectui scilicet et appetitui, inhaerent hominemque instruunt viribus et potentiis, quibus opera fini supernaturali proportionata exercere possit; c) gratiae actuales, quibus Deus ad singulas hominis actiones supernaturales concurrat, eo quod eas auxilio suo praevenit, comitatur et perficit.

Ut homo actibus suis moralibus in finem ultimum tendere possit, potentiae, quibus actus morales eliciuntur, instructae esse debent dispositionibus et qualitatibus ex se stabilibus, quibus aptae reddantur ad actus fini consentaneos eliciendos; ideo Deus potentiis indidit habitus eosque supernaturales. Porro ut potentiae habitibus instructae supernaturaliter agere possint, insuper indigent gratia actuali, qua ad actus excitentur. Tandem ut earum actus meritorii sint vitae aeternae, anima ornata esse debet gratia sanctificante. His continentur omnia media interna, quae homini necessaria sunt, ut vitam moralem fini ultimo consentaneam agere possit.

2.

Can. 733

In Sacramentis conficiendis, administrandis ac suscipiendis accurate servantur ritus et caeremoniae quae in libris ritualibus ab Ecclesia probatis praecipuntur.

Unusquisque autem ritum suum sequatur, salvo praescripto can. 851, § 2, 866.

## Can. 734

Sacra olea quae quibusdam Sacramentis administrandis inserviunt, debent esse ab Episcopo benedicta feria V in Coena Domini proxime superiore; neque adhibeantur vetera, nisi necessitas urgeat.

Mox deficienti oleo benedicto aliud oleum de olivis non benedictum adjiciatur, etiam iterato, minore tamen copia.

## Can. 735

Parochus olea sacra a suo Ordinario petere debet et in ecclesia in tuta ac decenti custodia sub clavi diligentur asservare; nec ea domi retineat, nisi propter necessitatem aliamve rationabilem causam, accedente Ordinarii licentia.

## Can. 736

Pro administratione Sacramentorum minister nihil quavis de causa vel occasione sive directe sive indirecte exigat aut petat, praeter oblationes de quibus in can. 1507, § 1.

## Can. 737

Baptismus, Sacramentorum janua ac fundamentum, omnibus in re vel saltem in voto necessarius ad salutem, valide non confertur, nisi per ablutionem aquae verae et naturalis cum praescripta verborum forma.

Cum ministratur servatis omnibus ritibus et caeremoniis quae in ritualibus libris praecipuntur, appellatur sollemnis; secus, non sollemnis seu privatus.

## Can. 738

Minister ordinarius baptismi sollemnis est sacerdos; sed ejus collatio reservatur parochi vel alii sacerdoti de ejusdem parochi vel Ordinarii loci licentia, quae in casu necessitatis legitime praesumitur.

Etiam peregrinus a parochi proprio in sua parocia sollemniter

baptizetur, si id facile et sine mora fieri potest; secus peregrinum quilibet parochus in suo territorio potest solemniter baptizare.

Can. 739

In alieno territorio nemini licet, sine debita licentia, baptismum sollemnem conferre ne sui quidem loci incolis.

Can. 740

Ubi paroeciae aut quasi-paroeciae nondum sunt constitutae, statutorum peculiarium et receptarum consuetudinum ratio habenda est, ut constet cuinam sacerdoti praeter Ordinarium, in universo territorio vel in ejus parte jus insit baptizandi.

Can. 741

Extraordinarius baptismi sollemnis minister est diaconus; qui tamen sua potestate ne utatur sine loci Ordinarii vel parochi licentia, justa de causa concedenda, quae, ubi necessitas urgeat, legitime praesumitur.

Can. 742

Baptismus non sollemnis, de quo in can. 759, § 1, potest a quovis ministrari, servata debita materia, forma et intentione; quatenus vero fieri potest, adhibeantur duo testes vel saltem unus, quibus baptismi collatio probari possit.

Si tamen adsit sacerdos, diacono praeferatur, diaconus subdiacono, clericus laico et vir feminae, nisi pudoris gratia deceat feminam potius quam virum baptizare, vel nisi femina noverit melius formam et modum baptizandi.

Patri aut matri suam prolem baptizare non licet, praeterquam in mortis periculo, quando alius praesto non est, qui baptizet.

Can. 743

Curet parochus ut fideles, praesertim obstetrices, medici et chirurgi, rectum baptizandi modum pro casu necessitatis probe ediscant.

## Can. 744

Adulterum baptismus, ubi commode fieri possit, ad loci Ordinarium deferatur, ut, si voluerit, ab eo vel ab ejus delegato sollemnius conferatur.

## LESSON XXIII

### Vocabulary

**abortivus**, *abortive, prematurely born*  
**accensere** (2), **censui**, **-censitus**, *to reckon, to number*  
**adeo**, *even*  
**adipisci** (dep. 3), **adeptus**, *to reach, to obtain, to achieve*  
**admonere** (2), **-monui**, **-monitus**, *to warn, to admonish*  
**aetas**, f., *age*  
**amens**, *insane, idiot*  
**amittere**, **-misi**, **-missus**, *to lose*  
**antea**, *before*  
**antequam**, *before*  
**assentire**, *to assent*  
**augere** (2), **auxi**, **auctus**, *to increase, to augment*  
**avia**, f., *grandmother*  
**avus**, m., *grandfather*  
**carcer**, m., *jail*  
**cautum**, n., *concern*  
**cedere**, **cessi**, **cessus**, *to yield*  
**censere** (2), **censui**, **census**, *to reckon, to count, to judge*  
**certo**, *certainly*  
**claudere**, **clausi**, **clausus**, *to close*  
**coactio**, f., *compulsion*  
**consentire**, *to consent, to be in agreement*  
**constringere**, **-strinxi**, **-strictus**, *to constrain*  
**convalescere**, **-valui**, *to regain health or strength*  
**desse**, **-fui**, *to be lacking*  
**delinquere**, **-liqui**, **-lictus**, *to transgress*



- denuo, *once more, again*  
 discrimen, n., *hazard, risk*  
 dolere (2), dolui, dolitus, *to suffer*  
 dubie, *doubtfully*  
 dummodo, *as long as, provided that*  
 edere, -didi, -ditus, *to bring forth, to deliver*  
 educatio, f., *training*  
 egressus, m., *departure*  
 electio, f., *election, choice*  
 evolvere, -volvi, -volutus, *to develop*  
 extrahere, -traxi, -tractus, *to release, to extract*  
 fetus, m., *fetus*  
 firmare, *to strengthen*  
 generatim, *generally, in general*  
 gradatim, *gradually*  
 illecebra, f., *allurement*  
 imminere (2), *to be imminent, to threaten*  
 impugnare, *to assail, to attack*  
 impugnatio, f., *attack*  
 imputare, *to impute*  
 includere, -clusi, -clusus, *to confine, to imprison*  
 infantes expositi et inventi, *foundlings*  
 infelix, *unhappy*  
 inferre, -tuli, illatus, *to infer, to bring, to carry, to wage*  
 infidelis, *faithless, infidel*  
 influxus, m., *stream, rush*  
 ingenitus, *inborn, innate*  
 invitus, *unwilling*  
 jugiter, *always*  
 membrum, n., *member, limb*  
 monstrum, n., *monstrosity*  
 negotium, n., *trouble, difficulty, business*  
 nempe, *namely, certainly, to be sure*  
 nequaquam, *by no means*

**norma**, f., *rule, precept*

**ostentum**, n., *prodigy*

**parvulus**, m., *child*

**peragere**, -egi, -actus, *to accomplish*

**permanere** (2), -mansi, -mansus, *to remain, to stand*

**postulare**, *to demand, to require*

**praeditus**, *possessed of, provided with*

**praevidere** (2), -vidi, -visus, *to foresee*

**prolabi** (dep. 3) -lapsus, *to lapse, to fall away*

**quamvis**, *although*

**quire (eo)**, *to be able*

**rursus**, *again*

**status**, m., *state*

**trahere, traxi, tractus**, *to drag, to draw, to bring*

**tutor**, m., *guardian*

**usurpare**, *to use*

**viator**, m., *wayfarer*

### Idioms

1. **in dies**, *daily*
2. **qua tale**, *of any sort*
3. **in genere**, *in general, generally speaking*
4. **sub conditione**, *conditionally*
5. **contra haec**, *in answer to this*
6. **haec contra**, *this in reply*
7. **contra autem**, *but on the other hand*
8. **nullo pacto**, *in no way*

### GRAMMAR

#### I. **Antequam, priusquam**, *before*.

a) These conjunctions are followed by the perfect indicative to state a fact in past time.

**Priusquam epistolam tuam legit, de tua salute quaesivit.** *Before he read your letter, he inquired about your health.*

b) When the action denoted did not actually take place, the imperfect subjunctive is used.

**Antequam in carcere clauderetur, libertatem consequabatur.** *Before he could be confined in jail, he achieved his freedom.*

c) When referring to the future, the present or future perfect indicative is generally used, although the present subjunctive may be used, particularly if the statement is to be taken in a general sense.

**Priusquam admonuerimus eos, prolabantur.** *Before we warn them, they will fall away.*

**Baptismus generatim administratur antequam infans usum rationis attingat.** *Baptism is usually administered before the child reaches the age of reason.*

2. In a contrary to fact condition in past time, the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

**Si adulti parvulis cautum demonstravissent, isti non amissi essent.** *If the adults had shown concern for the children, the latter would not have been lost.*

#### EXERCISES

1. Si avus non amens fuisset, non in apostasiam tam horrendam prolapsus esset. 2. Priusquam philosophiae comprehensionem auferent, logicae elementa ediscere debebant. 3. Dicit nihil se postulare sibimetipsi, antequam alii suscipiant quae eis desint. 4. Antequam tutor ad carcerem rursus tractus erit, feminae filii intercedent pro eo. 5. Serio et prudenter scopos suos peregerunt, priusquam statum verum tutamentorum civitatis revelaverunt. 6. Si iudices antea de valore legum inquisivissent, gentes in genere non qua tale fraudes postmodum commisissent. 7. Priusquam avia januam claudit, parvuli omnes ex domo egredientur. 8. Dixit, quamvis mater convaluisset satis ut infantes in dies curaret, eam nequaquam paratam esse ad negotia difficiliora suscipienda, antequam medicus licentiam daret.

9. Si libertate physica praeditus fuisset, non tam infelix sensisset. 10. Parochus infantes expositos baptizaverat, priusquam normas in libris ritualibus inveniremus. 11. Si obligationem illam jugiter habuisses, non negavisses eam. 12. Antequam quidam praevidere possit, quae vel quoties sint necessaria, occasio amissa erit. 13. Si tam fideles quam infideles rebus caeli fuissent, nunc sancti saltem essent. 14. Contra haec respondebo, priusquam adversarii mei occasionem ceperint impugnandi motiva mea. 15. Si pauperibus pretium non auxisset, tantum lucrum non adeptus esset. 16. Priusquam nobis adeo aetatem suam diceret, in militiam accensus erat. 17. Antequam ulla coactio usurpari posset, reus evasit. 18. Avia sciet id quod parvulis optimum sit, priusquam eis emerit omnia quae ipsi velint. 19. Modis multis infideles fuerunt, contra autem antequam mortui sunt, omnia luca dederunt infantibus inventis. 20. Quod contra, consideremus quod dixit heri episcopus in epistola sua.

## READING

1. Cum in dies augeatur numerus eorum, qui libertatem voluntatis non solum theoretice impugnent, sed ex ejus negatione etiam practicas consequentias inferant atque contendant delicta commissa delinquentibus imputari non posse eosque propterea poena nequaquam dignos esse, necessitas postulat, ut existentia libertatis demonstraretur atque ab adversariorum impugnationibus vindicaretur.

Libertas in genere significat immunitatem a vinculo, et cum varia sint vincula, quae nos constringere possunt, vario etiam sensu terminus libertatis usurpatur. a) Libertas a peccato, quae in hac vita est immunitas a peccato, qua possumus non peccare et vocatur libertas gratiae; in altera vita est immunitas a peccato, qua non possumus peccare et vocatur libertas gloriae. In hac vita possibilitas et per gratiam facilitas peragendi bonum morale nobis praesto est, quamvis obstant diversae difficultates; in altera vita cessant difficultates et impedimenta, quae hic electionem boni moralis etiam iis, qui in statu gratiae sunt, quandoque difficilem reddunt. Haec libertas (gratiae), quae quandoque moralis vocatur, jugiter evolvi ac perfici potest et debet, adeo ut

homo jam in hac vita gradatim ad libertatem filiorum Dei perveniat, nec a difficultatibus in eligendo bono amplius impediatur. Quandoque enim jam hic in terris fit, ut voluntas per gratiam Dei firmata nullis tentationibus cedat, sed rejectis illecebris sensuum nullo negotio bonum virtutis eligat, in quod verba Domini promittunt: *veritas liberabit vos*, ab influxu nempe determinante passionum. b) Libertas ab obligatione (a lege), quae etiam libertas moralis vocatur, est immunitas ab obligatione (morali) faciendi id, quod a superiore potestate praecipitur. Patet hominem hac libertate praeditum non esse: physicam libertatem agendi contra legem habet, moralem non habet. Libertas moralis vocatur etiam libertas eligendi inter bonum et malum. c) Libertas a coactione seu a necessitate externa est immunitas a vi extrinseca illata contra inclinationem voluntatis. Patet coactionem inferri posse tum agere nolenti, ut cum quis ad carcerem invitus trahitur, tum agere volenti, ut cum in carcere incluso egressus prohibetur; libertatem a coactione potius esse libertatem agendi quam libertatem volendi; voluntatem a coactione immunem esse, cum actus voluntatis coactus impossibilis sit. d) Libertas a necessitate interna est immunitas a vi interna, quae voluntatem determinet ad agendum vel sic agendum. Haec libertas humanae voluntati propria est. Necessitas interna esset ergo determinatio ipsi voluntati ingenita ad volendum vel sic volendum. Ejusmodi determinatio inest voluntati humanae relate ad bonum in genere, quod velle debet, ita ut malum qua tale velle non possit, et relate ad felicitatem, quam unusquisque necessario vult, ita ut non possit velle infelicem esse.

## 2.

## Can. 745

Subjectum capax baptismi est omnis et solus homo viator, nondum baptizatus.

Cum agitur de baptismo:

Parvulorum seu infantium nomine veniunt, ad normam can. 88, § 3, qui nondum rationis usum adepti sunt, eisdemque accensentur amentes ad infantia, in quavis aetate constituti.

Adulti autem censentur, qui rationis usu fruuntur; idque satis est ut suo quisque animi motu baptismum petat et ad illum admittatur.

## Can. 746

Nemo in utero matris clausus baptizetur, donec probabilis spes sit ut rite editus baptizari possit.

Si infans caput emiserit et periculum mortis immineat, baptizetur in capite; nec postea, si vivus evaserit, est iterum sub conditione baptizandus.

Si aliud membrum emiserit, in illo, si periculum immineat, baptizetur sub conditione; at tunc, si natus vixerit, est rursus sub conditione baptizandus.

Si mater praegnans mortua fuerit, fetus ab iis ad quos spectat extractus, si certo vivat, baptizetur absolute; si dubie, sub conditione.

Fetus, in utero baptizatus, post ortum denuo sub conditione baptizari debet.

## Can. 747

Curandum ut omnes fetus abortivi, quovis tempore editi, si certo vivant, baptizentur absolute; si dubie, sub conditione.

## Can. 748

Monstra et ostenta semper baptizentur saltem sub conditione; in dubio autem unusne an plures sint homines, unus absolute baptizetur, ceteri sub conditione.

## Can. 749

Infantes expositi et inventi nisi, re diligenter investigata, de eorum baptismo constet, sub conditione baptizentur.

## Can. 750

Infans infidelium, etiam invitis parentibus, licite baptizatur, cum

in eo versatur vitae discrimine, ut prudenter praevideatur moriturus, antequam usum rationis attingat.

Extra mortis periculum, dummodo catholicae ejus educationi cautum sit, licite baptizatur:

1°. Si parentes vel tutores, aut saltem unus eorum, consentiant.

2°. Si parentes, idest pater, mater, avus, avia, vel tutores desint, aut jus in eum amiserint, vel illud exercere nullo pacto queant.

#### Can. 751

Circa baptismum infantium duorum haereticorum aut schismaticorum, aut duorum catholicorum qui in apostasiam vel haeresim vel schisma prolapsi sint, generatim servantur normae in superiore canone constitutae.

#### Can. 752

Adultus, nisi sciens et volens probeque instructus, ne baptizetur; insuper admonendus ut de peccatis suis doleat.

In mortis autem periculo, si nequeat in praecipuis fidei mysteriis diligentius instrui, satis est, ad baptismum conferendum, ut aliquo modo ostendat se eisdem assentire serioque promittat se christianae religionis mandata servaturum.

Quod si baptismum ne petere quidem queat, sed vel antea vel in praesenti statu manifestaverit aliquo probabili modo intentionem illum suscipiendi, baptizandus est sub conditione; si deinde convalescit et dubium de valore baptismi collati permaneat, sub conditione baptismus rursus conferatur.

## LESSON XXIV

### Vocabulary

**adjunctum**, n., *condition, limitation*  
**admiscere** (2), -miscui, -mixtus, *to mix*  
**affectus**, m., *affection*  
**aspersio**, f., *sprinkling*  
**assistere**, -stiti, *to attend*  
**assuetudo**, f., *custom, habit*  
**compos mentis** (or **compos animi**) *sane, sound*  
**debilitare**, *to weaken*  
**deficere**, -feci, -fectus, *to be wanting, to be lacking*  
**demeritum**, n., *defect, demerit*  
**desiderium**, n., *desire*  
**dilucidus**, *lucid, sane*  
**diu**, *long, for a long time*  
**efficere**, -feci, -fectus, *to make, to bring about*  
**effluere**, -fluxi, *to flow out*  
**exercitium**, n., *exercise*  
**expedite**, *readily, promptly*  
**expendere**, -pendi, -pensus, *to weigh, to ponder*  
**furiosus**, m., *mad man*  
**hinc**, *hence*  
**imminuere**, -minui, -minutus, *to lessen, to diminish*  
**impendere** (2), *to threaten, to impend*  
**imputabilitas**, f., *responsibility*  
**incommodum**, n., *inconvenience, discomfort*  
**inculpabilis**, *innocent, guiltless*  
**inde**, *thence*  
**influxus**, m., *influence*



infusio, f., *pouring*

insanire, *to be insane*

invalescere, -valui, *to become strong*

jejunus, *fasting*

languere (2), langui, *to faint, to be feeble*

lethargus, m., *lethargy, coma*

liber, *free*

mancus, *defective, imperfect, infirm, maimed*

minuere, minui, minutus, *to lessen, to diminish*

momentum, n., *element, essential point, motion*

nitidus, *clean*

nutrimentum, n., *food*

obnubilare, *to becloud, to dim*

perscribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, *to write down*

phrensis, f., *delirium*

plene, *fully*

praeter, *beyond, besides*

praetermittere, -misi, -missus, *to neglect, to omit*

progenies, f., *lineage, family*

proponere, -posui, -positus, *to propose, to expose, to display*

quamprimum, *as soon as possible*

quivis, *any whatever*

quominus (introduces clauses after verbs of hindering), *so as not, from*

repetere, -petivi, -petitus, *to repeat*

reprimere, -pressi, -pressus, *to check, to repress*

respuere, *to reject*

sanus, *in good health*

semita, f., *path*

sin, *but if, if however*

statim, *immediately*

subito, *suddenly*

sufficere, -feci, -fectus, *to suffice*

supplere (2), -plevi, -pletus, *to supply*

temperies, f., *temperature, climate*

tenuis, *slight*

transigere, -egi, -actus, *to pass, to spend*

uterque, *either one, either of two, both*

vehemens, *strong, violent*

vicissim, *on the contrary, on the other hand, in turn*

vigilare, *to watch*

vitiosus, *vicious*

### Idioms

1. plus minusve, *more or less*
2. eo . . . quo, *the . . . the*
3. tam . . . quam, *both . . . and; as well as*
4. alter . . . alter, *one . . . the other*
5. multis de causis, *for many reasons*
6. qua de causa, *therefore*
7. de industria, *on purpose, by labor*

### GRAMMAR

#### 1. Alius and alter.

a) Alius means *other* or *another* of an indefinite number, whereas alter means *the other of two*.

Dixerunt se aliam rationem nullam habere. *They said they had no other reason.*

Ex his libris duobus retinebo unum; tibi dabo alterum. *Of these two books I shall keep one; I shall give the other to you.*

b) Alter . . . alter and alius . . . alius may be used in pairs to denote either division of a group or reciprocal action.

Alterae semitam quaerunt, alterae ingemiscentes juxta viam sedent. *One group seeks the path, the others sit moaning by the roadside.*

Alii activitatem diligunt, alii apparent energia carere. *Some love activity, others seem to lack energy.*

Pater alterum puerum alteri auxilio esse admonuerat. *The father had admonished the boys to help each other.*

Alius alium spectamus. *We look at each other.*

c) **Alius** and **alter** are often used to express one as well as another of the objects referred to.

**Alter consulum mortuus est, alter adhuc Londinium habitat.** *One of the consuls has died, the other still lives in London.*

**Aliud est sententias exprimere, aliud probare eas.** *It is one thing to express opinions, another to prove them.*

d) **Alius** repeated in a different case may express a double statement in a brief form.

**Alius aliud respuit.** *One man rejects one thing, another another.*

**Alii in alia parte dies transigunt.** *Some spend the days in one part, others in another.*

## 2. Conjunctions governing the indicative.

a) Such are:

**quamquam**, *although*

**ut**, *as, when*

**quod**, *because*

**quia**, *because*

**quoniam**, *because*

**postquam**, *after*

**posteaquam**, *after*

**ut semel**, *as soon as*

**ut primum**, *as soon as*

**simul**, *as soon as*

**simul atque**, *as soon as*

**simul ac**, *as soon as*

**ubi**, *when, where*

**quando**, *when*

b) It must be remembered, however, that all subordinate clauses in indirect discourse require the subjunctive.

## EXERCISES

1. **Quamquam alii semper insaniunt, alii plus minusve dilucidi sunt.** 2. **Postquam impedimentum inventum et curatum erat, avi activitas magnopere augebat.** 3. **Ubi vidit quod energiae eorum debilitarentur, statuit ut multo plus exercitii eis imponeretur.** 4. **Ut semel alter fratrum desiderium exprimebat, alter casum expendebat quomodo illi serviret.** 5. **Ut sacerdos aquam et vinum admiscuit, id suscipit.** 6. **Alteri in baptisterium introierunt qui infantis baptismi testes essent, alteri prope januam stabant munera in manibus trahentes.** 7. **Quia**

affectus ejus pro illecebris hujus mundi tam vehementes erant, multis de causis dubium erat an semitam virtutis diu quaereret. 8. Medicus plene convaluit a phrenesi qua laborabat, quia amicus fidelis multos dies transigebat seipsum tradendo ad ejus curam. 9. Alii aliis resistunt. 10. Posteaquam illi nationi suppleveramus omnia quae proposuerat, vidimus nos res nostras tum sociales tum politicas praetermisisse. 11. Urget ut alter alterum constringat. 12. Quando cognovit periculum mortis impendere, virum statim baptizavit. 13. Quoniam avus diu jejunos fuit, nunc in statu lethargi est. 14. Ubi malae assuetudines inveteratae fiunt, voluntas languet. 15. Simul atque avia manca facta erat, domi permanebat libros liturgicos legens. 16. Alius aliud elegit. 17. De peccatis nosmetipsos retinemus, quod noscimus ea sensum moralem obnubilare. 18. Ut primum habitus imprudentes et irracionales rejiciunt, vita moralis invalescit, qua de causa e multis incommodis, difficultatibus, impedimentis erroribusque prioribus vindicantur. 19. Scio alios aliis nutrimentum supplevisse ubi deficeret. 20. Nobis dixerunt, simul multam aquam veram et naturalem biberent, intervalla poenae nimis minuere.

## READING

1. Liberam activitatem moralem hic consideramus, qua voluntas eligit inter bonum et malum. Exercitium libertatis perfectum est, si voluntas plene ex se sine alio influxu praeter eum, quem natura voluntatis exigit, ad actum se determinat; quod tum accidit, cum intellectus objectum adaequate cognoscit, et voluntas secundum normam rationis expedite ad illud volendum vel respuendum se movet. Iam vero multa sunt sive in ipso homine sive extra hominem, quae in ejus liberam activitatem seu in ejus electionem influxum exercent eamque plus minusve determinant. Et haec quidem voluntatis libertatem actionisque imputabilitatem minuunt, eam tamen non auferunt.

Intellectus rem appetendam ita exhibere debet, ut tum ejus merita (perfectionem, bonitatem, utilitatem) tum ejus demerita, (imperfectiorem, detrimentum, incommodum), quae pro nobis habet, cognoscamus. Haec cognitio eo perfectior est, quo accuratius utriusque

partis momenta apprehenduntur. His suppeditantur rationes et motiva, quae in electione facienda nos dirigant. Hinc quo magis adaequate rei merita atque demerita exhibentur, eo facilius electio institui potest, quae sit secundum rationem. Quodsi rei propositae magis merita quam demerita aut vicissim magis demerita quam merita cognoscuntur, electio quidem libera erit, at minus secundum rationem. Impossibilis fit electio, si unum tantum motivum cognoscitur. Ex his intelligitur in liberas hominis electiones omnia ea determinantem influxum exercere, quae impediunt, quominus rerum appetendarum, praesertim moralium, merita atque demerita adaequate cognoscantur. Quamvis libertatem (physicam) electionis ipsa non auferant, attamen efficiunt, ut electiones imprudentes, irrationales, moraliter malae sint. Ejusmodi momenta sunt praesertim educatio et adjuncta socialia et politica temporum, quae vivimus. Cum in multis hominibus manca atque inadaequata cognitio rerum et actionum propter haec adjuncta plus minusve sit involuntaria et inculpabilis, etiam actiones moraliter malae, quae ex ea procedunt, non poterunt eis secundum totam earum malitiam imputari.

Objecto sufficienter proposito in voluntate necessario oritur propensio (aversio), quae quandoque tenuis, quandoque autem vehementior est. Propensiones istae, quamvis inveteratae et vehementes necessitatem non inducunt, sed voluntas potestatem retinet eis resistendi; id quod experientia omnium illorum docet, qui post vitam diu in peccatis transactam ad semitam virtutis redierunt. Attamen voluntatem trahunt, ut libera determinatione velit id, ad quod vehementer jam inclinatur, ideoque electionem moraliter bonam difficilem reddunt, eoque difficiliorem, quo intensior est propensio opposita. Affectus vitiosi liberam electionem tum solum impossibilem reddunt, si in casu particulari subito orti mentem adeo obnubilant vel impediunt, ut contraria motiva expendere amplius non possit. Ex his intelligitur in electiones morales omne id influxum exercere, quod efficit, ut hinc quidem propensiones malae et vitia in appetitu oriantur atque invalescant, inde vero energia voluntatis in reprimendis malis propensionibus languat et debilitetur.

2.

## Can. 753

Tam sacerdotem qui adultos baptizaturus est, quam ipsos adultos qui sani sint, decet esse jejunos.

Nisi graves urgentesque causae obsint, adultus baptizatus statim Missae sacrificio assistat et sacram communionem percipiat.

## Can. 754

Amentes et furiosi ne baptizentur, nisi tales a nativitate vel ante adeptum rationis usum fuerint; et tunc baptizandi sunt ut infantes.

Si autem dilucida habeant intervalla, dum mentis compotes sunt, baptizentur, si velint.

Baptizentur quoque, imminente periculo mortis, si, antequam insanirent, suscipiendi baptismi desiderium ostenderint.

Qui lethargo aut phrenesi laborat, vigilans tantum et volens baptizetur; at si periculum mortis impendeat, servetur praescriptum § 3.

## Can. 755

Baptismus sollemniter conferatur, salvo praescripto can. 759.

Loci Ordinarius potest gravi et rationabili de causa indulgere ut caeremoniae praescriptae pro baptismo infantium adhibeantur in baptismo adutorum.

## Can. 756

Proles ritu parentum baptizari debet.

Si alter parentum pertineat ad ritum latinum, alter ad orientalem, proles ritu patris baptizetur, nisi aliud jure speciali cautum sit.

Si unus tantum sit catholicus, proles hujus ritu baptizanda est.

## Can. 757

In baptismo sollemni adhibenda est aqua ad hoc benedicta.

Si aqua benedicta in baptisterio adeo sit imminuta, ut minus videatur sufficere, alia non benedicta admisceatur, etiam iterato, minore tamen copia.

Si vero corrupta fuerit, aut effluxerit, aut quovis modo defecerit, parochus in fontem, bene mundatum ac nitidum, recentem aquam infundat ac proprio ritu in suis liturgicis libris praescripto benedicat.

Can. 758

Licet baptismus conferri valide possit aut per infusionem, aut per immersionem, aut per aspersionem, primus tamen vel secundus modus, aut mixtus ex utroque, qui magis sit in usu, retineatur, secundum probatos diversarum Ecclesiarum rituales libros.

Can. 759

In mortis periculo baptismum privatim conferre licet; et, si conferatur a ministro qui nec sacerdos sit nec diaconus, ea tantum ponantur, quae sunt ad baptismi validitatem necessaria; si a sacerdote vel diacono, servantur quoque, si tempus adsit, caeremoniae quae baptismum sequuntur.

Extra mortis periculum baptismum privatum loci Ordinarius permittere nequit, nisi agatur de haereticis qui in adulta aetate sub conditione baptizentur.

Caeremoniae autem quae in baptismi collatione praetermissae quavis ratione fuerint, quamprimum in ecclesia suppleantur, nisi in casu de quo in § 2.

Can. 760

Cum baptismus sub conditione iteratur, caeremoniae, si quidem in priore baptismo omissae fuerunt, suppleantur, salvo praescripto can. 759, § 3; sin autem in priore baptismo adhibitae sunt, repeti in altero aut omitti possunt.

Can. 761

Curent parochi ut ei qui baptizatur, christianum imponatur nomen; quod si id consequi non poterunt, nomini a parentibus imposito addant nomen alicujus Sancti et in libro baptizatorum utrumque nomen perscribant.

## LESSON XXV

### Vocabulary

**alias**, *otherwise*

**citare**, *to quote, to cite*

**clericus**, m., *cleric, clergyman*

**cognatio**, f., *relationship*

**conditionatus**, *conditional*

**conducere**, -duxi, -ductus, *to lead*

**conjux**, m. and f., *husband, wife, spouse*

**connaturaliter**, *in a natural way*

**consulere**, -ui, -tus, *to consult*

**contrahere**, -traxi, -tractus, *to contract*

**criminosus**, *criminal*

**degradatus**, *deprived of office or dignity*

**depositus**, *divested*

**dimanare**, *to emanate, to flow from*

**factum**, n., *deed, fact*

**forte**, *perchance*

**infamis**, *infamous, disreputable*

**inserere**, -serui, -sertus, *to implant, to embody, to insert*

**interdictus**, *interdicted*

**interesse**, -fui, *to take part in, to be present*

**juvare**, *to aid*

**levare**, *to lift*

**mos**, m. *custom*

**novitius**, m. *novice*

**patrinus**, m., *sponsor*

**perire** (eo), -ii or -ivi, -itus, *to perish*

**praebere** (2), -bui, -bitus, *to show, to exhibit*



*praeuius, previous*

*procurator, m., proxy*

*promanare, to emanate, to derive from*

*quapropter, wherefore, on which account*

*recuperare, to recover*

*spondere (2), sponpondi, sponsus, to pledge, to sponsor*

*suppetere, -petivi, -petitus, to be sufficient*

*susceptio, f., reception*

*tangere, tetigi, tactus, to touch*

*tridentinus, of Trent*

*vetustissimus, very ancient*

### Idioms

1. *ad summum, at the most*
2. *necne, or not*
3. *ex aequo, justly, on a par*
4. *ex improviso, unexpectedly*
5. *magna ex parte, in a great degree*
6. *ex usu, expedient*
7. *in perpetuum, forever*
8. *hunc in modum, in this way*
9. *est ei in animo, he has in mind, he intends*

### GRAMMAR

**I. Numerals.** These may be grouped in four classes.

a) Cardinal numerals answering the question, "how many?" **unus, one; duo, two.**

b) Ordinal numerals answering the question, "Which in order?" **primus, first; secundus, second.**

c) Distributive numerals answering the question, "How many at a time?" **singuli, one at a time; bini, in twos.**

d) Numeral adverbs answering the question, "how often?" **semel, once; bis, twice.**

<i>Cardinals</i>	<i>Ordinals</i>	<i>Distributives</i>	<i>Adverbs</i>
unus, una, unum	primus	singuli	semel
duo, duae, duo	secundus	bini	bis
tres, tria	tertius	terni	ter
quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies
sex	sextus	seni	sexies
septem	septimus	septeni	septies
octo	octavus	octoni	octies
novem	nonus	noveni	novies
decem (ten)	decimus	deni	decies
undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies
duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodecies
tredecim	decimus tertius	terni deni	terdecies
quattuordecim	decimus quartus	quaterni deni	quaterdecies
quindecim	decimus quintus	quini deni	quindecies
sedecim	decimus sextus	seni deni	sedecies
septendecim	decimus septi- mus	septeni deni	septiesdecies
duodeviginti	duodevigesimus	duodeviceni	duodevicies
undeviginti	undevigesimus	undeviceni	undevicies
viginti (twenty)	vigesimus	viceni	vicies
viginti unus	vigesimus primus	viceni singuli	semel vicies
triginta (thirty)	tricesimus	triceni	tricies
quadraginta	quadragesimus	quadrageni	quadragies
quingenta	quingagesimus	quingageni	quingagies
sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexagies
septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuagies
octoginta	octogesimus	octogeni	octogies
nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonageni	nonagies
centum (hundred)	centesimus	centeni	centies
ducenti	ducentesimus	ducenti	ducenties

<i>Cardinals</i>	<i>Ordinals</i>	<i>Distributives</i>	<i>Adverbs</i>
trecenti	trecentesimus	treceni	trecenties
quadringenti	quadringentesimus	quadringeni	quadringenties
quingenti	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingenties
sexcenti	sexcentesimus	sexceni	sexcenties
septingenti	septingentesimus	septingeni	septingenties
octingenti	octingentesimus	octingeni	octingenties
nongenti	nongentesimus	nongeni	nongenties
mille (thousand)	millesimus	milleni	millies

Note. **Duo** and **tres** have **duobus**, **duabus**, and **tribus** in the dative and ablative plurals; **mille** is an indeclinable adjective, whereas its plural, **millia**, is a noun and is followed by the genitive.

**De mille libris**, *concerning a thousand books*.

**Quattuor millia hominum**, *four thousand men*.

#### EXERCISES

1. Nos mille modis juvavit, et igitur media omnia adhibebimus ut ex infamia illius sententiae condemnatoriae magna ex parte vindicetur. 2. Sedecim conjuges parochum hodie consuluerunt, qui secum octoginta quinque proles conducebant, qui in paroeciae scholas accenserentur. 3. In diebus tribus iudex de munere degradatus erit propter actus criminosos suos, et tunc forte facta sua notoria gentes e lethargo excitent, ut leges naturales recuperare nitantur. 4. Bini incesserant discipuli per viam difficilem et calidam, quoad ad montem altum olivis multis praeditum venerunt, sub quibus humi dormiebant. 5. Tantum mala competebant, ita ut perirent una die viginti tria millia. 6. Caput quadragesimum nondum legimus, sed cras sine mora id legemus. 7. Mater vetat ut filii egrediantur donec ediscant usque nongentos numerare. 8. Janua templi tam magna erat, ut diaconi quini intrare possent. 9. Jam vobis ter dixit se non plus quam quattuordecim

circulos aurichalci velle, sed fecistis duodeviginti. 10. Viri fortes vicini in murum ascendere coeperunt, et mox civitate potiti sunt. 11. Ordinarius septingentos triginta novem sacerdotes instituit ut exercitui in tempore necessitatis serviant. 12. Sermonem undecies de subjecto eodem praedicavit, attamen semper eum audimus aequale cum gaudio. 13. Ut puer facta simplicissima doceatur, necesse est repetere non solum semel vel bis, sed quidem sexties aut septies, antequam verba vestra in eum impressionem permanentem relinquunt. 14. Novenam faciebat, id est, ibat ad ecclesiam novies ad certas orationes designatas recitandas. 15. Si mihi scribat in octo diebus, statim te admoneam. 16. Patres matresque dies quinquaginta duo in terra aliena transegerant in filiis suis quaerendis, sed denique invenerunt eos ex improvise in die quinquagesimo tertio. 17. Cum theologus jam relationem inter theologiam et philosophiam bis exposuerit, non postulabimus ut rursus de ea disserat. 18. Non dubium est quin ille clericus vetus octogesimum quintum suae aetatis annum attigerit. 19. Cum actiones ejus magna e desperatione ejus promanavissent, atqui, quia mentis compos erat, non omnino e scelere excusabatur. 20. Ex usu est quod sermonem servet, quem quater spondit.

## READING

1. Virtutes supernaturales sunt habitus a Deo infusi, quibus homo actus supernaturales connaturaliter exercere possit. Ejusmodi virtutes a Deo infundi ratione theologica demonstratur et ex concilio tridentino constat. Requiritur, ut natura ad statum supernaturalem elevata actus, quibus in finem supernaturalem tendit, connaturaliter efficere possit; atqui ad hoc requiritur, ut non solum principium externum et transiens (gratia actualis), sed etiam principium internum et permanens (potentia) sit supernaturale, id quod suppeditant habitus infusi. Ideo Deus ornavit hominem habitibus virtutum supernaturalium. Quod ergo in ordine naturae sunt animae potentiae, intellectus et voluntas, id in ordine supernaturali sunt habitus infusi, nempe principium proximum vitae supernaturalis, sicut gratia sanctificans, ex qua habitus infusi promanant, dicenda est vitae supernaturalis prin-

cipium remotum. Si solum in genere quaeritur, num sint virtutes infusae, responderi debet ex revelatione certum esse, animae infundi virtutes supernaturales; ex concilio enim tridentino novimus hominem in ipsa justificatione cum remissione peccatorum haec (dona) omnia simul infusa accipere per Jesum Christum, cui inseritur, fidem, spem et caritatem. Virtutes infusae aliae sunt virtutes theologicae, aliae virtutes morales.

Virtutes theologicae illae dicuntur, quarum motivum (objectum formale) est Deus seu aliqua perfectio divina. Tres sunt virtutes theologicae, nempe fides, spes et caritas, quae quidem requiruntur et sufficiunt, ut ad finem ultimum pervenire possimus. Virtutes theologicas a Deo nobis infundi complures de fide certum dicunt ex loco citato concilii tridentini. Infunduntur autem omnes simul una cum gratia sanctificante, at non omnes simul amittuntur. Quoties gratia sanctificans augetur, simul cum ea etiam virtutes theologicae cum reliquis virtutibus augentur: tanta enim est connexio inter gratiam et virtutes, ut cum illa infundantur, conserventur et augeantur; sed gratia sanctificans susceptione sacramentorum et bonis operibus augetur.

Quamvis virtutes theologicae cum gratia sanctificante omnes simul infundantur atque ex ea dimanent, non tamen omnes cum ea amittuntur, sed pereunt per actus ipsis oppositos. Caritas cum gratia sanctificante per quodvis peccatum mortale amittitur, fides autem et spes solum per peccatum mortale his virtutibus directe oppositum amittuntur; fides enim et spes natura praecedunt caritatem, ad eam disponunt atque conducunt, quapropter amissa caritate non amittuntur ejus praeviae dispositiones, sed remanent in peccatore, ut eum in recuperanda caritate juvent. Per peccatum mortale desperationis amittitur spes cum caritate et gratia sanctificante, non autem fides, quae est praevia dispositio ad spem et fundamentum omnium virtutum supernaturalium. Tandem per peccatum mortale haeresis amittitur fides cum gratia sanctificante et omnibus virtutibus infusis.

2.

## Can. 762

Ex vetustissimo Ecclesiae more nemo sollemniter baptizetur, nisi suum habeat, quatenus fieri possit, patrinum.

Etiam in baptismo privato patrinus, si facile haberi queat, adhibeatur; si non interfuerit, adhibeatur in supplendis baptismi caeremoniis, sed hoc in casu nullam contrahit spiritualem cognationem.

## Can. 763

Cum baptismus iteratur sub conditione, idem patrinus, quatenus fieri possit, adhibeatur, qui in priore baptismo forte adfuit; extra hunc casum in baptismo conditionato patrinus non est necessarius.

Iterato baptismo sub conditione, neque patrinus qui priori baptismo adfuit, neque qui posteriori, cognationem spiritualem contrahit, nisi idem patrinus in utroque baptismo adhibitus fuerit.

## Can. 764

Patrinus unus tantum, licet diversi sexus a baptizando, vel ad summum unus et una adhibeantur.

## Can. 765

Ut quis sit patrinus, oportet:

1°. Sit baptizatus, rationis usum assecutus et intentionem habeat id munus gerendi.

2°. Ad nullam pertineat haereticam aut schismaticam sectam, nec sententia condemnatoria vel declaratoria sit excommunicatus aut infamis infamia juris aut exclusus ab actibus legitimis, nec sit clericus depositus vel degradatus.

3°. Nec sit pater vel mater vel conjux baptizandi.

4°. Ab ipso baptizando ejusve parentibus vel tutoribus aut, his deficientibus, a ministro sit designatus.

5°. Baptizandum in actu baptismi per se vel per procuratorem physice teneat aut tangat vel statim levet seu suscipiat de sacro fonte aut de manibus baptizantis.

## Can. 766

Ut autem quis licite patrinus admittatur, oportet:

1°. Decimum quartum suae aetatis annum attigerit, nisi aliquid justa de causa ministro videatur.

2°. Non sit propter notorium delictum excommunicatus vel exclusus ab actibus legitimis vel infamis infamia juris, quin tamen sententia intercesserit, nec sit interdictus aut alias publice criminosus vel infamis infamia facti.

3°. Fidei rudimenta noverit.

4°. In nulla religione sit novitius vel professus, nisi necessitas urgeat et expressa habeatur venia Superioris saltem localis.

5°. In sacris ordinibus non sit constitutus, nisi accedat expressa Ordinarii proprii licentia.

## Can. 767

In dubio utrum quis valide vel licite admitti possit, necne, ad patrini munus, parochus, si tempus suppetat, consulat Ordinarium.

## Can. 768

Ex baptismo spiritualement cognationem contrahunt tantum cum baptizato baptizans et patrinus.

## Can. 769

Patrinorum est, ex suscepto munere, spiritualem filium perpetuo sibi commendatum habere, atque in iis quae ad christianae vitae institutionem spectant, curare diligenter ut ille talem in tota vita se praebeat, qualem futurum esse sollempni caeremonia sponponderunt.

## LESSON XXVI

### Vocabulary

**acquisitus**, *acquired*  
**arbitrium**, n., *judgment, will*  
**cardinalis**, *cardinal, principal, chief*  
**collatus**, m., *conferring*  
**comitatus**, m., *company*  
**commoditas**, f., *convenience*  
**commonere** (2), -monui, -monitus, *to warn, to admonish*  
**comprobare**, *to prove, to establish*  
**concionator**, m., *preacher*  
**conscientia**, f., *conscience, consciousness, awareness*  
**cumulativus**, *accruing*  
**destruere**, -struxi, -structus, *to destroy*  
**divinitus**, *divinely*  
**effective**, *efficaciously*  
**evanescere**, -vanui, *to vanish, to disappear*  
**excellere**, -celui, -celsus, *to excel*  
**exceptio**, f., *exception*  
**gaudere** (semidep. 2), **gavisus**, *to rejoice, to enjoy*  
**ignotus**, *unknown*  
**impudicus**, *shameless*  
**inscribere**, -scripsi, -scriptus, *to inscribe*  
**liberum arbitrium**, *free will*  
**major**, *greater*  
**memoratus**, *mentioned*  
**meritorie**, *meritoriously*  
**nepos**, m. and f., *grandchild, nephew, descendant*  
**non-usus**, m., *disuse*



**oratorium**, n., *oratory, chapel*  
**paroecialis**, *parochial*  
**Pascha**, n., *Easter*  
**paulatim**, *gradually*  
**penitus**, *wholly*  
**pervigilium**, n., *vigil*  
**praecipue**, *especially*  
**praejudicium**, n., *objection*  
**pravus**, *evil*  
**principatus**, m., *public office*  
**pugna**, f., *struggle*  
**pugnare**, *to struggle, to fight*  
**punctum**, n., *point, moment*  
**reprobare**, *to reject*  
**revocare**, *to call back, to revoke, to reduce*  
**sacellum**, n., *chapel, sanctuary*  
**sane**, *soundly*  
**scotista**, m., *Scotist* (follower of the doctrine of Duns Scotus)  
**scriptum**, n., *writing*  
**sedulo**, *carefully, diligently*  
**subjectivus**, *subordinate, subjective*  
**succedere**, -cessi, -cessus, *to succeed*  
**supremus**, *highest*  
**transferre**, -tuli, -latus, *to convey, to transport*

#### Idioms

1. **puncto temporis**, *in an instant*
2. **sponte sua**, *of one's own free will*
3. **nec . . . nec**, *neither . . . nor*
4. **certiorem reddere**, *to inform*
5. **per se**, *in and of itself*
6. **pro hac vice**, *for this once*
7. **supra morem**, *more than usual*
8. **supra quod**, *besides*

## GRAMMAR

**I. Enclitics.** -ce, -ne, -ci, -nam, -pte, -pse, -que, -ve, added to the end of a word, give the word special force or significance.

a) -ce is frequently attached to the demonstrative pronouns and to some adverbs for emphasis.

*istace, these; hisce, by these; hujusce, of this; illaece, those; nuncce, now, at this time; sicce, thus, so; hincce, hence; hucce, hither; illicce, there; hicce, here*

b) -ne may be added to any word, usually the first of a sentence, to indicate a question.

*Dubitasne? Do you doubt? Nonne sic est? Is it not thus? Utrumne? Whether? Anne? Or? Quantane? How much? Quone pacto? In what way? Necne, or not.*

c) -ci frequently precedes -ne for more emphasis: *hiccine, siccine, nuncine.*

*Haecine vera sunt? Are these things true?  
Siccine semper erat? Was it always thus?  
Nuncine loquitur? Is he now speaking?*

d) -nam is frequently attached to pronouns for emphasis.

*Quisnam? Who, pray?  
Cujusnam modi? Of what sort, indeed?  
Quanam? Where, indeed?  
Quianam? Why?*

e) -pte is sometimes appended to pronouns. It has the force of *self, own.*

*suopte, by himself; mepte, me myself  
nostrapte culpa, by our own fault  
suumppte amicum, his own friend*

f) -pse is similarly employed.

**eapse**, *even this*; **copse**, *by this itself*

**reapse**, *in fact*

g) **-que** or **-cumque** added to a relative pronoun or pronominal adverb gives an indefinite or universal sense.

**quisque**, *each, every*

**quodcumque**, *whatever*

**quandoque**, *whenever, sometimes*

**undique**, *everywhere*

**uterque**, *each, both*

**denique**, *at length*

**ubique**, *wherever*

**qualiscumque**, *of whatever sort*

Note. **-que** enclitic may also mean *and*. **Aqua ignique**, *with fire and water*.

h) **-ve** enclitic means *or*, giving a choice between alternatives.

**plus minusve**, *more or less*

**sive**, *if either, whether*

2. Prefixes for emphasis. Such are:

a) **per**: **permagnus**, *very large*; **perpauci**, *very few*; **peramanter**, *very lovingly*; **percupidus**, *very desirous*; **permultus**, *very much*.

b) **prae**: **praelongus**, *very long*; **praeclarus**, *eminent, outstanding*; **praevalidus**, *very warm*; **praecelsus**, *very high*; **praecalvus**, *very bald*; **praecipue**, *chiefly*; **praedives**, *very rich*; **praegravis**, *very burdensome*; **praevalidus**, *very strong*.

c) **re**: **revera**, *in reality*; **reipse**, *the very*

d) **ec** (**ecce**): **ecce**, *behold*; **ecquando**, *ever, at any time*; **ecquis**, *whether any, if any person or thing*; **eccilla**, *that*; **eccos**, *them*

**Ecquid disces?** *Won't you learn a little?*

**Ecquis venit?** *Won't anyone come?*

**Eccos spectatis?** *Won't you look at them?*

#### EXERCISES

1. Nobis revelat nihil sponte sua nec verbo nec scripto. 2. Nepotes certiores reddere debemus, quia avus haec fecit tantum per se. 3. Quan-

doque puncto temporis cogitamus id quod in vitam nostram influxum perpetuum habeat. 4. Populus suapte culpa multa privilegia naturalia perdit, quoniam pro justitia pugnare nolit. 5. Theologus revera scotista praeclarus est, et ideo multas doctrinas haereticas rejicit, quae in dies augent inter nos. 6. Quanam invenitur quis actus pravos reprobet pro virtutibus praecelsis? 7. Siccine nepotes avi arbitrium complent, cum bona penitus destruunt quae ille diligenter per vitam praelongam acquisivit? 8. Quisnam mihi dicet sive ei in animo sit honestatem suam comprobare, necne? 9. Comitatus uterque ibi praesens est, ut cum concionatore vetustissimo gaudeat, quod electus est ad regis filium baptizandum. 10. Pueri educatio supra morem curata est, ut, cum vigesimum primum aetatis annum attigerit, penitus comparatus sit ad munera principatus supremi suscipienda. 11. Romani sane agebant, ubi leges pravas revocaverunt quae prohibebant quin christiani primitivi doctrinas fidei suae exercerent. 12. Si non aviae commoditati sit ex loco tam remoto venire, nepotes pro hac vice aeroplano eant ad eam videndam antequam moriretur. 13. Hicce habemus omnes commoditates atque libertates omnes, e contrario, illicce videmus dumtaxat incommoda, sacrificia praegravia, adeo scelera vitiosa; ergo diligamus et foveamus hanc terram nostram. 14. Supra quod, populi nixi sunt, ut sacellum transferrent ad locum quo juxta baptisterium staret, sed non satis fortes sunt. 15. Tandem in reipsum errorem cecidit ob quem diu amicos suos reprehenderat. 16. Me repugnat cogitatio in illam regionem intrandi, ubi aeris temperies praecalida est, et ubi mihi tam novum et inauditum videtur nutrimentum. 17. Eccistum sacellum! Stetit per duo millia annorum in istoce loco eodem. 18. Quianam haecce accipis, quando scis omnes socios tuos ea rejecisse? 19. Quomodo determinare possent ecquis immunitatem a tentatione attigisset, necne? 20. Haecce omnia discipuli bene intellexerunt? Si non, semetipsos sedulo immergant in ea, quoad omne planum fiat.

## READING

1. Virtutes morales illae dicuntur, quarum objectum formale est actionum honestas. Cum de fide certum non sit, etiam virtutes mo-

rales a Deo nobis infundi, sunt theologi (scotistae), qui id negant; eorum tamen doctrina ab aliis ut erronea rejicitur. Et sane cum virtutes theologicas infundi constet, id de moralibus negari non potest: si enim Deus infundit virtutes theologicas, ut earum actus per interna principia connaturaliter exercentur, ex eadem ratione etiam virtutes morales infundere debet. Ideo catechismus romanus docet: "Huic (gratiae) additur nobilissimus omnium virtutum comitatus, quae in animam cum gratia divinitus infunduntur." Quot sint virtutes morales infusae, non constat. Dicendum videtur quatuor virtutes cardinales infundi, sed non plures: cum enim reliquae virtutes morales ad virtutes cardinales revocentur tamquam earum partes integrales aut subjectivae, illarum habitus etiam ad harum actus eliciendos sufficient.

Habitus infusi ex communiore et veriore theologorum sententia dant ipsam potestatem, non etiam facilitatem supernaturales actus eliciendi, quia inclinant quidem ad suos actus, eorum impedimenta autem non remouent. Ex his jam patet potissimum discrimen, quod inter virtutes infusas et acquisitas intercedit: a) virtutes enim infusae dant ipsam facultatem, at non etiam facilitatem supernaturaliter operandi: cum enim infunduntur, non auferunt impedimenta operandi, quae proveniunt ex concupiscentia et ex malis habitibus. Facilitas operandi per exercitium habitus infusi comparatur. Virtutes autem acquisitae non tribuunt potestatem sed facilitatem operandi: potestas enim operandi jam a natura adest; cum vero repetitis actibus nec sine pugna comparentur, eo ipso minuunt vel etiam penitus auferunt difficultates operandi, quae ex concupiscentia vel ex prava consuetudine proveniunt. b) Virtutes infusae cum gratia sanctificante puncto temporis infunduntur, suis actibus non effective sed meritorie augentur et per peccatum mortale cum gratia sanctificante puncto temporis destruuntur. Virtutes autem acquisitae non uno actu sed repetitis actibus acquiruntur iisdemque effective augentur et non-usu vel actibus contrariis paulatim minuuntur ac tandem evanescent. Hinc quandoque homines peccatores e.g. impudicos in aliqua virtute e.g. in iustitia excellere videmus: nam per peccatum mortale non destruuntur.

tur omnes virtutes acquisitae: Econtrario homines justos videmus contra diversas easque vehementes in malum propensiones pugnare debere: virtutes enim infusae non auferunt naturales habitus pravos, qui actibus contrariis paulatim debilitantur.

2. Can. 770

Infantes quamprimum baptizentur; et parochi ac concionatores frequenter fideles de hac gravi eorum obligatione commoneant.

Can. 771

Baptismus privatus, urgente necessitate, quovis tempore et loco administrandus est.

Can. 772

Etiam sollemnis baptismus qualibet die administrari potest; decet tamen adulatorum baptismum, secundum antiquissimum Ecclesiae ritum, conferri, si fieri commode queat, in pervigilio Paschatis et Pentecostes, praecipue in metropolitanis aut cathedralibus ecclesiis.

Can. 773

Proprius baptismi sollemnis administrandi locus est baptisterium in ecclesia vel oratorio publico.

Can. 774

Quaelibet paroecialis ecclesia, revocato ac reprobato quovis contrario statuto vel privilegio vel consuetudine, baptismalem habeat fontem, salvo legitimo jure cumulativo aliis ecclesiis jam quaesito.

Loci Ordinarius potest pro fidelium commoditate permittere vel jubere ut fons baptismalis ponatur etiam in alia ecclesia vel publico oratorio intra paroeciae fines.

Can. 775

Si ad ecclesiam paroecialem, aut ad aliam quae jure fontis gaudeat, baptizandus, propter locorum distantiam aliave adjuncta, sine gravi

incommodo aut periculo, accedere aut transferri nequeat, baptismus sollemnis a parcho conferri potest et debet in proxima ecclesia aut oratorio publico intra paroeciae fines, licet haec baptismali fonte careant.

Can. 776

In domibus autem privatis baptismus sollemnis administrari non debet, nisi hisce in adjunctis:

1. Si baptizandi sint filii aut nepotes eorum qui supremum actu tenent populorum principatum vel jus habent succedendi in thronum, quoties isti id rite poposcerint.

2. Si loci Ordinarius, pro suo prudenti arbitrio et conscientia, justa ac rationabili de causa, in casu aliquo extraordinario id concedendum censuerit.

In memoratis casibus baptismus conferendus est in sacello domus aut saltem in alio decenti loco, et aqua baptismali de more benedicta.

Can. 777

Parochi debent nomina baptizatorum, mentione facta de ministro, parentibus ac patrinis, de loco ac die collati baptismi, in baptismali libro sedulo et sine ulla mora referre.

Ubi vero de illegitimis filiis agatur, matris nomen est inserendum, si publice ejus maternitas constet, vel ipsa sponte sua scripto vel coram duobus testibus id petat; item nomen patris, dummodo ipse sponte sua a parcho vel scripto vel coram duobus testibus id requirat, vel ex publico authentico documento sit notus; in ceteris casibus inscribatur natus tanquam filius patris ignoti vel ignotorum parentum.

Can. 778

Si baptismus nec a proprio parcho nec eo praesente administratus fuerit, minister de ipso collato quamprimum proprium ratione domicilii parochum baptizati certiore reddat.

## Can. 779

Ad collatum baptismum comprobandum, si nemini fiat praejudicium, satis est unus testis omni exceptione major, vel ipsius baptizati jusjurandum, si ipse in adulta aetate baptismum receperit.



## LESSON XXVII

### Vocabulary

**abbas**, m., *abbot*

**abluere**, -lui, -lutus, *to wash*

**administratio**, f., *administering*

**appropriatio**, f., *appropriation*

**auctor**, m., *author*

**baculus**, m., *staff, crozier*

**chrisma**, n., *chrism, consecrated oil*

**circiter**, *about*

**consilium**, n., *advice*

**durante**, *during*

**erga**, *towards*

**excipere**, -cepi, -ceptus, *to receive*

**expedire**, *to expedite, to hasten*

**explere** (2), -plevi, -pletus, *to fulfill, to complete*

**extraneus**, m., *outsider*

**frons**, f., *forehead*

**fructuose**, *fruitfully, beneficially*

**graviter**, *seriously, gravely*

**illustrare**, *to illumine*

**illustratio**, f., *illumination*

**imo** (immo), *by all means*

**impulsivus**, *impelling*

**indultum**, n., *dispensation, indulgt*

**inspiratio**, f., *inspiration*

**instinctus**, m., *instinct*

**mitra**, f., *miter*

**nefas**, *unlawful*

negligere, -lexi, -lectus, *to neglect*  
 nihilominus, *nevertheless*  
 oboedire, *to obey*  
 pollere (2), -lui, *to be strong, to be efficacious*  
 praelatus, m., *prelate*  
 presbyter, m., *priest*  
 providere (2), -vidi, -visus, *to provide*  
 quanquam (quamquam), *although*  
 quinquennium, n., *period of five years*  
 rationabiliter, *reasonably*  
 septem, *seven*  
 septenarius, m., *septenary, seven*  
 septiformis, *sevenfold*  
 subditus, m., *subject*  
 unctio, f., *anointing*  
 vicarius, m., *vicar, assistant*

### Idioms

1. aequè ac, *as well as*
2. haud minus ac, *just as*
3. quamprimum, *as soon as possible*
4. ultra fidem, *incredible*
5. ultra modum, *immoderate*
6. minime vero, *by no means*
7. ad id quod, *besides that*
8. ad verbum, *literally, word for word*

### GRAMMAR

#### I. Some prepositions.

- a) Adversus (-um), *against*, governs the accusative.

adversus legem, *against the laws*

It sometimes follows a pronoun.

hanc adversum, *against this*

b) **Ante**, *in front of, before*, takes the accusative.

**ante sacellum**, *in front of the chapel*

**ante bellum**, *before the war*

It may be used in the sense of *ago*.

**ante quinquennium**, *five years ago*

c) **Apud** governs the accusative and may signify *before, among, at the house of*.

**apud gentes**, *before the nations*

**apud Romanos**, *among the Romans*

**apud Petrum**, *at Peter's house*

d) **Circa**, *about, around*, governs the accusative and may indicate either time or place.

**circa bapisterium**, *near the baptistery*

**circa horam nonam**, *about the ninth hour*

It may also be used figuratively.

**circa quae loquitur**, *about which he speaks*

e) **Circum**, *about, around*, likewise governs the accusative, but refers only to place.

**circum ecclesiam**, *around the church*

**circum subditos**, *to his subjects round about*

f) **Circiter** means *about*, speaking of time or number.

**circiter mediam noctem**, *about midnight*

**circiter trecentos homines**, *about three hundred men*

## 2. The optative subjunctive.

a) This subjunctive is used to express a wish. The present indicates the wish as possible; the imperfect, as unaccomplished at the present moment; the pluperfect, as unaccomplished in the past. The negative is **ne**.

**Mox veniant.** *May they come soon.*

**Ne luceret sol.** *I wish that the sun were not shining.*

**Emisset septem.** *I wish he had bought seven.*

b) The particle **utinam** usually introduces the imperfect and pluperfect.

**Utinam ne nefas esset!** *Would that it were not unlawful!*

**Utinam mihi promptius scripsisset!** *Would that he had written to me sooner!*

c) The present and imperfect subjunctives of **velle**, **nolle**, and **malle** are often equivalent to an optative subjunctive.

**Velim sicce id excipias.** *I should like you to receive it thus.*

**Nollem nobis consilium talem dedisset!** *Would that he had not given us such advice!*

**Mellem manus suas abluissent.** *I had rather that they had washed their hands.*

#### EXERCISES

1. **Utinam eis lucrum aequae ac consilium bonum daret!** 2. **Regis subditi ei semper oboediant et numquam officiorum apud Deum regnumque obliviscantur.** 3. **Utinam presbyter juvenis quinquennium apud Romanos transigere potuisset!** 4. **Velim hae res haud minus ac promissae fiant.** 5. **Nobis loquebatur quatuor horas circa experientias in terris remotis periculosisque, quae apparent ultra fidem.** 6. **Utinam pollerent ut providerent quod indigeamus adversum calamitatum diem, qui certe adveniet.** 7. **Episcopi visitatio ante bellum acciderat, et in occasione illa ante ecclesiam cathedralem stiterat ad populum benedicendum.** 8. **Utinam adolescentes temporum nostrorum ne sermone, actibus, moribus vestibisque tam ultra modum essent.** 9. **Strepitus horrendus circum habitaculum fuit, velut si multi lapides praemagni de caelis caderent.** 10. **Vellem erga te egisset, ut ita nuncce inclinares ad ei indulgendum.** 11. **Circiter duodecim epistolas habebant, quas expedire negligebant, nihilominus, simul atque eas recepimus, quamprimum aperuimus et eas legimus.** 12. **Utinam praescripta**

ad verbum citavisset, ut ego te certiozem redderem, quod theologus circa confirmationem dixit. 13. Malim avus tuus testis filii mei unctionis sit. 14. Nollem ei facultates attribuissent, quas nunquam possederit. 15. Utinam gentes mundi ratiocinium formale adhiberent loco virium brutarum in controversiis componendis. 16. Ullamne falsitatem in exemplis detegere solitus es, quae hominis illius a testibus suppetitata sunt? Minime vero. 17. Cum ante civitatis interitum venirent, nihil pro incolis facere poterant. 18. Putabamus hunc librum facies philosophiae omnes complecti. Minime vero. 19. Mens ejus tam dilucida est, ut in utramque partem effectivissime disserere possit. 20. Velim hinc ne talibus erroribus obnubilentur.

#### READING

1. Praeter virtutes theologicas et morales a Deo infusas homini justo conferuntur septem dona Spiritus Sancti. Ex mente s. Thomae dona definiuntur: Qualitates habituales animae potentiis inhaerentes, quibus hae supernaturaliter disponuntur ad prompte et perfecte oboediendum motionibus seu inspirationibus Spiritus Sancti. Pertinent dona aequae ac virtutes ad dispositiones supernaturales, quibus Deus hominem justum instructum esse voluit, ut per eas finem suum supernaturalem attingeret. Simul cum gratia sanctificante et virtutibus animae infunduntur et cum gratia et virtutibus per peccatum mortale amittuntur. Potentiae, quibus inhaerent, sunt intellectus et voluntas, in quibus sunt etiam virtutes, quae per dona complentur et perficiuntur. Siquidem hominis potentiae a duplici principio moventur ad opera bona, scilicet a naturali ratione per fidem elevata atque illustrata et immediate a Spiritu S. Jam vero ut prompte et perfecte has motiones sequantur, certis qualitatibus et dispositionibus a Deo instructae sunt; et quidem ad oboediendum motionibus naturalibus rationis aptae fiunt per virtutes infusas, ad oboediendum motionibus supernaturalibus Spiritus S. aptae fiunt per dona.

Esse dona sancti patres et theologi compluribus argumentis confirmant. Natura et finis donorum in hunc modum explicari potest.

Homo justus instructus est virtutibus infusus, ut per eas opera supernaturalia peragat et finem supernaturalem vitae aeternae mereatur. Jam vero ut opus virtutis supernaturalis exercere possit, indiget motione seu inspiratione Spiritus S., qua ad virtutem exercendam supernaturaliter excitetur et aptus evadat. Hinc Spiritus S. hominem justum illustrationibus intellectus et motionibus voluntatis tum ad ordinarias vitae christianae virtutes tum quandoque etiam ad opera perfectiora et sublimiora divino instinctu inspirare atque excitare solet. Sed ut homo aptus reddatur, qui motiones Spiritus S. sive ad ordinaria sive ad sublimiora exercitia virtutum excipiat eisque prompte et perfecte oboediat, ei conceduntur dona Spiritus Sancti. Septem numerantur dona Spiritus Sancti: donum intellectus, sapientiae, scientiae, consilii, pietatis, fortitudinis, et timoris Domini: cum enim haec dona conferantur ad virtutes perficiendas, et septem sint praecipuae virtutes, oportuit, ut etiam septem dona infunderentur. Unde Spiritus Sanctus, cui haec dona tamquam auctori per appropriationem tribuuntur, ab ecclesia septiformis munere appellatur, idemque rogatur, ut suis fidelibus det sacrum septenarium.

Quamvis dona cum virtutibus in ratione habitus conveniant, dupliciter tamen a virtutibus differunt. a) Ratione causae impulsivae: nam ad bene agendum homo excitatur propria ratione sive naturali sive supernaturali, et habitibus virtutum disponitur ad prompte his motibus oboediendum; ad bene agendum etiam a Spiritu Sancto movetur, et habitibus donorum disponitur ad prompte oboediendum huic inspirationi. b) Ratione objecti seu actuum, ad quos disponunt: virtutes enim disponunt hominem ad opera, quae secundum ordinem communem vitae christianae fiunt; dona autem disponunt hominem etiam ad opera, quae ordinem communem virtutis excedunt.

2.

Can. 780

Sacramentum confirmationis conferri debet per manus impositionem cum unctione chrismatis in fronte et per verba in pontificalibus libris ab Ecclesia probatis praescripta.

## Can. 781

Chrisma, in sacramento confirmationis adhibendum, debet esse ab Episcopo consecratum, etiamsi sacramentum a presbytero, ex jure vel ex apostolico indulto, ministretur.

Unctio autem ne fiat aliquo instrumento, sed ipsa ministri manu capiti confirmandi rite imposita.

## Can. 782

Ordinarius confirmationis minister est solus Episcopus.

Extraordinarius minister est presbyter, cui vel jure communi vel peculiari Sedis Apostolicae indulto ea facultas concessa sit.

Hac facultate ipso jure gaudent, Abbas vel Praelatus nullius, Vicarius et Praefectus Apostolicus, qui tamen ea valide uti nequeunt, nisi intra fines sui territorii et durante munere tantum.

Presbyter latini ritus cui, vi indulti, haec facultas competat, confirmationem valide confert solis fidelibus sui ritus, nisi in indulto aliud expresse cautum fuerit.

Nefas est presbyteris ritus orientalis, qui facultate vel privilegio gaudent confirmationem una cum baptismo infantibus sui ritus conferendi, eandem ministrare infantibus latini ritus.

## Can. 783

Episcopus in sua dioecesi hoc sacramentum etiam extraneis legitime ministrat, nisi obstet expressa proprii eorum Ordinarii prohibitio.

In aliena dioecesi indiget licentia Ordinarii loci saltem rationabiliter praesumpta, nisi agatur de propriis subditis quibus confirmationem conferat privatim ac sine baculo et mitra.

## Can. 784

Presbytero quoque licet, si apostolico locali privilegio sit munitus, in designato sibi territorio confirmare etiam extraneos, nisi id ipsorum Ordinarii expresse vetuerint.

## Can. 785

Episcopus obligatione tenetur sacramentum hoc subditis rite et rationabiliter petentibus conferendi, praesertim tempore visitationis dioecesis.

Eadem obligatione tenetur presbyter, privilegio apostolico donatus, erga illos quorum in favorem est concessa facultas.

Ordinarius, legitima causa impeditus aut potestate confirmandi carens, debet, quoad fieri possit, saltem intra quodlibet quinquennium providere ut suis subditis hoc sacramentum administretur.

Si graviter neglexerit sacramentum confirmationis suis subditis per se vel per alium ministrare, servetur praescriptum can. 274, n. 4.

## Can. 786

Aquis baptismi non ablutus valide confirmari nequit; praeterea, ut quis licite et fructuose confirmetur, debet esse in statu gratiae constitutus et, si usu rationis polleat, sufficienter instructus.

## Can. 787

Quamquam hoc sacramentum non est de necessitate medii ad salutem, nemini tamen licet, oblata occasione, illud negligere; imo parochi curent ut fideles ad illud opportuno tempore accedant.

## Can. 788

Licet sacramenti confirmationis administratio convenienter in Ecclesia Latina differatur ad septimum circiter aetatis annum, nihilominus etiam antea conferri potest, si infans in mortis periculo sit constitutus, vel ministro id expedire ob justas et graves causas videatur.

## Can. 789

Confirmandi, si plures sint, adsint primae manuum impositioni seu extensioni, nec nisi expleto ritu discedant.



## LESSON XXVIII

### Vocabulary

**adnotatio**, f., *comment, annotation*  
**adscribere**, -scripsi, -scriptus, *to enroll*  
**applicare**, -avi or -ui, -atus, *to apply*  
**assistentia**, f., *assistance*  
**cernere**, crevi, cretus, *to discern*  
**colere**, colui, cultus, *to worship*  
**conjunctus**, m., *kinsman, relative*  
**delectatio**, f., *delight*  
**etsi**, *although*  
**excedere**, -cessi, -cessus, *to exceed*  
**fiducia**, f., *confidence, trust*  
**hebdomada**, f., *week*  
**impellere**, -puli, -pulsus, *to impel, to urge*  
**inchoare**, *to begin*  
**licet**, *although*  
**mensura**, f., *measure*  
**modo**, *provided that*  
**mundanus**, *mundane, of the world*  
**nexus**, m., *relationship, connection*  
**obsecundare**, *to obey*  
**omnimodus**, *of every sort, complete*  
**perspicere**, -spexi, -spectus, *to perceive*  
**praesentare**, *to present*  
**procidere**, -cidi, *to fall prostrate*  
**progredi** (dep. 3, io), -gressus, *to progress, to advance*  
**propterea**, *on that account*  
**pulchritudo**, f., *beauty, excellence*

refugere, -fugi, -fugitus, *to flee from, to escape*

renuere, -nui, *to refuse, to decline*

reverentialis, *reverent*

stultus, *foolish*

suadere (2), suasi, suasus, *to recommend, to persuade*

superare, *to overcome, to surmount*

temerarius, *rash*

### Idioms

1. eo quod, *to the extent that*
2. ad summum, *on the whole, in general*
3. ad extremum, *finally*
4. ad postremum, *lastly*
5. ad ultimum, *to the last degree, utterly*
6. usque ad, *up to, as far as*
7. multis post annis, *after many years*

### GRAMMAR

#### 1. Some prepositions.

a) *Cis, citra, this side of, within*, governs the accusative and may refer to time or place.

*cis annos paucos, within a few years*

*citra Rhenum, on this side of the Rhine*

b) *Erga, towards*, governs the accusative and may be used literally or figuratively.

*erga Italiam, towards Italy*

*erga nos amici, friendly towards us*

c) *Extra, outside of, besides*, governs the accusative and may be used literally or figuratively.

*extra muros, outside the walls*

*extra consuetudinem, besides the usual custom*

d) **Infra** governs the accusative and means *below, beneath; farther down*, literally; and *later than, less than*, figuratively.

**infra caelum**, *beneath the sky*

**infra Pontium Pilatum**, *later than Pontius Pilate*

**infra tres pedes**, *less than three feet*

e) **Inter**, *between, among*, governs the accusative. With reflexive pronouns it has reciprocal force.

**inter nos**, *between you and me*

**inter multos**, *among many*

**inter se loquebantur**, *they were talking to each other*

f) **Intra**, *inside of, within*, governs the accusative and may refer to place or time. It may also be used figuratively.

**intra fines**, *inside the boundaries*

**intra decem dies**, *within ten days*

**intra legem**, *within the law*

## 2. The deliberative subjunctive.

This subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or an impossibility of the thing's being done.

**Quid agant?** *What are they to do?*

**An non iret?** *What, should he not have gone?*

**Quis autem inimicum tam fortem superaverit?** *Who could overcome so strong an enemy?*

## EXERCISES

1. Quo nos vertamus circumdati undique tamquam sumus viribus furiosis? 2. Etiamne eis indulgeam, etsi occasionem quamque rapuerunt ad tradendum me? 3. Quid illo latrone facerent? Nonne venia indignus sit? 4. Quid dicerem? quia donum negligenter perdideram, quod mihi emerant? 5. An ego non eis suadere niterer? 6. Quis enim tantum cis annos paucos fecerit? 7. Mihi umquam tantas difficultates **infra caelum** obstaturas crederem? 8. Quid vero nobismetipsis dica-

mus? Nonne erga nos ut extranei agant? 9. An avus non sic loqueretur? Immo. 10. Quis enim impediverit quin haec acciderent? 11. Quis vero ad extremum dubitaverit an stultus fuisset? 12. Possimusne determinare utrum isti extra muros vel illi intra muros feliciores sint? 13. An is non revelaret quod exercitus erga se progrediebantur? 14. Quomodo hoc oleum per distantiam praelongam transferam, quae inter civitatem et lacum jacet? 15. Quid faciant pauperes, quos omnes ad interitum eorum defecerint? 16. Quis enim temerarius fuerit eo quod cautum nullum nec pro se nec pro familia sua haberet? 17. Quid faciamus, ubi nos certiores reddiderint inimicos citra Rhenum esse? 18. Quomodo eis suadeamus ut reverentiales sint erga pulchritudinem virtutum theologiarum? 19. Quo refugiant? Nonne omnes viri justi renuerunt eos recipere in domus suas? 20. Multis post diebus militia usque ad centrum montis progressa est, ubi principem parvulum occultum inter olivas aliquas invenit.

## READING

1. De natura singulorum donorum theologi non consentiunt; haec tamen ex doctrina eorum, qui s. Thomam sequuntur, dicenda videntur. Dona, quae intellectum perficiunt, eo tendunt, ut intellectus illustrationes Spiritus Sancti ad res fidei pertinentes prompte suscipiat, earum ope de Deo et de rebus mundanis recte iudicet atque haec iudicia ad operationes vitae humanae rite applicet. Dona vero, quae voluntatem perficiunt, eo referuntur, ut voluntas inspirationibus et motionibus Spiritus Sancti prompte obsecundet. a) Donum intellectus mentem supernaturaliter disponit ad prompte suscipiendas illustrationes, quibus veritates fidei tum quoad sensum tum quoad earum nexum clarius et profundius percipiuntur et penetrentur atque operationes juxta easdem ordinentur. b) Donum sapientiae, supposita fide veritatum revelatarum, mentem supernaturaliter disponit ad prompte suscipiendas inspirationes, quibus de rebus divinis recte iudicet earumque pulchritudinem perspiciat. c) Donum scientiae, supposita fide, mentem supernaturaliter disponit ad prompte suscipiendas inspirationes, quibus de rebus humanis et creatis juxta revelationem

divinam rite iudicet. d) Donum consilii mentem supernaturaliter disponit, ut prompte sequatur illustrationes Spiritus Sancti ad eligenda ea, quae in singulis vitae adjunctis juxta veritates fidei facienda vel omittenda sunt ad progrediendum in via salutis et perfectionis. Quoniam vero Spiritus Sanctus altiora eligit quam prudentia humana, accidit, ut justum quandoque ad ea impellat, quae hominibus stulta apparent, et magis admiranda quam indiscriminatim imitanda sunt. e) Donum pietatis voluntatem supernaturaliter disponit, ut prompte sequatur Spiritum Sanctum moventem ad colendum Deum ut patrem nostrum omnesque alios, qui ad Deum ut patrem referuntur, ut sunt parentes, conjuncti, pauperes, immo etiam ecclesia, sancti et scriptura sacra. f) Donum fortitudinis voluntatem supernaturaliter disponit et perficit, ut sequatur Spiritum Sanctum moventem ad complendum quodvis opus bonum inchoatum, etsi propterea superandae sint difficultates et ferenda mala. A virtute fortitudinis donum dupliciter differt. 1. Virtutis motivum est naturalis honestas, quae in superandis difficultatibus cernitur; motivum doni est fiducia in motionem et assistentiam Spiritus Sancti. 2. Virtus respicit mensuram virium naturae; donum vires naturae excedit et audet ea, quae rationi naturali temeraria apparent. g) Donum timoris voluntatem supernaturaliter disponit, ut sequatur motiones Spiritus Sancti ad filialem reverentiam atque omnimodam subjectionem Deo exhibendam, eo quod refugit quamcunque delectationem, quae separat a Deo. Timor enim intelligitur reverentialis erga divinam majestatem, cui etiam Christus Dominus reverentiam exhibuit et coram quo teste s. scriptura procidunt angeli in facies suas.

2.

Can. 790

Hoc sacramentum quovis tempore conferri potest; maxime autem decet illud administrari in hebdomada Pentecostes.

Can. 791

Licet proprius confirmationis administrandae locus ecclesia sit, ex causa tamen quam minister justam ac rationabilem judicaverit, potest hoc sacramentum in quolibet alio decenti loco conferri.

## Can. 792

Episcopo jus est intra fines suae dioecesis confirmationem administrandi in locis quoque exemptis.

## Can. 793

Ex vetustissimo Ecclesiae more, ut in baptismo, ita etiam in confirmatione adhibendus est patrinus, si haberi possit.

## Can. 794

Patrinus unum tantum confirmandum aut duos praesentet, nisi aliud justa de causa ministro videatur.

Unus quoque pro singulis confirmandis sit patrinus.

## Can. 795

Ut quis sit patrinus, oportet:

1°. Sit ipse quoque confirmatus, rationis usum assecutus et intentionem habeat id munus gerendi.

2°. Nulli haereticae aut schismaticae sectae sit adscriptus, nec ulla ex poenis de quibus in can. 765, n. 2 per sententiam declaratoriam aut condemnatoriam notatus.

3°. Non sit pater, mater, conjux confirmandi.

4°. A confirmando ejusve parentibus vel tutoribus vel, hi si desint aut renuant, a ministro vel a paroco sit designatus.

5°. Confirmandum in ipso confirmationis actu per se vel per procuratorem physice tangat.

## Can. 796

Ut quis licite ad patrini munus admittatur, oportet:

1°. Sit alius a patrino baptismi, nisi rationabilis causa, iudicio ministri, aliud suadeat, aut statim post baptismum legitime confirmatio conferatur.

2°. Sit ejusdem sexus ac confirmandus, nisi aliud ministro in casibus particularibus ex rationabili causa videatur.

3°. Serventur praeterea praescripta can. 766.

## Can. 797

Etiam ex valida confirmatione oritur inter confirmatum et patrinum cognatio spiritualis, ex qua patrinus obligatione tenetur confirmatum perpetuo sibi commendatum habendi ejusque christianam educationem curandi.

## Can. 798

Nomina ministri, confirmatorum, parentum et patrinorum, diem ac locum confirmationis parochus inscribat in peculiari libro, praeter adnotationem in libro baptizatorum de qua in can. 470, § 2.

## Can. 799

Si proprius confirmati parochus praesens non fuerit, de collata confirmatione minister vel per se ipse vel per alium quamprimum eundem certiozem faciat.

## Can. 800

Ad collatam confirmationem probandam, modo nemini fiat praejudicium, satis est unus testis omni exceptione major, vel ipsius confirmati jusjurandum, nisi confirmatus fuerit in infantili aetate.

## LESSON XXIX

### Vocabulary

**abstinere** (2), -tinui, -tentus, *to abstain, to refrain*

**adstare**, *to be present, to attend*

**agnoscere**, -novi, -notus, *to acknowledge*

**annulus**, m., *ring*

**apprime**, *especially*

**commendatitius**, *of recommendation or introduction*

**confessarius**, m., *confessor*

**consciis**, *conscious, aware*

**conservus**, m., *fellow servant*

**cur**, *why*

**domina**, f., *mistress*

**econtra**, *on the other hand*

**elicere**, -licui, -licitus, *to elicit, to call forth*

**excipere**, -cepi, -ceptus, *to except*

**existimare**, *to think, to deem*

**expiare**, *to expiate, to do penance for*

**festus**, *festal*; dies —, *holy day*

**impertire**, **impertiri**, *to grant, to bestow*

**indutus**, *clothed*

**integer**, *virtuous, wholly right*

**interim**, *in the meantime*

**jejunium**, n., *fasting*

**litare**, *to offer a sacrifice*; **Sacrum** —, *to offer the Holy Sacrifice of the Mass*

**littera**, f., *letter* (of alphabet); plur., *epistle*

**mediate**, *indirectly*

**mulier**, f., *woman*



notabilis, *important, noteworthy*  
 penuria, f., *want, lack*  
 perducere, -duxi, -ductus, *to bring, to conduct*  
 pileolus, m., *skull cap*  
 pluries, *frequently*  
 pontificale, n., *pontifical* (book of rites performed by a bishop)  
 probitas, f., *honesty, integrity*  
 quantumvis, *however (much)*  
 revereri (dep. 2), -veritus, *to respect, to revere*  
 rubrica, f., *rubric*  
 signare, *to sign*  
 talus, m., *ankle*  
 ter, *three times*  
 vestis, f., *vestment, attire*

### Idioms

1. se habere, *to be, to be in respect to*
2. ex longinquo, *from a distance*
3. et cetera, *and so forth*
4. de cetero, *as for the rest*
5. gratias agere, *to give thanks*
6. agitur, *to be in question, to be at stake*
7. dies festos agere, *to spend holy days*
8. quartum annum agit, *he is four years old*
9. se agere, *to behave*

### GRAMMAR

#### I. Some prepositions.

a) *Ob*, *towards, on account of*, takes the accusative, and may be either literal or figurative in usage.

*ob Romam*, *towards Rome*

*ob rem*, *for gain*

*ob eam causam*, *for that reason*

*quam ob rem*, *wherefore*

b) **Penes**, *in the power of*, governs the accusative.

**penes inimicos suos**, *in the power of his enemies*

**penes aliquem esse**, *to be in the possession of one's faculties*

c) **Pone**, *behind*, governs the accusative.

**Pone altare**, *behind the altar*

d) **Post**, *after, behind*, governs the accusative and may indicate place or time.

**post agnos**, *after the lambs*

**post carcerem**, *behind the jail*

**post meridiem**, *after noon*

e) **Prope**, *near*, takes the accusative and refers to time or place. It may be literal or figurative.

**prope lucem**, *towards daybreak*

**prope ecclesiam**, *near the church*

**prope peccatum mortale**, *close to a mortal sin*

f) **Supra**, *above, over, beyond, before*, governs the accusative, refers to time, place, or number, and is used in a literal or a figurative sense.

**supra memoriam meam**, *beyond my recollection*

**supra caelos**, *beyond the heavens*

**supra millia hominum**, *above a thousand men*

**supra intelligentiam**, *beyond understanding*

## 2. The potential subjunctive.

This subjunctive indicates an act as possible or conceivable.

a) It is used in the first person singular of the present or perfect subjunctive in a cautious or modest assertion with verbs of wishing, thinking, or saying.

**Velim sic existiment.** *I should like them to think so.*

**Putaverim eum veterem esse.** *I should imagine him to be old.*

**Licentia vestra dicam.** *I would say with your permission.*

b) It may also be used in the indefinite second singular of the present or imperfect subjunctive of similar verbs.

**Credas vitam ejus agi.** *You would think that his life is at stake.*  
**Audires voces.** *You might have heard voices.*

c) When some word in a sentence implies that the action is merely possible, all persons of any verb may be used. **Quisquam exigit.** *Anyone may demand.*

d) **Forsitan, forte, perhaps,** regularly take the potential subjunctive.  
**Forsitan sapientiam actionum ejus dubites.** *You may perhaps doubt the wisdom of his acts.*

#### EXERCISES

1. **Dixerim eum se bene egisse, etiam si solum quintum annum agat.** 2. **De cetero existimem nos in dies gratias agere debere.** 3. **Vos velim ei interim munera impertiamini quae valde meretur.** 4. **Non audeam eas certiores reddere quam ob rem annuli venditi sint.** 5. **Putaverim eos homines esse qui leges integras effectivasque instituere possint.** 6. **Credas quod hunc diem festum numquam cognoverit.** 7. **Existimares quia ex jejunio ob excellentiam habituum suorum excepti essent.** 8. **Videres episcopos presbyteri vestibus indutos, econtra numquam videbis presbyteros episcopi vestibus indutos.** 9. **Posses existimare eos jejunio et oratione dies festos acturos esse.** 10. **Religiosus ob Romam incedebat, cum post meridiem prope templum vetustissimum ornamentum sacrum invenerit.** 11. **Aliquis dicat doctrinam purgatorii non sufficienter in scripturis exponi.** 12. **Quis contendat quoniam litterae non authenticae sint, et ob eam causam non admitti possit, dum nomen et officium in libro signet.** 13. **Probabilius penes latrones sit, quam apud amicos.** 14. **Quidam credat puerum post tantas poenas se bene acturum.** 15. **Quivis existimaret ob vestem peregrinam quod ex longinquo venisset.** 16. **Forsitan religiosa librum sacelli pone januam posuerit, dum altare mundaret.** 17. **Forsitan rector tam vetus sit, ut res illae supra memoriam suam sint.** 18. **Forsitan vellet rex te abstineres a mendaciis ac actibus impudicis ut nepotibus exemplum**

bonum exhiberes. 19. Forte domina non postulet cur litteras ejus non agnoveritis ante hanc hebdomadam. 20. Forsitan vestes non induere soliti essent quae ad talos pertingerent.

## READING

1. Ordo moralis consistit in relationibus essentialibus, quibus homo refertur ad Deum, ad semetipsum et ad alias creaturas. Hae relationes ab homine exigunt complures, easque diversas operationes, quibus ex voluntate Dei contendere debet ad finem suum; quam ob rem ordo moralis consistit etiam in operationibus, quibus homo tendit in finem suum. Tandem accedit ordo mediorum ad finem, quibus Deus hominem juvat, ut ad finem suum perveniat. Ordo igitur moralis complete spectatus comprehendit finem ultimum, Deum, in cujus possessione homo perfectam felicitatem consequitur, relationes, quibus homo refertur ad Deum, ad semetipsum, ad alios; operationes, quae relationibus hominis essentialibus consentaneae sunt, ac tandem media, quae ex institutione divina ad obtinendum finem inserviunt. Ordo igitur moralis a Deo institutus via est, qua ad finem tendimus, et medium, cujus observatione finem nostrum adipiscimur; unde s. Augustinus docet: Ordo est, quem si tenueris in vita, perducet ad Deum.

Cum ordo in genere sit relatio unius ad alterum, ad constituendum ordinem moralem imprimis considerandae sunt relationes, quibus homo refertur ad alterum; porro tres sunt ejusmodi relationes in ipsa natura humana fundatae, relatio religiosa, relatio individualis et relatio socialis. Homo enim refertur ad Deum, primum suum principium et ultimum finem; refertur ad semetipsum: compluribus enim iisque diversis instructus est inclinationibus et potentiis, quae natura sua ita comparatae sunt, ut inferiores referantur ad superiores et vicissim superiores ad inferiores; homo tandem refertur ad alias creaturas sive rationales sive irracionales: homo enim ut pars universi hinc quidem ad societatem cum aliis hominibus constituendam natura sua ordinatur, inde vero jure instructus est utendi rebus materialibus, in quantum ad consequendum finem suum id requiritur. Patet ordinem moralem natura sua esse ordinem finalem, cum tota hominis

natura cum omnibus suis relationibus ad Deum, finem ultimum, ordinata sit; relatio quidem religiosa immediate, relatio autem individualis et socialis mediate. Ex hoc nempe intelligitur dignitas atque excellentia naturae rationalis, quae sola immediatam relationem ad Deum habet; e contra creaturae irrationales immediate ad hominem et mediate per hominem ad Deum referuntur.

Cum homo natura referatur ad Deum ut creatura ad creatorem, ordo exigit, ut homo creatorem ac dominum suum agnoscat, eum revereatur, ei serviat eumque diligit. Cum corpus se habeat ad animam ut instrumentum ad agens principale, ordo exigit, ut vires inferiores subjiciantur ac serviant superioribus, superiores vero dirigant inferiores. Ideo s. Gregorius M. rationem vocat dominam familiae multae. Denique cum homo referatur ad alios homines ut ad socios et conservos ejusdem naturae participes atque ad eundem finem destinatos, ordo exigit, ut alios sicut semetipsum diligit atque in vita sociali justitiam servet.

2.

Can. 801

In sanctissima Eucharistia sub speciebus panis et vini ipsemet Christus Dominus continetur, offertur, sumitur.

Can. 802

Potestatem offerendi Missae sacrificium habent soli sacerdotes.

Can. 803

Non licet pluribus sacerdotibus concelebrare, praeterquam in Missa ordinationis presbyterorum et in Missa consecrationis Episcoporum secundum Pontificale Romanum.

Can. 804

Sacerdos extraneus ecclesiae in qua celebrare postulat, exhibens authenticas et adhuc validas litteras commendatitias sui Ordinarii, si sit saecularis, vel sui Superioris, si religiosus, vel Sacrae Congregationis pro Ecclesia Orientali, si sit ritus orientalis, ad Missae celebrationem

admittatur, nisi interim aliquid eum commisisse constet, cur a Missae celebratione repelli debeat.

Si iis litteris careat, sed rectori ecclesiae de ejus probitate apprime constet, poterit admitti; si vero rectori sit ignotus, admitti adhuc potest semel vel bis, dummodo, ecclesiastica veste indutus, nihil ex celebratione ab ecclesia in qua litat, quovis titulo, percipiat, et nomen, officium suamque dioecesim in peculiari libro signet.

Peculiares hac de re normae, salvis hujus canonis praescriptis, ab Ordinario loci datae, servandae sunt ab omnibus, etiam religiosis exemptis, nisi agatur de admittendis ad celebrandum religiosis in ecclesia suae religionis.

#### Can. 805

Sacerdotes omnes obligatione tenentur Sacrum litandi pluries per annum; curet autem Episcopus vel Superior religiosus ut iidem saltem singulis diebus dominicis aliisque festis de praecepto divinis operentur.

#### Can. 806

Excepto die Nativitatis Domini et die Commemorationis omnium fidelium defunctorum, quibus facultas est ter offerendi Eucharisticum Sacrificium, non licet sacerdoti plures in die celebrare Missas, nisi ex apostolico indulto aut potestate facta a loci Ordinario.

Hanc tamen facultatem impertiri nequit Ordinarius, nisi cum, prudenti ipsius judicio, propter penuriam sacerdotum die festo de praecepto notabilis fidelium pars Missae adstare non possit; non est autem in ejus potestate plures quam duas Missas eidem sacerdoti permittere.

#### Can. 807

Sacerdos sibi conscius peccati mortalis, quantumvis se contritum existimet, sine praemissa sacramentali confessione Missam celebrare ne audeat; quod si, deficiente copia confessarii et urgente necessitate, elicitum tamen perfectae contritionis actu, celebraverit, quamprimum confiteatur.

## Can. 808

Sacerdoti celebrare ne liceat, nisi jejunio naturali a media nocte servato.

## Can. 809

Integrum est Missam applicare pro quibusvis tum vivis, tum etiam defunctis purgatorio igne admissa expiantibus, salvo praescripto can. 2262, § 2, n. 2.

## Can. 810

Sacerdos ne omittat ad Eucharistici Sacrificii oblationem sese piis precibus disponere, eoque expleto, gratias Deo pro tanto beneficio agere.

## Can. 811

Sacerdos, Missam celebraturus, deferat vestem convenientem quae ad talos pertingat et sacra ornamenta a rubricis sui ritus praescripta.

Abstineat autem a pileolo et annulo, nisi sit S.R.E. Cardinalis, Episcopus vel Abbas benedictus, aut nisi apostolicum indultum eorumdem usum in Missa celebranda eidem permittat.

## Can. 812

Nulli sacerdoti celebranti, praeter Episcopos aliosque praelatos usu pontificalium fruentes, licet, sola honoris aut sollemnitatis causa, habere presbyterum assistentem.

## Can. 813

Sacerdos Missam ne celebret sine ministro qui eidem inserviat et respondeat.

Minister Missae inserviens ne sit mulier, nisi, deficiente viro, justa de causa, eaque lege ut mulier ex longinquo respondeat nec ullo pacto ad altare accedat.

## LESSON XXX

### Vocabulary

advertentia, f., *knowledge, warning*

ambulare, *to walk*

antimensium, n. (in the Eastern Church, a consecrated cloth used in place of an altar, or, sometimes, in the Syrian Church a slab of wood so used)

attentus, *attentive*

aurora, f., *dawn*

azymus, *unleavened*

cavere, cavi, cautus, *to beware*

citius, *sooner, earlier, before*

conficere, -feci, -fectus, *to make, to effect*

consensus, m., *consent*

conventualis, *conventual, of a convent*

cubiculum, n., *bedroom*

fas, *lawful*

fermentatus, *fermented*

genimen, n., *fruit*

Graecus, *Greek*

honestus, *decent, proper*

imperare, *to command, to govern*

imperium, n., *command, rule*

indeliberate, *involuntarily, without deliberation*

irrescindibilis, *irrevocable*

latissimus, *widest*

licitus, *licit, lawful*

mare, n., *sea*

merces, f., *wages*



meridies, m., *noon*  
 miscere (2), -cui, mixtus, *to mix*  
 modicissimus, *a very little*  
 modicus, *a little*  
 nuncupare, *to name, to call*  
 odium, n., *hate*  
 pendere (2), pependi, *to hang, to depend*  
 petra, f., *stone, rock*  
 portatilis, *portable*  
 privare, *to deprive*  
 proinde, *therefore, accordingly*  
 promerere (2), -merui, -meritus, *to obtain, to deserve*  
 rependere, -pendi, -pensus, *to pay, to reward*  
 requisitum, n., *requisite*  
 rescindere, -scidi, -scissus, *to cut off, to rescind, to revoke*  
 rescindibilis, *revocable*  
 retributio, f., *reward*  
 secumferre, -tuli, -latus, *to bear with oneself, to take along*  
 serius, *later, after*  
 sero, *late*  
 triticeus, *wheaten*  
 ubicunque (ubicumque) *wherever, whenever*  
 ulterior, *further*  
 vitis, f., *vine*  
 votum, n., *vow, prayer*

#### Idioms

1. *quam plurimi, as many as possible*
2. *quam maxime, as much as possible*
3. *sera nocte, multa nocte, late at night*
4. *summus mons, the top of the hill*
5. *id ipsum, that very thing*
6. *quod ipsum, which of itself alone*
7. *per modum actus, by way of specific instances, not habitually*

## GRAMMAR

## I. Some prepositions.

a) **Trans** governs the accusative and means *across, through, throughout*.

**trans lacum**, *across the lake*

**trans media varia**, *through various means*

**trans vitam longam**, *throughout a long life*

b) **Ultra** governs the accusative, means *beyond, further, on the other side*, and may express time, place, or measure.

**ultra annos infantiles**, *beyond the years of childhood*

**ultra Tiberim**, *on the other side of the Tiber*

**ultra mensuram**, *beyond measure*

c) **Versus**, *towards*, takes the accusative and may be used literally or figuratively to denote place.

**versus Galliam**, *toward France*

**versus vitam meliorem**, *toward a better life*

d) **Absque**, *without, but for, except for*, governs the ablative.

**Absque me (te, etc.)** is sometimes used with the imperfect subjunctive to introduce a contrary to fact condition.

**absque normis**, *without rules*

**absque paucis casibus**, *except for a few cases*

**absque nobis esset**, *if it were not for us*

e) **Coram**, *in the presence of, before the eyes of*, takes the ablative.

**coram rege**, *in the presence of the king*

f) **Cum** governs the ablative and may mean *with, together with, at*. It is always attached to personal object pronouns and often to relatives.

**cum sacerdote**, *with the priest*

**prima cum luce**, *at daybreak*

**mecum**, *with me*; **tecum**, *with you*; **quibuscum**, *with which*

2. The **gerundive** in an ablative absolute. A clause may be compactly expressed by using an ablative absolute made up of the gerundive and the past participle of the same verb

*servatis servandis*, after having observed the things that are to be observed (literally, the-to-be-observed having-been-observed)

## EXERCISES

1. Scriptis scribendis, litteras ad regem tulit, qui nigro indutus in throno ex auro sedebat. 2. Fas est, factis faciendis, rescindere quaequam jura, quae prius concessa sint. 3. Nobis recenter ostendit quod rependi promeret, proinde retributionem donabimus ei. 4. Secum tuleruntne altare portabile, ut Missam trans mare celebrare possent? 5. Per tempora difficilia et trans terras frigidas ac siccas apostoli Evangelium versus gentes haereticas adducebant. 6. Id ipsum faciemus, ut vites quam plurimas in locum istum latissimum ponamus. 7. Sera nocte ad summum montem accesserunt, sed vero ob tenebras profundas nihil viderunt. 8. Multae gentes infideles ultra mare habitabant, quod ipsum satis erat, ut impedirentur ne ad fidem christianam converterentur. 9. Productis quam maxime producendis, requirebatur quod omnes panem triticeum comedere desinerent. 10. Mixtis miscendis, serva atque domina octo panes albos conficient, quos serius pauperibus impertient. 11. Absque iis esset, tu nunce coram iudice stares. 12. Absque normis talibus, mundus in statu perpetuo confusionis esset, etiam si media infinita progressus materialis haberet. 13. Nefas est, rejectis rejiciendis, conditiones posteriores condonare, quae ad curas ultra mensuram adducent. 14. Ubicumque mecum eat, semper se agit cum energia et cum eloquentia loquitur. 15. Absque Petro Dominus non super petram ecclesiam suam constituere potuisset. 16. Mulier, quacum nos ambulantes versus oratorium videbatis, abbatis mater erat. 17. Sacerdos Graecus cum praelato ex Gallia loqui poterat, quoniam uterque linguam latinam cognoscebat. 18. Absque vobis esset, parvulus sub pedes bruti cecidisset. 19. Provisis providendis, non jam ullum timorem sentiebant, eorum quae eis serius acciderent. 20. Scisne quod mare nuncupatum sit ab antiquis *mare nostrum*?

## READING

1. In finem ultimum supernaturalem homo suis actibus tendere debet: beatitudo enim aeterna tamquam merces et praemium laboris nobis rependitur. Jam vero ut actus nostri ad finem supernaturalem ultimum promerendum apti sint, humani, moraliter boni, supernaturales et meritorii esse debent: finis enim obtineri nequit nisi actibus, qui fini sunt proportionati; sed hi soli actus fini ultimo supernaturali sunt proportionati; quare ordine agendum est de actibus humanis, de actibus moralibus, supernaturalibus et meritoriis.

Actus humani latissimo sensu dicuntur, qui ab homine fiunt; dividuntur in actus hominis et in actus stricte et proprie humanos. Actus hominis illi dicuntur, qui homini et brutis communes sunt, quia non pendent a libera voluntate, quales sunt actus sentiendi, actus cogitandi, actus volendi, qui indeliberate fiunt. Actus humani dicuntur, qui hominis proprii sunt, quia a libera voluntate dependent, quorum proinde homo est dominus, et definiri solent: actus, qui a deliberata voluntate procedunt, i.e. qui fiunt cum advertentia mentis et cum libero consensu voluntatis, ut sunt actus liberi tum intelligendi et volendi tum etiam sentiendi.

Actus elicit, qui a voluntate procedunt et in ipsa perficiuntur ut actus amoris, odii, desiderii, imperati dicuntur, qui ex imperio voluntatis ab alia potentia, sive interna ut actus cogitandi sive externa ut actus ambulandi, exercentur. Alii sunt interni, alii externi, alii mixti: interni vocantur, qui ab animae potentiis mere internis perficiuntur ut actus cogitandi; externi vocantur, qui (a voluntate) per organa corporis externa perficiuntur ut actus ambulandi, videndi; mixti dicuntur, qui a potentiis externis et internis simul exercentur ut attendenda oratio vocalis, devota adoratio per genuflexionem.

Actus boni, mali, indifferentes: boni, qui rectae rationi sunt conformes; mali, qui rectae rationi repugnant; indifferentes, qui rectae rationi nec conformes sunt nec repugnant; hi boni vel mali evadunt potissimum ex fine, propter quem fiunt. Actus bonus aut indifferens vocatur etiam licitus, quia nulla lege prohibetur; malus vero nuncupatur illicitus, quia legi vel divinae vel humanae opponitur. Alii actus

sunt naturales, alii supernaturales: naturales illi vocantur, qui solis naturae viribus producuntur; supernaturales illi, qui auxilio divinae gratiae perficiuntur. Actus tum naturales tum supernaturales dicuntur meritorii, prout digni sunt, quibus aliqua retributio rependatur. In quibusdam actibus (qui ponuntur ad specialem effectum producendum) ulterior distinctio est in validos et invalidos: validi dicuntur qui gaudent omnibus requisitis ad proprium suum effectum producendum: invalidi autem, quibus deest aliqua condicio ad id necessaria; sic votum dicitur validum, quod necessarias condiciones habet ad inducendam obligationem. Validi sunt aut rescindibiles aut irrescindibiles prout humana voluntate rescindi seu vi sua privari possunt ut vota, contractus, aut non possunt ut sacramenta.

2.

Can. 814

Sacrosanctum Missae sacrificium offerri debet ex pane et vino, cui modicissima aqua miscenda est.

Can. 815

Panis debet esse mere triticeus et recenter confectus, ita ut nullum sit periculum corruptionis.

Vinum debet esse naturale de genimine vitis et non corruptum.

Can. 816

Missae celebratione sacerdos, secundum proprium ritum, debet panem azymum vel fermentatum adhibere ubicunque Sacrum litet.

Can. 817

Nefas est, urgente etiam extrema necessitate, alteram materiam sine altera, aut etiam utramque, extra Missae celebrationem, consecrare.

Can. 818

Reprobata quavis contraria consuetudine, sacerdos celebrans accurate ac devote servet rubricas suorum ritualium librorum, caveatque ne alias caeremonias aut preces proprio arbitrio adjungat.

## Can. 819

Missae sacrificium celebrandum est lingua liturgica sui cuiusque ritus ab Ecclesia probati.

## Can. 820

Missae sacrificium omnibus diebus celebrari potest, exceptis iis qui proprio sacerdotis ritu excluduntur.

## Can. 821

Missae celebrandae initium ne fiat citius quam una hora ante auroram vel serius quam una hora post meridiem.

In nocte Nativitatis Domini inchoari media nocte potest sola Missa conventualis vel paroecialis, non autem alia sine apostolico indulto.

In omnibus tamen religionis seu piis domibus oratorium habentibus cum facultate sanctissimam Eucharistiam habitualiter asservandi, nocte Nativitatis Domini, unus sacerdos tres rituales Missas vel, servatis servandis, unam tantum quae adstantibus omnibus ad praecepti quoque satisfactionem valeat, celebrare potest et sacram communionem petentibus ministrare.

## Can. 822

Missae celebranda est super altare consecratum et in ecclesia vel oratorio consecrato aut benedicto ad normam juris, salvo praescripto can. 1196.

Privilegium altaris portatilis vel jure vel indulto Sedis tantum Apostolicae conceditur.

Hoc privilegium ita intelligendum est, ut secumferat facultatem ubique celebrandi, honesto tamen ac decenti loco et super petram sacram, non autem in mari.

Loci Ordinarius aut, si agatur de domo religionis exemptae, Superior major, licentiam celebrandi extra ecclesiam et oratorium super petram sacram et decenti loco, nunquam autem in cubiculo, concedere potest justa tantum ac rationabili de causa, in aliquo extraordinario casu et per modum actus.

## Can. 823

Non licet Missam celebrare in templo haereticorum vel schismaticorum, etsi olim rite consecrato aut benedicto.

Deficiente altari proprii ritus, sacerdoti fas est ritu proprio celebrare in altari consecrato alius ritus catholici, non autem super Graecorum antimensiis.

In altaribus papalibus nemo celebret sine apostolico indulto.

## LESSON XXXI

### Vocabulary

accessus, m., *access*  
adversari (dep.), *to be opposed*  
aliunde, *hence*  
alloqui (dep. 3), **-locutus**, *to address*  
antiquatus, *archaic, out-dated*  
arcanus, *secret, sacred*  
aspicere, **-spexi, -spectus**, *to look toward*  
blandiri (dep.), *to flatter*  
bravium, n., *prize*  
castigare, *to chastise, to punish*  
cohortari (dep. 1), *to encourage, to exhort*  
compati (dep. 3, io), **-passus**, *to suffer with*  
deserere, **-serui, -sertus**, *to desert, to forsake*  
discere, **didici**, *to learn*  
haeres, m., *heir*  
insinuare, *to hint at, to suggest*  
interpres, m., *expounder, translator*  
intueri (dep. 2), **-tuitus**, *to behold, to have in view*  
jugum, n., *yoke*  
levis, *light, slight*  
obtemperare, *to obey*  
onus, n., *burden*  
peritus, *skilled, expert*  
plerique, *most, very many*  
praedicare, *to preach*  
praefatus, *aforesaid*  
pronus, *prone, inclined*  
protoparens, m., *first parent*



quamdiu, *as long as*  
 redigere, -egi, -actus, *to bring back, to reduce*  
 reprobus, *cast off, rejected*  
 resipiscentia, f., *repentance*  
 siquidem, *inasmuch as*  
 sobrie, *soberly*  
 stadium, n., *racecourse, race*  
 testari (dep.), *to testify*  
 theophania, f., *manifestation of God in human form*  
 verax, *true*  
 verberare, *to beat*  
 versiculus, m., *verse*  
 V. Test. (abbr.), *Old Testament*  
 vocabulum, n., *name*

## Idioms

1. de hac re hactenus, *so much for that*
2. ire obviam, *to go to meet*
3. jam non, *no longer*
4. jam diu, *for a long time*
5. jam dudum, *long, a long time*
6. jam jamque, *now at this very moment*

## GRAMMAR

## I. Some prepositions.

a) **Prae**, *before, in comparison with*, takes the ablative.

**Crucem prae se fert.** *He bears the cross before him.*

**Prae templo id parvum est.** *This is small in comparison with the temple.*

b) **Pro**, *in front of, for the sake of, in behalf of, instead of*, takes the ablative.

**pro sacello,** *in front of the chapel*

**pro avo**, *in behalf of the grandfather*

**pro consule**, *instead of the consul (proconsul)*

c) **Sine**, *without*, governs the ablative.

**sine consensu**, *without the consent*

d) **Tenus**, *as far as, up to*, governs the ablative. It follows its object and is frequently attached to the feminine of an adjective pronoun to form an adverb.

**Sinis tenus**, *as far as China*

**tecto tenus**, *up to the roof*

**hactenus**, *hitherto*

**quatenus**, *so far as*

e) **Sub**, *under*, governs the accusative when motion is indicated, but the ablative when it denotes rest in a place.

**Ea sub sedem posuit.** *He put them under the chair.*

**Aqua sub terra est.** *There is water under the ground.*

f) **Subter**, *beneath, below*, usually governs the accusative, but may take the ablative.

**subter montem**, *below the hill*

**subter lacu**, *below the lake*

g) **Super**, *over, above*, governs the accusative to indicate place. With the meaning of *concerning* or *about*, it takes the ablative.

**super capita nostra**, *over our heads*

**super socordia**, *concerning sloth*

2. In Latin the present indicative with expressions of duration of time is used where English requires the present perfect. The imperfect, therefore, is replaced in English by the pluperfect.

**Jam diu credit quoniam filius suus adhuc vivit.** *He has long believed that his son is still living.*

**Jam dudum loquebantur.** *They had been talking for a long time.*

## EXERCISES

1. Eos jam dudum cohortamur, ut notiones suas falsas de hereditate rejiciant. 2. Quatenus scimus septem annos de hac re non agitur. 3. Pater vir justus atque humilis erat, qui non solum filiis compatiebatur, sed etiam conjunctis ac amicis. 4. Super coenam suam duas horas remanebant, nam non alii alios jam dudum videbant. 5. Multos jam annos satagunt, cum modica necessitas tanti sacrificii fuerit. 6. Super virtutibus theologicis jam diu legimus, et jam jamque non eas nominare possumus. 7. Ea matri suae obviam venit, quia eam accedentem ex longinquo viderat. 8. Olim propter domini amorem laboraverunt, sed jam diu solum mercedem intuentur. 9. De hac re hactenus, nisi vobis est in animo totam noctem agere super praedestinatione disserendo. 10. Prope montem modicum aurum invenerunt, quod effecit, ut amplius subter petras quaererent. 11. Mercedes hujus mundi tenues sunt prae remunerationibus quas in caelis expectaturi sumus. 12. Diaconus incensum prae se ferens in oratorium introivit, ubi numerus praemagnus ex incolis circumstabat. 13. Sine parochi licentia nemini summa turre tenus ascendere licet. 14. Jam dudum in stadio currit, sed nondum bravium accepit. 15. Conservis suis jam diu blandiebatur, proinde serius iis sine difficultate suasit ut dominum traderent.

## READING

1. Nemo, quantumvis justificatus, liberum se esse ab observatione mandatorum putare debet, nemo temeraria illa et a patribus sub anathemate prohibita voce uti, Dei praecepta homini justificato ad observandum esse impossibilia. Nam Deus impossibilia non jubet, sed jubendo monet, et facere quod possis et petere quod non possis, et adjuvat ut possis; *cujus mandata gravia non sunt, cujus jugum suave est et onus leve*. Qui enim sunt filii Dei, Christum diligunt; qui autem diligunt eum (ut ipsemet testatur), servant sermones ejus, quod utique cum divino auxilio praestare possunt. Licet enim in hac mortali vita quantumvis sancti et justi in levia saltem et quotidiana, quae etiam venialia dicuntur, peccata quandoque cadant, non propterea desinunt

esse justi. Nam justorum illa vox est et humilis et verax: *Dimitte nobis debita nostra*. Quo fit, ut justi ipsi eo magis se obligatos ad ambulandum in via justitiae sentire debeant, quo *liberati jam a peccato, servi autem facti Deo, sobrie et juste et pie viventes*, proficere possint per Christum Jesum, per quem accessum habuerunt in gratiam istam. Deus namque sua gratia semel justificatos non deserit, nisi ab eis prius deseratur. Itaque nemo sibi in sola fide blandiri debet, putans fide sola se haeredem esse constitutum haereditatemque consecuturum, etiamsi Christo non compatiatur, ut et conglorificetur. Nam et Christus ipse (ut inquit Apostolus), *cum esset Filius Dei, didicit ex iis, quae passus est, obedientiam, et consummatus factus est omnibus obtemperantibus sibi causa salutis aeternae*. Propterea Apostolus ipse monet justificatos dicens: *Nescitis quod ii, qui in stadio currunt, omnes quidem currunt, sed unus accipit bravium? sic currite, ut comprehendatis. Ego igitur sic curro, non quasi in incertum, sic pugno, non quasi aërem verberans, sed castigo corpus meum et in servitutem redigo, ne forte, cum aliis praedicaverim, ipse reprobos efficiar*. Item princeps apostolorum Petrus: *Satagite, ut per bona opera certam vestram vocationem et electionem faciatis; haec enim facientes non peccabitis aliquando*. Unde constat, eos orthodoxae religionis doctrinae adversari, qui dicunt, justum in omni bono opere saltem venialiter peccare, aut, quod intolerabilius est, poenas aeternas mereri; atque etiam eos, qui statuunt, in omnibus operibus justos peccare, si in illis suam ipsorum socordiam excitando et sese ad currendum in stadio cohortando, cum hoc, ut in primis glorificetur Deus, mercedem quoque intuentur aeternam, cum scriptum sit: *Inclinavi cor meum ad faciendas justificationes tuas propter retributionem*, et de Moyse dicat Apostolus, quod aspiciebat in remuneratione.

Nemo, quamdiu in hac mortalitate vivitur, de arcano divinae praedestinationis mysterio usque adeo praesumere debet, ut certo statuatur se omnino esse in numero praedestinatorum, quasi verum esset, quod justificatus aut amplius peccare non possit, aut, si peccaverit, certam sibi resipiscentiam promittere debeat. Nam nisi ex speciali revelatione sciri non potest, quos Deus sibi elegerit.

2. Deus Judaeis mysterium SS. Trinitatis expresse proponere noluit, ne forte putarent ibi tres deos proponi colendos; historia enim constat eos, propter nationes paganas quibus circumdabantur, ad polytheismum maxime pronos fuisse; sed, tum verbis tum theophaniis aliquam esse pluralitatem in divinis primum indigitavit, posteaque magis dilucide secundam saltem esse personam in Deo esse gradatim manifestavit, ut ita via pararetur plenae hujus mysterii revelationi. In nonnullis V. Test. locis pluralitas in Deo insinuat. Praetermittimus ea quae nonnulli Patres de primis versiculis Genesis exposuerunt: dicebant siquidem *in principio* idem sonare ac *in Filio*, et vocabulum *spiritus Dei* de tertia SS. Trinitatis persona intelligebant; sed apud linguae hebraicae peritos, haec expositio jam est antiquata. Neque ex plurali forma *Elohim* aliquid certi deduci potest: Judaei enim et plerique interpretes dicunt plurale hoc esse majestaticum, indicans in divinae essentiae unitate multiplicem esse virtutem. Aliis tamen in locis haec pluralitas indigitatur. Deus, antequam hominem crearet, dixit: "*Faciamus* hominem ad imaginem et similitudinem *nostram*"; item, quando jam in eo erat ut expelleret protoparentes ex paradiso, ait: "Ecce Adam quasi *unus ex nobis*"; tandem post aedificationem turris Babel, Deus ita loquitur: "*Venite* igitur, *descendamus* et confundamus ibi linguam eorum." Atqui, licet stricte loquendo, illud plurale in lingua hebraica adhiberi possit ab unica persona, vel majestatis causa, vel ad intensitatem exprimendam, melius tamen explicatur si de facto admittantur plures in Deo personae praesertim ubi dicitur *unus ex nobis*; revera plerique Patres ita praefata verba intellexerunt; ait enim Faustinus, presbyter Romanus: "Non est unius personae dicere *faciamus* ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram, sed neque diversae deitatis. Nam pluralitas horum verborum, i.e. *faciamus* et *nostram*, Patris et Filii personas significat. Quod autem singulariter *imaginem* dicit, una deitas, una virtus utriusque personae manifestatur." Nec dici potest hic Deum alloqui Angelos; nam nulla neque praecessit, neque sequitur Angelorum mentio. Aliunde, ut notat Augustinus, homo ad imaginem Dei, non angelorum factus est.

## LESSON XXXII

### Vocabulary

**Adae**, gen. of **Adam**, m., *Adam*

**aegre**, *with hardship*

**confugere** (io), -fugi, *to flee*

**contingere**, -tigi, -tactus, *to touch, to extend to*

**dissentire**, -sensi, -sensus, *to disagree, to dissent, to refuse to give assent*

**figmentum**, n., *fiction*

**formaliter**, *formally*

**fusius**, *more extensively, at greater length*

**gehenna**, f., *hell*

**generare**, *to beget, to create*

**inanime**, *inanimately*

**innuere**, -nui, -nutus, *to intimate*

**invehere**, -vexi, -vectus, *to bring into, to introduce*

**metus**, m., *fear*

**obumbrare**, *to overshadow*

**pejor**, *worse*

**permissive**, *permissively*

**poenitere** (2), -itui, *to repent*

**proditio**, f., *treason*

**recensere** (2), -censui, -censitus, *to enumerate*

**renasci** (dep. 3), -natus, *to be born again*

**satanas**, m., *Satan*

**subobscure**, *somewhat obscurely*

**textus**, m., *text*

**uterus**, m., *womb*

**vehementius**, *earnestly*

## Idioms

1. nihil aliud, *nothing else*
2. nulla ex parte, *in no way*
3. ex eo quod, *because, from the fact that*
4. ex fide, *in good faith*
5. non nisi, *only*

## GRAMMAR

1. **Vocative case.** This is the case of direct address.

a) The vocative is the same as the nominative in form except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the second declension. These have **e** in the vocative.

b) Proper names in **-ius** of the second declension have **-i** in the vocative; so also **filius, fili; genius** (divine guardian), **geni**.

**Audi, mi fili.** *Hear, my son.*

**Vergilius, Vergili**

c) Adjectives in **-ius** form the vocative in **-ie**.

**Lacedaemonie, O Spartan**

d) The vocative singular of **meus** is **mi** or **meus**.

**Attendite, popule meus, legem meam.** *Attend, O my people, to my law.*

e) **Deus** has the vocative the same as the nominative.

**Audi me, Deus Domine.** *Hear me, O Lord God.*

f) **Jesus** has the vocative **Jesu**.

**Tu solus Altissimus, Jesu Christe.** *Thou only, O Jesus Christ, art most high.*

2. **The imperative mood.**

a) The imperative is used in commands and entreaties.

**Dic, mi fili.** *Speak, my son.*

**Exsurgite, Romani.** *Arise, Romans.*

**Miserere nobis, Domine.** *Have mercy on us, O Lord.*

b) The third person of the imperative is formal and declamatory.

**Terram amanto.** *They shall love the earth.*

This form of the imperative is often replaced by the hortatory subjunctive.

**Terram ament.** *Let them love the earth.*

c) The future imperative is used where there is a definite reference to the future, or where the command implies permanency.

**Cras adstato.** *Tomorrow thou shalt be present.*

**Estote semper fideles.** *Be ye ever faithful.*

d) **Scire**, **meminisse**, and **habere** usually take the future imperative instead of the present.

**Scito jugum non leve esse.** *Know that the yoke is not light.*

**Occasionis hujus mementote, amici mei.** *Remember this occasion, my friends.*

**Id habeto utpote motivum bonum.** *Regard this as a good motive.*

e) **Quin** with the present indicative may replace the imperative.

**Quin bravium accipis.** *Here, take the prize (why not take the prize).*

**Quin eos agnoscitis.** *Acknowledge them.*

f) The simple imperative may also be replaced by such introductory words as **cura ut**, *take care that*; **fac (fac ut)**, *do that*; **velim**, *I should like*, followed by the subjunctive.

**Cura ut id discas bene.** *Take care to learn it well.*

**Facite ut humiles sitis.** *Try to be humble.*

**Velim citius venias.** *Please come earlier.*



## EXERCISES

1. Velim facere desinas ea quae non nisi aegre peragantur. 2. Quin hanc vestem albam induis; nigra non indigebis usque ad feriam quartam. 3. Curate ut genuflexionem faciatis, ubique ad altare accedatis. 4. Fac eis mercedem pendas, qua familias suas proprie et decenter sustineant. 5. Memento, filia mea, gustus alienos considerare potius quam tuos. 6. Scitote avum vestrum fortitudinis non satis habere, ut pericula laboresque hujus terrae novae ferat. 7. Jace, Paule, petram in aquam, et circulos paulatim extendentes usque ad terram videbis. 8. Tecum fer omne quod relictum est, ut nihil perdat. 9. Audi, sancte Laurenti, orationem meam, qui magna cum fortitudine renuntiare Christum noluisti. 10. Duc, mi pater, et in fines ipsos inimicorum te sequi promitto. 11. Reveremini, Latini, patrum opera praeclara vestrorum, et majora vero perficere poteritis in annis venturis. 12. Suscipite, rei, certitudinem de poenis dignis, cum omnia delicta vestra inventa sint. 13. Scito semitam, quae sapientia tenus ducat, petris sparsa est. 14. Cura ut copia nutrimenti pueris ac mulieribus praebetur in illis civitatibus praesertim quae novissime destructae sint. 15. Monemini ad tempus, homines, nam dubium est an regis praedicta permittant, ut subditis suis privilegia concedat, quae jam diu sperent.

## READING

1. Si quis dixerit, hominem suis operibus, quae vel per humanae naturae vires, vel per legis doctrinam fiant, absque divina per Christum Jesum gratia posse justificari coram Deo: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, ad hoc solum divinam gratiam per Christum Jesum dari, ut facilius homo juste vivere ac vitam aeternam promereri possit, quasi per liberum arbitrium sine gratia utrumque, sed aegre tamen et difficulter possit: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, sine praeveniente Spiritus Sancti inspiratione atque ejus adjutorio hominem credere, sperare et diligere aut poenitere posse, sicut oportet, ut ei justificationis gratia conferatur: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, liberum hominis arbitrium a Deo motum et excitatum nihil cooperari assentiendo Deo excitanti atque vocanti, quo ad obtinendam justificationis gratiam se disponat ac praeparet, neque posse dissentire, si velit, sed velut inanime quoddam nihil omnino agere mereque passive se habere: anathema sit.

Si quis liberum hominis arbitrium post Adae peccatum amissum et extinctum esse dixerit, aut rem esse de solo titulo, immo titulum sine re, figmentum denique a satana invectum in ecclesiam: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, non esse in potestate hominis vias suas malas facere, sed mala opera ita ut bona Deum operari, non permissive solum, sed etiam proprie et per se, adeo ut sit proprium ejus opus non minus proditio Judae quam vocatio Pauli: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, opera omnia, quae ante justificationem fiunt, quacumque ratione facta sint, vere esse peccata vel odium Dei mereri, aut quanto vehementius quis nititur se disponere ad gratiam, tanto eum gravius peccare: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, gehennae metum, per quem ad misericordiam Dei de peccatis dolendo confugimus vel a peccando abstinemus, peccatum esse aut peccatores pejores facere: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, sola fide impium justificari, ita ut intelligat, nihil aliud requiri quod justificationis gratiam consequendam cooperetur, et nulla ex parte necesse esse eum suae voluntatis motu praeparari atque disponi: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, homines sine Christi justitia, per quam nobis meruit, justificari, aut per eam ipsam formaliter justos esse: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, homines justificari vel sola imputatione justitiae Christi, vel sola peccatorum remissione, exclusa gratia et caritate, quae in cordibus eorum per Spiritum Sanctum diffundatur atque illis inhaereat, aut etiam gratiam, qua justificamur, esse tantum favorem Dei: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, fidem justificantem nihil aliud esse quam fiduciam divinae misericordiae, peccata remittentis propter Christum, vel eam fiduciam solam esse, qua justificamur: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, omni homini ad remissionem peccatorum assequendam necessarium esse, ut credat certo et absque ulla haesitatione propriae infirmitatis et indispositionis, peccata sibi esse remissa: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, hominem a peccatis absolvi ac justificari ex eo, quod se absolvi ac justificari certo credat, aut neminem vere esse justificatum, nisi qui credit se esse justificatum, et hac sola fide absolutionem et justificationem perfici: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, hominem reatum et justificatum teneri ex fide ad credendum, se certo esse in numero praedestinatorum: anathema sit.

Si quis magnum illud usque in finem perseverantiae donum se certo habiturum absoluta et infallibili certitudine dixerit, nisi hoc ex speciali revelatione didicerit: anathema sit.

Si quis justificationis gratiam non nisi praedestinitis ad vitam contingere dixerit, reliquos vero omnes, qui vocantur, vocari quidem sed gratiam non accipere, utpote divina potestate praedestinos ad malum: anathema sit.

2. Magis dilucide secunda persona, a prima distincta, eique coequalis, in nonnullis locis, a tempore Prophetarum, jam commemoratur: praecipua solum recensemus, de illis fusius infra disputaturi. In Psalmis duo numerantur Domini plane distincti, quorum unus generat alterum, unus sedet ad dexteram alterius: "Filius meus es tu, ego hodie genui te. . . . Dixit Dominus Domino meo, sede a dextris meis": atqui in his locis probabiliter saltem apparet non solum existentia secundae personae, sed etiam ejus divinitas et consubstantialitas; nam Filius, qui generatur a Patre, debet non solum ab eo distingui, sed etiam possidere eandem naturam ac Pater; et quum in Deo unica sit numerice natura, ut patet ex multis aliis Scripturae locis, perfecta naturae identitas inveniri debet in Patre et Filio. Eadem doctrina clare invenitur in prophetia de Emmanuel, et in libris Proverbiorum et Ecclesiastici, in quibus asseritur existentia Sapientiae cujusdam increatae, a Deo distinctae et tamen omnes divinitatis characteres prae se ferentis. Trinitas personarum in ipso mysterio Annuntiationis satis clare enuntiatur; ibi enim videmus Angelum a Deo Patre missum:

“Missus est Angelus Gabriel a Deo in civitatem Galilaeae”; deinde exhibitur Spiritus Sanctus ut efformaturus animam et corpus Christi in utero Virginis: “Spiritus Sanctus superveniet in te, et virtus Altissimi obumbrabit tibi”; tandem Filius annuntiatur ut ex virgine nasciturus: “Ideoque et quod nascetur ex te Sanctum vocabitur Filius Dei.” Earumdem consubstantialitas non potest quidem evidenter demonstrari ex hoc solo textu; sed jam innuitur, quia secunda persona vocatur Filius Dei; atqui Filius verus et proprie dictus particeps esse debet et quidem substantialiter naturae Patris; quod confirmatur ex eo quod infra Maria vocatur mater Domini, seu mater Dei; ergo ejus Filius est vere Deus. Divinitas autem Spiritus S. subobscurè significatur verbis quibus vocatur Spiritus Altissimi, sicut Filius dicitur Altissimi Filius.

## LESSON XXXIII

### Vocabulary

aditus, m., *approach, access, gate*  
alibi, *elsewhere*  
aliquomodo, *somehow, in some manner*  
assumere, -sumpsi, -sumptus, *to take*  
augmentum, n., *increase*  
columba, f., *dove*  
confestim, *immediately*  
consecutio, f., *attainment*  
decedere, -cessi, -cessus, *to depart, to die*  
denique, *at length, precisely, no less*  
derogare, *to detract from, to derogate*  
edocere (2), -docui, -doctus, *to instruct*  
exsolvere, -solvi, -solutus, *to loose*  
fidere (semidep. 3), fisis, *to trust*  
hucusque, *hitherto*  
infidelitas, f., *unbelief*  
intuitus, m., *view, attention*  
labi (dep. 3), lapsus, *to slip, to fall*  
nudus, *bare, sole*  
paulo, *a little while, shortly*  
plenius, *more fully*  
sane, *truly, indeed, very*  
solummodo, *only*  
synodus, f., *council*

### Idioms

1. aliqua ex parte, *in some respect*
2. fiat, *so be it, very good*

3. **ut fit**, *as is commonly the case*
4. **quanto opere**, *how greatly, how much*
5. **quin etiam**, *yea indeed*
6. **quin immo**, *yea rather*

## GRAMMAR

## 1. Prohibition or negative command.

a) This may be expressed by **noli** with the infinitive, by **cave** with the present subjunctive, or by **ne** with the perfect subjunctive.

**Noli iis fidere.** *Do not trust them.*

**Cave labaris.** *Do not slip.*

**Illud ne dixeritis.** *Do not say that.*

b) The future imperative with **ne** is more formal.

**Ne jus civile negligitote.** *Do not disregard the civil law.*

c) The future with **non** is sometimes used in general precepts intended for all time.

**Non occides.** *Thou shalt not kill.*

**Non furtum facies.** *Thou shalt not steal.*

## 2. The future participle.

a) The chief use of the future participle is to form the active periphrastic with **esse**.

**Decessuri sunt.** *They are about to die.*

**Ignem taturus erat.** *He was about to touch the fire.*

b) Without **esse** the future participle may be used in agreement with a noun to denote future likelihood or intention.

**Servos jamvero egressuros ejecit.** *He ejected the servants who already intended to leave.*

## EXERCISES

1. Cavete laborem difficilem inchoetis, quoad ideam claram habeas, quomodo faciendus sit. 2. Nolite onera vobiscumferre; alii felici-

tatem habeant de iis participandis. 3. Ea decreta ne rescinditote; iis indigemus ut usque ad salvationem nostram dirigamur. 4. Ne hominem mercede justa privaveris; unus est modus mittendi panem tuum super aquas. 5. Non loqueris contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium. 6. Scito eos qui trans mare iverint, ut pro libertate pugnarent, ad patriam suam redituros esse. 7. Memento, mi amice, de die festo; Luciae ecclesiae ad januam obviam ituri sumus non serius quam una hora post auroram. 8. In annis venturis multas res intelligemus quae nobis nunc obscurae videantur. 9. Cum eum denique invenissent, dormiebat in cubiculo obscuro ac frigido, et statim videbant eum morituum esse. 10. Semetipsos lacus in aquas immersuri erant, cum expedite ignis flammae extinguerentur. 11. Non assumes nomen Domini Dei tui in vanum; hoc mandatum secundum est. 12. Cavete indiscriminatim loquamini de rebus alienis. 13. Noli desinere gemina vitis colligere, donec sol altus in caelis est. 14. Ne dixeris, mi pater, te stultas sententias mundanas accipere post tantos annos sapienter vivendi. Minime, filia mea. 15. Inter petras refugituri eramus, cum furiosos leonis oculos effulgentes in tenebris videremus.

## READING

1. Si quis dixerit, Dei praecepta homini etiam justificato et sub gratia constituto esse ad observandum impossibilia: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, nihil praeceptum esse in evangelio praeter fidem, cetera esse indifferentia, neque praecepta, neque prohibita, sed libera, aut decem praecepta nihil pertinere ad Christianos: anathema sit.

Si quis hominem justificatum et quantumlibet perfectum dixerit non teneri ad observantiam mandatorum Dei et ecclesiae, sed tantum ad credendum, quasi vero evangelium sit nuda et absoluta promissio vitae aeternae, sine conditione observationis mandatorum: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, Christum Jesum a Deo hominibus datum fuisse ut redemptorem, cui fidant, non etiam ut legislatorem, cui obediant: anathema sit.

Si quis hominem semel justificatum dixerit amplius peccare non

posse, neque gratiam amittere, atque ideo eum, qui labitur et peccat, nunquam vere fuisse justificatum; aut contra, posse in tota vita peccata omnia, etiam venialia vitare, nisi ex speciali Dei privilegio, quemadmodum de beata Virgine tenet ecclesia: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, justitiam acceptam non conservari atque etiam non augeri coram Deo per bona opera, sed opera ipsa fructus solummodo et signa esse justificationis adeptae, non autem ipsius augendae causam: anathema sit.

Si quis in quolibet bono opere justum saltem venialiter peccare dixerit, aut, quod intolerabilius est, mortaliter, atque ideo poenas aeternas mereri, tantumque ob id non damnari, quia Deus ea opera non imputet ad damnationem: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, justos non debere pro bonis operibus, quae in Deo fuerint facta, expectare et sperare aeternam retributionem a Deo per ejus misericordiam et Jesu Christi meritum, si bene agendo et divina mandata custodiendo usque in finem perseveraverint: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, nullum esse mortale peccatum nisi infidelitatis, aut nullo alio quantumvis gravi et enormi praeterquam infidelitatis peccato semel acceptam gratiam amitti: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, amissa per peccatum gratia simul et fidem semper amitti, aut fidem, quae remanet, non esse veram fidem, licet non sit viva, aut eum, qui fidem sine caritate habet, non esse Christianum: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, eum, qui post baptismum lapsus est, non posse per Dei gratiam resurgere; aut posse quidem, sed sola fide, amissam justitiam recuperare sine sacramento poenitentiae, prout sancta Romana et universalis ecclesia, a Christo Domino et ejus apostolis edocta, hucusque professa est, servavit et docuit: anathema sit.

Si quis post acceptam justificationis gratiam cuilibet peccatori poenitenti ita culpam remitti et reatum aeternae poenae deleri dixerit, ut nullus remaneat reatus poenae temporalis, exsolvendae vel in hoc saeculo vel in futuro in purgatorio, antequam ad regna coelorum aditus patere possit: anathema sit.



Si quis dixerit, justificatum peccare, dum intuitu aeternae mercedis bene operatur: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, hominis justificati bona opera ita esse dona Dei, ut non sint etiam bona ipsius justificati merita, aut ipsum justificatum bonis operibus, quae ab eo per Dei gratiam et Jesu Christi meritum, cujus vivum membrum est, fiunt, non vere mereri augmentum gratiae, vitam aeternam et ipsius vitae aeternae (si tamen in gratia decesserit) consecutionem, atque etiam gloriae augmentum: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, per hanc doctrinam catholicam de justificatione, a sancta synodo hoc praesenti decreto expressam, aliqua ex parte gloriae Dei vel meritis Jesu Christi Domini nostri derogari, et non potius veritatem fidei nostrae, Dei denique ac Christi Jesu gloriam illustrari: anathema sit.

2. In Baptismo Christi clare etiam apparet realis distinctio trium personarum, non solum ex variis nominibus quibus designantur, sed etiam ex operationibus plane distinctis quas efficiunt; siquidem Pater loquitur de coelo: "Et ecce vox de coelis dicens: hic est Filius dilectus, in quo mihi complacui"; *Filius* autem baptizatur a Joanne Baptista et ascendit de aqua: "Baptizatus autem Jesus confestim ascendit de aqua"; tandem *Spiritus Sanctus* ab utroque distinguitur, nam dum Pater de coelo loquitur, Ipse descendit super Christum, et quidem sub corporali specie columbae: "Et descendit Spiritus Sanctus corporali specie sicut columba in ipsum"; evidens est igitur illos tres non esse unam personam, sed tres personas realiter distinctas. Unitas autem naturae ibi non quidem tam clare sed tamen aliquomodo apparet; nam Christus asseritur Filius Dei; et quidem additur: "in quo mihi complacui," ut declaretur eum esse Filium proprium et prae omnibus dilectum. Spiritus autem vocatur Spiritus Dei, seu a Deo ipso procedens, ut plenius alibi explicabitur, ac proinde substantiae divinae particeps.

Nec minus clare apparet trium personarum realis distinctio in promissione Spiritus Sancti a Christo facta in Coena ultima. Ait enim Christus: "Ego rogabo Patrem, et alium Paraclitum dabit vobis ut

**maneat vobiscum in aeternum . . .**” “Paracletus autem Spiritus Sanctus, *quem mittit Pater* in nomine meo, ille vos docebit omnia . . .” Sane realis esse debet distinctio inter Patrem qui *mittit* Spiritum, et Filium qui *rogat* Patrem ut Spiritus mittatur, et Spiritum ipsum qui *mittitur* a Patre, in nomine Filii; nam mittens a misso, Pater a Filio distinguitur; aliunde Spiritus dicitur *alius* a Filio; et ita tres habemus personas vere distinctas. Ex contextu apparet etiam trium personarum consubstantialitas: paulo enim antea Christus dixerat: “qui videt me, videt et *Patrem*. . . . Non creditis quia ego in Patre et Pater in me est? Alioquin propter opera ipsa credite”: quae quidem verba perfectam aequalitatem Patris et Filii important, praesertim si sumantur cum toto contextu, et loco parallelo apud Joannem: “Ego et Pater unum sumus. . . . Si non facio opera Patris mei, nolite credere mihi; si autem facio, et si mihi non vultis credere, operibus credite.”

## LESSON XXXIV

### Vocabulary

**aequaliter**, *equally*

**auctoritas**, f., *authority*

**brevis**, *short*

**consuetus**, *accustomed*

**contemnere**, -tempſi, -temptus, *to despise*

**diserte**, *distinctly, clearly, expressly*

**insuper**, *moreover*

**libitum**, n., *pleasure, liking*

**nutrire**, *to nourish*

**obex**, m. and f., *hindrance, obstacle*

**par**, *equal*

**poenitentia**, f., *penance*

**praedicatio**, f., *sermon, preaching*

**signare**, *to mark, to stamp*

**singuli** (rarely in singular), *separate, individual*

**ungere, unxi, unctus**, *to anoint*

### Idioms

1. **ex professo**, *avowedly, openly*

2. **pro libito**, *at pleasure*

3. **summo opere**, *in the highest degree*

4. **satis superque**, *enough and more than enough*

5. **immo maxime**, *most certainly not*

6. **non modo**, *not only*

7. **ne . . . quidem**, *not even*

8. **ex opere operato**. A sacrament that is administered validly and

received by a person who is **capax** has its effect; it works **ex opere operato**. If the effect of a good work (e.g., use of the sacramentals) depends on a person's spiritual disposition, it works **ex opere operantis**.

## GRAMMAR

## 1. The supine.

a) The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

**Venit remotum obicem.** *He came to remove the obstacle.*

b) The supine in **-u** is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns **fas**, **nefas**, and **opus**.

**Res factu prava est.** *It is a wicked thing to do.*

2. So-called relative clauses of characteristic require the subjunctive. These may be identified as follows.

a) The antecedent of the relative pronoun may be indefinite. **Res quasdam fecit, quas non explicare possim.** *He has done certain things that I cannot explain.*

b) The antecedent may be negative.

**Nihil habent quod velimus videre.** *They have nothing that we wish to see.*

c) **Unus** or **solus** may be the antecedent or modify the antecedent of the relative pronoun.

**Immutatio est sola quae effecta sit.** *That is the only change that has been brought about.*

d) **Quam ut** or **quam qui** may introduce the relative clause.

**Vestis brevior est quam ut usque ad talos pertingat.** *The garment is too short to reach the ankles* (shorter than it should be in order to reach).

**Magis laboris pueris dederunt quam quem desiderarent.** *They gave the boys too much work to do* (more than what they desired).

e) The adjectives **dignus**, **indignus**, **aptus**, and **idoneus** may take a relative clause in the subjunctive. The negative is **non**.

**Hic casus non dignus est quem consideremus.** *This case is not worth considering.*

## EXERCISES

1. Progressi sunt alienis suasum, sed ad extremum ipsis suasum est ut doctrinas novas acciperent. 2. Venit pro libito contemptum, sed, priusquam exivit, occasionem habebat sobrie cogitandi. 3. Multa exercitia, quae corpus forte efficiant, eum delectabant. 4. Nullam opinionem expressit, quae penitus probari possit. 5. Judex est unus, cui unusquisque fidat. 6. Hoc nefas est dictu, non igitur necesse est, ut te admoneam contra. 7. Stultum est vetitu quod non cogi possit. 8. Abbas vetustior erat quam ut concilio tridentino adstaret. 9. Coronae majores erunt quam quas parvuli super frontes suas ponant. 10. Ornamentum solum quo se induisset, annulus ex argento erat. 11. Illud opus est memoratu, aliter omnes passiones vestrae vanae fuerint. 12. Non modo fas est indultu, sed etiam maxime essentielle. 13. Haec dioecesis summo opere meritoria est, ut labores episcopi minuantur, cum venit auxilium petitu. 14. Ne scio quidem quare interim venerint fraudem suam confessum. 15. Satis superque dedit, et nullis operis pepercit, quae alios impellerent ad exemplum ejus nobile sequendum.

## READING

1. Si quis dixerit, sacramenta novae legis non fuisse omnia a Jesu Christo Domino nostro instituta, aut esse plura vel pauciora quam septem, videlicet baptismum, confirmationem, Eucharistiam, poenitentiam, extremam unctionem, ordinem et matrimonium, aut etiam aliquod horum septem non esse vere et proprie sacramentum: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, ea ipsa novae legis sacramenta a sacramentis antiquae legis non differre, nisi quia caeremoniae sunt aliae et alii ritus externi: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, haec septem sacramenta ita esse inter se paria, ut nulla ratione aliud sit alio dignius: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, sacramenta novae legis non esse ad salutem necessaria, sed superflua, et sine eis aut eorum voto per solam fidem homines a Deo gratiam justificationis adipisci, licet omnia singulis necessaria non sint: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, haec sacramenta propter solam fidem nutriendam instituta fuisse: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, sacramenta novae legis non continere gratiam quam significant, aut gratiam ipsam non ponentibus obicem non conferre, quasi signa tantum externa sint acceptae per fidem gratiae vel justitiae, et notae quaedam Christianae professionis, quibus apud homines discernuntur fideles ab infidelibus: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, non dari gratiam per hujusmodi sacramenta semper et omnibus, quantum est ex parte Dei, etiam si rite ea suscipiant, sed aliquando et aliquibus: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, per ipsa novae legis sacramenta ex opere operato non conferri gratiam, sed solam fidem divinae promissionis ad gratiam consequendam sufficere: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, in tribus sacramentis, baptismo scilicet, confirmatione et ordine, non imprimi characterem in anima, hoc est signum quoddam spirituale et indelebile, unde ea iterari non possunt: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, Christianos omnes in verbo et omnibus sacramentis administrandis habere potestatem: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, in ministris, dum sacramenta conficiunt et conferunt, non requiri intentionem, saltem faciendi quod facit ecclesia: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, ministrum in peccato mortali existentem, modo omnia essentialia, quae ad sacramentum conficiendum aut conferendum pertinent, servaverit, non conficere aut conferre sacramentum: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, receptos et approbatos ecclesiae catholicae ritus in solemni sacramentorum administratione adhiberi consuetos aut con-

temni, aut sine peccato a ministris pro libito omitti, aut in novos alios per quemcumque ecclesiarum pastorem mutari posse: anathema sit.

2. Tandem trinitas personarum manifeste apparet in forma Baptismi a Christo tradita: "Euntes ergo docete omnes gentes baptizantes eos in nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti"; nam in textu graecorum conjunctio tum articulus repetuntur ante nomen cujuslibet personae; quod quidem ridiculum esset si unica tantum esset in Deo persona, triplici virtute praedita; repetitio enim articuli tam emphatica non potest explicari sine reali distinctione personarum; insuper Pater certo est alius a Filio, et si ita est, tertius terminus, seu Spiritus S., debet esse persona a duabus aliis distincta. Ex iisdem verbis deducitur etiam naturae unitas; nam agitur hic de ritu baptismali, per quem confertur gratia sanctificans: jam vero gratia non potest dari nisi in nomine, seu virtute, seu auctoritate Dei; ergo tres personae, in quarum nomine datur gratia, sunt realiter Deus, ac proinde unius divinae naturae aequaliter particeps. Constat enim Apostolos, statim post Pentecosten, divinitatem Christi praedicavisse ex professo, et divinitatem Spiritus Sancti data opportunitate, ac proinde tres personas in Deo agnovisse. Ita v.g. S. Petrus, in prima praedicatione, quam ad Judaeos habuit, aperte declarat Christum esse illum quem David Dominum (i.e. Deum) vocat; in secunda praedicatione Christum vocat "Auctorem vitae"; alibi eum vocat "Dominum omnium"; porro haec omnia soli Deo conveniunt; ergo S. Paulus non minus diserte divinitatem Christi docet, de eo scribens: "Qui est super omnia Deus benedictus in saecula"; "Omnia per ipsum, et in ipso creata sunt." Aliunde iidem Apostoli divinitatem Spiritus S. non obscure praedicaverunt. Imo non desunt textus, in quibus tres divinae personae simul connumerantur: "Justificati estis in *nomine Domini* nostri *J. Christi*, et in *Spiritu Dei* nostri. . . . Qui autem confirmat nos vobiscum in *Christo*, et qui unxit nos *Deus*, qui et signavit nos et dedit pignus *Spiritus* in cordibus nostris." Ex his omnibus colligitur tres esse in Deo personas realiter distinctas, et simul aequales.

## LESSON XXXV

### Vocabulary

**adolescentia**, f., *adolescence*  
**adolescere** -levi, *to grow up*  
**arcere** (2), -cui, *to prevent, to exclude*  
**articulus**, m., *point, moment*  
**attenuare**, *to weaken, to diminish*  
**caput**, n., *chapter*  
**catechesis**, f., *oral instruction*  
**classicus**, *classic*  
**computare**, *to number*  
**conservator**, m., *preserver*  
**creatrix**, *creative*  
**desumere**, -sumpsi, *to choose, to select*  
**detorquere** (2), -torsi, -tortus, *to twist*  
**detrahere**, -traxi, -tractus, *to detract*  
**emollire**, *to soften, to render mild*  
**injurius**, *unjust, insulting*  
**inspicere**, -spexi, -spectus, *to examine*  
**irritus**, *void, null*  
**lapidare**, *to throw stones at*  
**multifariam**, *in many places*  
**otiosus**, *idle, useless, empty*  
**polliceri** (dep. 2), -licitus, *to promise*  
**rebaptizare**, *to rebaptize*  
**recordatio**, f., *remembrance*  
**resipiscere**, -ivi, *to repent*  
**sequens**, *following*  
**sinus**, m., *bosom*



## Idioms

1. **ratum habere**, *to ratify, to approve*
2. **nihil est quod**, *there is no reason why*
3. **unus solusque**, *the sole and only*
4. **quod sciam**, *so far as I know*
5. **hoc est**, *that is*
6. **nescio quis**, *some sort of, certain*
7. **a fortiori**, *with the greater force, the more so*
8. **sicut et**, *just as*

## GRAMMAR

1. Verbs of admonishing, warning, persuading, and the like are followed by an **ut** clause (negative **ne**) with the subjunctive.

**Admonebit ut eos recordet.** *He will admonish him to remember them.*  
**Suasit ne regnum destruerent.** *He persuaded them not to destroy the kingdom.*

2. Verbs of asking, requesting, beseeching, and the like take an **ut** clause with the subjunctive (negative **ne**).

**Rogo ut me juvetis.** *I beg you to help me.*

**Petierant ne eum contemneremus.** *They had asked us not to despise him.*

## EXERCISES

1. Suadent ut ipse non modo diem festum ratum habeat, sed etiam annuam ejus observantiam. 2. Monebimus ne sermones ejus ad metaphoras otiosas detorqueant. 3. Nonne persuasisti ut magistra servos suos doctrinam christianam doceret eorum durante adolescentia? 4. Quando denique admonebitis ut omnes obices positos in viam suam superent? 5. Petivi ut semetipsum ab actibus omnibus arceret qui furorem apud indulti auctorem excitarent. 6. Rogabimini ut assumeretis nescio quae onera levia dum pastor Romae esset. 7. Christus

obsecravit ut peccator unusquisque resipisceret. 8. Quis poposcit ut catechesis pueris daretur priusquam adolescerent? 9. Quod sciam, non monebunt ne illa vinum nec aquam cum oleo misceat. 10. Dixit eum medicum unum solumque esse quem tu in civitate ista invenias. 11. Nihil est quod non fiat; quaerent igitur ut nomina sua in libris paroechialibus inscribantur. 12. Poscit ut artifex capax normis ac materiis novis fiat, antequam eas exponere carpentariis nitatur. 13. Postulabisne ut quasdam res polliceantur, quas non servare possint? 14. Suadebo ut ante meridiem veniant, ne aviam contristemus, quae jam dudum nos expectat. 15. Petebat ne emptionem et venditionem colerent eo quod nullum tempus haberent ad ultimum hominis finem contemplandum.

## READING

1. Si quis dixerit, baptismum Joannis habuisse eandem vim cum baptismo Christi: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, aquam veram et naturalem non esse de necessitate baptismi, atque ideo verba illa Domini nostri Jesu Christi: *Nisi quis renatus fuerit ex aqua et Spiritu Sancto* ad metaphoram aliquam detorsit: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, in ecclesia Romana, quae omnium ecclesiarum mater est et magistra, non esse veram de baptismi sacramento doctrinam: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, baptismum, qui etiam datur ab haereticis in nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti, cum intentione faciendi quod facit ecclesia, non esse verum baptismum: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, baptismum liberum esse, hoc est, non necessarium ad salutem: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, baptizatum non posse, etiamsi velit, gratiam amittere, quantumcumque peccet, nisi nolit credere: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, baptizatos per baptismum ipsum solius tantum fidei debitores fieri, non autem universae legis Christi servandae: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, baptizatos liberos esse ab omnibus sanctae ecclesiae

praecipis, quae vel scripta vel tradita sunt, ita ut ea observare non teneantur, nisi se sua sponte illis submittere voluerint: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, ita revocandos esse homines ad baptismi suscepti memoriam, ut vota omnia, quae post baptismum fiunt, vi promissionis in baptismo ipso jam factae irrita esse intelligant, quasi per ea et fidei, quam professi sunt, detrahatur, et ipsi baptismo: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, peccata omnia, quae post baptismum fiunt, sola recordatione et fide suscepti baptismi vel dimitti vel venialia fieri: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, verum et rite collatum baptismum iterandum esse illi, qui apud infideles fidem Christi negaverit, cum ad poenitentiam convertitur: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, neminem esse baptizandum nisi ea aetate qua Christus baptizatus est, vel in ipso mortis articulo: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, parvulos eo quod actum credendi non habent, suscepto baptismo inter fideles computandos non esse, ac propterea, cum ad annos discretionis pervenerint, esse rebaptizandos, aut praestare omitti eorum baptismum, quam eos non actu proprio credentes baptizari in sola fide ecclesiae: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, hujusmodi parvulos baptizatos, cum adoleverint, interrogandos esse, an ratum habere velint, quod patrini eorum nomine, dum baptizarentur, polliciti sunt, et ubi se nolle responderint, suo esse arbitrio relinquendos nec alia interim poena ad Christianam vitam cogendos, nisi ut ab Eucharistiae aliorumque sacramentorum perceptione arceantur, donec respiscant: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, confirmationem baptizatorum otiosam caeremoniam esse et non potius verum et proprium sacramentum, aut olim nihil aliud fuisse quam catechesim quamdam, qua adolescentiae proximi fidei suae rationem coram ecclesia exponebant: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, injurios esse Spiritui Sancto eos, qui sacro confirmationis chrismati virtutem aliquam tribunt: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, sanctae confirmationis ordinarium ministrum non esse solum episcopum, sed quemvis simplicem sacerdotem: anathema sit.

2. Alius locus vere classicus ille est ubi Christus ipse suam divinitatem aperte declarat; cum enim Judaei ab eo inquirerent quis esset, utrum Messias vel non, respondit: "Ego et Pater unum sumus." Jamvero illa verba intelligenda sunt *de unitate naturae*, non autem de unitate morali tantum; nam ita intellecta sunt a Judaeis ipsis, qui sustulerunt lapides ut Christum lapidarent "quia tu, homo cum sis, facis teipsum Deum." Nec dicatur postea Christum sua verba emolliuisse, citando textum Scripturae, in quo etiam homines dicuntur dii; hoc enim, inspecto contextu, est argumentum *a minori ad majus*, quasi diceret: si homines, quibus Deus locutus est, possunt aliquo sensu vocari filii Dei, nonne *a fortiori vocari* possum Filius Dei, et quidem in sensu proprio? Nam, addit: "si non facio opera Patris mei, nolite credere mihi; si autem facio, operibus credite, ut cognoscatis et credatis, quia Pater in me est et ego in Patre"; quae quidem verba important Christum vere Filium Dei esse, aequalem Patri, cum faciat ipsa opera Patris, et in Patre, i.e. in sinu Patris habitet, ex dictis supra; argumentum enim Christi ad hoc reduci potest: Quorum eadem sunt opera, ii idem unumque sunt; atqui mea et Patris mei opera eadem sunt; ergo ego et Pater meus unum sumus. Quod Judaei ipsi intellexerunt; nam "quaerebant ergo eum apprehendere, et exivit de manibus eorum."

Objiciunt quidem Unitarii *vocem "unum"* interpretari posse de unitate morali, nam Christus ipse in ultima coena dixit: "Sint unum sicut et nos unum sumus." Respondetur autem hoc ultimo loco vim nativam vocis "*unum*" attenuari per particulam *sicut*, eodem fere modo ac in sequenti phrasi Scripturae: "Estote igitur perfecti *sicut* et Pater vester coelestis perfectus est"; sed quando vox "*unum*" non corrigitur per aliud vocabulum, unitatem naturae significat: aliunde contextus id postulat; vult enim Dominus probare in hoc loco neminem posse de manu sua oves eripere, quia, ipse ait, "Ego et Pater *unum* sumus," i.e. ejusdem *potentiae*, ac proinde ejusdem naturae.

Nec minus validum est argumentum ex epistola ad *Hebraeos* desumptum: "Multifariam multisque modis olim Deus loquens patribus in prophetis, novissime diebus istis locutus est nobis in Filio quem con-

stituit haeredem universorum, per quem fecit et saecula . . .” hic enim S. Paulus loquitur de Verbo Incarnato et ejus divinitatem probat asserendo: (a) ipsum esse “*haeredem universorum*” i.e. ea omnia possidere quae Deus ipse habet, nec simplicem esse prophetam, sed *Filium Dei*; (b) eundem habere *vim creatricem* “per quem fecit et saecula”; (c) eum esse perfectam et *substantialem imaginem* Patris “qui cum sit splendor gloriae, et figura substantiae ejus”; (d) eundem esse *conservatorem* omnium “portansque omnia verbo virtutis suae”; (e) ipsum esse *Angelis superiorem*, quia est Filius Dei, dum Angeli sunt tantum ministri ejus, etc; hinc Angeli eum adorare jubentur: “et adorent eum omnes Angeli Dei.” Atqui haec omnia veram divinitatem important et perfectam cum Patre aequalitatem; ergo.

## LESSON XXXVI

### Vocabulary

afferre, attuli, allatus, *to bring, to apply*  
alioqui, *in other respects, otherwise*  
almus, *august, benign*  
aperte, *openly*  
apertissime, *most openly*  
assidere (2), -sedi, -sessus, *to sit*  
brachium, n., *arm*  
circumincessio, f., *coexistence*  
columna, f., *pillar*  
commentum, n., *falsehood*  
conjungere, -junxi, -junctus, *to join together*  
constantissime, *most firmly*  
convellere, -velli, -vulsus, *to pluck, to tear up*  
cultus, m., *worship*  
cupire, *to wish*  
defluere, -fluxi, -fluxus, *to flow from*  
desiderare, *to desire*  
digitus, m., *finger*  
disertus, *fluent, clear*  
divus, m., *saint*  
ductus, m., *leadership*  
eruditus, *informed, instructed*  
exagitare, *to harass, to disturb*  
excogitare, *to devise, to invent*  
flagitium, n., *shameful thing*  
gubernatio, f., *government*  
interdicere, -dixi, -dictus, *to forbid*

**majores**, m., *forefathers, elders*  
**misere**, *wretchedly*  
**nuncius**, m., *nuncio*  
**perspicuus**, *clear, definite*  
**praesidere** (2), -sedi, -sessus, *to preside*  
**praestantissimus**, *most excellent*  
**processio**, f., *source, origin, procession*  
**profiteri** (2), *to profess*  
**quoad**, *up to, as far as, as many as, as to*  
**Salvator**, m., *Savior*  
**sane**, *truly, indeed, very*  
**scindere**, scidi, scissus, *to split, to rend*  
**similiter**, *similarly*  
**stirpitus**, *utterly, by the roots*  
**suggerere**, -gessi, -gestus, *to suggest, to bring to mind*  
**superseminare**, *to sow, to oversow*  
**symbolum**, n., *symbol, creed*  
**testari** (dep.), *to testify*  
**tropus**, m., *trope, figure of speech*  
**zizania**, n. pl., *cockle, weeds*

#### Idioms

1. **absit**, *far from it, God forbid*
2. **mirum quam**, *marvelously*
3. **mirum quantum**, *tremendously*
4. **immane quantum**, *monstrously*
5. **sane quam**, *enormously*
6. **valde quam**, *immensely*
7. **ad extra**, *external, outward, outwardly*

#### GRAMMAR

1. Verbs of wishing may take either the infinitive or the subjunctive. When the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the main verb, the subjunctive is preferable. **Velle**, **nolle**, and **malle** often

take the subjunctive without **ut**. Other verbs frequently omitting **ut** are **licet**, **oportet**, and the imperatives **dic** and **fac**.

**Desiderat ut adsimus.** *He desires us to be present.*

**Vult eas.** *He wishes you to go.*

**Licet praesideat.** *It is lawful for him to preside.*

**Dic assideat.** *Tell him to be seated.*

### 2. Names of the months in Latin are:

Januarius	Majus	September
Februarius	Junius	October
Martius	Julius	November
Aprilis	Augustus	December

All are masculines of the second declension except **Aprilis** and the last four, which are of the third declension. Those ending in **-ber** have the genitive in **-bris**.

### 3. Names of the seasons are:

**ver**, n., *spring*

**aestas**, f., *summer*

**autumnus**, m., *fall*

**hiems**, f., *winter*

### EXERCISES

1. Matres sane quam cupiebant ut filii domum Decembri venirent.  
 2. Volo ut hac aestate proxima non calores sint. 3. Optabimus ut Martius et Aprilis non frigidi sint. 4. Pastor almus mavult ut paroechiae mulieres media suggerant ad coenam praestantissimam episcopo comparandam. 5. Nonne vultis nepotes nos visitent autumnno potius quam hieme? 6. Si valde quam volent cantem, sic faciam. 7. Fac januam claudas, ne aer frigidus introeat. 8. Si malint aperte de flagitiis testari, judex cras eos audiat. 9. Si majores nostri hodie viverent, res multas ab homine moderno immane quantum excogitatas detestarentur. 10. Si cupiisses ut columnam ex aurichalco honoris divi causa erigerent, citius conclusissent. 11. Opto vero ne tam promptus sit, ut



veritates meas ad commenta mirum quam detorqueat. 12. Desiderabitne ut pericula fictitia ac imaginaria praesentemus potius quam vera? 13. Visne sic agat, ut omnes libertates et privilegia ei interdantur? 14. Non optaverant ut ore fidem profiteretur cui non corde crederet. 15. Nolebasne zizania stirpitis convellerent? 16. Cupiebamus ut mirum quantum pugnarent, ut impedirent quominus viri pravi nostram gubernationem serenam exagitant.

#### READING

I. Sacrosancta oecumenica et generalis Tridentina synodus, in Spiritu Sancto legitime congregata, praesidentibus in ea eisdem sanctae Sedis Apostolicae legato et nunciis, etsi in eum finem non absque peculiari Spiritus Sancti ductu et gubernatione convenerit, ut veram et antiquam de fide et sacramentis doctrinam exponeret, et ut haeresibus omnibus et aliis gravissimis incommodis, quibus Dei ecclesia misere nunc exagitur et in multas ac varias partes scinditur, remedium afferret, hoc praesertim jam inde a principio in votis habuit, ut stirpitis convelleret zizania execrabilium errorum et schismatum, quae inimicus homo his nostris calamitosis temporibus in doctrina fidei, usu et cultu sacrosanctae Eucharistiae superseminavit, quam alioqui Salvator noster in ecclesia sua tamquam symbolum reliquit ejus unitatis et caritatis, qua Christianos omnes inter se conjunctos et copulatos esse voluit. Itaque eadem sacrosancta synodus, sanam et sinceram illam de venerabili hoc et divino Eucharistiae sacramento doctrinam tradens, quam semper catholica ecclesia ab ipso Jesu Christo Domino nostro et ejus apostolis erudita, atque a Spiritu Sancto illi omnem veritatem in dies suggerente edocta retinuit et ad finem usque saeculi conservabit, omnibus Christi fidelibus interdicit, ne posthac de sanctissima Eucharistia aliter credere, docere aut praedicare audeant, quam ut est hoc praesenti decreto explicatum atque definitum.

Principio docet sancta synodus et aperte ac simpliciter profiteretur, in almo sanctae Eucharistiae sacramento post panis et vini consecrationem Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum verum Deum atque hominem vere, realiter ac substantialiter sub specie illarum rerum

sensibilium contineri. Neque enim haec inter se pugnant, ut ipse Salvator noster semper ad dexteram Patris in coelis assideat juxta modum existendi naturalem, et ut multis nihilominus aliis in locis sacramentaliter praesens sua substantia nobis adsit, ea existendi ratione, quam etsi verbis exprimere vix possumus, possibilem tamen esse Deo, cogitatione per fidem illustrata assequi possumus et constantissime credere debemus. Ita enim majores nostri omnes, quotquot in vera Christi ecclesia fuerunt, qui de sanctissimo hoc sacramento disseruerunt, apertissime professi sunt, hoc tam admirabile sacramentum in ultima coena Redemptorem nostrum instituisse, cum post panis vinique benedictionem se suum ipsius corpus illi praebere ac suum sanguinem disertis ac perspicuis verbis testatus est; quae verba a sanctis evangelistis commemorata et a divo Paulo postea repetita, cum propriam illam et apertissimam significationem prae se ferant, secundum quam a patribus intellecta sunt, indignissimum sane flagitium est ea a quibusdam contentiosis et pravis hominibus ad fictitios et imaginarios tropos, quibus veritas carnis et sanguinis Christi negatur, contra universum ecclesiae sensum detorqueri, quae, tamquam columna et firmamentum veritatis, haec ab impiis hominibus excogitata commenta velut satanica detestata est, grato semper et memore animo praestantissimum hoc Christi beneficium agnoscens.

2. Admittenda est divinarum personarum circumincessio. Circumincessio est mutua divinarum personarum in invicem coexistentia et cohabitatio, ita ut Pater sit in Filio, Filius in Patre, et uterque in Spiritu S., pariterque Spiritus in Patre et Filio. Haec mutua cohabitatio defluit ex dictis; nam si eadem numerice natura est in Patre, Filio et Spiritu S., necesse est ut Pater sit in Filio et vice versa: et idem dicendum de Spiritu Sancto. Insuper illud directe asseritur in Scriptura pro Patre et Filio: "Non creditis quia ego in Patre et Pater in me est?" Idem implicite docet Paulus quoad Spiritum S., dum tradit Eum in Deo esse, sicut spiritus hominis in homine est. Res declaratur alibi quoad tres personas: "Propter hanc unitatem Pater est totus in Filio, totus in Spiritu S.: Filius totus est in Patre, totus in Spiritu S.: Spiritus totus est in Patre, totus in Filio." Quod sic optime declarat S. Thomas:

“In Patre et Filio tria est considerare, scilicet, essentiam, relationem et originem; et secundum quodlibet illorum Filius est in Patre, et e converso.

1<sup>o</sup>. Secundum essentiam enim, Pater est in Filio et Filius in Patre, quia Pater est sua essentia, et communicat eam Filio, non per aliquam suam transmutationem. Unde sequitur quod, cum essentia Patris sit in Filio, in Filio sit Pater. Et similiter, cum Filius sit sua essentia, sequitur quod sit in Patre, in quo est ejus essentia. 2<sup>o</sup>. Secundum etiam relationes manifestum est quod unum oppositorum relative est in altero, secundum intellectum. 3<sup>o</sup>. Secundum originem etiam manifestum est quod processio Verbi intelligibilis non est aliquid extra, sed manet in dicente. Id etiam quod verbo dicitur, in verbo continetur. Et eadem ratio est de Spiritu S. In Deo una eademque est operatio ad extra, quae tribus personis communis est. Etenim operationes ad extra producuntur ab omnipotentia, ac proinde a natura, in qua omnipotentia residet; atqui ex dictis, est una natura in Deo; ergo est una operatio ad extra. Illa autem unica operatio ad extra, tribus divinis personis, sicut natura ipsa, communis est.

In sacris Litteris eadem opera nunc Patri, nunc Filio, nunc Spiritui S. ascribuntur; ita v.g. creatio Patri et Filio tribuitur; hinc Christus ait: “*Pater* meus usquemodo *operatur*, et *ego operor*”; i.e. eadem opera ac Pater operor; pariter *prophetiae* seorsum tribuuntur *Patri*: “Multifariam multisque modis olim *Deus* loquens Patribus in *prophetis*”; simulque Spiritui S.: “*Spiritu S.* inspirati locuti sunt sancti Dei homines.” Hanc veritatem Patres variis illustrent comparisonibus: “Ut lux omnia splendore illuminat, nihilque sine splendore potest illuminari: ita et Pater veluti per manum omnia in Verbo efficit nihilque sine illo facit.” Alii vocant Filium *brachium* seu *manum* Patris, et Spiritum Filii *digitum*, ut sic melius significant Patrem *per* Filium *in* Spiritu S. omnia operari. Hinc in Symbolo Athanas. legitur: “Omnipotens Pater, omnipotens Filius, omnipotens Spiritus S.: et tamen *non tres omnipotentes, sed unus omnipotens.*”

## LESSON XXXVII

### Vocabulary

- admodum**, *very, exceedingly, quite*  
**adstringere**, -strinxi, -strictus, *to bind*  
**aestus**, m., *heat*  
**alere**, alui, alitus, *to nourish*  
**arctissimus**, *closest, very tight*  
**cibus**, m., *food*  
**circumferre**, -tuli, -latus, *to carry around*  
**conari** (dep.), *to try*  
**confortare**, *to strengthen*  
**divitiae**, f. pl., *riches*  
**fateri** (dep. 2), **fassus**, *to avow, to confess*  
**Gallia**, f., *France*  
**Gallus**, m., *Frenchman*  
**Germanus**, m., *German*  
**Hispanus**, m., *Spaniard*  
**honorifice**, *honorably, with honor*  
**hypostaticus**, *hypostatic, essential, substantial*  
**invasor**, m., *invader, usurper*  
**latria**, f., *worship* (the highest kind of worship or that paid to God only)  
**libenter**, *freely, willingly*  
**licet**, *although*  
**locutio**, f., *phrase, expression*  
**Lugdunensis**, *of Lyons*  
**Nicaenus**, *Nicene*  
**persuasum**, n., *conviction, firm belief*  
**pignus**, n., *pledge*  
**praecelsus**, *sublime*

**praefatus**, *aforesaid*

**praeservare**, *to preserve*

**quapropter**, *wherefore*

**reperire**, **reperi**, **repertus**, *to find*

**sancire**, **sanxi**, **sanctus**, *to ratify, to sanction*

**spiratio**, *f., spiration, breath*

**sumptio**, *f., reception, participation*

**tantumdem**, *as much, just as much*

### Idioms

1. **nisi vero**, *unless indeed*
2. **nisi forte**, *unless to be sure*
3. **nuper admodum**, *very recently*
4. **nihil admodum**, *nothing at all*
5. **nullus admodum**, *none at all*
6. **annos admodum octo**, *fully eight years*
7. **operam dare**, *to take pains*
8. **successu temporis**, *in the course of time*

### GRAMMAR

1. **Verbs** of determining, decreeing, resolving, and bargaining may take either the subjunctive or an infinitive.

**Pactum fecerunt ut illo loco eodem singulis annis convenirent.** *They made an agreement to meet in that same place each and every year.*

**Rex lucra ad caritatem afferre statuit.** *The king resolved to apply the profits to charity.*

2. **Verbs** of caution and effort take the subjunctive with **ut** or **uti**. However, the verb **conari**, *to try*, is usually followed by the infinitive.

**Providit uti nihil eis desit.** *He has seen to it that they lack nothing.*

**Conabimur venire.** *We shall try to come.*

### EXERCISES

1. **Majores censuerunt ut omnes adolescentes plus quam duodevigesimum annum agentes inscribi debeant.** 2. **Decreverant uti parvuli**

doctrinam christianam docerentur, nisi vero amentes vel stulti admodum erant. 3. Statuo, ait rex, subditi universi mei pignore hoc arctissime adstringantur. 4. Deus constituet uti angeli ad ipsius sanctos ministrent. 5. Pactum faciunt ut alter alterius persuasum aestimet. 6. Curabo ut nulla admodum zizania in triticum superseminem. 7. Impellisne ut nihil admodum revelet, nisi forte culpae magnae apud se conscius est? 8. Date operam ut infantes cibo alantur et mulieres verbis gaudii confortentur. 9. Processio statuta est ut triumphus praecelsus nostri exercitus fortis honorifice celebretur. 10. Per annos admodum decem patris tumulum reperire conabantur. 11. Nonne pugnabitis ut nihil admodum nuncium exagitet, dum in civitate ista commoretur? 12. Nuper admodum providerunt ut lucas extinguerentur ante mediam noctem. 13. Patroni nisi sunt ut alii incolae alios juvarent, nisi vero penitus ab inimicis deleri malunt. 14. Cura, mi fili, ut teipsum a mendaciis arceas. 15. Quis providebit ut chirurgus accipiat mane medicinas quas heri praescrisit?

## READING

1. Ergo Salvator noster, discessurus ex hoc mundo ad Patrem, sacramentum hoc instituit, in quo divitias divini sui erga homines amoris velut effudit, memoriam faciens mirabilium suorum, et in illius sump-tione colere nos sui memoriam praecepit, suamque annuntiare mortem donec ipse ad judicandum mundum veniat. Sumi autem voluit sacramentum hoc tamquam spiritualem animarum cibum, quo alantur et confortentur viventes vita illius, qui dixit: *Qui manducat me et ipse vivet propter me*, et tamquam antidotum, quo liberemur a culpis quotidianis, et a peccatis mortalibus praeservemur. Pignus praeterea id esse voluit futurae nostrae gloriae et perpetuae felicitatis, adeoque symbolum unius illius corporis, cujus ipse caput existit, cuique nos, tamquam membra, arctissima fidei, spei et caritatis connexione adstrictos esse voluit, *ut id ipsum omnes diceremus, nec essent in nobis schismata.*

Commune hoc quidem est sanctissimae Eucharistiae cum ceteris sacramentis, symbolum esse rei sacrae et invisibilis gratiae formam

visibilem; verum illud in ea excellens et singulare reperitur, quod reliqua sacramenta tunc primum sanctificandi vim habent, cum quis illis utitur, at in Eucharistia ipse sanctitatis auctor ante usum est. Nondum enim Eucharistiam de manu Domini apostoli susceperant, cum vere tamen ipse affirmaret corpus suum esse quod praebebat; et semper haec fides in ecclesia Dei fuit, statim post consecrationem verum Domini nostri corpus verumque ejus sanguinem sub panis et vini specie una cum ipsius anima et divinitate existere; sed corpus quidem sub specie panis et sanguinem sub vini specie ex vi verborum, ipsum autem corpus sub specie vini et sanguinem sub specie panis, animamque sub utraque, vi naturalis illius connexionis et concomitantiae, qua partes Christi Domini, qui jam ex mortuis resurrexit non amplius moriturus, inter se copulantur, divinitatem porro, propter admirabilem illam ejus cum corpore et anima hypostaticam unionem. Quapropter verissimum est, tantumdem sub alterutra specie atque sub utraque contineri. Totus enim et integer Christus sub panis specie et sub quavis ipsius speciei parte, totus item sub vini specie et sub ejus partibus existit.

Quoniam autem Christus Redemptor noster corpus suum id, quod sub specie panis offerebat, vere esse dixit, ideo persuasum semper in ecclesia Dei fuit, idque nunc denuo sancta haec synodus declarat, per consecrationem panis et vini conversionem fieri totius substantiae panis in substantiam corporis Christi Domini nostri, et totius substantiae vini in substantiam sanguinis ejus. Quae conversio convenienter et proprie a sancta catholica ecclesia transsubstantiatio est appellata. Nullus itaque dubitandi locus relinquitur, quin omnes Christi fideles pro more in catholica ecclesia semper recepto patriae cultum, qui vero Deo debetur, huic sanctissimo sacramento in veneratione exhibeant. Neque enim ideo minus est adorandum, quod fuerit a Christo Domino, ut sumatur, institutum. Nam illum eundem Deum praesentem in eo adesse credimus, quem Pater aeternus introducens in orbem terrarum dicit: *Et adorent eum omnes angeli Dei*, quem magi procidentibus adoraverunt, quem denique in Galilaea ab apostolis adoratum fuisse scriptura testatur.

Declarat sancta synodus, pie et religiose admodum in Dei ecclesiam inductum fuisse hunc morem, ut singulis annis peculiari quodam et festo die praeelsum hoc et venerabile sacramentum singulari veneratione ac solemnitate celebraretur, utque in processionibus reverenter et honorifice illud per vias et loca publica circumferretur. Aequissimum est enim sacros aliquos statutos esse dies, cum Christiani omnes singulari ac rara quadam significatione gratos et memores testentur animos erga communem Dominum et Redemptorem pro tam ineffabili et plane divino beneficio, quo mortis ejus victoria et triumphus repraesentatur. Ac sic quidem oportuit victricem veritatem de mendacio et haeresi triumphum agere, ut ejus adversarii in conspectu tanti splendoris, et in tanta universae ecclesiae laetitia positi vel debilitati et fracti tabescant, vel pudore effecti et confusi aliquando resipiscant.

2. Doctrina Catholica est Spiritum procedere tum a Patre tum a Filio. Jamvero olim Eunomiani et Macedoniani, negaverunt Spiritum S. a Patre procedere; sed quum contrarium expressis verbis in Scriptura doceatur, "mittens vobis a Patre Spiritum veritatis, *qui a Patre procedit*, statim ille error damnatus est. Postea Theodoretus et post eum Monothelitae processionem Spiritus S. a Filio impugnarunt, quin tamen res ex professo disputata fuerit: tunc enim temporis totus controversiae aestus circa unionis hypostaticae quaestionem ferebatur. Ille tamen error ob Iconoclastis renovatus fuit, et in quibusdam conciliis in Gallia habitis, quaestio ventilata fuit inter Graecos et Romanos utrum Spiritus S. sicut procedit a Patre, ita procedat a Filio. Unde factum est ut apud Hispanos, Gallos et Germanos particula *Filioque* Symbolo Nicaeno addita fuerit, ut expresse declararetur Spiritum tum a Patre tum a Filio procedere. Quam quidem additionem Leo III primum sancire noluit, licet explicite fidem suam de processione Spiritus S. ab utroque professus fuerit, ne Ecclesiae particulares in recitatione Symboli ab Ecclesia Romana different; successu tamen temporis Romani Pontifices eam receperunt et approbarunt.

Eodem saeculo Photius, iniquus Sedis Constantinop. invasor, et a Nicolao I juste damnatus, a Latina Ecclesia sese sejunxit, inter alios



errores docens Spiritum S. a Filio non procedere; post ejus mortem, unio inter utramque Ecclesiam restituta est, sed iterum fracta Michaelis Coerularii pessima ambitione; et licet praefatus error in Conc. Œcumenicis Lugdunensi et Florentino quibus Graeci aderant, damnatus fuerit, adhuc in Orientali Ecclesia hodie retinetur.

De fide est: "Fatemur quod *Spiritus Sanctus* aeternaliter *ex Patre et Filio*, non tanquam ex duobus principiis, sed tanquam *ex uno principio*, non duabus spirationibus, sed *unica spiratione* procedit." Spiritum S. a Patre procedere disertis verbis exprimitur, (in Scriptura) et insuper ex iis textibus infertur quibus declaratur *Spiritus Patris*: "Non enim vos estis qui loquimini, sed *Spiritus Patris* vestri qui loquitur in vobis." Quod a Graecis libenter conceditur; remanet igitur probandum Spiritum S. etiam a Filio procedere; triplici utemur argumento.

a) In pluribus Scripturae locis, Spiritus vocatur *Spiritus Filii*, vel *Spiritus Christi Jesu*: "Misit Deus Spiritum Filii sui . . ." "Non permisit eos *Spiritus Jesu*"; atqui illae expressiones Spiritum S. a Patre procedere important, nam fatentibus ipsis Graecis, idem Spiritus vocatur Spiritus Patris quia procedit a Patre; ergo a pari Spiritus dicitur Spiritus Filii quia procedit a Filio; quod confirmatur ex loco parallelo; ubi S. Paulus, postquam Spiritum S. vocavit *Spiritus Dei*, addit: "Spiritum, *qui ex Deo est*," quasi illae duae locutiones synonymae essent.

## LESSON XXXVIII

### Vocabulary

**adorator, m., adorer**  
**aptissime, most aptly**  
**ascribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, to ascribe, to apply, to attribute**  
**asserere, -serui, -sertus, to assert**  
**cedere, cessi, cessus, to grant, to yield, to allow**  
**celebritas, f., solemnity**  
**circumgestare, to carry around**  
**clarificare, to glorify**  
**festivus, festive, feast**  
**gravare, to burden, to oppress**  
**idololatra, m., idolater**  
**imperare, to command**  
**indigne, unworthily**  
**influxus, m., a flowing in, inpouring**  
**laudabilis, laudable**  
**mandare, to order**  
**manere (2), mansi, mansurus, to remain**  
**particula, f., particle, small part or bit, phrase**  
**pertinaciter, obstinately**  
**proponere, -posui, -positus, to set before, to propose**  
**quantumcumque, however much**  
**realiter, really**  
**sacramentaliter, sacramentally**  
**sacrarium, n., sacred place, sacrarium**  
**superesse, -fui, to remain, to be left over**  
**tantummodo, only**

## Idioms

1. **una cum**, *together with, conjointly with*
2. **in usu**, *at the moment of usage, in the act of using*
3. **eo ipso**, *because of this very thing*
4. **quam diu**, *as long as*
5. **numquam non**, *always*
6. **nostrum omnes**, *all of us*
7. **unusquisque vestrum**, *each one of you*

## GRAMMAR

1. **Verbs of permitting** take either the subjunctive or the infinitive. **Patior** regularly takes the infinitive with subject accusative. The impersonal **licet** may take the subjunctive with or without **ut**, or the infinitive with subject accusative, or the infinitive with dative as in English.

**Permittit ut maneamus.** *He permits us to remain.*

**Præparationes fieri non patiuntur.** *They do not allow preparations to be made.*

**Licet ut loquatur.**

**Licet loquatur.**

**Licet eum loqui.**

**Licet ei loqui.**

} *He is allowed to speak.*

2. **Verbs of commanding** take the subjunctive with or without **ut**. The negative is **ne**. **Jubere** and **vetare** take the infinitive with subject accusative.

**Ordinavit ne discedant.** *He has ordered them not to depart.*

**Vetasne me id asserere?** *Do you forbid me to assert this?*

## EXERCISES

1. **Mandatum est ut scopos deponeret, quantumcumque illos laudabiles existimet.** 2. **Quam diu licet in terra ista nobis manere, societate hujus populi boni gaudere volumus.** 3. **Quare imperavit ut isti viri**

inculpabiles numquam non in carcere obscuro ac frigido inclusi existerent? 4. Exiget ut ad susceptionem afferamus rem unam solamque, videlicet, fiduciam nostram. 5. Vetabant peregrinos accedere ad sacrarium positum in summo monte. 6. Nonne indulisti ut filiae ad celebritatem una cum filiis adstarent? 7. Quis jubet tabernaculum per noctes diesque vigilari, nisi parochus sit? 8. Nonne jussi clavem relinqui ubi nostrum omnes eam inveniamus? 9. Donabitis vero ut pauperes totum panem recipiant, cum nihil aliud exspectare possint. 10. Passi sunt majorum divitias labi de manibus suis. 11. Tribue, Deus Domine, ut animae nostrae in vitam aeternam custodiantur. 12. Concesserunt uti idololatrae in patria manerent, dummodo omnes consuetudines pravas dejicerent. 13. Episcopus imperat ut hostia sacra per vias publicas circumgestetur, ut incolae procidentes eam adorent. 14. Reges qui permittant ut onera inutilia subditos ipsorum gravent, tantundem mali sunt quam filii qui parentes veteres neglegi patiantur. 15. Non assentiemus ut unusquisque vestrum Julio discedat, quia hic quopiam indigemus, ut ornamenta ac vestes vigilet.

## READING

1. Si quis negaverit, in sanctissimae Eucharistiae sacramento contineri vere, realiter et substantialiter corpus et sanguinem una cum anima et divinitate Domini nostri Jesu Christi, ac proinde totum Christum; sed dixerit, tantummodo esse in eo, ut in signo, vel figura aut virtute: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, in sacrosancto Eucharistiae sacramento remanere substantiam panis et vini una cum corpore et sanguine Domini nostri Jesu Christi, negaveritque mirabilem illam et singularem conversionem totius substantiae panis in corpus, et totius substantiae vini in sanguinem, manentibus dumtaxat speciebus panis et vini, quam quidem conversionem catholica ecclesia aptissime transsubstantiationem appellat: anathema sit.

Si quis negaverit, in venerabili sacramento Eucharistiae sub unaquaque specie, et sub singulis cujusque speciei partibus, separatione facta, totum Christum contineri: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, peracta consecratione in admirabili Eucharistiae sacramento non esse corpus et sanguinem Domini nostri Jesu Christi, sed tantum in usu, dum sumitur, non autem ante vel post, et in hostiis seu particulis consecratis, quae post communionem reservantur vel supersunt, non remanere verum corpus Domini: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, vel praecipuum fructum sanctissimae Eucharistiae esse remissionem peccatorum, vel ex ea non alios effectus provenire: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, in sancto Eucharistiae sacramento Christum unigenitum Dei Filium non esse cultu patriae etiam externo adorandum, atque ideo nec festiva peculiari celebritate venerandum, neque in processionibus secundum laudabilem et universalem ecclesiae sanctae ritum et consuetudinem solemniter circumgestandum, vel non publice, ut adoretur, populo proponendum, et ejus adoratores esse idololatrias: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, non licere sacram Eucharistiam in sacrario reservari, sed statim post consecrationem adstantibus necessario distribuendam; aut non licere, ut illa ad infirmos honorifice deferatur: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, Christum in Eucharistia exhibitum spiritualiter tantum manducari, et non etiam sacramentaliter ac realiter: anathema sit.

Si quis negaverit, omnes et singulos Christi fideles utriusque sexus, cum ad annos discretionis pervenerint, teneri singulis annis saltem in Paschate ad communicandum juxta praeceptum sanctae matris ecclesiae: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, non licere sacerdoti celebranti se ipsum communicare: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, solam fidem esse sufficientem praeparationem ad sumendum sanctissimae Eucharistiae sacramentum: anathema sit. Et, ne tantum sacramentum indigne atque ideo in mortem et condemnationem sumatur, statuit atque declarat ipsa sancta synodus, illis, quos conscientia peccati mortalis gravat, quantumcumque etiam se contritos existiment, habita copia confessoris, necessario praemittendam esse confessionem sacramentalem. Si quis autem contrarium

docere, praedicare vel pertinaciter asserere, seu etiam publice disputando defendere praesumpserit, eo ipso excommunicatus existat.

2. Iterum Spiritus dicitur missus a Filio sicut a Patre: "Si abiero, inquit Christus, mittam eum ad vos. . . ." "Cum venerit Paracletus, quem ego mittam vobis a Patre"; atqui missio in divinis importat processionem personae missae a mittente; nam missio supponit quemdam influxum mittentis in missum: jamvero in Deo nullus alius est influxus unius personae in aliam nisi ille qui venit ex origine seu processione: nam, praeter relationes originis, omnia sunt tribus personis communia, ex supra dictis. Hinc ait S. Augustinus: "Pater non dicitur missus; non enim habet de quo procedat," sic diserte declarans missionem sine processione fieri non posse.

Leguntur verba Christi de Spiritu S. loquentis: "Ille me clarificabit, quia de meo accipiet et annuntiabit vobis. Omnia quaecumque habet Pater mea sunt; propterea dixi: quia de meo accipiet, et annuntiabit vobis." Unde sic; hic clare asseritur Spiritum S. aliquid a Filio accipere; atqui in divinis persona ab altera aliquid accipere nequit, nisi ab ipsa procedat, quum, praeter relationem originis, omnia sint tribus personis communia. Nec dicatur hic agi tantum de communicatione scientiae futurorum, "et *annuntiabit vobis*"; nam Spiritus nequit a Filio accipere scientiam illam, nisi simul ab eo accipiat divinam naturam, quae in Deo cum scientia identificatur. Confirmatur ex verbis sequentibus: "omnia quaecumque habet Pater, mea sunt etc.," quorum hic est sensus: hucusque ex V. Test. edocti fuerant discipuli futurorum scientiam soli Jehovahae tribuere; dicendo autem: "omnia quaecumque habet Pater . . .," Christus sibi hanc scientiam ascribit; et addendo: "propterea dixi: de meo accipiet, et annuntiabit vobis," reddit rationem cur Spiritus S., qui de Verbo accipit, eandem divinam scientiam, proindeque eandem naturam participet. Haec est Patrum interpretatio; Didymus ait: "*non enim loquetur ex semetipso*; qui non ex se est, sed ex Patre et ex me; hoc enim ipsum quod subsistit et loquitur, a Patre et a me illi est."

## LESSON XXXIX

### Vocabulary

affectatus, *voluntary, choice, select*  
annumerare, *to number*  
anteponere, -posui, -positus, *to place before, to prefer*  
apertius, *more openly, more plainly*  
coelibatus, m., *celibacy*  
connubium, n., *marriage*  
crudelis, *cruel*  
damnare, *to condemn*  
decernere, -crevi, -cretus, *to decree*  
diffundere, -fudi, -fusus, *to spread*  
dirimere, -emi, -emptus, *to dissolve*  
dispar, *unlike, different*  
ethnicus, m., *heathen*  
exterminare, *to destroy*  
firmitas, f., *firmness*  
flatus, m., *blowing, breath*  
gradus, m., *degree*  
innuere, -nui, -nutus, *to intimate*  
insignior, *principal, more outstanding*  
intellectio, f., *intellect, understanding*  
jactura, f., *loss, harm*  
merito, *justly, with good reason*  
molestus, *irksome*  
nuptiae, f. pl., *marriage*  
perfector, m., *perfecter*  
pernitiosus, *pernicious*  
perperam, *falsely*  
praecognitus, *known beforehand*

**praedictus**, *aforesaid*

**proficisci** (dep. 3), **-fectus**, *to set out, to arise*

**spirans**, *that which breathes*

**spirare**, *to breathe, to exhale*

**spirativus**, *breathing*

**subjungere**, **-junxi**, **-junctus**, *to add*

**temeritas**, f., *boldness*

**trahere**, **traxi**, **tractus**, *to draw, to attract*

**uxor**, f., *wife*

**vereri** (dep. 2), **veritus**, *to fear*

**volitus**, *wished, wanted*

### Idioms

1. **nullusdum**, *none as yet*
2. **nullus unus**, *no one*
3. **nullus alter**, *no other*
4. **num quid**, *anything further, anything else*
5. **res gestae**, *deeds*
6. **aliter atque**, *otherwise than*
7. **alia de causa**, *for another reason*

### GRAMMAR

1. **Verbs** and other expressions of **emotion** (except fear) take the infinitive with subjective accusative or a **quod** or **quia** clause with the verb in the indicative.

**Eis molestum est se horologium non videre.** *They are annoyed that they cannot see the clock.*

**Guademus quia venit.** *We are glad that he is coming.*

2. **Verbs of fearing** take the subjunctive with **ne** affirmative and **ne non** or **ut** negative.

**Verebar ne servus domino crudeli venderetur.** *I feared that the slave would be sold to a cruel master.*

**Timent ut judex eligatur.** *They fear that the judge will not be elected.*



## EXERCISES

1. Timesne merito ut jacturam molestam quam fecerunt expient?
2. Gavisus sumus quod nullusdum est institutor qui plures normas matrimonii sacramento subjunxerit.
3. Avia tristis est nepotes non inter pueros insignes annumerari.
4. Laetabuntur, quia homines perniciosi qui perperam locuti sint, damnantur.
5. Vereor ne non connubium Martio celebretur, cum conjux juvenis terram hanc nondum attigerit, et non ante Aprilem veniat.
6. Filii delectabantur, quia eorum pater praetextum excogitaverat ad adducendos eos ut animalia enormia atque peregrina viderent, qui recenter ab Africa tracta erant.
7. Sacerdotes dolent, quod solummodo pauci valent ut vitam catholicam ducant.
8. Verebimini ne temeritas eorum apertior fieret, etiam si rex leges graves adversus illos decrevisset.
9. Quomodo procedemus ut non timeamus ne inimici obstacula insuperabilia trans semitam nostram jaciant?
10. Contristaverunt se quia haeresis contagio per totam Europam diffudit.
11. Mater humilis irascitur filias suas aliter atque reverenter coram avo vetusto egisse.
12. Si nunc timeat ne numquam scopum suum attingat, quid postea sperare possit?
13. Incolae exsultant quia episcopo in animo est visitare parvulam eorum ecclesiam.
14. Timuitne ut ideas ejus anteponerent super omnes alias?
15. Gaudeamus multa onera praevia non jam gravare nos.

## READING

1. Matrimonii perpetuum indissolubilemque nexum primus humani generis parens divini Spiritus instinctu pronuntiavit, cum dixit: *Hoc nunc os ex ossibus meis, et caro de carne mea. Quamobrem relinquet homo patrem suum et matrem, et adhaerebit uxori suae et erunt duo in carne una.* Hoc autem vinculo duos tantummodo copulari et conjungi, Christus Dominus apertius docuit, cum postrema illa verba tamquam a Deo prolata referens dixit: *Itaque jam non sunt duo, sed una caro,* statimque ejusdem nexus firmitatem ab Adamo tanto ante pronunciatam his verbis confirmavit: *Quod ergo Deus conjunxit, homo non separet.* Gratiam vero, quae naturalem illum amorem per-

ficeret, et indissolubilem unitatem confirmaret conjugesque sanctificaret, ipse Christus venerabilium sacramentorum institutor atque perfector sua nobis passione promeruit, quod Paulus Apostolus innuit dicens: *Viri, diligite uxores vestras, sicut Christus dilexit ecclesiam, et se ipsum tradidit pro ea*, mox subjungens: *Sacramentum hoc magnum est, ego autem dico in Christo, et in ecclesia*. Cum igitur matrimonium in lege evangelica veteribus connubiis per Christum gratia praestet, merito inter novae legis sacramenta annumerandum sancti patres nostri, concilia et universalis ecclesiae traditio semper docuerunt, adversus quam impii homines hujus saeculi insanientes non solum perperam de hoc venerabili sacramento senserunt, sed de more suo praetextu evangelii libertatem carnis introducentes, multa ab ecclesiae catholicae sensu et ab apostolorum temporibus probata consuetudine aliena, scripto et verbo asseruerunt non sine magna Christi fidelium jactura; quorum temeritati sancta et universalis synodus cupiens occurrere, insigniores praedictorum schismaticorum haereses et errores, ne plures ad se trahat perniciosa eorum contagio, exterminandos duxit, hos in ipsos haeticos eorumque errores decernens anathematismos.

Si quis dixerit, matrimonium non esse vere et proprie unum ex septem legis evangelicae sacramentis a Christo Domino institutum, sed ab hominibus in ecclesia inventum, neque gratiam conferre: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, licere Christianis plures simul habere uxores, et hoc nulla lege divina esse prohibitum: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, eos tantum consanguinitatis et affinitatis gradus, qui Levitico exprimuntur, posse impedire matrimonium contrahendum et dirimere contractum, nec posse ecclesiam in nonnullis illorum dispensare, aut constituere, ut plures impediunt et dirimant: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, ecclesiam non potuisse constituere impedimenta matrimonium dirimentia, vel in iis constituendis errasse: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, propter haeresim, aut molestam cohabitationem, aut affectatam absentiam a conjuge dissolvi posse matrimonii vinculum: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, matrimonium ratum non consummatum per solem-  
nem religionis professionem alterius conjugum non dirimi: anathema  
sit.

Si quis dixerit, statum conjugalem anteponendum esse statui virgini-  
tatis vel coelibatus, et non esse melius ac beatius manere in virginitate  
aut coelibatu, quam jungi matrimonio: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, prohibitionem solemnitatis nuptiarum certis anni  
temporibus superstitionem esse tyrannicam ab ethnicorum supersti-  
tione profectam; aut benedictiones et alias caeremonias, quibus ecclesia  
in illis utitur, damnaverit: anathema sit.

Si quis dixerit, causas matrimoniales non spectare ad iudices eccle-  
siasticos: anathema sit.

2. Si Spiritus S. a Filio non procederet, nullomodo posset ab eo  
distingui. Etenim personae in divinis non distinguuntur realiter ab  
invicem nisi per relationes oppositas: quidquid enim in Deo absolute  
dicitur ad unitatem essentiae pertinet; aliunde relationes dispaes, sed  
non oppositae, non sufficiunt ad multiplicandas personas; ita v. g.  
generatio activa et spiratio activa, quae sunt relationes dispaes, non  
constituunt duas personas, sed unam tantum. Atqui relationes opposi-  
tae non dantur in divinis nisi relationes originis, quatenus una persona  
ab alia procedit; ergo Spiritus S. non realiter a Filio distinguitur, nisi  
ab eo procedat. "Quod ex hoc patet, ait S. Thomas, quia Pater habet  
duas relationes quarum una refertur ad Filium et alia ad Spiritum S.:  
quae tamen quia non sunt oppositae, non constituunt duas personas,  
sed ad unam tantum personam pertinent. Si autem in Filio  
et Spiritu S. non esset invenire nisi duas relationes, quibus uterque  
refertur ad Patrem, illae relationes non essent ad invicem oppositae,  
sicut neque duae relationes, quibus Pater refertur ad illos. Unde sicut  
persona Patris est una, ita sequeretur quod persona Filii et Spiritus S.  
esset una, habens duas relationes oppositas duabus relationibus Patris.  
Hoc autem est haeticum, cum tollat fidem Trinitatis." Ex dictis in  
thesi generali, Spiritus S. procedit per modum volitionis seu amoris;  
atqui amor, etiam in homine, procedit non solum a voluntate sed etiam  
a cognitione objecti amati, juxta illud: "nil volitum quin praecogni-

tum." Ergo in Deo Spiritus S. debet procedere non solum a Patre, sed etiam a divina intellectione, seu a Verbo. Spiritus S. procedit a Patre et Filio tanquam ab unico principio et unica spiratione, licet sint duo spirantes. De fide est, ex definitione Conc. Florentini jam citata. Sensus hujus corollarii est, non esse in Patre et Filio duplicem vim spirativam, sed unam tantum, quae utrique communis est; etenim in Deo omnia communia sunt, ubi non obstat relationis oppositio; atqui in producendo Spiritum S., Pater et Filius non sibi mutuo opponuntur; ergo producunt Spiritum S. per modum unius principii. Ex quo sequitur eos producere Spiritum unica spiratione; quum enim unica sit vis spirandi, utrique communis, exerceri nequit nisi ab utroque simul agente. Ille autem actus vocatur spiratio, quia fit per modum volitionis seu amoris; amor enim est motus voluntatis ad rem amatam tendentis, qui imitatur flatum seu motum spirantis. Animadvertit S. Thomas dici posse Spiritum S. a *Patre* procedere *per Filium*, non quidem eo sensu quod Filius sit instrumentum, aut minister Patrem adjuvans in processione Spiritus, sed quia Filius est origine medius inter Patrem et Spiritum, et a Patre habet quod possit spirare Spiritum.

## LESSON XL

### Vocabulary

**animadvertere, -verti, -versus, to notice, to recognize**

**annullare, to annul**

**arbor, f., tree**

**attentare, to attempt**

**clam, secretly**

**clandestinus, clandestine**

**cohabitare, to live together**

**consiliare, to advise**

**consiliarius, m., counselor**

**consilium, n., advice**

**corruptela, f., corruption**

**denunciatio, f., prohibition, publication**

**efficax, efficacious**

**egressio, f., egress, departure**

**flos, m., flower**

**hortari (dep.), to exhort**

**immemorabilis, immemorial**

**imperium, m., command**

**impulsio, f., force, impulsion**

**inhabilis, incapable**

**inobedientia, f., disobedience**

**malitie, maliciously**

**mansio, f., home, house**

**minoratio, f., lessening, diminishing**

**missio, f., act of sending, emission**

**palam, openly, publicly**

**perpendere, -pendi, -pensus, to weigh, to consider**

punire, -ivi, -itus, *to punish*  
 radius, m., *ray*  
 robur, n., *strength, effect, force*  
 sponsus, m., *betrothed*  
 suspendere, -pendi, -pensus, *to suspend*  
 vestigium, n., *footstep*

## Idioms

1. *in posterum, in the future*
2. *non obstante, notwithstanding*
3. *tamdiu . . . quamdiu, till such time as, until*
4. *robur habere, to take effect*
5. *ex illo, since then*
6. *illud quidem . . . sed autem, to be sure . . . but still*
7. *pridie quam, the day before*

## GRAMMAR

1. A clause in the subjunctive with or without **ut** follows **quam** after a comparative.

*Hi viri veteriores sunt quam ut ad munus eligantur. These men are too old to be elected to office.*

*Injurias patiebatur potius quam clam ageret. He endured persecution rather than act secretly.*

2. **Tantum abest**, *it is so far from* (being the case), takes two clauses in the subjunctive, each introduced by **ut**; one is the real subject of **abest**, the other depends on **tantum**.

*Tantum abest ut superbus sit ut semetipsum defendere nolit. He is so far from being proud that he is unwilling to defend himself.*

3. **Pridie quam**, *the day before*, governs the subjunctive.

*Pridie quam errorem animadverterent, denunciatio jam facta erat. The day before they nounced their mistake, the publication had already been made.*

## EXERCISES

1. Amici nostri meliores fuerint quam ut aetate vetusta negligantur.
2. Tantum abest ut scopum suum attingant, ut eis vanum sit ulterius procedere.
3. Ex illo existimavimus periculum majus esse quam ut militia in territorio hoc retineatur.
4. Tantum abest ut tamdiu expectet quamdiu lucrum justum facere possit, ut oleum ex olivis statim vendere velit.
5. Tantum abest ut clerici tuti sint in illa terra impudica, ut omnes in dies mortem infamem expectent.
6. Sacerdos nomina sponsorum descriperat, pridie quam parochus novus adveniret.
7. Tantum abest ut rei malitiose puniti sint, ut aequae atque benigne a custodibus acti sint.
8. Tantum abest ut tacitus sit, ut per triginta annos falsis eorum tutoribus carcerem minetur.
9. Ille quidem aliquod pauperibus dederat, pridie quam episcopus adveniret, sed autem multo magis sibi servaverat.
10. Illud quidem pactum peculiare erat, sed autem perficere posset id quod polliceretur, si vehementius niteretur.
11. Legibus tyrannicis se subjecerunt potius quam domos suas perderent.
12. Pridie quam chirurgus baptizaretur, uxor sua quoque convertebatur.
13. Tantum abest ut virgines istae stultae sint, ut sapientiam praestantem exhibuerint.
14. Tantum abest ut liberi simus, ut omnes nostrum servi ex nativitate usque ad mortem simus.
15. Ex illo, pueri imprudentiores sunt quam ut magistra eis fidat.

## READING

1. Tametsi dubitandum non est, clandestina matrimonia, libero contrahentium consensu facta, rata et vera esse matrimonia, quamdiu ecclesia ea irrita non fecit, et proinde jure damnandi sunt illi, ut eos sancta synodus anathemate damnat, qui ea vera ac rata esse negant, quique falso affirmant, matrimonia a filiis familias sine consensu parentum contracta irrita esse, et parentes ea rata vel irrita facere posse: nihilominus sancta Dei ecclesia ex justissimis causis illa semper deestata est atque prohibuit. Verum, cum sancta synodus animadvertat, prohibitiones illas propter hominum inobedientiam jam non prodesse, et gravia peccata perpendat, quae ex eisdem clandestinis conjugiiis

ortum habent, praesertim vero eorum, qui in statu damnationis permanent, dum priore uxore, cum qua clam contraxerant, relicta cum alia palam contrahunt, et cum ea in perpetuo adulterio vivunt; cui malo cum ab ecclesia, quae de occultis non iudicat, succurri non possit, nisi efficacius aliquod remedium adhibeatur, idcirco sacri Lateranensis concilii sub Innocentio III celebrati vestigiis inhaerendo praecipit, ut in posterum, antequam matrimonium contrahatur, ter a proprio contrahentium parochio tribus continuis diebus festivis in ecclesia inter missarum solemnias publice denunciatur, inter quos matrimonium sit contrahendum; quibus denunciationibus factis, si nullum legitimum opponatur impedimentum, ad celebrationem matrimonii in facie ecclesiae procedatur, ubi parochus, viro et muliere interrogatis, et eorum mutuo consensu intellecto, vel dicat: *Ego vos in matrimonium conjungo in nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti*, vel aliis utatur verbis, juxta receptum uniuscujusque provinciae ritum.

Quod si probabilis fuerit suspicio, matrimonium malitiose impediri posse, si tot praecesserint denunciations, tunc vel una tantum denunciatio fiat, vel saltem parochio et duobus vel tribus testibus praesentibus matrimonium celebretur. Deinde ante illius consummationem denunciations in ecclesia fiant, ut, si aliqua subsunt impedimenta, facilius detegantur, nisi ordinarius ipse expedire judicaverit, ut praedictae denunciations remittantur, quod illius prudentiae et iudicio sancta synodus relinquit. Qui aliter, quam praesente parochio vel alio sacerdote, de ipsius parochi seu ordinarii licentia, et duobus vel tribus testibus matrimonium contrahere attentabunt, eos sancta synodus ad sic contrahendum omnino inhabiles reddit, et hujusmodi contractus irritos et nullos esse decernit, prout eos praesenti decreto irritos facit et annullat. Insuper parochum vel alium sacerdotem, qui cum minore testium numero, et testes, qui sine parochio vel sacerdote hujusmodi contractui interfuerint, necnon ipsos contrahentes graviter arbitrio ordinarii puniri praecipit. Praeterea eadem sancta synodus hortatur, ut conjuges ante benedictionem sacerdotalem, in templo suscipiendam, in eadem domo non cohabitent, statuitque benedictionem a proprio parochio fieri, neque a quoquam, nisi ab ipso parochio vel ab ordinario



licentiam ad praedictam benedictionem faciendam alii sacerdoti concedi posse, quacumque consuetudine, etiam immemorabili, quae potius corruptela dicenda est, vel privilegio non obstante. Quod si quis parochus vel alius sacerdos, sive regularis sive saecularis sit, etiamsi id sibi ex privilegio vel immemorabili consuetudine licere contendat, alterius parochiae sponso sine illorum parochi licentia matrimonio conjungere aut benedicere ausus fuerit, ipso jure tamdiu suspensus maneat, quamdiu ab ordinario ejus parochi, qui matrimonio interesse debebat seu a quo benedictio suscipienda erat, absolvatur. Habeat parochus librum, in quo conjugum et testium nomina, diemque et locum contracti matrimonii describat, quem diligenter apud se custodiat.

Postremo sancta synodus conjuges hortatur, ut antequam contrahant, vel saltem triduo ante matrimonii consummationem, sua peccata diligenter confiteantur, et ad sanctissimum Eucharistiae sacramentum pie accedant. Si quae provinciae aliis ultra praedictas laudabilibus consuetudinibus et caeremoniis hac in re utuntur, eas omnino retineri sancta synodus vehementer optat. Ne vero haec tam salubria praecepta quemquam lateant, ordinariis omnibus praecipit, ut, quam primum potuerint, curent hoc decretum populo publicari ac explicari in singulis suarum dioecesium parochialibus ecclesiis, idque in primo anno quam saepissime fiat, deinde vero quoties expedire viderint. Decernit insuper, ut hujusmodi decretum in unaquaque parochia suum robur post triginta dies habere incipiat, a die primae publicationis in eadem parochia factae numerandos.

2. Quum duae sint missionum species in Deo, scilicet missio invisibilis, et missio visibilis, dicemus: a) de missionibus in genere, b) de missione invisibili, c) de missione visibili. Missio in genere est motio vel egressio alicujus entis ab alio cum destinatione ad aliquem terminum. Triplex distinguitur: a) *physica* quae fit per physicam impulsionem, v. g. lapis missus a brachio; b) *moralis*, quae fit per impulsionem moralem sive per imperium, sive per consilium; sic v. g. servus mittitur a domino per imperium; rex mittitur a consiliariis per consilium; c) *substantialis*, quae fit per quamdam *originem*, seu

*emanationem* ex ipsa substantia mittentis, sic flos emittitur ab arbore, radius a sole. Missiones divinae sunt missiones substantiales, sine defectibus tamen quae in creaturis inveniuntur; in humanis “missio importat minorationem in eo qui mittitur, secundum quod importat processionem a principio mittente aut secundum imperium aut secundum consilium, quia imperans est major, et consilians est sapientior.

In divinis non importat nisi processionem originis, quae est secundum aequalitatem.” Missio in divinis est processio unius personae ab alia, cum destinatione ad aliquem temporalem effectum, seu cum novo existendi modo. Dicitur a) processio unius personae ab alia, vel a duabus aliis, nam missio importat influxum realem personae mittentis in personam missam; atqui, in Deo, nullus est influxus unius personae in alteram nisi per processionem; ergo missio supponit processionem. b) Cum destinatione etc.; missio enim supponit destinationem ad aliquem terminum, seu ad aliquid novum faciendum, et quum in Deo nihil novi sit faciendum, destinatio illa est ad aliquem temporalem effectum. c) Cum novo *existendi modo*; temporalis ille effectus non potest consistere in mutatione loci, quum divinae personae jam sint ubique, neque in productione alicujus substantiae, nam talis productio communis est tribus personis et opus naturae divinae; consistit igitur in eo quod persona missa *novo modo existat* in creaturis, vel per manifestationem praesentiae, vel per specialem conjunctionem cum creatura; sic v. g. missio Filii per Incarnationem consistit in eo quod Verbum Divinum, quod jam antea erat super terram, *novo modo* incoepit esse in aliqua parte terrae, sese *hypostatice uniendo humanae naturae*. Pater mitti nequit. Non enim legitur in Scriptura quod mittatur, sed solum quod veniat ad nos: “Ad eum *veniemus* et mansionem apud eum faciemus.” Jamvero magnum discrimen est inter *venire* et *mitti*: Pater ad nos venire potest, aliquem effectum gratiae producendo; at *mitti* non intelligitur ex dictis nisi ea persona quae ab altera procedit. Hinc S. Augustinus ait: “Solum Pater legitur non missus: quia solus non habet auctorem, de quo sit genitus, vel a quo procedat.” Cujus rationem sic reddit S. Thomas: “In omni missione oportet quod ponatur aliqua auctoritas alicujus ad

ipsum missum. In divinis autem personis non est auctoritas nisi secundum originem. Et ideo nulli personae divinae convenit mitti nisi ei quae est (i.e. procedit) ab alio, respectu cuius potest in alio designari auctoritas, et ideo Spiritus S. et Filius dicuntur mitti, et non Pater vel Trinitas ipsa.”

## VOCABULARY

### A

**a, ab**, from, by; **ab hac parte**, on this side

**abbas**, *m.*, abbot

**abesse**, -fui, to be absent; **absit**, far from it, God forbid

**abjicere**, -jeci, -jectus, to degrade, to debase

**abluere**, -lui, -lutus, to wash, to cleanse  
**ablutio**, *f.*, ablution, washing, pouring on

**abortivus**, abortive, prematurely born

**abrogare**, to revoke, to abrogate

**absens**, absent

**absentia**, *f.*, absence

**absolute**, absolutely, fully, completely

**absolutio**, *f.*, absolution

**absolutus**, absolute, complete

**absolvere**, -solvi, -solutus, to absolve

**absorbere** (2), -ui, to absorb

**absque**, without, except

**abstergere** (2), -tersi, -tersus, to wipe away

**abstinere** (2), -tinui, -tentus, to abstain, to refrain

**abstractio**, *f.*, detachment, removal

**ac**, and; **aeque** —, as well as; **haud minus** —, just as

**accedere**, -cessi, -cessus, to accede, to approve

**accendere**, -cendi, -census, to kindle

**accensere** (2), -censui, -censitus, to reckon, to number

**acceptabilis**, acceptable

**acceptus**, agreeable, welcome, worthy

**accessus**, *m.*, access

**accidens**, *n.*, accident

**accidentalis**, accidental

**accidere**, -cidi, to happen, to take place

**accipere**, -cepi, -ceptus, to receive, to take, to accept

**acclinis**, leaning, bowing

**accurate**, accurately

**accuratius**, more accurately

**acquisitus**, acquired

**actio**, *f.*, action

**activitas**, *f.*, activity

**actu**, abl. of **actus**; actually, in reality

**actualis**, actual

**actualitas**, *f.*, reality, existence

**actus**, *m.*, act

**ad**, to, unto, at, toward, against, near;

— **diem**, on the day; — **extra**, ex-

ternal, outward, outwardly; — **ex-**

**tremum**, finally; — **hoc**, besides;

— **hunc modum**, in this way; — **id**

**quod**, besides that; — **postremum**,

lastly; **quem** — **modum**, as, how;

— **summum**, on the whole, in general,

at the most; — **tempus**, at the

time, in time; — **ultimum**, to the

last degree, utterly; **usque** —, up to,

as far as; — **verbum**, literally, word

for word

**Adae**, gen. of **Adam**, *m.*, Adam

**adaequare**, to be equal to, to be adequate

**adaequatus**, adequate

**Adamus**, *m.*, Adam

**addere**, -didi, -ditus, to add

**addicere**, -dixi, -dictus, to doom to, to adjudge

**additio**, *f.*, addition

- adducere, -duxi, -ductus**, to bring, to adduce  
**aduce**  
**adeo**, even  
**adequate, adequately**  
**adesse, -fui**, to attend, to be present, to be mindful  
**adhaerere (2), -haesi, -haesus**, to adhere, to cleave to  
**adhibere (2)**, to apply, to employ  
**adhuc**, yet, still, now, as  
**adipisci (dep. 3), adeptus**, to reach, to obtain, to achieve  
**aditus, m.**, approach, access, gate  
**adjicere, -jeci, -jectus**, to add  
**adjunctio, f.**, limitation, restriction  
**adjunctum, n.**, addition, accessory circumstance  
**adjungere, -junxi, -junctus**, to add, to attach  
**adjutorium, n.**, help  
**adjuvare, -juvi, -jutus**, to aid  
**administrare**, to administer  
**administratio, f.**, administering  
**admiscere (2), -miscui, -mixtus**, to mix  
**admittere, -misi, -missus**, to admit, to join  
**admodum**, very, exceedingly, quite;  
**annos — octo**, fully eight years;  
**nihil —**, nothing at all; **nullus —**, none at all; **nuper —**, very recently  
**admonere (2), -monui, -monitus**, to warn, to admonish  
**adnexus (annexus)**, connected  
**adnotatio, f.**, comment, annotation  
**adolescencia, f.**, adolescence  
**adolescere, -levi**, to grow up  
**adorare**, to adore, to worship, to bow down before  
**adoratio, f.**, adoration  
**adorator, m.**, adorer  
**adscribere, -scripsi, -scriptus**, to enroll  
**adscriptus**, approved  
**adstare**, to be present, to attend  
**adstringere, -strinxi, -strictus**, to bind  
**adultus, m.**, adult  
**adunare**, to unite  
**advenire (4), -veni, -ventus**, to come  
**adventus, m.**, coming, arrival  
**adversari (dep. 1)**, to be opposed  
**adversarius, m.**, adversary, opponent  
**advertentia, f.**, knowledge, warning  
**aedificare**, to build  
**aegre**, with hardship  
**aequalitas, f.**, equality, sameness  
**aequaliter**, equally  
**aeque**, equally; — **ac**, as well as  
**aequus**, right, equal; **ex aequo**, justly, on a par  
**aër, m.**, air  
**aestas, f.**, summer  
**aestimare**, to esteem, to consider  
**aestimator, m.**, one who esteems  
**aestus, m.**, heat  
**aetas, f.**, age  
**aeternaliter**, eternally  
**aeternus**, everlasting, eternal; **in aeternum**, forever  
**affectatus**, voluntary  
**affectus, m.**, affection  
**affinis**, allied, related  
**affinitas, f.**, affinity  
**affirmare**, to affirm  
**affirmatio, f.**, affirmation  
**affligere, -flicxi, -flictus**, to mortify, to punish  
**agens, m.**, doer, actor, agent  
**agere, egi, actus**, to do, to act, to deal, to put in motion; **dies festus —**, to spend holy days; **gratias —**, to give thanks; **quartum annum agit**, he is four years old; **se —**, to behave; **agitur**, it is a question of  
**aggregare**, to add to, to join with  
**agnoscere, -novi, -notus**, to acknowledge  
**agnus, m.**, lamb  
**ait**, he speaks, he says

- albus**, white  
**alere**, **alui**, **alitus**, to nourish  
**alias**, otherwise  
**alibi**, elsewhere  
**alioqui**, in other respects, otherwise  
**alioquin**, otherwise  
**aliquando**, formerly  
**aliqui**, some, any; **aliqua ex parte**, in some respect  
**aliquid**, to some extent, somewhat  
**aliquis**, some one, somebody  
**aliter**, otherwise; — **atque**, otherwise than  
**aliunde**, hence  
**alius**, other; **nihil aliud**, nothing else  
**aliquomodo**, somehow, in some manner  
**alloqui** (dep. 3), **-locutus**, to address  
**almus**, august, benign  
**altare**, *n.*, altar  
**alter**, the other; **nullus** —, no other; — . . . —, the one the other  
**alterare**, to change  
**alteratio**, *f.*, change, alteration  
**alteruter**, one or the other  
**altus**, high, deep  
**amabilis**, loveable  
**amare**, to love  
**amarus**, bitter  
**amator**, *m.*, lover  
**ambulare**, to walk  
**amens**, insane, idiot  
**amicus**, *m.*, friend  
**amittere**, **-misi**, **-missus**, to lose  
**amodo**, from henceforth  
**amor**, *m.*, love  
**amplius**, yet more  
**anathema**, *n.*, anathema  
**anathematismus**, *m.*, anathema  
**angelicus**, angelic  
**angelus**, *m.*, angel  
**anima**, *f.*, soul, life  
**animadvertere**, **-verti**, **-versus**, to notice, to recognize  
**animal**, *n.*, animal  
**animus**, *m.*, heart, mind, spirit; **est ei in animo**, he has in mind, he intends  
**anniversarius**, anniversary  
**annuere**, **-nui**, to assent, to grant  
**annullare**, to annul  
**annulus**, *m.*, ring  
**annumerare**, to number  
**annuntiare**, to announce, to declare, to show forth, to relate  
**annus**, *m.*, year; **annos admodum octo**, fully eight years; **multis post annis**, after many years; **quartum annum agit**, he is four years old  
**annuus**, annual, yearly, year by year  
**ante**, before, ago  
**antea**, before  
**anteponere**, **-posui**, **-positus**, to place before, to prefer  
**antequam**, before  
**antidotum**, *n.*, antidote  
**antimensium**, *n.* (in the Eastern Church, a consecrated cloth used in place of an altar; or sometimes in the Syrian Church, a slab of wood so used)  
**antiquatus**, archaic, outdated  
**antiquissimus**, very ancient  
**antiquus**, ancient  
**antistes**, *m.*, bishop  
**aperire** (4), **-perui**, **-pertus**, to open  
**aperte**, openly  
**apertissimus**, most open, most plain  
**apertius**, more openly, more plainly  
**apostasia**, *f.*, apostasy  
**apostolicus**, apostolic  
**apostolus**, *m.*, apostle  
**apparere** (2), to appear  
**appellare**, to call  
**appetere**, **-ivi** or **-ii**, **-itus**, to long for, to desire  
**appetitivus**, having appetite or desire for

**appetitus, m.**, appetite  
**applicare, -avi or -ui, -atus**, to apply  
**apprime**, especially  
**appropriatio, f.**, appropriation  
**aptissime**, most aptly  
**aptitudo, f.**, aptitude  
**aptus**, fit, suited to, correct  
**apud**, to, with, in the presence of,  
 among, at the house of  
**aqua, f.**, water  
**arbitrium, n.**, judgment, will  
**arbor, f.**, tree  
**arcanus**, secret, sacred  
**arcere (2), -cui**, to prevent, to exclude  
**archangelus, m.**, archangel  
**artissimus**, closest, very tight  
**argentum, n.**, silver  
**argumentum, n.**, argument  
**ars, f.**, art  
**articulus, m.**, article, point, moment  
**artifex, m.**, artificer, maker, author  
**artificialis**, artificial, man-made  
**ascendere, -cendi, -census**, to ascend  
**ascensio, f.**, ascension  
**ascribere, -scripsi, -scriptus**, to ascribe,  
 to apply, to attribute  
**aspergere, -spersi, -spersus**, to sprinkle  
**aspersio, f.**, sprinkling  
**aspicere, -spexi, -spectus**, to look  
 toward  
**assentire (4)**, to assent  
**assequi (dep. 3), assecutus**, to obtain  
**asservare**, to preserve, to guard, to  
 protect  
**assidere (2), -sedi, -sessus**, to sit, to be  
 seated  
**assistentia, f.**, assistance, presence  
**assistere, -stiti**, to attend  
**assuetudo, f.**, custom, habit  
**assumere, -sumpsi, -sumptus**, to take  
 at, but  
**atque**, and, and in addition; **aliter** —,  
 otherwise than  
**atqui**, however, but nevertheless

**attamen**, nevertheless  
**attendere**, to attempt  
**attentus**, attentive  
**attenuare**, to weaken, to diminish  
**attingere, -tigi, -tactus**, to arrive at, to  
 attain  
**attribuere, -ui, -utus**, to attribute, to  
 bestow, to grant  
**atvero**, however  
**auctor, m.**, author  
**auctoritas, f.**, authority  
**audere (semidep. 2), ausus**, to dare, to  
 risk, to make bold  
**audire (4)**, to hear  
**auditio, f.**, hearing  
**auditus, m.**, hearing  
**aufferre, abstuli, ablatus**, to take away  
**augere (2), auxi, auctus**, to increase,  
 to augment  
**augmentum, n.**, increase  
**aurichalcum, n.**, brass  
**auris, f.**, ear  
**aurora, f.**, dawn  
**aurum, n.**, gold  
**autem**, however, whereupon, but, and  
 also, and; **illud quidem . . . sed**  
 —, to be sure . . . but still; **contra**  
 —, but on the other hand  
**authenticus**, authentic  
**auxilium, n.**, help, assistance  
**aversio, f.**, aversion  
**avertere, -verti, -versus**, to turn away  
**avia, f.**, grandmother  
**avus, m.**, grandfather  
**azymus**, unleavened

## B

**baculus, m.**, staff  
**baptisma, n.**, baptism  
**baptismalis**, baptismal  
**baptismus, m.**, baptism  
**baptisterium, n.**, baptistery  
**baptizare**, to baptize

**beatitudo**, *f.*, happiness, blessedness  
**beatus**, blessed, happy  
**bene**, well  
**benedicere**, -dixi, -dictus, to bless  
**benedictio**, *f.*, benediction  
**benedictus**, blessed  
**benefactor**, *m.*, benefactor  
**beneficium**, *f.*, benefice  
**benigne**, favorably  
**benignus**, favorable, merciful, good,  
 benign, loving  
**bibere**, bibi, bibitus, to drink  
**blandiri** (dep. 4), to flatter  
**bonitas**, *f.*, goodness  
**bonus**, good; **bona**, *n. pl.*, goods; **in  
 bonum**, for good  
**brachium**, *n.*, arm  
**bravium**, *n.*, prize  
**brevis**, short  
**brutus**, brute, irrational

## C

**cadere**, cecidi, **cassus**, to fall, to fall  
 down, to beat  
**caelestis**, heavenly  
**caelum** (coelum), *n.*, heaven, sky  
**caeremonia**, *f.*, ceremony  
**calamitas**, *f.*, calamity, disaster, dis-  
 tress  
**calamitosus**, calamitous  
**calculus**, *m.*, coal  
**calefacere**, -feci, -factus, to heat  
**calefactio**, *f.*, heat, heating  
**calidus**, hot  
**calix**, *m.*, chalice  
**calor**, *m.*, heat  
**canere**, cecini, **cantus**, to sing, to blow  
**canon**, *f.*, canon (ecclesiastical rule or  
 edict)  
**capax**, capable  
**capere** (io), cepi, **captus**, to receive, to  
 obtain, to contain, to take, to un-  
 derstand

**caput**, *n.*, head, chapter  
**carcer**, *m.*, jail  
**cardinalis**, cardinal, principal, chief  
**caerentia**, *f.*, lack  
**carere** (2), to lack, to be devoid of  
**caritas**, *f.*, charity  
**caro**, *f.*, flesh, meat  
**carpentarius**, *m.*, carpenter  
**castigare**, to punish  
**cassus**, vain  
**casus**, *m.*, case  
**catechesis**, *f.*, oral instruction  
**catechismus**, *m.*, catechism  
**cathedralis**, cathedral  
**catholicus**, catholic  
**causa**, *f.*, cause, means, matter; **alia de  
 causa**, for another reason; **multis de  
 causis**, for many reasons; **qua de  
 causa**, for which reason  
**causare**, to cause  
**cautum**, *n.*, concern  
**cavere** (2), **cavi**, **cautus**, to beware  
**cedere**, cessi, **cessus**, to yield, to grant,  
 to allow  
**celebrare**, to celebrate  
**celebratio**, *f.*, celebration  
**celebritas**, *f.*, solemnity  
**censere** (2), **censui**, **census**, to reckon,  
 to count  
**centrum**, *n.*, center  
**cernere**, crevi, **cretus**, to discern  
**certamen**, *n.*, strife  
**certitudo**, *f.*, certainty  
**certo**, certainly  
**certus**, certain; **certiorem reddere**, to  
 inform  
**cessare**, to cease  
**ceterus**, other; **et cetera**, and so forth;  
**de cetero**, as for the rest  
**character**, *m.*, character, spiritual  
 mark, sign  
**cherub**, *m.*, cherub  
**chirurgus**, *m.*, surgeon  
**chorus**, *m.*, choir



- chrisma, *n.*, chrism, consecrated oil  
 christianus, Christian  
 Christus, *m.*, Christ  
 cibus, *m.*, food  
 cinis, *m.*, ashes, embers  
 circa, about, in respect to  
 circiter, about  
 circulus, *m.*, circle  
 circumdare, -dedi, -datus, to encom-  
 pass, to surround  
 circumferre, -tuli, -latus, to bear or  
 carry around  
 circumgestare, to carry around  
 circumincessio, *f.*, coexistence  
 circumstantia, *f.*, circumstance  
 circumstare, -steti, to be present, to  
 stand around  
 cithara, *f.*, harp  
 citius, sooner, earlier, before  
 civilis, civil  
 clam, secretly  
 clamare, to cry out, to proclaim  
 clamor, *m.*, cry, shout  
 clandestinus, clandestine  
 clarificare, to glorify  
 claritas, *f.*, light, clarity  
 classicus, classic  
 claudere, clausi, clausus, to close  
 clavis, *f.*, key  
 clemens, merciful  
 clementer, mercifully, graciously  
 clementia, *f.*, clemency, mercy  
 clericus, *m.*, clerk, cleric, clergyman  
 coactio, *f.*, compulsion  
 coadunare, to unite  
 coaequalis, coequal  
 coarctare, to confine  
 coelibatus, *m.*, celibacy  
 coena, *f.*, supper  
 coenare, to sup, to dine  
 coextendere, -tendi, -tensus or -tentus,  
 to have the same extension  
 cogere, coegi, coactus, to lead, to  
 bring, to assemble, to compel  
 cogitare, to think  
 cogitatio, *f.*, thought  
 cognatio, *f.*, relationship  
 cognitio, *f.*, knowledge, idea  
 cognoscere, -novi, -nitus, to know  
 cognoscitivus, cognizant, aware  
 cohabitare, to live together  
 cohabitatio, *f.*, cohabitation  
 cohortari (dep. 1), to encourage, to  
 exhort  
 colere, colui, cultus, to worship  
 collatio, *f.*, gathering, conferring  
 collatus, *m.*, conferring, compared  
 colligere, -legi, -lectus, to assemble, to  
 collect  
 color, *m.*, color  
 coloratus, colored  
 columba, *f.*, dove  
 columna, *f.*, pillar  
 comedere, -edi, -esus, to eat  
 comestio, *f.*, eating  
 comitari (dep. 1), to attend, to ac-  
 company  
 comitatus, *m.*, company  
 commemorare, to commemorate  
 commemoratio, *f.*, commemoration  
 commendare, to commend  
 commendatitius, of recommendation  
 or introduction  
 commentum, *n.*, falsehood  
 committere, -misi, -missus, to bring to-  
 gether, to unite  
 commixtio, *f.*, mingling  
 commode, conveniently  
 commoditas, *f.*, convenience  
 commonere (2), -monui, -monitus, to  
 warn, to admonish  
 commorari (dep. 1), to stay, to tarry  
 commotio, *f.*, stirring, movement, agi-  
 tation  
 communicare, to communicate, to re-  
 ceive in communion  
 communio, *f.*, communion  
 communis, common

- communiter**, commonly  
**comparare**, to prepare, to furnish, to obtain, to compare  
**compati** (dep. 3, *io*), **-passus**, to suffer  
**competenter**, fitly  
**competere**, **-ivi**, **-itus**, to be capable of, to fit, to belong to  
**complecti** (dep. 3), **-plexus**, to embrace  
**complere**, **-plevi**, **-pletus**, to complete, to fulfill  
**completus**, complete  
**complures**, several  
**componere**, **-posui**, **-positus**, to compose  
**compos**, sane, sound  
**compositio**, *f.*, composition  
**comprehendere**, **-hendi**, **-hensus**, to comprehend, to obtain, to apprehend, to take  
**comprehensio**, *f.*, comprehensiveness  
**comprobare**, to prove, to establish  
**computare**, to number  
**conari** (dep. 1), to try  
**concedere**, **-cessi**, **-cessus**, to grant  
**concelebrare**, to celebrate together  
**conceptus**, *m.*, concept  
**concilium**, *n.*, council  
**concionator**, *m.*, preacher  
**concipere**, **-cepi**, **-ceptus**, to conceive  
**concomitantia**, *f.*, concomitance  
**concupiscentia**, *f.*, concupiscence  
**concurrere**, **-curri**, **-cursus**, to concur, to agree  
**condemnatio**, *f.*, condemnation  
**condemnatorius**, condemnatory  
**condere**, **-didi**, **-ditus**, to create, to found  
**conditio**, *f.*, condition, nature; **sub conditione**, conditionally  
**conditionatus**, conditional  
**conditor**, *m.*, founder, creator  
**condonare**, to condone, to pardon  
**conducere**, **-duxi**, **-ductus**, to lead  
**conferre**, **-tuli**, **collatus**, to accompany, to grant, to confer, to ponder, to gain  
**confessarius**, *m.*, confessor  
**confessio**, *f.*, confession, praise  
**confessor**, *m.*, confessor  
**confestim**, immediately  
**conficere**, **-feci**, **-fectus**, to confer, to make  
**confirmare**, to confirm, to strengthen, to ratify  
**confirmatio**, *f.*, confirmation  
**confiteri** (dep. 2), **-fessus**, to confess, to praise, to give thanks or glory  
**conformare**, to conform  
**conformis**, conformable, in conformance with  
**conformitas**, *f.*, conformity  
**confortare**, to strengthen  
**confugere** (*io*), **-fugi**, to flee  
**confundere**, **-fudi**, **-fusus**, to confound  
**conglorificare**, to glorify  
**congregare**, to gather, to gather together  
**congregatio**, *f.*, company, congregation  
**congruere**, **-grui**, to fit, to conform to  
**congruus**, proper, suitable  
**conjugalis**, conjugal, married  
**conjunctio**, *f.*, union, whole, conjunction  
**conjunctus**, connected, united with; (as noun), kinsman, relative  
**conjungere**, **-junxi**, **-junctus**, to join, to have affinity with  
**conjux**, *m.* and *f.*, husband, wife, spouse  
**commixtio**, *f.*, mingling  
**complexio**, *f.*, combination  
**concludere**, **-clusi**, **-clusus**, to conclude  
**connaturaliter**, in a natural way  
**connexio**, *f.*, connection, relation  
**connubium**, *n.*, marriage  
**connumerare**, to number amongst

- consanguinitas, f.,** consanguinity  
**conscientia, f.,** conscience  
**consciens, conscious,** aware  
**consecrare, to consecrate**  
**consecratio, f.,** consecration  
**consecratus, consecrated**  
**consecutio, f.,** attainment  
**consensus, m.,** consent  
**consentaneus, suited,** proper  
**consentire (4), to consent, to be in**  
**agreement**  
**consequentia, f.,** consequence  
**consequi (dep. 3), -secutus, to obtain,**  
**to follow**  
**conserere, -serui, -sertus, to connect**  
**conservare, to preserve**  
**conservatio, f.,** preservation  
**conservator, m.,** preserver  
**considerare, to consider**  
**consideratio, f.,** consideration  
**consiliare, to advise**  
**consiliarius, m.,** counselor  
**consilium, n.,** advice  
**consistere, -stiti, -stitus, to consist**  
**consolari (dep. 1), to comfort**  
**consors, having a common lot, par-**  
**taking**  
**consortium, n.,** consort, company  
**conspicere, m.,** sight, presence  
**constantissime, most firmly**  
**constare, -stiti, -status, to consist**  
**constituere, -ui, -utus, to constitute, to**  
**decree, to appoint, to set, to ordain**  
**constitutivus, constituent**  
**constringere, -strinx, -strictus, to con-**  
**strain**  
**construere, -uxi, -uctus, to construct**  
**consubstantialis, consubstantial**  
**consubstantialitas, f.,** consubstantial-  
**ity, state of being one and the same**  
**essence**  
**consuetudo, f.,** custom  
**consuetus, accustomed**  
**consulere, -ui, -tus, to consult**
- contagio, f.,** contagion  
**contemnere, -tempsti, -temptus, to de-**  
**spise**  
**contemplatio, f.,** contemplation  
**contendere, -tendi, -tentus, to contend**  
**contentiosus, contentious**  
**contextus, m.,** context  
**continere (2), -tinui, -tentus, to con-**  
**tain**  
**contingere, -tigi, -tactus, to touch, to**  
**extend to**  
**continuus, continuous, constant**  
**contra, against, before; e —, on the**  
**contrary, over against, opposite;**  
**— autem, but on the other hand;**  
**— haec, in answer to this; haec —,**  
**this in reply; quod —, whereas on**  
**the other hand**  
**contractus, m.,** contract, bargain  
**contradicere, -dixi, -dictus, to contra-**  
**dict**  
**contrahere, -traxi, -tractus, to contract**  
**contrarietas, f.,** opposite  
**contrarium, n.,** opposite  
**contribulatus, troubled**  
**contristare, to sadden, to afflict, to**  
**trouble**  
**contritus, contrite**  
**conturbare, to disquiet, to disturb, to**  
**trouble**  
**convalescere, -valui, to regain health**  
**or strength**  
**convellere, -velli, -vulsus, to pluck or**  
**tear up**  
**convenientia, f.,** agreement  
**convenire (4), -veni, -ventus, to agree**  
**conventio, f.,** agreement  
**conventualis, conventual, of a con-**  
**vent**  
**conversatio, f.,** intercourse, conversa-  
**tion**  
**conversio, f.,** conversion, change  
**conversus, turned, converse; e con-**  
**verso, conversely, on the contrary**

**convertere, -verti, -versus**, to convert, to change  
**cooperare**, to cooperate  
**copia, f.**, quantity, amount, plenty  
**copiosus**, plentiful  
**copulare**, to unite  
**cor, n.**, heart  
**coram**, in the presence of, before, face to face  
**cornu, n.**, horn  
**corollarium, n.**, corollary  
**coronare**, to crown  
**corporalis**, corporal, corporeal, bodily  
**corporeus**, bodily, corporeal  
**corpus, n.**, body, carcass  
**corruptela, f.**, corruption  
**corruptibilis**, corruptible  
**corruptus**, corrupt, spoiled  
**cras**, tomorrow  
**creare**, to create  
**creatio, f.**, creation  
**creator, m.**, creator  
**creatrix**, creative  
**creatura, f.**, creature  
**credere, -didi, -ditus**, to believe, to trust  
**cremare**, to burn  
**criminosus**, criminal  
**crucifixus**, crucified  
**crudelis**, cruel  
**crux, f.**, cross  
**cubiculum, n.**, bedroom  
**culpa, f.**, fault, guilt, blame, sin  
**cultor, m.**, professor, server, worshiper  
**cultus, m.**, worship  
**cum**, with, when, while, whereas, although, since; **una** —, together with, conjointly with  
**cumulativus**, accruing  
**cunctus**, all  
**cupire (4)**, to wish  
**cur, why**  
**cura, f.**, care  
**custodia, f.**, watch, custody

**custodire (4)**, to protect, to preserve, to keep, to guard, to watch over  
**custos, m. and f.**, guard, keeper

## D

**damnare**, to condemn  
**damnatio, f.**, damnation, condemnation  
**dare, dedi, datus**, to give, to grant, to yield; **operam** —, to take pains  
**de**, from, out of, concerning, against, by; **de cetero**, as for the rest; **multis de causis**, for many reasons; **qua de causa**, for which reason; **de industria**, on purpose  
**dealbare**, to make white  
**debere (2)**, owe, ought, must, due  
**debilitare**, to weaken  
**debitor, m.**, debtor  
**debitus, m.**, due  
**debitum, n.**, trespass, debt  
**decedere, -cessi, -cessus**, to depart, to die  
**decens**, decent, suitable, proper  
**decernere, -crevi, -cretus**, to decree  
**decet**, it is becoming  
**declarare**, to make clear, to show, to demonstrate  
**declaratorius**, declaratory  
**declinare**, to incline, to go aside, to turn away  
**decor, m.**, beauty  
**decorare**, to adorn, to honor  
**decretum, n.**, decree  
**deducere, -duxi, -ductus**, to lead, to conduct  
**deesse, -fui**, to be lacking  
**defendere, -fendi, -fensus**, to defend  
**deferre, -tuli, -latus**, to submit  
**deficere, -feci, -fectus**, to fail, to forsake, to depart from, to be wanting  
**definire**, to define  
**definitio, f.**, definition

defluere, -fluxi, -fluxus, to flow or proceed from  
 defunctus, dead  
 degradatus, deprived of office or dignity  
 deinde, then, finally  
 Deitas, *f.*, Deity, godhead, divinity  
 delectare, to delight  
 delectatio, *f.*, delight  
 delegatus, *m.*, delegate  
 delere (2), -evi, -etus, to blot out, to wash away, to destroy  
 deliberatus, deliberate  
 delictum, *n.*, crime, sin  
 delinquere, -liqui, -lictus, to transgress  
 demeritum, *n.*, defect, demerit  
 demonstrare, to demonstrate, to prove  
 denique, at length, lastly  
 denunciatio, *f.*, prohibition, publication  
 denuo, once more, again  
 dependere (2), to depend  
 depositio, *f.*, burial  
 depositus, divested  
 deprecari (dep. 1), to beseech  
 deprecatio, *f.*, prayer, supplication  
 deprehendere, -prehendi, -prehensus, to find  
 deputare, to appoint, to depute  
 derogari (dep. 1), to detract from, to derogate  
 descendere, -scendi, -scensus, to come down, to descend  
 describere, -scripsi, -scriptus, to describe, to record  
 deserre, -serui, -sertus, to desert, to forsake  
 desiderare, to desire  
 desiderium, *n.*, desire  
 designare, to designate  
 desperatio, *f.*, desperation, despair  
 despicerere (io), -pexi, -pectus, to despise  
 destinare, to destine

destinatio, *f.*, destination  
 destruere, -struxi, -structus, to destroy  
 desumere, -sumpsi, to choose, to select  
 detegere, -texi, -tectus, to uncover, to detect  
 detestari (dep. 1), to detest  
 determinare, to determine  
 determinatio, *f.*, determination  
 determinatus, definite, determined  
 detorquere (2), -torsi, -tortus or -torsus, to twist  
 detrahere, -traxi, -tractus, to detract  
 detrimentum, *n.*, detriment  
 Deus, *m.*, God  
 deviare, to deviate, to depart from  
 devotio, *f.*, devotion  
 devotus, devout  
 dexter, right  
 diaconus, *m.*, deacon  
 diametro; *e* —, diametrically  
 dicere, dixi, dictus, to say, to tell, to call, to mean  
 dicitur, it is called, it is said to be  
 dictum, *n.*, word  
 dies, *m.* and *f.*, day; de die in diem, from day to day; in dies, daily; ad diem, on the day; dies festos agere, to spend holy days  
 differentia, *f.*, difference, differential  
 differe, distuli, dilatus, to differ  
 difficilis, difficult  
 difficultas, *f.*, difficulty  
 difficulter, with difficulty  
 difformitas, *f.*, lack of conformity, disagreement  
 diffundere, -fudi, -fusus, to spread  
 digitus, *m.*, finger  
 dignari (dep. 1), to vouchsafe, to grant  
 digne, worthily, rightly  
 dignitas, *f.*, worth, merit  
 dignus, worthy, becoming, deserved  
 diligenter, carefully  
 diligentia, *f.*, diligence

- diligere, -lexi, -lectus**, to love  
**dilucidus**, lucid, sane  
**dimanare**, to emanate, to flow from  
**dimittere, -misi, -missus**, to forgive, to dismiss, to put or send away, to dissolve, to leave, to let down  
**diocesis, f.**, diocese  
**directe**, directly  
**directus**, direct; **in directo**, in the direct way  
**dirigere, -rexi, -rectus**, to direct  
**dirimere, -emi, -emptus**, to dissolve  
**discedere, -cessi, -cessus**, to depart, to swerve from, to leave  
**discere, didici**, to learn  
**discernere, -crevi, -cretus**, to distinguish, to discern  
**discipulus, m.**, disciple  
**discretio, f.**, separation, discretion  
**discrimen, n.**, hazard, risk  
**discriminare**, to distinguish  
**discussio, f.**, dispersal  
**discutere, -cussi, -cussus**, to disperse  
**diserte**, distinctly, clearly, expressly  
**disertus**, fluent, clear  
**dispar**, unlike, different  
**dispensare**, to dispense  
**disponere, -posui, -positus**, to dispose, to order  
**dispositio, f.**, disposition, providence  
**disputare**, to dispute, to argue  
**dissentire (4), -sensi, -sensus**, to disagree, to dissent, to refuse to give assent  
**disserere, -serui, -sertus**, to discourse  
**dissolvere, -solvi, -solutus**, to dissolve  
**distantia, f.**, distance  
**distincte**, clearly, plainly, distinctly  
**distinctio, f.**, distinction  
**distinguere, -stinxi, -stinctus**, to distinguish  
**diu**, long, for a long time; **quam —**, as long as; **jam —**, for a long time  
**diversificare**, to be different, to vary  
**diversitas, f.**, difference, diversity  
**diversus**, different  
**dividere, -visi, -visus**, to divide  
**divinitas, f.**, divinity  
**divinitus**, divinely  
**divinus**, divine  
**divisibilis**, divisible, separate  
**divisio, f.**, division  
**divitiae, f. pl.**, riches  
**divus, m.**, saint  
**docere (2), docui, doctus**, to teach  
**documentum, n.**, document  
**dolere (2), dolui, dolitus**, to suffer  
**dolosus**, deceitful  
**domina, f.**, mistress  
**dominare**, to dominate  
**dominatio, f.**, dominion  
**dominus, m.**, Lord, lord, master  
**domne (vocative), m.**, sir  
**domus, f.**, house  
**donare**, to give, to grant, to forgive  
**donum, n.**, gift, present  
**dormire**, to sleep  
**dormitio, f.**, sleep, repose  
**drachma, f.**, drachma (small Greek coin)  
**dubie**, doubtfully  
**dubitare**, to doubt  
**dubius**, doubtful  
**ducere, duxi, ductus**, to lead, to bring, to dispose, to reckon, to consider  
**ductus, m.**, leadership  
**dudum**, not long since, just now; **jam —**, long, a long time  
**dum**, while  
**dummodo**, as long as, provided that  
**dumtaxat**, only  
**duo**, two  
**duodecim**, twelve  
**duplex**, double  
**dupliciter**, doubly, in a double sense  
**durante**, during

## E

- e**, from, out of  
**ecce**, behold  
**ecclesia, f.**, church  
**ecclesiasticus**, ecclesiastical, pertaining to the church  
**contra**, on the other hand  
**edere, -didi, -ditus**, to bring forth, to deliver  
**ediscere, -didici**, to learn  
**edocere (2), -docui, -doctus**, to instruct  
**educatio, f.**, training  
**educere, -duxi, -ductus**, to take away, to bring forth  
**effective**, efficaciously  
**effectus, m.**, effect  
**efficax**, efficacious  
**efficere (io), -fecit, -fectus**, to make, to bring about  
**effluere, -fluxi**, to flow out or away  
**efformare**, to form, to shape  
**effulgere (2), -fulsi, -fulsus**, to shine upon  
**effundere, -fudi, -fusus**, to shed, to pour out  
**e.g.** (abbrev. for **exempli gratia**), for example  
**ego**, I  
**egredi (dep. 3), -gressus**, to come out, to go out, to go forth  
**egressio, f.**, egress, departure  
**egressus, m.**, departure  
**ejicere (io), -jeci, -jectus**, to cast out, to bring forth  
**ejusmodi**, of this sort; **et ejusmodi**, and the like  
**electio, f.**, election, choice  
**electus, m.**, elect  
**eleemosyna, f.**, alms  
**elementaris**, elementary  
**elementum, n.**, element  
**elevare**, to elevate, to lift up  
**elevatio, f.**, elevation, lifting  
**elicere, -licui, -licitus**, to elicit, to call forth  
**eligere, -legi, -lectus**, to elect, to choose  
**eloquentia, f.**, eloquence, oratory  
**elucere (2), -luxi**, to shine forth, to be apparent  
**elucescere**, to shine forth, to stand out clearly  
**emanatio, f.**, emanation  
**emere, emi, emptus**, to buy  
**emittere, -misi, -missus**, to send out, to put forth  
**emollire (4)**, to soften, to render mild  
**emphaticus**, emphatic  
**emptio, f.**, buying  
**enarrare**, to tell, to relate, to show forth  
**energia, f.**, energy  
**enim**, for  
**enormis**, enormous  
**ens, n.**, being  
**entitativus**, entitative, of the nature of an entity or real thing  
**episcopus, m.**, bishop  
**epistola, f.**, epistle  
**erga**, towards  
**ergo**, therefore, then  
**erigere, -rexi, -rectus**, to raise up, to erect  
**eripere, -ripui, -reptus**, to rescue, to deliver from  
**errare**, to err  
**erroneus**, erroneous  
**error, m.**, error  
**eruditus**, informed, instructed  
**eruere, -rui, -rutus**, to deliver  
**esse, fui, to be; est ei in animo**, he has in mind, he intends  
**essendi, essendo**, of, in being (gerund of **esse** used in Vulgar Latin)  
**essentia, f.**, essence  
**essentialis**, essential

**essentialiter**, essentially

**et**, and, even, then; also; — **cetera**, — **ceteri**, and so forth; — **ejusmodi**, and the like; — . . . —, both . . . and

**ethnicus**, *m.*, heathen

**etiam**, also, certainly, yea, although; **quin** —, yea indeed

**etsi**, although

**Eucharistia**, *f.*, Eucharist

**eucharisticus**, eucharistic

**evadere**, -vasi, -vasus, to escape, to evade, to move, to pass, to take place

**evanescere**, -vanui, to vanish, to disappear

**Evangelium**, *n.*, Gospel

**evangelicus**, of the Gospel

**evidenter**, evidently

**evolvere**, -volvi, -volutus, to develop

**ex**, from, out of; — **aequo**, justly; — **eo quod**, because, from the fact that; — **fide**, in good faith, as a matter of faith; — **improviso**, suddenly, on the spur of the moment; — **illo**, since then; — **longinquo**, from a distance; — **opere operato** (see Lesson XXXIV); — **parte**, in part; — **professo**, openly, avowedly; — **usu**, expedient; — **toto**, wholly

**exagitare**, to harass, to disturb

**exaudire** (4), to hear

**excedere**, -cessi, -cessus, to exceed, to excel

**excellētia**, *f.*, excellence

**excellere**, -celui, -celsus, to excel

**excelsus**, high, lofty, most high, in **excelsis**, in the highest; in **excelso**, on high

**exceptio**, *f.*, exception

**excipere** (10), -cepi, -ceptus, to receive, to except

**excitare**, to excite, to arouse

**excludere**, -clusi, -clusus, to exclude

**exclusio**, *f.*, exclusion

**excogitare**, to devise, to invent

**excommunicatus**, excommunicated

**excusare**, to excuse

**excusatio**, *f.*, excuse

**exemplar**, *n.*, pattern, model, original

**exemplum**, *n.*, example

**exemptus**, exempt, exempted

**exercere** (2), -cui, -citus, to exercise, to operate

**exercitium**, *n.*, exercise

**exercitus**, *m.*, army, host

**ex. gr.** or **e.g.** (abbrev. for **exempli gratia**), for example

**exhibere** (2), to show, to exhibit

**exigere**, -egi, -actus, to demand

**existentia**, *f.*, existence

**existere**, -stiti, -stitus, to exist

**existimare**, to think, to deem

**exorare**, to beseech, to pray

**expectare** (**expectare**), to look for, to expect, to wait for

**expedire** (4), to deliver, to detach, to be expedient, to expedite, to hasten

**expedite**, readily, promptly

**expendere**, -pendi, -pensus, to weigh, to ponder

**experientia**, *f.*, experience

**expers**, devoid of, without

**expiare**, to cleanse, to expiate, to atone for, to do penance for

**explicare**, to explain

**explicite**, explicitly

**exponere**, -posui, -positus, to expound, to set forth, to explain

**expresse**, expressly

**exsecrabilis**, execrable

**exsolvere**, -solvi, -solutus, to loose

**extare**, -stiti, to stand forth

**exultare**, to rejoice, to exult, to extol

**exultatio**, *f.*, exultation, joy, gladness

**exurgere** (2), to arise

**extensio**, *f.*, extension, extent

**exterior**, external

**exterminare**, to destroy



**externus**, external  
**extinguere**, -*tinxi*, -*tinctus*, to extinguish, to destroy  
**extra**, outside of; **ad** —, external, outward, outwardly  
**extrahere**, -*traxi*, -*tractus*, to release, to extract  
**extraneus**, *m.*, outsider, stranger  
**extremus**, last; **ad extremum**, finally  
**extrinsece**, extrinsically, externally  
**extrinsecus**, outward, external  
**exuere**, -*ui*, -*utus*, to free from, to deliver

## F

**facere**, **fecit**, **factus**, to make, to cause, to grant, to yield, to bring forth  
**facies**, *f.*, face, appearance, aspect; a **facie**, because of, from before; **facie ad faciem**, face to face  
**facile**, easily  
**facilitas**, *f.*, means, facility, ease  
**factitius**, factitious, artificial  
**factor**, *m.*, maker  
**factum**, *n.*, deed, act  
**facultas**, *f.*, faculty  
**falsitas**, *f.*, falseness  
**falsus**, false  
**familia**, *f.*, family, household  
**famula**, *f.*, servant  
**famulus**, *m.*, servant  
**fas**, lawful  
**fateri** (dep. 2), **fassus**, to avow, to confess  
**favilla**, *f.*, ashes  
**favor**, *m.*, favor  
**felicitas**, *f.*, happiness, bliss  
**femina**, *f.*, woman  
**fere**, almost  
**feria**, *f.*, day of the week; — **quinta** (V), Thursday  
**fermentatus**, fermented  
**festivus**, festive, feast

**festus**, feastal, festive; **dies** —, holy day; **dies festos agere**, to spend holy days  
**fetus**, *m.*, fetus  
**fictitius**, fictitious  
**fidere** (semidep. 3), **fidus**, to trust  
**fides**, *f.*, faith; **ex fide**, in good faith, as a matter of faith; **ultra fidem**, incredible  
**fiducia**, *f.*, confidence  
**fieri**, **factus**, to become, to be made; **factum est**, it came to pass; **fiat**, so be it, very good; **ut fit**, as is commonly the case  
**figmentum**, *n.*, fancy  
**figura**, *f.*, shape  
**filia**, *f.*, daughter  
**filialis**, filial  
**filius**, *m.*, son, child  
**finis**, *m.* and *f.*, end, confine, limit; **sine fine**, ceaselessly  
**firmamentum**, *n.*, firmament, strength  
**firmare**, to strengthen  
**firmitas**, *f.*, firmness  
**firmus**, firm, inflexible  
**flagitium**, *n.*, shameful thing  
**flamma**, *f.*, flame  
**flatus**, *m.*, blowing, breath  
**Florentinus**, of Florence  
**flos**, *m.*, flower  
**fons**, *m.*, fountain, source, well, spring  
**foras**, out of doors, forth, out, outside  
**forma**, *f.*, form  
**formalis**, formal, essential  
**formaliter**, formally  
**formare**, to train, to guide, to form  
**forsitan**, perhaps  
**forte**, perchance; **nisi** —, unless to be sure  
**fortis**, strong, valiant, mighty, grievous; a **fortiori**, with the greater force  
**fortitudo**, *f.*, fortitude, strength, power

fovere (2), fovi, fatus, to cherish  
 fragilitas, *f.*, frailty  
 frangere, fregi, fractus, to break  
 frater, *m.*, brother  
 fraus, *f.*, fraud, deceit  
 frequenter, frequently  
 frigidus, cold  
 frons, *f.*, forehead  
 fructuose, fruitfully, beneficially  
 fructus, *m.*, fruit, profit, benefit  
 fundamentalis, fundamental  
 fundamentaliter, basically, essentially  
 fundamentum, *n.*, foundation  
 furiosus, *m.*, madman  
 fuse, at length, in much detail  
 fusius, more extensively, at greater length  
 futurus, future

## G

Gallia, *f.*, France  
 Gallus, *m.*, Frenchman  
 gaudere (semidep. 2), gavisus, to enjoy  
 gaudium, *n.*, joy  
 gehenna, *f.*, hell  
 generalis, general  
 generare, to beget, to create  
 generatim, generally, in general  
 generatio, *f.*, generation, reproduction  
 genimen, *n.*, fruit  
 genitrix, *f.*, mother  
 genitus, begotten  
 gens, *f.*, nation, gentile, heathen  
 genuflexio, *f.*, genuflection  
 genus, *n.*, class, species, kind; in genere, in general, generally speaking  
 gerere, gessi, gestus, to bear, to reign  
 Germanus, *m.*, German  
 gestus, done; res gestae, deeds  
 gloria, *f.*, glory  
 glorificare, to glorify  
 gloriosus, glorious

gradatim, gradually  
 gradus, *m.*, degree  
 Graccus, Greek  
 grammaticae, grammatically  
 gratia, *f.*, grace, thankfulness; gratias, thanks; gratis, free; gratiarum actio, thanksgiving; gratias agere, to give thanks  
 gratus, gracious, thankful  
 gravare, to burden, to oppress  
 graviter, seriously, gravely  
 grex, *m.*, flock  
 gubernatio, *f.*, government  
 gustus, *m.*, taste

## H

habere (2), to have; se —, to be; se male —, to be sick; robur —, to take effect; se habet, is regarded  
 habitaculum, *n.*, dwelling, house, habitation  
 habitatio, *f.*, dwelling  
 habitualiter, habitually, regularly  
 habitudo, *f.*, habitual association, close relationship  
 habitus, *m.*, habit  
 hactenus, hitherto; de hac re —, so much for that  
 haedus, *m.*, kid  
 haereditas, *f.*, heredity  
 haeres, *m.*, heir  
 haeresis, *f.*, heresy  
 haereticus, heretic, heretical  
 haesitatio, *f.*, hesitation  
 haurire (4), hausi, haustus, to draw, to take  
 hebdomada, *f.*, week  
 hebraicus, Hebrew  
 heri, yesterday  
 hic, this, here; hoc est, that is; ad hoc, besides; ab hac parte, on this side; hunc in modum, in this way; contra haec, in answer to this; haec

**contra**, this in reply; **ad hunc modum**, in this way  
**hinc**, hence  
**Hispanus**, Spaniard  
**historia**, *f.*, history  
**hodie**, today, this day  
**holocaustum**, *n.*, holocaust, burnt offering  
**homo**, *m.*, man, husband  
**honestas**, *f.*, honesty  
**honestus**, decent, proper  
**honor**, *m.*, honor  
**honorare**, to honor  
**honorifice**, honorably, with honor  
**horologium**, *n.*, clock  
**horrendus**, dreadful  
**hortari** (dep. 1), to exhort  
**hostia**, *f.*, host, sacrifice, victim, offering  
**hucusque**, hitherto  
**hujusmodi**, of this kind  
**humanitas**, *f.*, humanity, kindness  
**humanus**, human  
**humectare**, to moisten  
**humiditas**, *f.*, moisture  
**humidus**, wet  
**humiliatus**, humbled  
**humilis**, humble  
**humilitas**, *f.*, humility, abjection  
**hymnus**, *m.*, hymn  
**hypostaticus**, hypostatic, essential, substantial  
**hyssopus**, *m.*, hyssop

## I

**ibidem**, in the same place  
**id**, this; **eo ipso**, because of this very thing; **eo . . . quo**, the . . . the;  
**ad — quod**, besides that; — **ipsum**, that very thing  
**idem**, same  
**identicus**, identical

**identificare**, to identify, be identical with  
**identitas**, *f.*, identity  
**ideo**, therefore  
**idololatra**, *m.*, idolater  
**i.e.** (abbrev. for **id est**), that is  
**igitur**, therefore, accordingly  
**ignis**, *m.*, fire  
**ignitus**, burning  
**ignorantia**, *f.*, ignorance  
**ignorare**, to be ignorant, not to know  
**ignotus**, unknown  
**ille**, that, the former; **ex illo**, since then  
**illecebra**, *f.*, allurement  
**illegitimus**, illegitimate  
**illibatus**, unblemished  
**illic**, there  
**illicitus**, illicit  
**illimitatus**, unlimited  
**illud**, that; — **quidem . . . sed autem**, to be sure . . . but still  
**illuminare**, to illuminate, to enlighten, to make or cause to shine  
**illustrare**, to illumine  
**illustratio**, *f.*, illumination  
**imaginarius**, imaginary  
**imitari** (dep. 1), to imitate  
**immaculatus**, spotless, undefiled, immaculate  
**immaterialis**, immaterial  
**immediate**, immediately  
**immediatus**, immediate, direct  
**immemorabilis**, immemorial  
**immergere**, **-mersi**, **-mersus**, to immerse, to merge  
**immersio**, *f.*, immersion  
**imminere** (2), to be imminent, to threaten  
**imminuere**, **-minui**, **-minutus**, to lessen, to diminish  
**immolare**, to immolate, to sacrifice  
**immortalitas**, *f.*, immortality  
**immunis**, free, immune

**immunitas**, *f.*, freedom, immunity  
**immutare**, to change  
**immutativum**, *n.*, change, alteration, modification  
**imo** (**immo**), by all means; **quin** —, yea rather; — **maximo**, most certainly not  
**impedimentum**, *n.*, impediment  
**impedire** (4), to prevent, to impede  
**impendere** (2), to threaten, to impend  
**impellere**, **-puli**, **-pulsus**, to impel, to urge  
**imperare**, to command, to govern  
**imperfectio**, *f.*, imperfection  
**imperium**, *n.*, command, rule  
**impertiri** (dep. 4), to grant, to bestow  
**impius**, wicked  
**implicite**, implicitly  
**implorare**, to implore  
**imponere**, **-posui**, **-positus**, to lay or put upon  
**importare**, to convey  
**impositio**, *f.*, imposition, laying on  
**impossibilis**, impossible  
**imprimere**, **-pressi**, **-pressus**, to impress  
**imprimis**, first of all, chiefly  
**imprudens**, imprudent  
**impudicus**, shameless  
**impugnare**, to assail, to attack  
**impugnatio**, *f.*, attack  
**impulsio**, *f.*, force, impulsion  
**impulsivus**, impelling  
**imputabilitas**, *f.*, responsibility  
**imputare**, to impute  
**imputatio**, *f.*, imputation  
**in**, **in**, into, unto, upon, for, to, against, among, at, toward; — **genere**, in general, generally speaking; — **perpetuum**, forever; — **usu**, at the moment of usage, in the act of using  
**inadaequatus**, inadequate  
**inanime**, inanimately  
**incarnatus**, incarnate

**incedere**, **-cessi**, **-cessus**, to go, to walk  
**incensum**, *n.*, incense  
**incertum**, *n.*, uncertainty  
**inchoare**, to begin  
**inclinare**, to incline, to bow  
**inclinatio**, *f.*, tendency, inclination  
**includere**, **-clusi**, **-clusus**, to include, to confine, to imprison  
**incola**, *m.* and *f.*, inhabitant, resident  
**incolatus**, *m.*, sojourn, residence  
**incolumitas**, *f.*, safety  
**incommodum**, *n.*, inconvenience, discomfort  
**inconvenienter**, improperly  
**incorporeus**, incorporeal  
**increatus**, uncreated, not begotten  
**inculpabilis**, innocent, guiltless  
**inde**, hence  
**indelebilis**, indelible  
**indeliberate**, involuntarily, without deliberation  
**independenter**, independently  
**indicare**, to indicate  
**indifferens**, indifferent  
**indigere** (2), **-gui**, to need  
**indigitare**, to indicate  
**indigne**, unworthily  
**indignus**, unworthy  
**indirecte**, indirectly  
**indiscriminatum**, indiscriminately  
**indispositio**, *f.*, indisposition  
**indissolubilis**, indissoluble  
**individualis**, individual  
**individuatio**, *f.*, individuation  
**individuum**, *n.*, individual  
**indivisibilis**, indivisible  
**indivisio**, *f.*, indivision  
**indivisus**, undivided  
**indoles**, *f.*, nature  
**inducere**, **-duxi**, **-ductus**, to lead, to bring into  
**indulgentia**, *f.*, pardon, forgiveness, indulgence

- indulgere** (2), **-dulsi**, **-dultus**, to forgive, to grant  
**indultum**, *n.*, dispensation, indult  
**industria**, *f.*, diligence; **de industria**, on purpose  
**indutus**, clothed  
**in**esse, **-fui**, to be in or engaged in  
**infallibilis**, infallible  
**infamia**, *f.*, infamy, bad repute  
**infamis**, infamous, disreputable  
**infans**, *m.* and *f.*, infant, babe; **infantes expositi et inventi**, foundlings  
**infantia**, *f.*, infancy, childhood  
**infantilis**, infantile, of infancy  
**infelix**, unhappy  
**infernus**, infernal, of hell  
**inferre**, **-tuli**, **illatus**, to infer, to bring, to carry, to wage  
**inferus**, below  
**infidelis**, faithless, infidel  
**infidelitas**, *f.*, unbelief  
**infinitus**, infinite  
**infirmitas**, *f.*, weakness  
**infirmus**, sick  
**influxus**, *m.*, flowing in, inpouring, stream, rush, influence  
**infundere**, **-fudi**, **-fusus**, to pour, to infuse, to water  
**infusio**, *f.*, pouring  
**infusus**, instilled  
**ingemiscere**, **-gemui**, to groan  
**ingenitus**, inborn, innate  
**ingredi** (dep. 3), **-gressus**, to walk along, to come in  
**inhabilis**, incapable  
**inhabitare**, to dwell  
**inhaerentia**, *f.*, inherent quality  
**inhaerere** (2), **-haesi**, **-haesus**, to adhere to  
**inimicus**, *m.*, enemy  
**iniquitas**, *f.*, iniquity  
**iniquus**, unjust  
**initium**, *n.*, beginning  
**injurius**, unjust, insulting  
**innocens**, innocent  
**innovare**, to renew  
**innuere**, **-nui**, **-nutus**, to intimate  
**innumerabilis**, innumerable  
**inobedientia**, *f.*, disobedience  
**inquantus**, inasmuch as  
**inquirere**, **-quisivi**, **-quisitus**, to seek  
**insanire** (4), to be insane  
**inscius**, not knowing, unawares  
**inscribere**, **-scripsi**, **-scriptus**, to inscribe  
**inserere**, **-serui**, **-sertus**, to implant, to embody  
**inservire** (4), **-servivi**, **-servitus**, to serve  
**insignior**, principal, more outstanding  
**insignitus**, signed, known  
**insinuare**, to hint at, to suggest  
**inspicere**, **-spexi**, **-spectus**, to examine  
**inspiratio**, *f.*, inspiration  
**instar**, *n.* (indecl.), likeness, equivalent  
**instinctus**, *m.*, instinct  
**instituere**, **-stitui**, **-stitutus**, to institute, to establish  
**institutio**, *f.*, institution  
**instruere**, **-struxi**, **-structus**, to instruct  
**instrumentum**, *n.*, instrument  
**insuper**, besides, in addition, moreover  
**integer**, virtuous, wholly right  
**integralis**, integral  
**integrans**, integrating, making up a whole  
**intellectualis**, intellectual  
**intellectivus**, intellectual, intelligent  
**intellectus**, *m.*, intellect  
**intelligere**, **-lexi**, **-lectus**, to perceive, to understand  
**intendere**, **-tendi**, **-tentus** or **-tensus**, to stretch out, to extend, to hearken, to be attentive  
**intensitas**, *f.*, emphasis

**intensus**, intense  
**intentio**, *f.*, intention  
**inter**, among, between  
**intercedere**, -cessi, -cessus, to inter-  
 cede  
**intercessio**, *f.*, intercession  
**interdictus**, interdicted  
**interesse**, -fui, to take part in, to be  
 present  
**interim**, in the meanwhile  
**interitus**, *m.*, destruction, annihilation  
**internus**, internal  
**interpre**, *m.*, expounder, translator  
**interpretatio**, *f.*, interpretation  
**intervallum**, *n.*, interval  
**intolerabilis**, intolerable  
**intra**, among, within  
**intrare**, to enter  
**intrinsicce**, intrinsically, inwardly  
**introire**, to go in  
**intueri** (dep. 2), -tuitus, to behold, to  
 have in view  
**intuitivus**, intuitive  
**intuitus**, *m.*, view, attention  
**inultus**, unpunished, unavenged  
**invalescere**, -valui, to become strong  
**invalidus**, invalid  
**invasor**, *m.*, invader, usurper  
**invehere**, -vexi, -vectus, to bring into,  
 to introduce  
**invenire**, -veni, -ventus, to effect, to  
 bring about, to find, to come upon  
**investigare**, to investigate  
**inveteratus**, inveterate, of long stand-  
 ing  
**invicem**: ad —, reciprocally, among  
 themselves  
**invisibilis**, invisible  
**invitus**, unwilling  
**invocare**, to call upon, to invoke  
**involuntarius**, involuntary  
**ipse**, self; **eo ipso**, because of this very  
 thing; **id ipsum**, that very thing;  
**quod ipsum**, which of itself alone

**ira**, *f.*, wrath, anger  
**ire**, *ivi* or *ii*, **itus**, to go; — **obviam**, to  
 go to meet  
**irrationalis**, irrational, unreasonable  
**irrescindibilis**, irrevocable  
**irreverentia**, *f.*, irreverence  
**irritus**, void, null  
**is**, that, he; **eo quod**, to the extent that  
 isque, and that, too; and that, indeed  
**iste**, this, that, the latter  
**ita**, so, even  
**item**, likewise, also  
**iterare**, to repeat  
**iterum**, again

## J

**jacere** (2), to lie down  
**jacere**, *jeci*, **jactus**, to throw  
**jactura**, *f.*, loss, harm  
**jam**, now, already; — **non**, no longer;  
 — **diu**, for a long time; — **dudum**,  
 for a long time; — **jamque**, now at  
 this very moment  
**jamvero**, indeed  
**janua**, *f.*, entrance, door, gate  
**jejunium**, *n.*, fasting  
**jejunus**, fasting  
**jubere** (2), *jussi*, **jussus**, to command,  
 to ask, to pray  
**Judaeus**, *m.*, Jew  
**judex**, *m.*, judge  
**judicialis**, judicial  
**judicium**, *n.*, judgment  
**judicare**, to judge  
**jugiter**, always  
**jugum**, *n.*, yoke  
**jumentum**, *n.*, beast (of burden)  
**jungere**, *junxi*, **junctus**, to join, to  
 bind, to unite  
**jurare**, to swear  
**jurisdictio**, *f.*, jurisdiction  
**jus**, *n.*, law  
**jusjurandum**, *n.*, oath

**jussus**, *m.*, order, command  
**juste**, righteously, justly  
**justificare**, to justify  
**justificatio**, *f.*, justification  
**justitia**, *f.*, justice  
**justus**, right, just  
**juvare**, to aid  
**juvenis**, young  
**juventus**, *f.*, youth  
**juxta**, according to

## L

**labi** (dep. 3), **lapsus**, to slip, to fall  
**labium**, *n.*, lip  
**labor**, *m.*, labor  
**laborare**, to labor, to suffer  
**laboriosus**, laborious, toilsome  
**lacrimosus**, tearful  
**lacus**, *m.*, lake, pit, den  
**laetificare**, to give joy  
**laetitia**, *f.*, gladness  
**laetari** (dep. 1), to rejoice  
**laicus**, *m.*, layman  
**languere** (2), **langui**, to faint, to be feeble  
**lapidare**, to throw stones  
**lapis**, *m.*, stone  
**largiri** (dep. 4), to grant, to bestow  
**largitor**, *m.*, giver, bestower  
**lassus**, faint, tired  
**late**, broadly, widely  
**latere** (2), **-ui**, to lie hidden  
**latinus**, Latin  
**latissimus**, widest  
**latria**, *f.*, worship (the highest kind of worship or that paid to God only)  
**latro**, *m.*, thief  
**latus**, *n.*, side  
**laudabilis**, laudable  
**laudare**, to praise  
**laus**, *f.*, praise  
**lavare**, to wash

**lectio**, *f.*, lesson, reading  
**legatus**, *m.*, legate  
**legere**, **legi**, **lectus**, to read  
**legislator**, *m.*, legislator  
**legitime**, legitimately  
**legitimus**, legitimate  
**leo**, *m.*, lion  
**lethargus**, *m.*, lethargy, coma  
**levare**, to lift  
**levis**, light, slight  
**lex**, *f.*, law  
**libenter**, freely, willingly  
**liber**, *m.*, book  
**liber**, free  
**liberare**, to free, to deliver  
**libertas**, *f.*, freedom  
**libitum**, *n.*, pleasure, liking; **pro libito**, at pleasure  
**licentia**, *f.*, permission  
**licere** (2), *impers.*; to be permitted, to be allowable  
**licet**, although  
**licite**, legitimately  
**licitus**, licit, legitimate  
**lingua**, *f.*, tongue, language  
**litare**, to offer a sacrifice; **Sacrum** —, to offer the Sacrifice of the Mass  
**litigare**, to quarrel, to strive  
**littera**, *f.*, letter  
**liturgicus**, liturgical  
**localis**, local, localized  
**locus**, *m.*, place, room  
**locutio**, *f.*, phrase, expression  
**logice**, logically  
**logicus**, logical  
**longinquus**, far; **ex longinquo**, from a distance  
**loqui** (dep. 3), **locutus**, to speak, to profess, to converse  
**lucere** (2), **luxi**, to shine  
**lucrum**, *n.*, profit, money  
**Lugdunensis**, of Lyons  
**lumen**, *n.*, light  
**lux**, *f.*, light

## M

- macula, f.*, stain  
*magis*, more  
*magistra, f.*, mistress  
*magnitudo, f.*, size  
*magnus*, great, large; **magna ex parte**, in a great degree  
*majestas, f.*, majesty  
*majestaticus*, majestic, sublime  
*major*, greater  
*majores, m. pl.*, forefathers, elders  
*maledictum, n.*, wicked thing, wickedness, curse  
*malitia, f.*, malice, evil  
*malitie*, maliciously  
*malum, n.*, evil  
*malus*, bad, evil  
*mancus*, defective, imperfect, infirm, maimed  
*mandare*, to order  
*mandatum, n.*, command  
*manducare*, to eat  
*manere* (2), *mansi*, *mansus*, to remain  
*manifestare*, to manifest  
*manifeste*, manifestly  
*manifestus*, manifest  
*mansio, f.*, home, house  
*manus, f.*, hand  
*mare, n.*, sea  
*martyr, m.*, martyr  
*mater, f.*, mother  
*materia, f.*, matter  
*materialis*, material  
*maternitas, f.*, motherhood  
*matrimonialis*, matrimonial  
*matrimonium, n.*, matrimony  
*matutinus*, morning  
*maxime*, chiefly, to the greatest extent, especially, in the highest degree; **quam** —, as much as possible  
*maximus*, very great, greatest, grievous  
*medela, f.*, remedy, healing  
*mediante*, by means of  
*mediate*, indirectly  
*medicina, f.*, remedy  
*medicus, m.*, physician  
*medium, n.*, means  
*membrum, n.*, member, limb  
*meminisse*, to be mindful, to remember  
*memor*, mindful  
*memorari* (dep. 1), to remember  
*memoratus*, mentioned  
*mendacium, n.*, lie  
*mens, f.*, mind  
*mensura, f.*, measure  
*mentio, f.*, mention  
*merces, f.*, wages  
*mere*, merely  
*mereri* (dep. 2), **meritus**, to be worthy  
*meridies, m.*, noon  
*merito*, justly, with good reason  
*meritorio*, meritoriously  
*meritorius*, meritorious, worthy  
*meritum, n.*, merit  
*metallum, n.*, metal  
*metaphora, f.*, metaphor  
*metaphysica, f.*, metaphysics  
*metropolitanus*, metropolitan  
*metus, m.*, fear  
*migrare*, to depart  
*militia, f.*, army, soldiers  
*mille*, thousand  
*minime*, least; — **vero**, by no means  
*minister, m.*, minister  
*ministrare*, to administer  
*minoratio, f.*, lessening, diminishing  
*minuere, minui, minutus*, to lessen, to diminish  
*minus*, less; **plus minusve**, more or less  
*mirabilis*, wonderful  
*mirabiliter*, wonderfully  
*mirabilium, n.*, wonder  
*mirum, n.*, wonder, marvel; — **quam**, marvelously; — **quantum**, tremendously



**mirus**, wondrous, wonderful  
**miscere** (2), **-cui**, **mixtus**, to mix  
**miser**, wretched  
**misere**, wretchedly  
**miseratio**, *f.*, mercy  
**misereri** (dep. 2), **misertus**, to have mercy on  
**miseria**, *f.*, wretchedness  
**misericordia**, *f.*, mercy  
**misericors**, merciful  
**missa**, *f.*, Mass  
**missio**, *f.*, act of sending, emission  
**mitra**, *f.*, miter  
**mittere**, **misi**, **missus**, to send, to cast, to put, to lay  
**mixtus**, mingled, mixed  
**modicissimus**, a very little  
**modicus**, a little  
**modo**, provided that; **non** —, not only  
**modus**, *m.*, manner; **hunc in modum**, in this way; **ultra modum**, immoderate; **ad hunc modum**, in this way; **quem ad modum**, how, as  
**molestus**, irksome  
**momentum**, *n.*, element, essential point  
**monere** (2), to warn, to teach, to advise  
**monitum**, *n.*, precept  
**mons**, *m.*, hill, mount, mountain; **summus** —, the top of the hill  
**monstrum**, *n.*, monstrosity  
**mora**, *f.*, delay  
**moralitas**, *f.*, morality  
**moraliter**, morally  
**mori** (dep. 3, **io**), **mortuus**, to die  
**mors**, *f.*, death  
**mortalis**, mortal  
**mortalitas**, *f.*, mortal life  
**mortaliter**, mortally  
**mos**, *m.*, custom; **supra morem**, more than usual  
**mosaicus**, Mosaic, pertaining to Moses  
**motio**, *f.*, motion

**motivum**, *n.*, motive  
**motor**, *m.*, mover, motor impulse  
**motus**, *m.*, movement, motion  
**movere** (2), **movi**, **motus**, to move  
**mox**, afterwards, at a later period, presently  
**mulier**, *f.*, woman  
**multifariam**, in many places  
**multiplex**, manifold  
**multiplicare**, to multiply  
**multiplicatio**, *f.*, multiplication  
**multipliciter**, in many ways  
**multitudo**, *f.*, multitude  
**multus**, much; **multa nocte**, late at night; **multis post annis**, after many years; **multis de causis**, for many reasons  
**mundanus**, mundane, of the world  
**mundare**, to cleanse  
**mundus**, *m.*, world  
**munire** (4), to defend, to strengthen, to preserve  
**munus**, *n.*, gift, offering, bounty, office  
**murus**, *m.*, wall  
**mutare**, to change  
**mutuo**, mutually  
**mysterium**, *n.*, mystery

## N

**nam**, for  
**nasci** (dep. 3), **natus**, to be born, to spring up  
**nativitas**, *f.*, nativity, birth  
**natura**, *f.*, nature  
**naturalis**, natural  
**naturaliter**, naturally  
**ne**, not, lest; — . . . **quidem**, not even  
**nec**, neither; — . . . —, neither . . . nor; — **non**, and also, nor less  
**necne**, or not  
**necessario**, necessarily  
**necessitas**, *f.*, necessity, need

- nefas**, unlawful  
**negare**, to deny  
**negatio**, *f.*, negation, denial  
**neglegere**, *-lexi*, *-lectus*, to neglect  
**negligentia**, *f.*, negligence  
**negotium**, *n.*, trouble, difficulty  
**nemo**, *m.* and *f.*, no one  
**nempe**, namely, certainly, to be sure  
**nepos**, *m.* and *f.*, grandchild  
**nequaquam**, by no means  
**neque**, and not, neither, nor  
**require**, **nequivi**, not to be able, cannot  
**nescire** (4), *-scivi* or *-scii*, *-scitus*, not to know; **nescio quis**, some sort of, certain  
**nexus**, *m.*, relationship, connection  
**Nicaenus**, Nicene  
**niger**, black  
**nihil**, nothing; — **admodum**, nothing at all; — **aliud**, nothing else; — **est quod**, there is no reason why  
**nihilominus**, nevertheless  
**nihilum**, *n.*, nothing  
**nimirum**, certainly, indisputably  
**nimis**, exceedingly  
**nisi** (*ni*), if not, unless, except, but; **non** —, only; **non . . .** —, not only; — **vero**, unless indeed; — **forte**, unless to be sure  
**nit** (*dep.* 3), **nisus** or **nixus**, to endeavor  
**nitidus**, clean  
**nix**, *f.*, snow  
**nobilis**, noble  
**nobilitas**, *f.*, nobility  
**nolle**, **nolui**, to be unwilling  
**nomen**, *n.*, name, noun  
**nominare**, to call  
**non**, not; no; — **modo**, not only; — **nisi**, only; — **obstante**, notwithstanding; — **solum**, not only; **jam** —, no longer  
**nondum**, not yet  
**nonnihil**, not nothing (that is, something)  
**non-usus**, *m.*, disuse  
**norma**, *f.*, rule, precept  
**noscere**, **novi**, **notus**, to know  
**noster**, our; **nostrum omnes**, all of us  
**nota**, *f.*, mark, feature  
**notabilis**, important, noteworthy  
**notio**, *f.*, notion  
**notitia**, *f.*, knowledge, acquaintance  
**notorius**, notorious  
**notus**, known; an acquaintance  
**novitius**, *m.*, novice  
**novus**, new; **novissimus**, latest, last  
**nox**, *f.*, night; **sera nocte**, late at night; **multa nocte**, late at night  
**nubes**, *f.*, cloud  
**nudus**, bare, sole  
**nullus**, not any; — **admodum**, none at all; — **alter**, no other; **nulla ex parte**, in no way; — **unus**, on one  
**nullusdum**, none as yet  
**num** (interrogative word used when a negative answer is expected); — **quid**, anything further, anything else  
**numerare**, to number  
**numerus**, *m.*, number  
**nunc**, now  
**nuncius**, *m.*, nuncio  
**nuncupare**, to name, to call  
**nunquam** (**numquam**), never; — **non**, always  
**nuntiare**, to proclaim  
**nuper**, recently; — **admodum**, very recently  
**nuptiae**, *f. pl.*, marriage  
**nutrimentum**, *n.*, food  
**nutrire** (4), to nourish

## O

- ob**, for, on account of  
**obex**, *m.* and *f.*, hindrance, obstacle

**objectum, n.**, object  
**oblatio, f.**, oblation, offering  
**obligatio, f.**, obligation  
**obliquum, n.**, that which is indirect;  
   **in obliquo**, indirectly  
**oblivisci** (dep. 3), **oblitus**, to forget  
**obnubilare**, to becloud, to dim  
**oboedire** (4), to obey  
**obscurus**, dark  
**obsecrare**, to beseech, to implore  
**obsecundare**, to obey  
**obsequium, n.**, homage, service, wor-  
   ship  
**observantia, f.**, observance  
**observare**, to observe, to mark, to  
   watch  
**obstaculum, n.**, hindrance  
**obstante: non** —, notwithstanding  
**obstare, -stiti, -status**, to hinder, to pre-  
   vent, to be in the way  
**obstetrix, f.**, midwife  
**obtemperare**, to obey  
**obtinere** (2), **-tinui, -tentus**, to obtain  
**obumbrare**, to overshadow  
**obviam**, on the way; **ire** —, to go to  
   meet  
**occasio, f.**, occasion  
**occultum, n.**, hidden thing  
**occultus**, hidden  
**occurrere, -curri, -cursus**, to meet, to  
   go meet, to come to; to restrain  
**octo**, eight  
**oculus, m.**, eye  
**odisse**, to hate  
**odium, n.**, hate  
**odor, m.**, savor, odor, smell  
**oecumenicus**, ecumenical, universal  
**offensio, f.**, offense  
**offerre, obtuli, oblatu**, to offer  
**officium, n.**, favor, kindness; duty  
**oleum, n.**, oil  
**olfactus, m.**, sense of smell  
**olim**, formerly, once  
**oliva, f.**, olive, olive tree

**omittere, -misi, -missus**, to omit  
**omnimodus**, of every sort, complete  
**omnino**, altogether, entirely  
**omnipotens**, omnipotent, almighty  
**omnis**, all; **nostrum omnes**, all of us  
**ontologia, f.**, ontology  
**onus, n.**, burden  
**opera, f.**, work; **operam dare**, to work  
   hard at, to devote oneself to  
**operans, m.**, worker, agent  
**operatio, f.**, operation, action  
**opinari** (dep. 1), to think  
**opinio, f.**, opinion  
**oportere** (impers., 2), to be necessary,  
   proper, reasonable  
**opponere, -posui, -positus**, to oppose  
**opportune**, fittingly  
**opportunus**, opportune  
**oppositum, n.**, opposite  
**ops, f.**, help, power, support; **ope**, with  
   the help  
**optimus**, best  
**optare**, to desire  
**opus, n.**, deed, work; wages; — **esse**,  
   to need, to be necessary; **ex opere**  
   **operato**, by its own power; **summo**  
   **opere**, in the highest degree; **quanto**  
   **opere**, how greatly, how much  
**orare**, to pray, to beseech  
**oratio, f.**, prayer  
**oratorium, n.**, oratory, chapel  
**orbis, m.**, world  
**ordinare**, to order, to ordain  
**ordinatio, f.**, ordination  
**ordo, m.**, order  
**organismus, m.**, organism  
**organum, n.**, organ  
**oriens**, Orient, east  
**orientalis**, oriental  
**oriri** (dep. 4), **ortus**, to rise  
**onamentum, n.**, ornament  
**ornare**, to adorn  
**orthodoxus**, orthodox  
**os (oris), n.**, mouth

os (ossis), *n.*, bone  
 ostendere, -tendi, -tensus or -tentus, to show  
 ostentum, *n.*, prodigy  
 ostium, *n.*, door  
 otiosus, idle, useless, empty  
 ovis, *f.*, sheep

## P

pacificare, to pacify, to grant peace  
 pactum, *n.*, agreement  
 paganus, pagan  
 palam, openly, publicly  
 palpare, to feel  
 panis, *m.*, bread, loaf  
 Papa, *m.*, Pope  
 papalis, papal  
 par, equal  
 Paracletus, *m.*, Paraclete, Holy Ghost  
 Paradisus, *m.*, paradise  
 parallelus, parallel, similar  
 parare, to prepare  
 parce, moderately  
 parcere, peperci, parcius, to spare, to forbear  
 parens, *m.* and *f.*, parent  
 pariter, at the same time, together  
 parochus, *m.*, parish priest, pastor  
 paroecia, *f.*, parish  
 paroecialis, parochial  
 pars, *f.*, part, portion; **ab hac parte**, on this side; **aliqua ex parte**, in some respect; **magna ex parte**, in a great degree; **nulla ex parte**, in no way; **ex parte**, in part  
 partialis, partial  
 particeps, *m.* and *f.*, partaker, fellow  
 participare, to participate, to share in  
 participatio, *f.*, participation  
 participium, *n.*, participle  
 particula, *f.*, particle, small part or bit, phrase  
 partitio, *f.*, division

parvulus, small; (as a noun), little one, child  
 Pascha, *n.*, Easter  
 passibilis, passible  
 passio, *f.*, passion, suffering, martyrdom  
 passive, passively  
 passivus, passive  
 passus, suffered  
 pastor, *m.*, pastor  
 pater, *m.*, father  
 patere (2), to be visible, to be obvious  
 pati (dep. 3), passus, to suffer  
 patria, *f.*, home, homeland  
 patriarcha, *m.*, patriarch  
 patrinus, *m.*, sponsor  
 patronus, *m.*, defender, advocate  
 pauci, few; paucis, in a few words  
 paulatim, gradually  
 paulo, a little while, shortly  
 pauper, poor  
 pax, *f.*, peace  
 peccare, to sin  
 peccator, *m.*, sinner  
 peccatum, *n.*, sin  
 peculiaris, special  
 pejor, worse  
 pendere (2), **pendendi**, to hang, to depend  
 penes, with, within  
 penitus, wholly  
 Pentecoste, *f.*, Pentecost  
 penuria, *f.*, want, lack  
 per, through, by; — **se**, in and of itself  
 peragere, -egi, -actus, to accomplish  
 perceptio, *f.*, partaking, reception  
 percipere (io), -cepi, -ceptus, to take, to partake, to receive, to attain, to seize; (2) to experience  
 percussio, *f.*, striking, percussion  
 perdere, **perdidi**, **perditus**, to lose, to destroy  
 perducere, -duxi, -ductus, to bring to, to lead to, to conduct

- peregrinus, m., stranger**  
**perennis, eternal**  
**perfecte, perfectly**  
**perfectio, f., perfection, correctness**  
**perfector, m., perfecter**  
**perferre, -tuli, -latus, to carry up, to bring**  
**perficere, -feci, -fectus, to perfect**  
**perfrui (dep. 3), -fructus, to enjoy**  
**perhibere (2), -hibui, -hibitus, to report, to bear witness**  
**periculum, n., danger**  
**perire (eo), -ii or -ivi, -itus, to perish**  
**peritus, skilled, expert**  
**permanens, permanent**  
**permanere (2), -mansi, -mansus, to remain, to stand**  
**permissive, permissively**  
**permittere, -misi, -missus, to permit, to suffer**  
**permutatio, f., exchange**  
**perpendere, -pendi, -pensus, to weigh, to consider**  
**perperam, falsely**  
**perpetuo, perpetually, forever**  
**perpetuus, perpetual, everlasting, un-failing; in perpetuum, forever**  
**perscribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, to write down**  
**perseverantia, f., perseverance**  
**persona, f., person**  
**perspicere, -spexi, -spectus, to perceive**  
**perspicuus, clear, definite**  
**persuasum, n., conviction, firm belief**  
**pertinaciter, obstinately**  
**pertinere (2), -tinui, -tentus, to pertain**  
**pertingere, to reach, to extend**  
**perturbatio, f., disturbance**  
**pervenire, -veni, -ventus, to attain, to come to**  
**pervigilium, n., vigil**  
**pes, m., foot**
- petere, petivi or -ii, petitus, to entreat, to beseech, to request**  
**petra, f., stone**  
**phantasia, f., image, representation**  
**philosophia, f., philosophy**  
**philosophus, m., philosopher**  
**phrasis, f., phrase, sentence**  
**phrenesis, f., delirium**  
**physice, physically**  
**physicus, physical**  
**pie, mercifully, piously**  
**pictas, f., goodness, piety, pity**  
**pignus, n., pledge**  
**pileolus, m., skull cap**  
**pius, just, merciful, tender**  
**placatio, f., propitiation**  
**placere (2), placui, placatus, to be pleasing**  
**plane, plainly, clearly**  
**Plato, m., Plato (Greek philosopher, 427-347 B.C.)**  
**plebs, f., people**  
**plene, fully**  
**plenus, more fully**  
**plerique, most, very many**  
**pluralis, plural**  
**pluralitas, f., plurality**  
**plures, more, several**  
**pluries, frequently**  
**plurimus, most, very much; quam plurimi, as many as possible**  
**plus, more; — minusve, more or less**  
**poena, f., pain, punishment**  
**poenitentia, f., penance**  
**poenitere (2), -itui, to repent**  
**politicus, political**  
**pollere (2), -lui, to be strong, to be efficacious**  
**polliceri (dep. 2), -licitus, to promise**  
**polytheismus, m., polytheism, worship of several gods**  
**ponere, posui, positus, to put, to set, to lay, to make**

- pontifex, m.**, pontiff, bishop, high priest  
**pontificale, n.**, pontifical (book of rites performed by a bishop)  
**pontificalis**, pontifical  
**populus, m.**, people  
**porro**, next  
**porta, f.**, gate  
**portabilis**, portable  
**poscere, poposci**, to ask  
**posse, potui**, to be able  
**possessio, f.**, possession  
**possibilitas, f.**, possibility, ability  
**possidere (2), -sedi, -sessus**, to possess  
**post**, after, afterwards, later; **multis** — **annis**, after many years  
**posterior**, the latter  
**posterum: in —**, in the future  
**postmodum**, afterwards  
**postquam**, after, as soon as  
**postremus**, last; **ad postremum**, lastly  
**postulare**, to demand, to require  
**potare**, to drink  
**potentia, f.**, power, potentiality  
**potestas, f.**, power, authority  
**potissimum**, chiefly, above all  
**potius**, rather  
**practicus**, practical  
**praebere (2), -bui, -bitus**, to show, to exhibit  
**praecedere, -cessi, -cessus**, to go before, to precede, to prepare  
**praecelsus**, sublime  
**praeceptum, n.**, precept, command  
**praecipere (io), -cepi, -ceptus**, to instruct, to teach, to command  
**praecipue**, especially  
**praecipuus**, special, extraordinary  
**praecisio, f.**, preciseness  
**praecise**, precisely  
**praeclarus**, excellent, outstanding  
**praedestinare**, to predestine  
**praedestinatio, f.**, predestination  
**praedicare**, to preach  
**praedicatio, f.**, sermon, preaching  
**praedictus**, aforementioned  
**praeditus**, possessed of, provided with  
**praefatus**, aforesaid  
**praefectus, m.**, prefect  
**praeferre, -tuli, -latus**, to prefer  
**praegnans**, pregnant  
**praecire(eo)**, to go before  
**praejudicium, n.**, objection  
**praemittere, -misi, -missus**, to set forth as a premise  
**praemium, n.**, gift, reward  
**praenoscerere, -novi, -notus**, to know beforehand  
**praeparare**, to prepare  
**praeparatio, f.**, preparation  
**praescindere, -scidi, -scissus**, to pre-scind  
**praescriptus**, prescribed, commanded  
**praesens**, present  
**praesentare**, to present  
**praesentia, f.**, presence  
**praesertim**, particularly  
**praeservare**, to preserve  
**praesidere (2), -sedi, -sessus**, to preside  
**praestantissimus**, most excellent  
**praestare, -stiti, -stitus**, to accomplish, to surpass, to give, to grant, to bestow, to keep hold  
**praesto**, present  
**praesumere, -sumpsi, -sumptus**, to presume  
**praesupponere, -posui, -positus**, to presuppose  
**praeter**, beyond, besides, in addition to  
**praeterea**, besides, moreover  
**praeteritus**, past  
**praetermittere, -misi, -missus**, to neglect, to omit  
**praeterquam**, beyond, besides  
**praetextus, m.**, pretext  
**praevenire, -veni, -ventus**, to prevent, to anticipate, to predispose, to guide, to direct

- praevidere** (2), **-vidi**, **-visus**, to foresee  
**praeuius**, previous  
**pravus**, evil  
**praxis**, *m.*, practice, exercise  
**precari** (dep. 1), to beseech, to pray  
**premere**, **pressi**, **pressus**, to press upon,  
to oppress  
**presbyter**, *m.*, priest  
**pretium**, *n.*, price  
**prex**, *f.*, prayer  
**pridie**, on the day before; — **quam**,  
the day before  
**primario**, primarily  
**primitivus**, early  
**primo**, first, firstly  
**primum**, first; **in primis**, in the first  
place  
**princeps**, *m.*, prince  
**principalis**, perfect, principal  
**principatus**, *m.*, public office  
**principium**, *n.*, beginning, founda-  
tion, principle, sovereignty, princi-  
pality  
**prior**, the former  
**prius**, previously  
**priusquam**, before  
**privare**, to deprive  
**privatim**, privately  
**privativus**, deprived of, lacking  
**privatus**, private  
**privilegium**, *n.*, privilege  
**pro**, for, through, in behalf of, as a  
result of, instead of; — **libito**, at  
pleasure; — **hac vice**, for this once  
**probare**, to prove, to test, to examine  
**probe**, properly  
**probitas**, *f.*, honesty, integrity  
**procedere**, **-cessi**, **-cessus**, to proceed  
from  
**processio**, *f.*, source, origin, procession  
**processus**, *m.*, course, process  
**procidere**, **-cidi**, to fall prostrate  
**prodesse**, **profui**, to avail, to benefit  
**proditio**, *f.*, treason  
**producere**, **-duxi**, **-ductus**, to produce  
**productio**, *f.*, production, creation,  
producing  
**proferre**, **-tuli**, **-latus**, to bring out, to  
lay before, to display, to speak, to  
utter  
**professus**, professed; **ex professo**,  
avowedly, openly  
**proficere** (io), **-feci**, **-fectus**, to avail,  
to increase, to contribute to, to ad-  
vance, to go forth  
**proficisci** (dep. 3), **-fectus**, to set out,  
to arise  
**profiteri** (dep. 2), to profess  
**profundum**, *n.*, depth  
**profundus**, deep  
**progenies**, *f.*, lineage, family  
**progredi** (dep. 3, io), **-gressus**, to pro-  
gress, to advance  
**prohibere** (2), to prohibit, to forbid  
**prohibitio**, *f.*, prohibition  
**proinde**, hence, therefore, accordingly  
**projicere** (io), **-jeci**, **-jectus**, to cast  
down, to cast away  
**prolabi** (dep. 3), **-lapsus**, to lapse, to  
fall away  
**proles**, *f.*, offspring, child  
**promanare**, to emanate, to derive  
from  
**promerere** (2), **-merui**, **-meritus**, to  
obtain, to deserve  
**promissio**, *f.*, promise  
**promittere**, **-misi**, **-missus**, to promise  
**prompte**, promptly  
**pronunciare**, to pronounce, to express  
**pronus**, prone, inclined  
**propheta**, *m.*, prophet  
**prophetia**, *f.*, prophecy  
**propitiatio**, *f.*, propitiation, forgive-  
ness, clemency  
**propinquus**, near, near of kin  
**propitiabilis**, propitious

**propitiare**, to be merciful, to be favorable  
**propitius**, propitious, merciful, gracious  
**proponere**, -posui, -positus, to propose, to expose, to display, to set forth  
**proportio**, *f.*, proportion  
**proportionatus**, related  
**proprie**, properly  
**proprius**, one's own, proper  
**proprietas**, *f.*, property, peculiarity, distinction  
**propter**, for, because of, by reason of  
**propterea**, on that account  
**protectio**, *f.*, protection  
**protoparens**, *m.*, first parent  
**prout**, according as  
**provenire**, -veni, -ventus, to come for, to be granted, to result  
**proverbium**, *n.*, proverb  
**providere** (2), -vidi, -visus, to provide  
**provincia**, *f.*, province  
**provisio**, *f.*, provision  
**provisus**, *m.*, provision, precaution  
**prudens**, prudent, wise  
**prudenter**, prudently  
**prudencia**, *f.*, prudence  
**psalmus**, *m.*, psalm  
**publice**, publicly  
**pudor**, *m.*, propriety, modesty  
**puer**, *m.*, boy, child, servant  
**pugna**, *f.*, struggle  
**pugnare**, to fight, to struggle  
**pulchritudo**, *f.*, beauty, excellence  
**punctum**, *n.*, point, moment; **puncto temporis**, in an instant  
**punire** (4), -ivi, -itus, to punish  
**pupilla**, *f.*, pupil (of the eye)  
**purgare**, to purify  
**purgatorium**, *n.*, purgatory  
**purus**, pure, clear  
**putare**, to consider, to suppose, to imagine

## Q

**quacumque**, whatsoever  
**quadratus**, square  
**quaerere**, -sivi or -sii, -situs, to seek, to require  
**quaesere**, -sivi or -sii, -situs, to beseech  
**quaestio**, *f.*, question  
**qualis**, what kind  
**qualitas**, *f.*, quality  
**quam**, than; — **diu**, as long as; — **maxime**, as much as possible; **mirum** —, marvelously; **pridie** —, the day before; — **plurimi**, as many as possible; **sane** —, enormously; **tam . . .** —, both . . . and, as well as; **valde** —, immensely  
**quamdiu**, as long as; **tamdiu . . .** —, till such time as, until  
**quamprimum**, as soon as possible  
**quamquam** (**quanquam**), although  
**quamvis**, although  
**quando**, when  
**quandoque**, at one time or another  
**quantitas**, *f.*, quantity  
**quanto . . . tanto**, the . . . the; — **opere**, how greatly, how much  
**quantum**, how much; — **ad**, so far as concerns; **immane** —, monstrously; **mirum** —, tremendously  
**quantumcumque**, however much  
**quantumvis**, however (much)  
**quantus**, what, how great, how much  
**quapropter**, wherefore, on which account  
**quare**, why, wherefore  
**quartus**, fourth; **quantum annum agit**, he is four years old  
**quasi**, as if, like, as it were, about, in a certain sense or degree, quasi  
**quatenus**, insofar as  
**-que** (enclitic), and



- qui, quae, quod**, who, which, what, that  
**quia**, for, because, that  
**quid**, what, why  
**quidam**, a certain one  
**quidditas**, *f.*, essence, "whatness"  
**quidem**, indeed; **ne . . .** —, not even; **illud — . . . sed autem**, to be sure . . . but still  
**quidquid**, whatever  
**quies**, *f.*, rest, quiet  
**quiescens**, of quiet or rest  
**quiescere**, to rest, to cease  
**quin**, except that, unless; — **etiam**, yea indeed; — **immo**, yea rather  
**quinque**, five  
**quinquennium**, *n.*, period of five years  
**quire (eo)**, to be able  
**quis**, who, what; **nescio** —, some sort of, certain; **qua de causa**, for which reason; **qua tale**, of any sort  
**quisquis**, each, whatever  
**quivis**, any whatever  
**quo**, wherein, whither  
**quoad**, up to, as far as, as many as  
**quod**, that, which, what; because; **ad id** —, besides that; — **ipsum**, which of itself alone; **eo** —, to the extent that; **ex eo quod**, from the fact that, because; — **contra**, whereas on the other hand; **eo . . . quo**, the . . . the; **nihil est** —, there is no reason why; — **sciam**, so far as I know; **supra** —, besides  
**quodammodo**, in a certain manner, in a measure  
**quodcumque**, whatever  
**quodlibet**, any whatsoever  
**quominus** (introduces clauses after verbs of hindering), so as not, from  
**quomodo**, how, as  
**quondam**, formerly, once  
**quoniam**, for, since, because, that  
**quoque**, also
- quot**, how many; — **quot**, however many  
**quoties**, as often as, whenever  
**quotiescumque**, as often as  
**quotidianus**, daily  
**quotidie**, daily, every day  
**quum (cum)**, since; **ut** —, as when

## R

- radius**, *m.*, ray  
**rapere(io)**, **-ui**, **raptus**, to take up, to take by force, to catch, to pluck  
**ratio**, *f.*, reckoning, retribution, account  
**ratiocinium**, *n.*, reasoning  
**rationabilis**, reasonable  
**rationabiliter**, reasonably  
**rationalis**, rational  
**ratus**, settled, ratified; **ratum habere**, to ratify, to approve  
**realis**, real, actual  
**realiter**, really  
**reatus**, *m.*, guilt  
**rebaptizare**, to rebaptize  
**recens**, recent, fresh  
**recensere (2)**, **-censui**, **-censitus**, to enumerate  
**recenter**, recently, newly  
**recipere (io)**, **-cepi**, **-ceptus**, to receive, to recover  
**recitatio**, *f.*, recitation  
**recolere**, **-colui**, **-cultus**, to survey, to sum up  
**recognoscere**, **-cognovi**, **-cognitus**, to recognize  
**reconciliare**, to reconcile  
**recordari (dep. 1)**, to remember  
**recordatio**, *f.*, remembrance  
**recte**, correctly, properly  
**rector**, *m.*, rector  
**rectum**, *n.*, that which is right, straight, or direct; **in recto**, directly  
**rectus**, right, upright

- recuperare, to recover  
 reddere, -didi, -ditus, to restore, to return, to pay, to render; **certiorem** —, to inform  
**redemptio**, *f.*, redemption  
**redemptor**, *m.*, redeemer  
**redigere**, -egi, -actus, to bring back, to reduce, to make  
**redimere**, -emi, -emptus, to redeem  
**redire** (eo), to return, to pay  
**referre**, -tuli, -latus, to relate, to refer  
**reficere** (io), -feci, -fectus, to refresh  
**reflectere**, -flexi, -flexus, to reflect  
**reflexus**, reflex  
**reformare**, to renew, to reform  
**refrigerium**, *n.*, refreshment  
**refugere** (io), -fugi, -fugitus, to flee from, to escape  
**regere**, **rex**, **rectus**, to govern  
**regio**, *f.*, region, country  
**regnare**, to reign  
**regnum**, *n.*, kingdom  
**regula**, *f.*, rule  
**rejicere** (io), -jeci, -jectus, to reject, to abandon  
**relate**, in relation to  
**relatio**, *f.*, relation  
**relative**, relatively  
**relativus**, relative  
**relaxare**, to loose, to forgive  
**religiosus**, religious  
**relinquere**, -liqui, -lictus, to leave  
**reliquiae**, *f. pl.*, relics  
**remanere** (2), -mansi, -mansus, to remain, to be left  
**remedium**, *n.*, remedy  
**remissio**, *f.*, remission, forgiveness  
**remittere**, -misi, -missus, to slacken, to relax, to remit  
**remotus**, remote  
**removere** (2), -movi, -motus, to remove  
**remuneratio**, *f.*, reward  
**renasci** (dep. 3), -natus, to be born again  
**renuere**, -nui, to refuse, to decline  
**repellere**, -puli, -pulsus, to cast from, to overcome  
**rependere**, -pendi, -pensus, to pay, to reward  
**repetere**, -petivi, -petitus, to repeat  
**repetitio**, *f.*, repetition  
**reperire** (4), **reperi**, **repertus**, to find  
**replere** (2), -plevi, -pletus, to fill  
**repletus**, filled  
**reponere**, -posui, -positus, to set, to place  
**repositus**, laid up  
**repraesentare**, to show, to lead, to represent  
**reprimere**, -pressi, -pressus, to check, to repress  
**reprobare**, to reject  
**reprobus**, cast off, rejected  
**repugnare**, to be inconsistent or incompatible; to deny, to disagree  
**requies**, *f.*, rest  
**requiescere**, -quievi, -quietus, to rest  
**requirere**, -sivi, -situs, to require  
**requisitum**, *n.*, requisite  
**res**, *f.*, thing; **res gestae**, deeds; **de hac re hactenus**, so much for that  
**rescindere**, -scidi, -scissus, to cut off, to rescind, to revoke  
**rescindibilis**, revocable  
**residere** (2), -sedi, -sessus, to remain, to reside  
**resipiscentia**, *f.*, repentance  
**resipiscere**, -ivi, to repent  
**resistere**, -stiti, to resist  
**resolvere**, -solvi, -solutus, to separate, to resolve  
**respectus**, *m.*, respect, consideration  
**respicere** (io), -spexi, -spectus, to look, to see  
**respirare**, to breathe, to have life again, to find relief

**respondere** (2), **-spondi**, **-sponsus**, to answer  
**respuere**, to reject  
**restituere**, **-ui**, **-utus**, to restore, to set again  
**restitutio**, *f.*, restitution  
**resuscitare**, to raise up  
**resurgere**, **-surrexi**, **-surrectus**, to rise again, to awake  
**resurrectio**, *f.*, resurrection  
**retinere** (2), **-tinui**, **-tentus**, to keep  
**retribuere**, **-ui**, **-utus**, to render, to repay, to bring  
**retributio**, *f.*, reward  
**reus**, *m.*, defendant, criminal  
**revelare**, to reveal  
**revelatio**, *f.*, revelation  
**revera**, indeed, truly  
**reverenter**, reverently  
**reverentialis**, reverent  
**revereri** (dep. 2), **-veritus**, to respect, to revere  
**rhetorica**, *f.*, rhetoric  
**ridiculus**, ridiculous  
**ritualis**, ritual  
**ritus**, *m.*, rite  
**robore**, to strengthen  
**robur**, *n.*, strength, effect, force; — **habere**, to take effect  
**rogare**, to beseech  
**Romanus**, Roman  
**ros**, *m.*, dew  
**rubere** (2), **-bui**, **-bitus**, to redden  
**rubrica**, *f.*, rubric  
**rudimentum**, *n.*, rudiment  
**rursus**, again

## S

**sacellum**, *n.*, chapel, sanctuary  
**sacerdos**, *m.*, priest  
**sacerdotalis**, sacerdotal, priestly  
**sacramentalis**, sacramental  
**sacramentaliter**, sacramentally

**sacramentum**, *n.*, sacrament  
**sacrarium**, *n.*, sacred place, sacrarium  
**sacrificium**, *n.*, sacrifice  
**sacrosanctus**, most holy  
**sacer**, sacred  
**saecularis**, secular  
**saeculum** (**saeculum**), *n.*, age, period, time  
**saepe**, often  
**saltem**, at least  
**salus**, *f.*, salvation, deliverance  
**salutare**, *n.*, health, salvation  
**salutaris**, wholesome, salutary  
**salvare**, to save  
**salvatio**, *f.*, salvation  
**Salvator**, *m.*, Savior  
**salvus**, saved, safe  
**sanare**, to heal  
**sancire** (4), **sanxi**, **sanctus**, to ratify, to sanction  
**sanctificans**, sanctifying  
**sanctificare**, to sanctify  
**sanctificatio**, *f.*, sanctification  
**sanctificator**, *m.*, sanctifier  
**sanctitas**, *f.*, holiness  
**sanctus**, holy; (as noun), saint  
**sane**, truly, indeed, very, soundly; — **quam**, enormously  
**sanus**, healthy, in good health  
**sapiens**, wise, discerning  
**sapientia**, *f.*, wisdom  
**sapor**, *m.*, savor, flavor  
**satagere**, **-egi**, **-actus**, to labor  
**satanas**, *m.*, Satan  
**satis**, enough; — **superque**, enough and more than enough  
**satisfacere** (io), **-feci**, **-factus**, to satisfy  
**satisfactio**, *f.*, satisfaction, fulfillment  
**scelus**, *n.*, sin, crime  
**schisma**, *n.*, schism  
**schismaticus**, *m.*, schismatic  
**scientia**, *f.*, knowledge  
**scil.** (abbrev. for **scilicet**), that is to say, namely

- scindere, scidi, scissus**, to split, to rend  
**scire, scivi or scii, scitus**, to know, to know how; **quod sciam**, so far as I know  
**scopus, m.**, aim, object  
**scotista, m.**, Scotist (follower of the doctrine of Duns Scotus)  
**scribere, scripsi, scriptus**, to write  
**scriptum, n.**, writing  
**scriptura, f.**, Scripture  
**secta, f.**, sect  
**secumferre, -tuli, -latus**, to bear with oneself, to take along  
**secundo**, second, secondly  
**secundum**, according to  
**securus**, secure, steadfast, quiet  
**secus**, otherwise  
**sed, but, yet; — et**, as also; **illud quidem . . . — autem**, to be sure . . . but still  
**sedere (2), sedi, sessus**, to sit  
**sedes, f.**, place, seat, throne, habitation, see  
**sedulo**, carefully, diligently  
**seipsum**, himself; **sibiipsi**, to himself  
**semel**, once  
**semen, n.**, seed, descendant  
**semita, f.**, path  
**semper**, ever, always  
**sempiternus**, eternal, everlasting  
**sensibilis**, perceptible, apprehensible  
**sensitivus**, perceptive  
**sensus, m.**, sense, feeling  
**sententia, f.**, sentence, opinion  
**sentire (4), sensi, sensus**, to feel, to perceive, to experience, to think  
**separare**, to separate  
**separatio, f.**, separation  
**separatus**, separate  
**sepelire (4), -ivi or -ii, sepultus**, to bury  
**septem**, seven  
**septenarius, m.**, septenary, seven  
**septiformis**, sevenfold  
**septimus**, seventh  
**sepulcrum, n.**, sepulcher  
**sequens**, following  
**sequentia, f.**, continuation  
**sequestrare**, to separate  
**sequi (dep. 3), secutus**, to follow  
**serenus**, serene  
**serio**, seriously  
**serius**, later, after  
**sermo, m.**, word, discourse  
**sero**, late  
**serra, f.**, saw  
**serus**, late; **sera nocte**, late at night  
**servare**, to observe  
**servire (4)**, to serve, to be obedient, to be in bondage  
**servitus, f.**, servitude, service, bondage, subjection  
**servus, m.**, servant, slave  
**seu, or; — . . . vel**, whether . . . or  
**sexus, m.**, sex  
**si, if**  
**sibimetipsi**, to itself, himself, or herself  
**sic**, so, thus  
**siccus**, dry  
**sicut (sicuti), as**, even as  
**signaculum, n.**, little seal  
**signare**, to sign, to mark, to stamp  
**signifer, m.**, standard bearer  
**significare**, to mean, to signify  
**signum, n.**, sign, miracle, token  
**similis**, like, similar  
**similiter**, similarly  
**similitudo, f.**, resemblance, likeness  
**simplex**, simple  
**simplicitas, f.**, simplicity  
**simonia, f.**, simony  
**simoniace**, simoniacally  
**simoniacus**, simoniacal  
**simul**, together  
**sin, but if, if however**  
**sincerus**, sincere, genuine

- sine, without  
 singulare, singly, separately, one by one  
 singularis, unique, remarkable, excellent  
 singularitas, *f.*, oneness  
 singuli (rarely in singular), separate, individual  
 sinus, *m.*, bosom, breast  
 siquidem, inasmuch as  
 sistere, stiti, status, to stand  
 sobrie, soberly  
 socialis, social  
 sociare, to share in  
 societas, *f.*, society, fellowship  
 socius, together, allied  
 socordia, *f.*, sloth  
 sol, *m.*, sun  
 solere (semidep. 2), solitus, to be accustomed  
 sollemnis, solemn  
 sollemnitas, *f.*, solemnity  
 sollemniter, solemnly  
 solummodo, only  
 solus, only, alone; non solum, not only; unus — que, the sole and only  
 solvere, solvi, solutus, to fulfill, to loose, to destroy, to undo, to break  
 somnus, *m.*, sleep  
 sonare, to sound, to indicate  
 sonus, *m.*, sound  
 sortire (4), to select  
 spargere, sparsi, sparsus, to fling, to scatter, to spread  
 specialis, special  
 specialiter, specially  
 species, *f.*, kind, species, class  
 specificus, specific, relating to a species  
 spectare, to look, to envision  
 speculativus, speculative  
 sperare, to hope, to trust  
 spes, *f.*, hope  
 spirans, *m.*, that which breathes  
 spirare, to breathe, to exhale  
 spiratio, *f.*, spiration, breath  
 spirativus, breathing  
 spiritualis, spiritual  
 spiritus, *m.*, spirit, breath  
 spondere (2), spopondi, sponsus, to pledge, to sponsor  
 spon, *f.*, free will; sponte sua, of one's own accord  
 sponsus, *m.*, betrothed  
 stabilis, stable, durable  
 stadium, *n.*, racecourse, race  
 stare, steti, status, to stand  
 statim, immediately  
 statuere, -ui, -utus, to station, to place, to set, to appoint, to determine, to decide, to ordain  
 status, *m.*, state  
 statutum, *n.*, statute, law  
 stirpitus, utterly, by the roots  
 strepitus, *m.*, noise  
 stricte, severely  
 strictus, strict, severe, close  
 studiosus, zealous, eager, assiduous  
 stultus, foolish  
 stupere (2), -ui, to be amazed, to be struck, to be astounded  
 suadere (2), suasi, suasus, to recommend, to persuade  
 suavis, sweet, gentle  
 suavitas, *f.*, sweetness, gentleness  
 sub, under; — conditione, conditionally  
 subdere, -didi, -ditus, to place under, to subject  
 subdiaconus, *m.*, subdeacon  
 subditus, *m.*, subject  
 subesse, -fui, to be under, to underlie  
 subjectio, *f.*, subjection  
 subjectivus, subordinate  
 subjectum, *n.*, subject, proposition  
 subjicere (io), -jeci, -jectus, to subject  
 subjungere, -junxi, -junctus, to add  
 sublevare, to support, to assist  
 sublimis, sublime, on high

**mittere**, -misi, -missus, to submit  
**subobscurus**, somewhat obscurely  
**substantia**, *f.*, substance, nature  
**substantialis**, substantial  
**subvenire**, -veni, -ventus, to come up,  
 to relieve, to assist  
**succedere**, -cessi, -cessus, to succeed  
**successus**, *m.*, advance, succession,  
 course; **successu temporis**, in the  
 course of time  
**succurrere**, -curri, -cursus, to aid  
**sufficere** (io), -feci, -fectus, to suffice  
**sufficenter**, sufficiently  
**suggerere**, -gessi, -gestus, to suggest,  
 to bring to mind  
**sumere**, sumpsi, sumptus, to receive,  
 to take, to obtain  
**summe**, in the highest degree  
**summus**, highest; **summo opere**, in  
 the highest degree; — **mons**, the  
 top of the hill; **ad summum**, on the  
 whole, in general, at the most  
**super**, on, upon, above, over, towards;  
**satis superque**, enough and more  
 than enough  
**superare**, to overcome, to surmount  
**superesse**, -fui, to remain, to be left  
 over  
**superfluus**, superfluous  
**superseminare**, to sow, to oversow  
**supernaturalis**, supernatural  
**supernaturaliter**, supernaturally  
**superstitio**, *f.*, superstition  
**superus**, supreme  
**suppeditare**, to furnish, to supply  
**suppetere**, -petivi, -petitus, to be suf-  
 ficient  
**supplere** (2), -plevi, -pletus, to supply  
**supplex**, suppliant, low  
**supplicare**, to beseech humbly  
**supplicatio**, *f.*, supplication, prayer  
**suppliciter**, suppliantly, humbly  
**supra**, over, above, upon; — **morem**,  
 more than usual; — **quod**, besides

**supremus**, ultimate, highest  
**sursum**, upward, above  
**susceptio**, *f.*, reception  
**suscipere** (io), -cepi, -ceptus, to receive,  
 to uphold, to support, to undertake  
**suspendere**, -pendi, -pensus, to sus-  
 pend  
**sustinere** (2), -tinui, -tentus, to sus-  
 tain, to support, to wait upon, to  
 rely, to undergo, to abide, to en-  
 dure, to wait for  
**suus**, his, her, its, their (when refer-  
 ring to the subject)  
**symbolum**, *n.*, symbol, creed  
**synodus**, *f.*, synod  
**synonymus**, synonymous  
**systema**, *n.*, system

## T

**tabernaculum**, *n.*, tabernacle  
**tacitus**, tacit, assumed  
**tactus**, *m.*, touch  
**talis**, such; **qua tale**, as such, of any  
 sort  
**talus**, *m.*, ankle  
**tam**, so, to such a degree; — . . .  
**quam**, both . . . and; as well as  
**tamdiu** . . . **quamdium**, till such time  
 as, until  
**tamen**, yet, nevertheless  
**tamquam** (tanquam), like, as, as if,  
 just as, as it were  
**tandem**, at length, finally  
**tangere**, tetigi, tactus, to touch  
**tantum**, only  
**tantumdem**, as much, just as much  
**tantummodo**, only  
**tantus**, so much, so great, such; **tanto**  
 . . . **quanto**, so much . . . as  
**tartarus**, *m.*, hell  
**tectum**, *n.*, roof  
**temerarius**, rash  
**temeritas**, *f.*, boldness

- temperamentum, n.**, temperament  
**temperies, f.**, temperature, climate  
**temporalis**, temporal  
**tempus, n.**, time; season, **ad** —, at the time, on time, for a while; **puncto temporis**, in an instant; **quanto tempore**, as long as; **successu temporis**, in the course of time  
**tendere, tetendi, tentus or tensus**, to tend, to strive, to bend one's course  
**tenebrae, f. pl.**, darkness  
**tenere (2), tenui, tentus**, to hold, to have, to possess, to keep  
**tentatio, f.**, temptation  
**tenuis**, slight  
**ter**, three times  
**terminare**, to limit  
**terminus, m.**, term  
**terra, f.**, earth, ground, land  
**terrenus**, earthly  
**territorium, n.**, territory  
**tertio**, third, thirdly  
**tertius**, third  
**testamentum, n.**, testament, covenant  
**testari (dep. 1)**, to testify  
**testimonium, n.**, witness  
**testis, m.**, witness  
**textus, m.**, text  
**theologia, f.**, theology  
**theologicus**, theological  
**theologus, m.**, theologian  
**theophania, f.**, manifestation of God in human form  
**theoretice**, theoretically  
**thronus, m.**, throne  
**timere (2), timui**, to fear, to be afraid  
**timor, m.**, fear, terror  
**titulus, m.**, title  
**tollere, sustuli, sublatus**, to take away, to lift up  
**totidem**, just so many  
**totus**, whole, all; **ex toto**, wholly  
**tractare**, to treat  
**tradere, -didi, -ditus**, to deliver up, to betray  
**trahere, traxi, tractus**, to attract, to draw, to bring  
**transcendentalis**, transcendental  
**transcendere, -scendi, -scensus**, to transcend  
**transferre, -tuli, -latus**, to transport, to convey  
**transiens**, transient  
**transigere, -egi, -actus**, to pass, to spend (time)  
**transire (eo)**, to pass through, to go over or across to  
**transmutare**, to transform, to change  
**transmutatio, f.**, change  
**transsubstantiatio, f.**, transsubstantiation  
**tremendus**, tremendous, awful  
**tremere, -ui**, to tremble  
**tremor, m.**, fear, trembling  
**tres, tria**, three  
**tribuere, -ui, -utus**, to grant, to give  
**tridentinus**, of Trent  
**trigesimus**, thirtieth  
**triginta**, thirty  
**Trinitas, f.**, Trinity  
**triplex**, threefold, triple  
**tristis**, sad, sorrowful  
**triticeus**, wheaten  
**triumphus, m.**, triumph  
**tropus, m.**, figure of speech  
**tuba, f.**, trumpet  
**tum . . . tum**, both . . . and  
**tumulus, m.**, grave  
**tunc**, then; **ex** —, from of old  
**turba, f.**, multitude, crowd  
**turma, f.**, squadron, troop  
**turris, f.**, tower  
**tutamentum, n.**, safety, safeguard  
**tutor, m.**, guardian  
**tutus**, safe  
**tyrannicus**, tyrannical

## U

**ubi**, where  
**ubicumque** (**ubicunque**), wherever, whenever  
**ubique**, everywhere  
**ulcisci** (dep. 3), **ultus**, to avenge  
**ullus**, any  
**ulterior**, further, later  
**ultimus**, last, ultimate, final; **ad ultimum**, to the last degree, utterly  
**ultio**, *f.*, revenge, vengeance  
**ultra**, beyond; — **fidem**, incredible; — **modum**, immoderate  
**umbra**, *f.*, shadow  
**unctio**, *f.*, anointing  
**unde**, wherefore, whence, thence, whereupon  
**ungere**, **unxi**, **unctus**, to anoint  
**unicus**, single  
**unigenitus**, only-begotten  
**unio**, *f.*, union  
**unire** (4), to unite  
**unitas**, *f.*, unity  
**unitus**, united, joined  
**unus**, one; **in unum**, together; **nullus** —, no one; **una cum**, together with; — **solusque**, the sole and only  
**unusquisque**, each and every one; — **vestrum**, each one of you  
**universus**, all, entire  
**urgens**, urgent  
**urgere** (2), **ursi**, to impel, to be urgent  
**usque**, as far as; all the way; — **ad**, even until, up to, as far as  
**usurpare**, to use  
**usus**, *m.*, use; **in usu**, at the moment of usage, in the act of using; **ex usu**, expedient  
**ut** (**uti**), that, as, after, when; — **quum**, as when; — **fit**, as is commonly the case  
**uter**, which of two, both, either

**uterlibet**, whichever of the two  
**uterque**, both, either of two, either one  
**uterus**, *m.*, womb  
**utilitas**, *f.*, benefit  
**utique**, indeed, doubtless  
**utpote**, as being, inasmuch as  
**utrum**, whether  
**uxor**, *f.*, wife

## V

**valde**, greatly, exceedingly; — **quam**, immensely  
**valide**, validly  
**validitas**, *f.*, validity  
**validus**, valid  
**valor**, *m.*, value, validity  
**vanitas**, *f.*, vanity, vain or empty thing  
**vanus**, vain, false  
**varius**, various, diverse  
**ve** (-**ve**), or; **plus minusve**, more or less  
**vegetabilis**, vegetable  
**vehemens**, strong, violent  
**vehementer**, strongly  
**vehementius**, earnestly  
**vel**, or; — . . . —, either . . . or; **seu** . . . —, whether . . . or  
**velle**, **volui**, to wish, to will, to choose, to mean  
**vendere**, to sell  
**venditio**, *f.*, selling  
**venerabilis**, venerable  
**venerari** (dep. 1), to venerate  
**venia**, *f.*, pardon  
**venialis**, venial  
**venialiter**, venially  
**venire**, **veni**, **ventus**, to come  
**venturus**, coming, future  
**verax**, true  
**verberare**, to beat



verbum, *n.*, word; ad —, literally,  
 word for word  
 vere, really, truly  
 vereri (dep. 2), veritus, to fear  
 veritas, *f.*, truth  
 vero, truly, but, whereas; minime —,  
 by no means; nisi —, unless indeed  
 versare, to turn, to treat, to deliberate  
 versiculus, *m.*, verse  
 vertibilis, convertible, liable to be  
 turned back  
 verum, truly, indeed; — etiam, but  
 also  
 verus, true  
 vespertinus, evening  
 vester, your  
 vestigium, *n.*, footstep  
 vestis, *f.*, clothing, attire, vestment  
 vetare, vetui, vetitus, to forbid  
 vetus, old  
 vetustissimus, very ancient  
 v.g. (abbrev. for verbi gratia), for ex-  
 ample  
 via, *f.*, way, road  
 viator, *m.*, wayfarer  
 vicarius, *m.*, vicar  
 vicis, *f.*, punishment, time, instance;  
 in or ad vicem, instead of; pro hac  
 vice, for this once  
 vicissim, on the contrary, on the other  
 hand, in turn  
 victoria, *f.*, victory  
 victus, *m.*, a living  
 videre (2), vidi, visus, to see  
 videri (dep. 2), to seem  
 vigere (2), to live, to flourish  
 vigilare, to watch  
 vincere, vici, victus, to overcome, to  
 conquer  
 vindicare, to vindicate, to deliver

vinum, *n.*, wine  
 vir, *m.*, man, husband  
 virginitas, *f.*, virginity  
 virgo, *f.*, virgin, maiden  
 virtuosus, virtuous, of virtue  
 virtus, *f.*, virtue, host, excellence,  
 power, might, strength  
 viscera, *n. pl.*, bowels, innermost parts  
 visibilis, visible  
 vis, *f.*, violence, force  
 visitare, to visit  
 visitatio, *f.*, visit, visitation  
 visivus, visual  
 vita, *f.*, life  
 vitiosus, vicious  
 vitium, *n.*, vice  
 vitulus, *m.*, calf  
 vivens, living  
 vivificare, to quicken, to bring to life,  
 to give life to  
 vivere, vixi, victus, to live  
 vivus, living  
 vix, scarcely, with difficulty  
 vocabulum, *n.*, name  
 vocalis, vocal  
 vocare, to call  
 vocatio, *f.*, vocation  
 volitio, *f.*, volition, will  
 volitus, wished, wanted, willed  
 voluntas, *f.*, will  
 votum, *n.*, vow, prayer  
 vox, *f.*, voice, petition  
 V. Test. (abbrev.), Old Testament  
 vulgo, commonly, generally  
 vultus, *m.*, face, countenance

## Z

zizania, *n. pl.*, cockle